Destination C1&C2

Grammar & Vocabulary with Answer Key

Malcolm Mann
Steve Taylore-Knowles

MACMILLAN

Suitable for the updated CAE exam

Destination C1&C2

Grammar & Vocabulary

Malcolm Mann
Steve Taylore-Knowles

MACMILLAN

Macmillan Education
Between Towns Road, Oxford OX4 3PP
A division of Macmillan Publishers Limited
Companies and representatives throughout the world

ISBN 978-0-230-03540-9

Text © Macmillan Publishers Limited 2008
Design and illustration © Macmillan Publishers Limited 2008

First published 2007

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, transmitted in any form, or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publishers.

Note to Teachers
Photocopies may be made, for classroom use, of pages 265–276 without the prior written permission of Macmillan Publishers Limited. However, please note that the copyright law, which does not normally permit multiple copying of published material, applies to the rest of this book.

Original design by Georgia Liberopoulou
Page make-up by Anne Sherlock
Cover design by Macmillan Publishers Limited
Cover photograph by Brand X Pictures

Authors' acknowledgements
The authors would like to thank Ruth Jimack, Dorothy Richardson and Jane Counter for their valuable contributions to the writing and editing of this book.

Printed and bound in Great Britain by Martins the Printers

2012 2011 2010 2009
10 9 8 7 6 5

Introduction

Overview

Destination C1 & C2: Grammar and Vocabulary has been designed for advanced students at C1 and C2 levels on the Council of Europe's Common European Framework scale. This book provides presentation and practice of all the key grammar, vocabulary and lexico-grammatical areas required for all main C1 and C2 exams, eg Cambridge CAE and Cambridge CPE.

There are 26 units in the book: 13 grammar units and 13 vocabulary units.

Grammar

Each grammar unit begins with a clear two-page presentation of grammar rules and examples in table form. Important points are highlighted in *Watch out!* boxes.

The grammar practice exercises follow the order of the grammar presentation, and are graded in difficulty through the unit. A wide variety of exercise types are used, including those found in major C1 and C2 level exams.

In each grammar unit, the topic vocabulary focus of the following unit is used as a context for presentation and text-based exercises.

Vocabulary

The vocabulary units are topic-based, covering topics appropriate to the level. Each vocabulary unit begins with two pages of clear presentation tables comprising six sections: two topic vocabulary sections; phrasal verbs; phrases, patterns and collocations; idioms; word formation.

The vocabulary exercises are organised according to these sections, and provide systematic practice of the vocabulary presented. Exercise types found in major C1 and C2 level exams are included.

The grammar focus of the preceding unit is consolidated within these exercises.

Revision and consolidation

Strong emphasis is placed on revision and consolidation. The book includes:

- thirteen reviews (after every two units)
- two progress tests (after units 12 and 26)
- six photocopiable revision tests (after every four units)

Additional material

Additional reference material is provided at the back of the book. This includes:

- a topic vocabulary database with definitions and example sentences
- a phrasal verbs database with definitions and example sentences
- a phrases, patterns and collocations database
- an idioms database with definitions and example sentences
- a word formation database

Contents

Units			Pages
Unit 1	Grammar	Present time	6
Unit 2	Vocabulary	Thinking and learning	12
Review 1	**Units 1 and 2**		20
Unit 3	Grammar	Past time	22
Unit 4	Vocabulary	Change and technology	28
Review 2	**Units 3 and 4**		36
Unit 5	Grammar	Future time	38
Unit 6	Vocabulary	Time and work	44
Review 3	**Units 5 and 6**		52
Unit 7	Grammar	Passives and causatives	54
Unit 8	Vocabulary	Movement and transport	60
Review 4	**Units 7 and 8**		68
Unit 9	Grammar	Modals and semi-modals	70
Unit 10	Vocabulary	Communication and the media	76
Review 5	**Units 9 and 10**		84
Unit 11	Grammar	Conditionals	86
Unit 12	Vocabulary	Chance and nature	92
Review 6	**Units 11 and 12**		100
Progress Test 1		**Units 1–12**	102
Unit 13	Grammar	Unreal time	106
Unit 14	Vocabulary	Quantity and money	112
Review 7	**Units 13 and 14**		120
Unit 15	Grammar	Adjectives and adverbs	122

Units			Pages
Unit 16	Vocabulary	Materials and the built environment	128
Review 8	**Units 15 and 16**		136
Unit 17	Grammar	Clauses	138
Unit 18	Vocabulary	Reactions and health	144
Review 9	**Units 17 and 18**		152
Unit 19	Grammar	Complex sentences	154
Unit 20	Vocabulary	Power and social issues	160
Review 10	**Units 19 and 20**		168
Unit 21	Grammar	Noun phrases	170
Unit 22	Vocabulary	Quality and the arts	176
Review 11	**Units 21 and 22**		184
Unit 23	Grammar	Verbal complements	186
Unit 24	Vocabulary	Relationships and people	192
Review 12	**Units 23 and 24**		200
Unit 25	Grammar	Reporting	202
Unit 26	Vocabulary	Preference and leisure activities	208
Review 13	**Units 25 and 26**		216
Progress Test 2		**Units 13–26**	218
Reference section		Topic vocabulary database	224
		Phrasal verbs database	245
		Phrases, patterns and collocations database	251
		Idioms database	257
		Word formation database	261

UNIT 1 Grammar

Present time

Present simple

General truths	*The left-hand side of the brain **controls** the right-hand side of the body.*
Current habits	*I **don't** always **go** to lectures that are early in the morning!*
Permanent situations and states	*Angie **teaches** French at a local adult education centre.*
Telling jokes and other informal stories	*So, a man **goes** to see his psychiatrist ...*
Live sports commentary	*Adams **passes** to Kareshi. It**'s** a goal!*
Newspaper headlines	*HAWKING **WINS** NOBEL PRIZE*
Reviews and summaries	*The film **ends** with us not knowing whether they have been successful or not.*
Instructions and directions	*You **turn** left at the end of the road and the school is up ahead.*
Proverbs and sayings	*Too many cooks **spoil** the broth.*
The future (for fixed events) (see Unit 5 for more information)	*Term **ends** on 21st December.*
The future (in time clauses) (see Unit 5 for more information)	*I'll be so relieved when I **finish** this crossword.*

Emphatic present simple

To emphasise contrast	*Adam doesn't know much about psychiatry but he **does know** quite a lot about psychology.*
To emphasise strong feeling	*I **do like** playing word games!*

Words and phrases often used with the present simple

always / usually / generally / often / sometimes / rarely / seldom / never / whenever / nowadays / these days / from time to time / every now and then / most/much of the time / It's/That's the last time

Present continuous

Actions happening now	*The boys **are doing** their homework right now.*
Actions happening around now	*What book **are** you **doing** in English at the moment?*
Temporary situations and series of actions	*We **aren't having** any exams while the lecturers are still on strike.*
Changing and developing situations	*More and more people **are recognising** the advantages of being able to speak a foreign language.*
Annoying or amusing habits (usually with *always*)	*Dan**'s** always **coming up with** the craziest ideas!*
Background information in jokes and other informal stories	*A man goes to see his psychiatrist. He**'s carrying** a bag full of honey ...*
The future (for arrangements) (see Unit 5 for more information)	*When **are** you **taking** your driving test?*
The future (in time clauses) (see Unit 5 for more information)	*I'll probably be a bit scared when I**'m waiting** outside for the exam to start.*

Words and phrases often used with the present continuous

now / right now / for now / currently / at the moment / for the time being / at present / today / this week/etc / It's/That's the last time

Present perfect simple

Situations and states that started in the past and are still true	*I've **been** a member of MENSA for over five years.*
A series of actions continuing up to now	*She's **done** a BA, an MA and a PhD so far.*
Completed actions at a time in the past which is not important or relevant	***Have** you ever **read** any books by Edward De Bono?*
Completed actions where the important thing is the present result	*She's **been awarded** a scholarship to study at Harvard.*
Actions completed recently	*I've just received my exam results.*
The future (in time clauses) (see Unit 5 for more information)	*Tell me when you've **finished** the report.*

Words and phrases often used with the present perfect simple

since / for / It's the first/second/etc time / before / already / yet / ever / just / still / recently / up to now (up) until now / so far

🇺🇸 vs 🇬🇧 Grammar

- In American English, the past simple is often used instead of the present perfect simple.
  US: ***Did** you **find** the answer yet?* UK: ***Have** you **found** the answer yet?*
  US: *I already **found** the answer.* UK: *I've already **found** the answer.*
- In informal American English, *gotten* is sometimes used as a past participle instead of *got* when it means 'obtain', 'become' or 'move'.
  US: *I **haven't gotten** the books yet. (= I haven't bought the books yet.)* UK: *I **haven't got** the books yet.*

Present perfect continuous

Actions and situations continuing up to the present (or just before the present)	*We've all **been wondering** what to get Tony for his birthday and we just can't decide.*
The future (in time clauses) (see Unit 5 for more information)	*I won't take my driving test until I've **been having** lessons for at least two months.*

Watch out!

- We usually use the present perfect simple to specify a particular number of times/things.
  ✓ *I've **written** two essays this week.*
- We usually use the present perfect continuous to emphasise the duration of an action/situation.
  ✓ *I've **worked** here for five years.* (no emphasis) ✓ *I've **been working** here for five years.* (emphasises the duration)

Words and phrases often used with the present perfect continuous

since / for / just / all day/week/etc

Stative and non-stative uses of verbs

When certain verbs are used to describe states, they are generally used in simple tenses rather than continuous tenses.

Communication	*agree, deny, disagree*
Thinking	*believe, consider, doubt, expect, imagine, know, mean, realise, suppose, suspect, think, understand*
Existence	*be, exist*
Emotions	*adore, appeal, appreciate, desire, despise, detest, dislike, envy, fear, feel, forgive, hate, like, love, mind, need, pity, prefer, satisfy, trust, want, wish*
Perception	*appear, hear, look, notice, recognise, resemble, see, seem, smell, sound, taste*
Possession and relationships between things	*belong, concern, consist, contain, cost, depend, equal, fit, have, include, involve, lack, measure, owe, own, possess, suit, weigh*
Other	*deserve, matter*

Watch out!

Many of the verbs above can also be used in continuous tenses when they describe actions rather than states. These verbs include: *appeal, be, consider, depend, feel, have, include, look, mean, mind, see, smell, taste, think, weigh*
✓ *I **think** it's important to know how to use a computer.* (state: *think* = believe)
✓ *I'm **thinking** about going on a computer course.* (action: *think* = consider)

A Write the verb in brackets in the correct form, present simple or present continuous, in each gap.

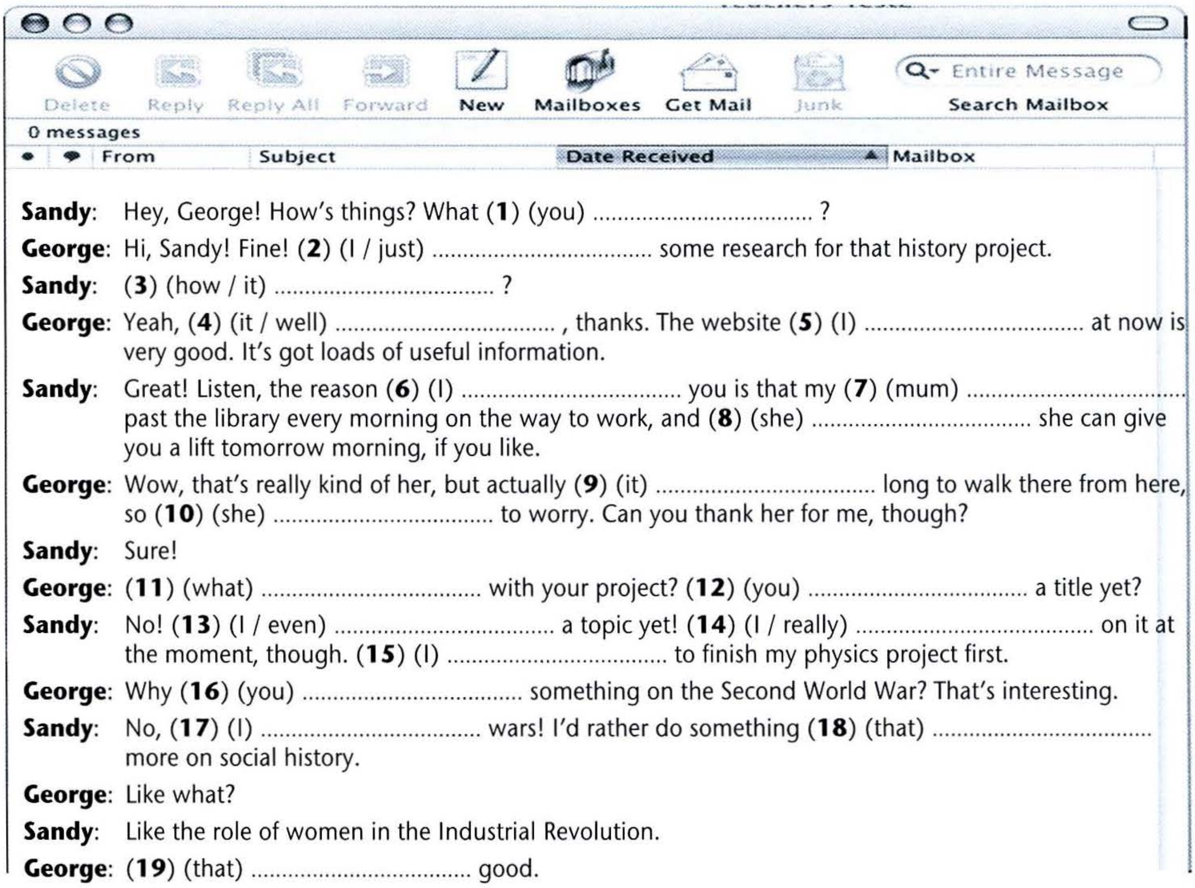
1 My brother .... (**do**) a degree at university so I .... (**see**) him very often, unfortunately.
2 Darren .... usually .... (**get**) home until about eight o'clock.
3 I'm sorry to hear that your parents .... (**get**) divorced.
4 You .... (**go**) to the end of the street and .... (**turn**) right.
5 Why .... ice .... (**float**)?
6 It's lovely now the evenings .... (**get**) longer, isn't it?
7 My dad .... (**eat**) meat at all – he's a vegetarian.
8 Actually, we .... (**listen**) to *The Libertines* at all – this is Pete Docherty's second band, *Babyshambles*.
9 A man .... (**walk**) into a bar. Ouch! Not a good idea to walk into an iron bar!
10 .... you .... (**phone**) me from your mobile? The line's not very good.
11 .... you often .... (**order**) things online?
12 There's an Englishman, an Irishman and a Scotsman. They .... (**walk**) across the desert when one of them .... (**spot**) a camel in the distance ...
13 Beckham .... (**have**) control of the ball ... It's Beckham ... And he .... (**score**)!
14 WOMAN .... (**give**) €500 MILLION LOTTERY WIN TO CHARITY
15 My dad .... (**always / tell**) jokes! They're usually rubbish, though.
16 'Phil .... (**wear**) ties, does he?'
'Actually, he .... (**wear**) a tie to work most days.'

B Write one word in each gap.

1 Why do you .... leave the light on when you go out of the room? You wait till you start paying the electricity bill!
2 Fifteen teachers are teaching here full-time at ....
3 My sister's revising for her GCSEs at the ....
4 I'm quite happy living at home for the time .... , but I guess I'll have to get my own place eventually.
5 It's true that Ralph calls us quite .... , but most students only call their parents when they need something, don't they?
6 We go to the cinema .... now and then, but only if there's something good on.
7 I'm alone in my study bedroom reading .... of the time.
8 Tim .... goes out to play until he's done all his homework. I just don't allow it!
9 I see Lucinda from .... to time, but not on a regular basis.
10 I'm sitting in the garden .... now talking to you on my mobile.
11 That's the last .... we're inviting Dave to one of our parties!
12 Do young people these .... have more free time than they did in the past?
13 My mum fills up with petrol .... she goes to the supermarket.
14 I'm staying in .... now, but I might go out a bit later on.
15 .... is the last time I ever order from that pizzeria. It was disgusting!

C **Write a verb from the box in the correct form, present simple or present continuous, in each gap. Use the words in brackets with the verb. Use contractions where possible. You can use the verbs more than once.**

contact • do • drive • focus • go • happen • have • like • look • need • say
sound • take • think • try • work



Sandy: Hey, George! How's things? What (**1**) (you) .... ?

George: Hi, Sandy! Fine! (**2**) (I / just) .... some research for that history project.

Sandy: (**3**) (how / it) .... ?

George: Yeah, (**4**) (it / well) .... , thanks. The website (**5**) (I) .... at now is very good. It's got loads of useful information.

Sandy: Great! Listen, the reason (**6**) (I) .... you is that my (**7**) (mum) .... past the library every morning on the way to work, and (**8**) (she) .... she can give you a lift tomorrow morning, if you like.

George: Wow, that's really kind of her, but actually (**9**) (it) .... long to walk there from here, so (**10**) (she) .... to worry. Can you thank her for me, though?

Sandy: Sure!

George: (**11**) (what) .... with your project? (**12**) (you) .... a title yet?

Sandy: No! (**13**) (I / even) .... a topic yet! (**14**) (I / really) .... on it at the moment, though. (**15**) (I) .... to finish my physics project first.

George: Why (**16**) (you) .... something on the Second World War? That's interesting.

Sandy: No, (**17**) (I) .... wars! I'd rather do something (**18**) (that) .... more on social history.

George: Like what?

Sandy: Like the role of women in the Industrial Revolution.

George: (**19**) (that) .... good.

Sandy: (**20**) (you) .... so? Okay. Maybe I'll do that, then.

D **Circle the correct word or phrase.**

1 Could you explain what 'antidisestablishmentarianism' **means / is meaning**, please?
2 Each song **only costs / is only costing** 50 cents at the moment because they're on special offer.
3 It **doesn't matter / isn't mattering** which of the books we've studied this term you do your essay on.
4 It's only a quick call as **I ring / I'm ringing** from my mobile.
5 I think **I recognise / I'm recognising** that woman over there. Wasn't she on that quiz show last night?
6 Excuse me, **does the nut cake contain / is the nut cake containing** walnuts? I'm allergic to them.
7 **I really don't agree / I'm really not agreeing** that capital punishment deters people from committing murder.
8 Why **don't you play / aren't you playing** football, Mark? I thought you had a match this afternoon.
9 Stay out of this, Simon, it **doesn't concern / isn't concerning** you at all.
10 You really **resemble / are resembling** your father when you frown like that.
11 If **you're not watching / you don't watch** TV, turn it off!
12 The number you have dialled **does not exist / is not existing**. Please try again.
13 I want everyone to do exercise H, and that **includes / is including** you too, Anne!
14 **We're having / We have** the living room repainted so it's probably best if we go into the kitchen.
15 Right now, my job **involves / is involving** a huge amount of foreign travel.

E Write a verb from the box in the correct form, present simple or present continuous, in each pair of sentences.

appeal • be • consider • depend • feel • have • look • see • smell • think

1 A I .... for a book on fly fishing. Do you have any in stock?
B Stan .... like he's in a bad mood this morning.

2 A How .... you .... about inviting Jackie to come with us on Saturday?
B Britney .... very well, so I've told her she can go home.

3 A Jan and I .... buying a new flat.
B Why .... you .... Ray Davis to be a better songwriter than Paul McCartney?

4 A We .... a barbecue right now, so can I call you back this evening?
B .... the Deacons .... a swimming pool?

5 A The idea of going to a Greek island really .... to me.
B Police .... for witnesses to the attack.

6 A This chicken .... very fresh. I think I'll throw it away just to be on the safe side.
B Why .... you .... that chicken, Mum?

7 A I .... on you, James. Don't let me down!
B Whether we get there by six .... on the traffic.

8 A Julian .... a bit busy at the moment, actually.
B Guys, you .... too noisy! Can't you keep it down, please?

9 A .... you .... Bob would like a CD for his birthday?
B Oliver said he .... about moving out of the city.

10 A I hear that Doug .... quite a lot of Katy these days. Is that true?
B I .... Manchester United lost again.

F Each of the words or phrases in bold is incorrect. Rewrite them correctly.

1 Tammy **been** able to swim since she was one year old. ....
2 How many articles has Greg **wrote** for *Newsweek*? ....
3 Tina and Phil still **not** managed to sell their flat. ....
4 **I'm** never been to China – what's it like? ....
5 Have you heard? Carol's **breaking** her leg again. ....
6 You're lucky you caught me – I've just **came** through the front door. ....
7 Why **you haven't tell** Sue yet that you're thinking of dropping out of the course? ....
8 Our family **is living** in this village for over two hundred years and we're not leaving now! ....

G Circle the correct word or phrase. If both are correct, circle both.

1 They've **filled / been filling** over six bags with rubbish from the beach already.
2 Have you **followed / been following** that story in the papers about the elephant that escaped from the zoo? Apparently, they've just **caught / been catching** it.
3 We've **seen / been seeing** the Tower of London, Buckingham Palace and Oxford Street, and we've only been in London for three hours!
4 It's the first time I've **heard / been hearing** *The Editors* play live.
5 Jake and I have **thought / been thinking** about where to go on holiday for weeks but we just can't decide.
6 You can't want to go to the toilet already – we've only **driven / been driving** for about ten minutes so far!
7 I've **stood / been standing** up all day and my feet are killing me!
8 Has Jan **worked / been working** for the company since it started?

H **Write the verb in brackets in the correct form, present perfect simple or present perfect continuous. Use contractions where possible.**

1 .... (**I / send off**) over 18 press releases this morning so far.
2 Is it the first time .... (**you / ever / eat**) squid?
3 .... (**we / wait**) for you for the past two hours. Where .... (**you / be**)?
4 .... (**you / just / receive**) an e-mail from Ruth?
5 I'm afraid .... (**we / get**) any milk. .... (**we / expect**) a delivery for the past four hours but .... (**they / show up**) yet.
6 .... (**I / draw up**) a list of people to invite to the wedding but .... (**I / get**) very far so far. .... (**you / have**) any thoughts about it?
7 Oh, Clair, my .... (**mum / mean**) to ask you for a while. Would you like to come with us to Wimbledon?

I **Write a word from the box in each gap. You can use each word more than once.**

already • before • ever • for • just • recently • since • so • still • until • yet

1 I've .... realised what's different! You've changed your hair.
2 My grandmother's been quite ill .... , so she's coming to stay with us for a week or two.
3 We've had broadband at home .... about 2005.
4 Have you really finished your homework .... ? Okay, you can watch TV, then.
5 We've won every match we've played .... far this season.
6 I've always lived in a big house .... now, so it's taking some time to get used to being in a small flat.
7 We can't cancel the party now – I've .... invited everyone!
8 How long has Sue gone abroad .... ?
9 Don't get Matthew that game; I'm pretty sure he's got it ....
10 Have you .... thought of going into business on your own?
11 We haven't started .... so you can join in if you like.
12 We've never been to New York .... , so we're both really looking forward to it.
13 Have they been living in the neighbourhood .... you moved in?
14 I .... haven't found my sunglasses.
15 I've been looking for a website like this .... ages!
16 It's strange you should ring now. We've .... been talking about you.
17 Michael, haven't you done your homework .... ? I think it's time you started, isn't it?

J **Write one word in each gap.**

Humans and other life forms

Humans (**1**) .... much in common with other life forms on Earth. (**2**) .... the very first life forms appeared, all living things have (**3**) .... desperately struggling to survive the harsh and changing conditions of our planet. This has (**4**) .... adapting to new situations and, in many cases, has (**5**) .... to either evolution or extinction. We are (**6**) .... alone in making use of the world around us (birds use twigs to build nests, for example) or in being particularly skilful (spiders make intricate webs). Where we (**7**) .... differ from other life forms, however, (**8**) .... in our ability to record, and learn from, our collective history. In this, it (**9**) .... that we (**10**) .... unique. (**11**) .... is still much mankind (**12**) .... not know about the earliest humans, of course, but we are increasingly (**13**) .... a species with detailed knowledge about our past. The more we learn, the better (**14**) .... our chances of survival in the future. It must also be recognised, however, that we are also the only species on Earth which (**15**) .... managed to create the means to destroy the planet we live on.

UNIT 2

Vocabulary

Thinking and learning

Topic vocabulary: Thinking

see page 224 for definitions

- assess (v)
- assume (v)
- baffle (v)
- biased (adj)
- concentrate (v)
- consider (v)
- contemplate (v)
- cynical (adj)
- deduce (v)
- deliberate (v)
- dilemma (n)
- discriminate (v)
- dubious (adj)
- estimate (v, n)
- faith (n)
- gather (v)
- genius (n)
- grasp (v)
- guesswork (n)
- hunch (n)
- ideology (n)
- ingenious (adj)
- inspiration (n)
- intuition (n)
- justify (v)
- naïve (adj)
- notion (n)
- optimistic (adj)
- paradox (n)
- pessimistic (adj)
- plausible (adj)
- ponder (v)
- prejudiced (adj)
- presume (v)
- query (v, n)
- reckon (v)
- reflect (v)
- sceptical/skeptical (adj)
- speculate (v)
- suppose (v)

Topic vocabulary: Learning

see page 225 for definitions

- academic (n, adj)
- conscientious (adj)
- cram (v)
- curriculum (n)
- distance learning (n phr)
- graduate (v, n)
- ignorant (adj)
- inattentive (adj)
- intellectual (n, adj)
- intelligent (adj)
- intensive (adj)
- knowledgeable (adj)
- lecture (v, n)
- mock exam (n phr)
- plagiarise (v)
- self-study (n)
- seminar (n)
- special needs (n phr)
- tuition (n)
- tutorial (n)

Phrasal verbs

brush up (on)	practise and improve your skills or knowledge of something
come (a)round (to)	change your opinion or decision because someone has persuaded you to agree with them
come up with	think of something such as an idea or a plan
face up to	accept something and try to deal with it
figure out	be able to understand something or solve a problem; understand what someone is like and why they behave in the way they do
hit upon	suddenly have an idea; discover something by chance
make out	see, hear or understand someone or something with difficulty; suggest, imply
mull over	think carefully about something over a period of time
piece together	learn the truth about something by considering all the separate bits of information you have
puzzle out	solve a confusing or complicated problem by thinking carefully about it
read up (on/about)	get information on a particular subject by reading a lot about it
swot up (on)	study something very hard, especially for an examination
take in	understand and remember something that you hear or read; accept something as real or true; trick someone into believing something that is not true
think over	consider a problem or decision carefully
think through	consider the facts about something in an organised and thorough way
think up	invent or imagine something, especially an excuse

Phrases, patterns and collocations

account account for, (give) an account of, take into account, take account of, on account of, by all accounts, on sb's account

associate associate sth with

balance (hang) in the balance, strike a balance, upset/alter/redress the balance, balance between/of, on balance, off balance

basis basis for, on a daily/temporary/etc basis, on the basis of/that

belief express belief(s), belief in/that, contrary to popular belief, beyond belief, in the belief that, popular/widely held/widespread/firm/strong/growing belief

brain pick sb's brain(s), rack your brain(s), the brains behind, brainless, brainchild (of), brainstorm, brainwash, brainwave

conclusion bring sth to a conclusion, come to / arrive at / reach a conclusion, jump/leap to conclusions, in conclusion, conclusion of, logical conclusion, foregone conclusion

Phrases, patterns and collocations

consideration take into consideration, give consideration to, show consideration for, under consideration, for sb's consideration, out of consideration for

doubt doubt that, have your doubts about, cast doubt on, raise doubts, in doubt, doubt as to / about, beyond (any) doubt, (a) reasonable doubt, without a doubt, open to doubt

dream dream of/about/that, have a dream, a dream to, beyond your wildest dreams, a dream come true, in your dreams, like a dream

focus focus on, the focus of/for, in focus, out of focus, focus group, main/primary/major focus

impression have/give the (false) impression that, do an impression (of), create/make an impression (on sb), under the impression that, first impressions

mental make a mental note (of/about), mental arithmetic, mental illness, mental age, mental health

mind make up your mind, cross/slip your mind, have/bear in mind, have a one-track mind, take your mind off, bring to mind, in two minds about, on your mind, state of mind, narrow/broad/open/absent-minded

misapprehension under the misapprehension that

perspective put into perspective, from another / a different / sb's / etc perspective, from the perspective of, in perspective, out of perspective, a sense of perspective

principle have principles, stand by / stick to your principles, principle of sth, principle that, in principle, a matter / an issue of principle, against sb's principles, set of principles

question beg the question, raise the question (of), a/no question of, in question, out of the question, without question, beyond question, some question over / as to / about, awkward question

sense sense that, see sense, make sense (of), have the sense to, come to your senses, a sense of, in a/one sense, common sense

side side with sb, take sides, see both sides (of an argument), look on the bright side, on the plus/minus side, by sb's side, on sb's side, on either side (of)

straight set/put sb straight about, set/put the record straight, get/come straight to the point, get sth straight, think/see straight, straight talking, straight answer

view view sth as, take the view that, take a dim/poor view of, come into view, in view of, with a view to, view on/about/that, in sb's view, viewpoint, point of view

Idioms

go to your head	if success goes to your head, it makes you think that you are better or more important than you really are
have your wits about you	be able to think quickly and make sensible decisions
in the dark (about)	not knowing very much about something, because other people are keeping it secret from you
know what's what	know the important facts about a situation
not have a leg to stand on	not have any way of proving that you are right about something
not see the wood for the trees	used for saying that someone cannot understand what is important in a situation because they are thinking too much about small details
put two and two together	guess what is happening or what something means based on what you have seen or heard
quick/slow on the uptake	taking a very short/long time to understand or realise something
ring a bell	something that rings a bell sounds familiar to you, although you cannot remember the exact details
round the bend	crazy
split hairs	argue or worry about very small details or differences that are not important
take stock (of)	spend some time thinking about the situation you are in before you decide what to do next

Word formation

assume	assumption, assuming, unassuming, assumed
believe	disbelieve, belief, disbelief, (un)believer, (un)believable, disbelieving, unbelievably
brilliant	brilliance, brilliantly
conceive	conceptualise, concept, conception, conceptual, (in)conceivable, (in)conceivably
confuse	confusion, confused, confusing(ly)
convince	conviction, (un)convinced, (un)convincing(ly)
decide	decision, decider, decisiveness, deciding, (in)decisive(ly)
define	definition, defined, definitive(ly), (in)definite(ly)
doubt	doubter, doubtful(ly), undoubted(ly), doubtless
explain	explanation, explanatory, unexplained, (in)explicable, inexplicably
imagine	imagination, imaginings, imaginary, (un)imaginative(ly)
judge	judg(e)ment, judiciary, judiciousness, judicious, judicial, judg(e)mental, judiciously
logic	(il)logical(ly)
opinion	opinionated
rational	rationalise, rationalisation, rationalist, rationalism, (ir)rationality, (ir)rational(ly)
reason	reasoning, reasonableness, (un)reasonable, reasoned, (un)reasonably
sane	(in)sanity, insane(ly)
sense	(de)sensitise, nonsense, sensitivity, sensibility, senseless(ness), sensible, nonsensical, sensibly, sensitive(ly)
think	thought, thinker, thinking, thoughtfulness, thoughtlessness, (un)thinkable, thoughtful(ly), thoughtless(ly)
wise	wisdom, (un)wise(ly)

Topic vocabulary: Thinking

A Circle the correct word.

1 Don't be so **optimistic / pessimistic**. Everything's going to be fine, you'll see!
2 Most newspapers are usually **biased / prejudiced** towards a certain political outlook.
3 I'm slightly **dubious / cynical** about whether Sean's idea is going to work.
4 To suggest that it's possible to create a society without crime is a little **naïve / sceptical**, isn't it?
5 The only **ingenious / plausible** explanation I can think of is that Jenna got the dates wrong.
6 Please don't **baffle / discriminate** me with loads of technical terminology. Use plain, simple English!
7 It's not always easy to **assume / assess** someone's suitability for a job just by talking to them in a short interview.
8 How can the government **justify / speculate** spending so much on the armed forces?
9 Looking at the damage, I would **estimate / deduce** that the painting will cost at least €2,000 to restore properly.
10 I don't think you should **reflect / presume** that lots of people are going to help you with this project.

B Complete using the correct form of the words in the box. More than one word might fit in each gap, but try to use all the words.

concentrate • consider • contemplate • deliberate • gather • grasp • ponder • reckon • suppose

1 It took me quite a long time to .... what the aim of the game was.
2 The jury are still .... , but they're expected to reach a verdict soon.
3 I .... from your tutor that you're thinking of changing course.
4 You really have to .... very hard when you are doing calligraphy.
5 I'm seriously .... asking for a pay rise tomorrow.
6 How long do you .... it'll take to get to Manchester?
7 I don't .... I could borrow your lecture notes this weekend, could I?
8 If you've ever .... the question 'Why does the universe bother to exist?', then this is the book for you.
9 Let's not even .... the possibility of failure.

C Each of the words in bold is in the wrong sentence. Write the correct words on the lines.

1 I'm in a real **hunch** because I've been invited to two parties on Saturday and I don't know which one to go to. ....
2 Dave said he's got complete **guesswork** in us, and thinks we're going to do a great job. ....
3 Sarah's a/an **intuition** when it comes to astrophysics, but she's not very practical in everyday things. ....
4 You often need to use a little educated **notion** when you're starting a cryptic crossword. ....
5 I've got a/an **ideology** that someone in this office is going to get promoted soon. ....
6 Communism and capitalism are very different types of **dilemma**. ....
7 Who gave you the **faith** for the main character in the book? ....
8 Detective Tacker had absolutely no evidence that Roddard was involved, but all his **paradox** told him that he was. ....
9 I've got a small **inspiration** about the exam syllabus. Should I talk to Mrs Jacobs about it? ....
10 Paying mothers a salary to raise their children is an interesting **genius**. ....
11 The fact that more people would come here if the place wasn't so crowded is a real **query**. ....

Topic vocabulary: Learning

D Choose the correct word.

Letter to the editor

The Prime Minister's comments yesterday on education spending miss the point, as the secondary education system also needs a major overhaul. Firstly, the system only views the weakest learners as having special (**1**) .... The brightest and most (**2**) .... students are not encouraged to develop to their full potential. Secondly, there's too much testing and not enough learning. My fifteen-year-old daughter, for example, has just spent the last month or so (**3**) .... for exams. These aren't even real, important exams, as her GCSEs will be next year. They're just (**4**) .... exams. Is the work she's been doing really going to make her more (**5**) .... about her subjects, or will she forget it all tomorrow? I suspect the latter.

Thirdly, the standard (**6**) .... doesn't give students any (**7**) .... in developing practical work-related, living and social skills, or in skills necessary for higher education. How many students entering university have the first idea what the difference is between (**8**) .... someone else's work and making good use of someone else's ideas? Shouldn't they have been taught this at school? How many of them are really able to go about (**9**) .... – a skill that's essential at university because there are no teachers to tell you what to do – in an efficient way? Indeed, how many students (**10**) .... from university totally unable to spell even simple English words correctly? The system is letting our children down.

1	A requests	B desires	C needs	D wants
2	A inattentive	B ignorant	C intensive	D conscientious
3	A cramming	B lecturing	C reading	D practising
4	A false	B mock	C fake	D artificial
5	A knowledgeable	B intellectual	C academic	D intelligent
6	A timetable	B lecture	C seminar	D curriculum
7	A lesson	B subject	C tuition	D tutorial
8	A writing	B going over	C plagiarising	D repeating
9	A reviewing	B revision	C distance learning	D self-study
10	A qualify	B graduate	C depart	D exit

Phrasal verbs

E Match to make sentences.

1	I'm going to have to mull this	....	A	together exactly what happened that evening.
2	Detectives are still trying to piece	....	B	in the fact that he'd never see her again.
3	It took him a very long time to take	....	C	up a brilliant excuse to tell Rachel.
4	Tell us how you hit	....	D	over for a while before I make a final decision.
5	It took us ages to figure	....	E	this through properly yet.
6	I've just thought	....	F	out how to get everyone to the sports centre without Phil knowing.
7	I'm not sure we've thought	....	G	upon such a great idea for a website.

F Write one word in each gap so that each second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

1 I need to consider your offer very carefully before I make a decision.
I need to .... over your offer very carefully before I make a decision.

2 Lee had the brilliant idea of booking a clown for the end-of-term party.
Lee came .... the brilliant idea of booking a clown for the end-of-term party.

3 It's time you realised that you've got responsibilities now.
It's time you faced .... the fact that you've got responsibilities now.

4 I'm going to have to improve my spoken German before I go to Munich.
I'm going to have to brush .... my spoken German before I go to Munich.

5 I didn't like the idea at first but now I do.
I didn't like the idea at first but I've .... round .... it now.

6 It's a general knowledge quiz so you can't do any revision for it.
There's nothing to swot .... as it's a general knowledge quiz.

7 We were right at the back of the hall so I couldn't hear what the speaker was saying.
I was unable to .... out what the speaker was saying because we were right at the back of the hall.

8 We finally thought of a way to get the band into the hotel without the press knowing.
We finally puzzled .... a way to get the band into the hotel without the press knowing.

9 I've found out a lot of information about the history of English language teaching recently.
I've been .... up on the history of English language teaching recently.

G Phrasal verbs with *out*, such as *puzzle out*, are often connected to the idea of finding information. Which of these phrasal verbs with *out* are also connected to this idea?

1 Did you **find out** what time the parents' meeting is?
2 I've been **check**ing **out** whether it's better to go by ferry or plane.
3 Susie reckons she's **suss**ed **out** a great way to get into the club for free.
4 We all **pile**d **out** into the playground.
5 I can't **figure out** how to change my password.
6 The band were completely **drown**ed **out** by all the screaming fans.
7 I'm going to **sound** Bob **out** about his investing in the company.
8 Two essays really do **stand out** from the rest.
9 Jan's good at keeping secrets, so you'll have to **worm** it **out** of her!
10 None of us could **fathom out** why the experiment wasn't working.

Phrases, patterns and collocations

H Write one word in each gap.

1 Jim seems to be .... the misapprehension that tomorrow's a holiday. It isn't.
2 These findings cast doubt .... previous research done in this field.
3 This photo's a little .... of focus, but you can still see their faces.
4 Look .... the bright side – it's nearly the end of term.
5 I'm not against animal testing .... principle.
6 I think I'll always associate this song .... our holiday in Majorca.
7 You have to bear .... mind that there'll be quite a few children there.
8 Where did Susan's belief .... reincarnation come from?
9 Dad said that my borrowing the car tonight was .... of the question.

10 Hearing the news about Caroline put my small problems .... perspective.
11 What's the best course of action from your point .... view?
12 You were hired .... the basis that you would be able to work on Sundays.
13 .... balance, I think the government's doing a reasonable job.
14 We haven't taken Julie's thoughts .... account at all.
15 .... conclusion, I'd like to thank everyone who supported me during the early years.

I For each question, write one word which can be used in all three sentences.

1 I was so tired that I couldn't even think ....
I'll come .... to the point – you're fired!
It's time to set the record .... about what really happened that night.

2 She's only eight, but she has the .... age of an 18-year-old.
Many .... illnesses can be cured these days.
I'm not very good at .... arithmetic.

3 Philip does a very funny .... of Tony.
You really made an .... on Pete – he hasn't stopped talking about you!
Why was I under the .... that the exam was on Thursday?

4 Carter was the .... behind the whole criminal operation.
Could I just pick your .... about good places to eat around here?
We sat there racking our .... trying to think of a place to take Paul and Doug in the evening.

5 Someone with no .... of smell can't taste food well either.
I can't make .... of this film at all – what's going on?
Unplugging a toaster before you try to fix it is just common .... , isn't it?

6 I thought Gordon's new invention wouldn't work at all, but in fact it worked like a ....
Winning a cruise on the Queen Mary was a .... come true for me and Albert.
I've had the same recurring .... for four nights in a row.

7 Motorists should always show .... for pedestrians crossing the street at a zebra crossing.
I'll give some .... to your proposals and get back to you.
We stupidly didn't take changes in interest rates into .... when we got a mortgage for our house.

J Write one word in each gap.

I read this week that a new organisation called *Don't Trust Online Information* has been formed. The founder, Douglas Haverford-West, is quoted as saying, 'It's (**1**) .... my principles to trust anything I read on the Internet. I've started this organisation (**2**) .... the belief that there are millions like me who (**3**) .... their doubts about information presented as fact that has not gone through a thorough editorial process. There's no question (**4**) .... us shutting down the Internet – we don't want to do that – but DTOI has been set up with a (**5**) .... to raising awareness.' I sympathise with Haverford-West, but I believe he's wrong. I made up my (**6**) .... long ago not to completely trust anything I heard or read. Whether it's on the Internet or, say, in a newspaper, is irrelevant in my opinion.

K **Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.**

1 I never thought that we'd have legal problems. **crossed**
It .... that we'd have legal problems.

2 I've decided that teaching is not the right profession for me. **conclusion**
I've .... that teaching is not the right profession for me.

3 Could you tell me where you were last night, Mr Johnson? **account**
Could you .... your whereabouts last night, Mr Johnson?

4 The journalist pretended that she was a parent of one of the children. **false**
The journalist .... that she was a parent of one of the children.

5 You have to use logic and lateral thinking in equal measure in this job. **strike**
You have to .... logic and lateral thinking in this job.

6 I didn't tell Angie because I didn't want to hurt Eddie's feelings. **consideration**
I didn't tell Angie .... Eddie.

Idioms

L **Complete using the words in the box.**

bell • bend • dark • hairs • head • leg • stock • two • uptake • what • wits • wood

1 The name Alan Hickson rings a .... , but I can't place him.
2 Stop wasting time splitting .... and look at the big picture.
3 Ask Simon about the sales targets. He always knows what's ....
4 You've got to have your .... about you to succeed in advertising.
5 Don't let success go to your .... , will you?
6 No one told us that Diana was leaving, but we all put two and .... together.
7 I'm going to go round the .... if they don't turn that music down soon.
8 Let's take .... of the situation before we make a final decision.
9 How did they manage to keep me completely in the .... about this for so long?
10 The problem with Jane is that sometimes she can't see the .... for the trees.
11 It took Dan a long time to understand what was going on. He's usually quicker on the .... than that, isn't he?
12 Frankly, you're completely wrong and you haven't got a .... to stand on.

Word formation

M **Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals.**

1 There was quite a bit of .... because the examiner handed out the wrong exam papers. **CONFUSE**
2 You're acting completely .... Just calm down and pull yourself together. **RATIONAL**
3 Einstein's .... went unnoticed at school. **BRILLIANT**
4 This is generally considered to be the .... guide to Australia. **DEFINE**

5 It's absolutely .... why the council decided to close down the youth club. **EXPLAIN**
6 I just stood there and listened in .... as Ben told me the news. **BELIEVE**
7 Greg's .... to say the least, so I wouldn't ask him to choose a hotel. **DECIDE**
8 Many children create .... friends to talk to. **IMAGINE**
9 He was found not guilty by reason of .... and so was sent to a mental institution rather than prison. **SANE**
10 Your argument is .... Just because you want me to be a doctor doesn't mean I want to be one. **LOGIC**

N **The prefix *il-*, as in *illogical*, is often used to make a positive word negative. Which of the words in bold in the following sentences are negative forms of positive words?**

1 Doctors' handwriting is usually **illegible**.
2 There's a beautiful **illustration** on page six.
3 People who are **illiterate** may need some help filling in forms.
4 She had an **illustrious** career as a local politician.
5 It's a totally **illiberal** law that's just going to restrict our freedoms further.
6 Several senior politicians have resigned over the **illegality** of the war.
7 **Illegitimate** children were given very little social recognition in the past.
8 The magician didn't really cut his assistant in two – it was only an **illusion**.
9 The lights **illuminated** the building beautifully at night.

O **Use the word given in capitals to form a word that fits in the space.**

Rhetoric

The (**1**) .... (**CONCEIVE**) of 'rhetoric', or effective public speaking, dates back thousands of years. The underlying (**2**) .... (**ASSUME**) behind rhetoric is that how you present an argument can greatly influence whether people are persuaded by you or not. There is (**3**) .... (**DOUBT**) plenty of evidence to support this idea – it's practically (**4**) .... (**THINK**), for example, for a successful politician to be a poor communicator – but is it just a question of style winning over substance? Certainly, it is often said of politicians that they talk complete (**5**) .... (**SENSE**) but what they say they say with such (**6**) .... (**CONVINCE**) that we tend to believe them, at least when they're in opposition. On the other hand, (**7**) .... (**WISE**) and knowledge are of little value if you cannot communicate them effectively to your peers or to the next generation. It is the combination of clear (**8**) .... (**REASON**), sound (**9**) .... (**JUDGE**) and effective presentation and communication skills that defines true rhetoric. A true rhetorician should always come across as knowledgeable, and never as (**10**) .... (**OPINION**) or ignorant.

REVIEW

1 Units 1 and 2

A Use the word given in capitals to form a word that fits in the space.

Students learning English as a second language are sometimes given a word by their teacher and asked to give an (**1**) .... (**EXPLAIN**) as to what that word means; in other words, to provide a (**2**) .... (**DEFINE**). The (**3**) .... (**ASSUME**) is that if you know a word, you can define it. (**4**) .... (**LOGIC**), that might make sense, but in reality it is not always (**5**) .... (**REASON**) to assume that. There are words and phrases that even native speakers use in conversation without much (**6**) .... (**THINK**) which can lead to (**7**) .... (**CONFUSE**) when you ask a native speaker to define them. Take the (**8**) .... (**CONCEIVE**) of 'zeitgeist', for example, which has entered English from German. It's (**9**) .... (**DOUBT**) much easier to use than it is to define. With a word like 'zeitgeist', it may be more (**10**) .... (**SENSE**) to test the student's understanding in ways other than asking them to define it.

(1 mark per answer)

B Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

11 I'm never going to forget to consider Darren's views when I make a decision again. **account**
That's the last time I .... when I make a decision.

12 I don't know how on earth she thinks of such brilliant plots for her novels. **come**
How on earth .... such brilliant plots for her novels?

13 I'm sure Nancy is still presuming that the party starts at nine. **impression**
I'm sure Nancy .... that the party starts at nine.

14 Sean, do you know yet what you're doing this evening? **mind**
Sean, ... yet what you're doing this evening?

15 I told Jeanne, thinking that she'd be supportive – how wrong I was! **belief**
I told Jeanne .... that she'd be supportive – how wrong I was!

16 There's no way that you're staying out all night with your friends, I'm afraid. **question**
Your staying out all night with your friends .... , I'm afraid.

17 I'm glad you now see sense and agree that your parents are right. **senses**
I'm glad .... and agree that your parents are right.

18 I think you think – wrongly – that this is all a conspiracy against you. **misapprehension**
I think .... that this is all a conspiracy against you.

(2 marks per answer)

C Write one word in each gap.

19 You really have to have your .... about you when driving through Birmingham.
20 It's a typical example of not being able to see the .... for the trees.
21 Bill Denver? That name rings a ....
22 Don't let success go to your .... whatever you do!
23 We were kept completely in the .... about what was going on – they didn't tell us anything!
24 Am I going round the .... or did you just ask me to marry you?
25 He'll never win the court case. My solicitor says he doesn't have a .... to stand on.
26 Dawn's a bit slow on the .... sometimes, so maybe she didn't realise you were suggesting she gave you a job.

(1 mark per answer)

D Circle the correct word.

27 We're still trying to **part / piece / set** together exactly what went wrong.
28 It's too much information for me to **take / read / get** in in one go.
29 You'd better **create / think / work** up a very good excuse why you didn't come to the meeting.
30 Let me mull this **about / in / over** for a while and then I'll get back to you.
31 Toni was totally opposed at first but I think she's **come / made / taken** around to the idea now.
32 I think you should face up **on / with / to** the fact that our relationship's over.
33 We're still trying to **figure / think / guess** out how the burglars got in.
34 I'm going to have to **learn / swot / look** up on what all the road signs mean before my driving test.

(1 mark per answer)

E Choose the correct answer.

35 I'm in a real .... and I just don't know what to do.
A dilemma
B paradox
C query
D hunch

36 They're staying in rented accommodation for the time ....
A going
B making
C doing
D being

37 Is it really the first time .... first class?
A you ever fly
B you're ever flying
C you've ever flown
D you've ever been flying

38 .... getting a pet tarantula?
A Does Claire really think of
B Is Claire really thinking of
C Has Claire really thought that
D Has Claire really been thinking that

39 .... Alan for hours but he just doesn't answer his mobile. I hope nothing's wrong.
A I call
B I'm calling
C I've called
D I've been calling

40 Looking at your CV, I .... you used to live in Australia.
A gather
B do gather
C am gathering
D have gathered

41 I .... it's going to snow tonight, don't you?
A speculate
B reflect
C reckon
D ponder

42 'Have you finished with the paper yet?'
'I've .... started reading it!'
A even
B just
C still
D already

(1 mark per answer)

Total mark: ..../50

Grammar

Past time

Past simple

Single completed actions	*Sony and Philips* ***invented*** *the CD in the early 1980s.*
Repeated or habitual actions in the past	*We* ***moved*** *house a lot when I was a kid.*
General truths about the past	*Early clocks* ***were*** *usually very unreliable.*
Permanent situations and states in the past	***Did*** *the ancient Egyptians* ***have*** *more advanced technology than other civilisations?*
The main events in a story	*Frank* ***turned on*** *the TV and* ***sat*** *on the sofa.*
The present (in conditional sentences) (see Unit 11 for more information)	*If we* ***didn't have*** *computers, what would the world be like?*
The present (after *wish, it's time, would rather*, etc) (see Unit 13 for more information)	*I'd rather Michael* ***didn't waste*** *so much time playing video games.*

Emphatic past simple

To emphasise contrast in the past	*Perhaps our grandparents didn't have e-mail, but they* ***did have*** *the telephone and telegrams.*
To emphasise strong feeling in the past	*I* ***did enjoy*** *our visit to the Science Museum last summer.*

Past simple vs present perfect simple

- In general, the past simple is used to refer to periods of time or moments which are finished. The present perfect is used to refer to periods of time which continue up to the present.
  ✓ *The nineteenth century* ***saw*** *many technological advances, such as the camera and the electric light bulb.*
  ✓ *There* ***have been*** *many technological advances in recent years, the most important being the spread of the Internet.*
- The past simple is used to refer to events at a specific time in the past. The present perfect is used when the specific time something happened isn't important or relevant, or when the present result of a past event is important.
  ✓ *I* ***sent*** *my first e-mail six months ago.*
  ✓ ***Have*** *you ever* ***sent*** *an e-mail before?*

Past continuous

Actions in progress at a particular moment in the past	***Were*** *you* ***chatting*** *to Matt online at midnight last night?*
Actions in progress around a particular moment in the past	*At the turn of the twentieth century, many discoveries* ***were being made*** *in physics and other sciences.*
Temporary situations and series of actions in the past	*At the time, I* ***was working*** *for a large software company in California.*
Changing and developing situations in the past	*I* ***was getting*** *frustrated with my internet provider so I decided to change.*
Annoying or amusing past habits (usually with *always*)	*When she was young, Tina* ***was always taking*** *things* ***apart*** *to see how they worked.*
Background information in a story	*It* ***was raining*** *outside and people* ***were making*** *their way home after work.*
Actions in progress over a period of time	***Were*** *you* ***writing*** *e-mails all yesterday morning?*
Two actions in progress at the same time	*While I* ***was playing*** *a computer game, my brother* ***was doing*** *his homework.*
The present and the future (in conditional sentences) (see Unit 11 for more information)	*Would you be happier if you* ***were studying*** *computer science?*
The present and the future (after *wish, it's time, would rather*, etc) (see Unit 13 for more information)	*I wish we* ***were going*** *to the computer fair next weekend.*

Past continuous vs past simple

- We often use the past continuous to describe background events in progress and the past simple for the main events.
  ✓ *We **were talking** about MP3s when Andrea **mentioned** her new music website.*
- We normally use the past simple to describe regular or repeated actions in the past, not the past continuous.
  ✓ *When I was a child, I **visited** my grandmother every week.*

Past continuous vs present perfect continuous

In general, the past continuous is used to refer to actions in progress during periods of time or at moments which are finished. The present perfect continuous is used to refer to actions in progress during periods of time which continue up to the present.
✓ *We **were working** on my computer for four hours yesterday.*
✓ *We **have been working** on my computer for four hours so far.*

Past perfect simple

Situations and states before the past	***Had** you **had** your computer long before it broke down?*
Completed actions before a moment in the past	*When talking films appeared, the cinema **had** already **become** a popular form of entertainment.* *When Dimitra called, I **had managed** to fix her computer.*
A series of actions continuing up to a moment in the past	*By the time of his death, Thomas Edison **had invented** a number of things that changed everyday life.*
Completed actions where the important thing is the result at a moment in the past	*I beat Jason at* International Captain *because **I'd played** it a lot with my brother.*

Past perfect continuous

Actions and situations continuing up to a moment in the past (or just before a moment in the past)	*She**'d been writing** computer games for over ten years before she finally had a hit.*

would

Past habits, particularly for the distant past	*The ancient Greeks **would** rely on the power of slaves, rather than machines.*

Watch out!

- *Would* can also be used with a continuous infinitive when we are referring to a habit involving actions in progress.
  ✓ *Whenever I went to James's house, he would usually **be playing** on his computer.*
- *Would* is not usually used to refer to past states.

used to

Past habits and states, particularly for the distant past	*It **used to** seem strange to be able to communicate over long distances.*

Watch out!

- Remember that *used to* is not the same as *be used to. Be used to* refers to a situation that is now familiar or no longer strange.
  ✓ *At first, people found it strange sending messages by mobile, but now everyone**'s used to** it.*
- We use *get used to* to refer to the process of becoming familiar with a situation.
  ✓ *It's surprising how quickly people in the nineteeth century **got used to** travelling by train.*

A Circle the correct word or phrase.

1 Rick should know about the meeting because I **told / have told** him about it yesterday.
2 **Did you meet / Have you met** last July while you were both backpacking around Europe?
3 I'm resigning because the pressure at work **has become / became** too much for me.
4 A month ago, I **got / have got** a letter from Neil, but I haven't replied.
5 Julie **was / has been** anxious to speak to you since she heard about your accident.
6 I **had / have had** no idea you were such a good chess player.
7 If you **finished / have finished**, put your hand up and I'll collect your exam paper.
8 There **were / have been** a number of different reasons for our divorce.
9 It was my birthday last week and my grandad **gave / has given** me a new laptop.
10 I don't know who's responsible because I **didn't work / haven't worked** here long.
11 My brother and I **were never allowed / have never been allowed** to chew gum when we were young.
12 My parents **sent / have sent** me to a private school until I was 12.

B Write the verb in brackets in the correct form, past simple or past continuous, in each gap. You may have to use the passive form.

1 When the explosion happened, hundreds of people .... (**pass**) through the airport.
2 When I heard the phone ring, I .... (**stop**) writing to answer it.
3 Amy .... (**read**), so she didn't see me walking past.
4 I .... (**have**) piano lessons every week from the age of six onwards.
5 We decided to leave the beach because it .... (**get**) dark and we wanted to get home while there was still some light.
6 .... Jessica already .... (**think**) of leaving university before she failed her first year exams?
7 Since the hotel had a pool, ... you .... (**swim**) every day?
8 The Industrial Revolution .... (**attract**) many people from the country to the city.
9 The Hubble Space Telescope .... (**put**) into orbit around the Earth in 1990.
10 Sorry I couldn't come on Friday, but I .... (**work**) on my project.
11 By the time we .... (**arrive**), the party was almost over.
12 The national park .... (**create**) to protect local wildlife.

C Write a verb from the box in the correct form in each gap.

appear • check • complete • disappear • get • go • kidnap • look • make • mean • open
press • race • rain • remind • see • start • take • travel • wait • wear • work

High-tech trouble

It all (**1**) .... as I made my way home from work. We (**2**) .... on a top secret computer program, and everyone (**3**) .... pretty nervous about finishing on time, so it was good to get away from the office. It (**4**) .... and it seemed like everyone (**5**) .... home at the same time, anxious to avoid getting wet. I (**6**) .... down into the underground station and (**7**) .... for the train when I (**8**) .... her at the end of the platform. She (**9**) .... a red leather jacket that (**10**) .... me of something I'd seen in a film, although I couldn't remember when. As I watched, she (**11**) .... her handbag and (**12**) .... out what looked like a hand-held computer. She (**13**) .... something on the screen, then (**14**) .... in my direction. Suddenly, my mobile phone (**15**) .... a sound that (**16**) .... I had a text message. Frowning, I (**17**) .... a key and the message (**18**) .... 'We (**19**) .... your daughter. We know you (**20**) .... the program. Follow the woman in red.' I looked up just as she (**21**) .... around the corner. I (**22**) .... after her.

D One verb in each sentence is in the wrong tense. Underline the incorrect word or phrase and write it in the correct tense.

1 I've been having a lot of problems with my computer recently and so I got a technician to come and have a look at it, but she has told me that it was because I wasn't using it properly.

2 It was a few days since I heard from Roger, but he left Russia last Monday and he was planning to arrive in China yesterday, so I called his mum to see if she had heard anything.

3 Patricia and I were having a really good discussion when Jason suddenly appeared and decided that he wanted to join in, even though he has known absolutely nothing about what we were talking about.

4 I had never been visiting a working prison before, so when the opportunity came up I was really eager to have a look around and I certainly wasn't disappointed, although we weren't actually allowed to see the area where the prisoners live.

5 Charlie didn't know what Callum had said to Imogen, but he could see immediately that she had been crying and he was putting his arm around her to comfort her, which made her feel a little better.

6 Although there was no reason to doubt what Alex said, I was ringing Rick to check and he told me that Alex had been right and the concert really had been cancelled because the lead singer had come down with flu.

7 The year before, I had given Lisa a CD for her birthday, but this particular year I wanted to surprise her, so I went into town and I was looking round the shops when suddenly I had seen an old-fashioned hat, and it was her size, so I immediately bought it.

8 Olivia was cycling to school, as she usually did on those days when her father was working and wasn't able to drive her, when she was passing an old woman, who was waiting for the lights to change so that she could cross the road.

E Write the verb in brackets in the correct form, past continuous or present perfect continuous, in each gap.

1 'Why are you out of breath?'
'Because I .... for the last hour.' (**exercise**)

2 'Your light was on when I walked past last night.'
'Yes, I .... online to my cousin in Australia.' (**chat**)

3 'You've really improved on the flute.'
'Well, I hope so because I .... a lot lately.' (**practise**)

4 'You're not jealous of my other friends, are you?'
'No, but you .... quite a lot of them recently.' (**see**)

5 'I didn't wake you up, did I?'
'No, I ....' (**sleep**)

6 'Did you quit your job in the end?'
'I .... of doing so for a long time, but then I decided not to.' (**think**)

7 'Why is your street such a mess?'
'Oh, the council .... up the roads, but they should finish this weekend.' (**dig**)

F Write one verb in each sentence in the past simple and the other verb in the past perfect.

1 The ambulance .... (**left**) by the time the reporters .... (**get**) to the scene of the accident.
2 Before I .... (**meet**) Dr Christian, I .... (**see**) a number of different specialists.
3 It .... (**be**) only the second time I .... (**ever / be**) in a helicopter.
4 Up to the moment when Mr O'Donnell .... (**say**) 'You're fired', I .... (**have**) no idea why he wanted to see me.
5 When Tonya .... (**finished**) eating, she .... (**ask**) the waiter to bring the bill.
6 Luckily, I .... (**just / reach**) the end of my essay when the teacher .... (**tell**) us all to put our pens down.
7 We .... (**do**) everything we had to do by five, so we .... (**decide**) to go out for a coffee.
8 I .... (**want**) Mrs Thomas's young son to touch my ornaments because I .... (**just / clean**) them.
9 My mum .... (**be**) annoyed with me because I .... (**forget**) to get milk when I was at the shop.
10 I .... (**get**) Janine a book for her birthday, but she .... (**read**) it before.

G If a word or phrase in bold is in the correct form, put a tick. If it is incorrect, write the correct form on the line.

The mobile phone

People (**1**) **have been dreaming** of having a personal means of communication for a long time. In the late 1960s, the idea (**2**) **had seemed** so far in the future that it (**3**) **was included** in the science fiction series, *Star Trek*. Since the 1980s, however, mobiles (**4**) **became** a part of everyday life. Although they (**5**) **were** initially **seen** as a status symbol for successful business people, mobile use (**6**) **had spread** to include practically everyone in the developed world, old and young alike.

The impact on social life (**7**) **had been** enormous. We have got used to the idea of having constantly changing social plans, where a quick phone call is all it takes to rearrange things. Before this was possible, there were many occasions when friends who (**8**) **had arranged** to meet completely (**9**) **had missed** each other because of a slight misunderstanding. People would often have to make very careful arrangements to be sure of meeting up.

As mobiles (**10**) **have been becoming** more popular, so they (**11**) **have become** more powerful. The large, unreliable mobile phone of the 1980s (**12**) **has evolved** into the small, stylish camera phone of today.

1 ....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....
10 ....
11 ....
12 ....

H Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

1 I started working at eight and I was still working at six in the evening, when you called. **been**
When you called, ... ten hours.
2 We often went to the seaside with our grandparents as children. **would**
Our grandparents .... to the seaside as children.
3 It's about seven years now since Laura started to learn Russian. **learning**
Laura .... seven years.
4 Being with the older children soon stopped being frightening when I went to secondary school. **used**
Secondary school was frightening, but I .... with the older children.
5 Every night for the past week I have had the same dream. **having**
I .... for a week now.
6 I always disliked karate lessons but now I'm starting to enjoy them. **used**
I .... karate lessons, but now I'm starting to.

I Write one word in each gap.

The pencil

Because the pencil (**1**) .... become such a fundamental part of our lives, it's difficult to remember that people (**2**) .... not been using them forever. Like other products of human ingenuity, pencils had to be invented.

Before the first half of the sixteenth century, people (**3**) .... to use pens to write with and brushes to paint with. It (**4**) .... also possible to use a metal stick to make faint marks on paper. However, up to that point no one (**5**) .... found an easy way to make marks that could be erased. Then, some time before 1565, a large deposit of the chemical, graphite, (**6**) .... found near Borrowdale in Cumbria, England. The locals (**7**) .... use this graphite (a kind of soft black rock) to mark sheep. Soon, tales of this unusual soft substance (**8**) .... spread to artists around the world, who were eager to use it to produce works of art.

Graphite is soft and dirty, and in order to write or draw with it, it (**9**) .... to have to be covered in something, such as sheepskin or string. People had (**10**) .... trying to improve the pencil for some time before manufacturers in Italy came up with the idea of enclosing the graphite in a wooden case. The modern pencil was born.

J Choose the correct answer.

1 How long .... before Val finally turned up?
A have you been waiting C you waited
B are you waiting D had you been waiting

2 You .... be so good at backgammon, did you?
A never used to C are used to
B got used to D wouldn't

3 Could you tell me, sir, what you .... in the park at three in the morning?
A have done C were doing
B have been doing D had done

4 I was angry when you saw me because I .... with my sister.
A have been arguing C had been arguing
B argued D would argue

5 *The Black Pirate* .... over a million copies already this year.
A had sold C had been selling
B has sold D was selling

6 Don't throw the paper away because I .... it yet.
A haven't read C haven't been reading
B hadn't read D hadn't been reading

7 By the time we arrived, the film ....
A has already started C already started
B would already start D had already started

8 We had to walk home in the end because Jimmy .... his car keys.
A has been losing C was losing
B had lost D had been losing

9 It took Edward a long time to .... living in Canada.
A be used to C get used to
B used to D be used

10 I'd love to have lived in the old days, when people .... to market by horse and carriage.
A have been travelling C got used to travelling
B would travel D had been travelling

11 I much preferred it when we .... to Wales every summer on holiday.
A used to go C had gone
B were used to going D have been going

12 Your teacher called me today and said that you .... in the playground again.
A had been fighting C have fought
B used to fight D would fight

UNIT

4 Vocabulary

Change and technology

Topic vocabulary: Change

see page 225 for definitions

- adapt (v)
- adjust (v)
- alternate (v, adj)
- alternative (n, adj)
- amend (v)
- conservative (adj)
- convert (v, n)
- decay (v, n)
- deteriorate (v)
- distort (v)
- dynamic (adj)
- endure (v)
- evolve (v)
- influence (v, n)
- innovation (n)
- innovative (adj)
- last (v)
- maintain (v)
- mature (v, adj)
- modify (v)
- novel (adj)
- persist (v)
- potential (n, adj)
- progress (v, n)
- radical (adj)
- refine (v)
- reform (v, n)
- remain (v)
- revise (v)
- revolution (n)
- shift (v, n)
- spoil (v)
- status quo (n phr)
- steady (v, adj)
- substitute (v, n)
- sustain (v)
- switch (v, n)
- transform (v)
- trend (n)
- uniform (adj)

Topic vocabulary: Technology

see page 226 for definitions

- breakthrough (n)
- broadband (adj, n)
- click (v)
- complex (adj)
- consumer electronics (n phr)
- craft (v, n)
- data (n)
- download (v, n)
- file (n)
- (games) console (n phr)
- manual (adj, n)
- network (v, n)
- nuclear (adj)
- offline (adj, adv)
- online (adj, adv)
- primitive (adj)
- programmer (n)
- resource (n)
- technique (n)
- upload (v)

Phrasal verbs

back up	make a copy of information on your computer; give support to someone by telling other people that you agree with them *backup (n)*
change around	move things so that they are in different places or positions
change into	stop being in one state, condition or form and start being in another, or make something do this; take off the clothes or a piece of clothing you are wearing and put on different ones
change out of	take off the clothes or a piece of clothing you are wearing and put on different ones
do away with	get rid of
do up	repair, paint and improve an old building, car, boat, etc; fasten (an item of clothing)
fade away	disappear slowly
key in	put information into a computer or other electronic machine using keys or a keyboard
make into	change someone or something so that they become something else
mix up	put things together without any order; think that one person or thing is another person or thing *mix-up (n)*
switch on/off	start/stop a machine/light/etc working
take apart	separate an object into pieces
test out	try using something such as a machine or product to find out whether it works correctly or is satisfactory
turn into	change or develop into something different; make someone or something change or develop into something different
use up	use all of a supply of something
wear out	use something a lot so that it no longer works, or can no longer be used

Phrases, patterns and collocations

access (have/gain/provide) access to, internet access, wheelchair access

break break a habit, break with tradition, make the break (from), take/have/need a break, a welcome break from, lunch/tea/coffee break

change change from sth to, change sth into, change sth for, change for the better/worse, change your mind, change the subject, make a change, undergo a change

clock set a clock, watch the clock, against the clock, around the clock, clockwise, clockwork

date date from, date back to, keep (sth) up to date, set/fix a date, go on / make a date (with sb), at a later/future date, to date

demand demand sth from sb, meet/satisfy a demand, make a demand, the demand for, in demand, on demand

energy have/lack the energy to do, put/throw your energy into, nuclear energy, source of energy, energy needs, energy crisis

form form an impression of, take/assume the form of, fill in/out a form, in the form of, in good/bad form, application form

good good (for sb) to do, a good deal, a good many/few, good of sb to do, for sb's own good, no good, it's no good doing

know know (sth) about, know sb/sth to be/do, know better, get/come to know, let sb know, in the know, know-how

lead lead sb into, lead the way, lead the world, lead sb to do, lead to/down/through, take/hold the lead, follow sb's lead, in the lead

link link to, link sth/sb to/with, click on / follow a link, (find/prove/establish) a link between

place change/swap places with, take the place of, take sb's place, put sth in(to) place, in place of, out of place, place of work, no place for

process the process of, in the process of doing, peace process, a process of elimination

purpose serve a purpose, the purpose of doing, sb's purpose in doing, a sense of purpose, on purpose

reality escape from reality, face (up to) reality, become a reality, in reality, virtual reality, reality TV

tool a tool for (doing), a tool of, toolbar, tool kit, tool box

use use sth for (doing), use sth to do, use sth as, use sth properly, have many uses, in use, of (no) use, it's/there's no use doing, what's the use of doing?

web surf the Web, on the Web, website, web page, webcam, World Wide Web, webmaster, weblog (blog)

wheel take the wheel, at/behind the wheel, on wheels, wheel of fortune

Idioms

a leopard can't change its spots	used for saying that someone will never change their behaviour or character
all mod cons	all modern conveniences, the machines and pieces of equipment in your house that make life easy and comfortable
break the mould	change a situation by doing something that is very different from what most people usually do or have done in the past
change your tune	change your opinion or attitude
have a change of heart	change your opinion about something or decide not to do something you were planning to do
know sth inside out	be very familiar with
reinvent the wheel	waste time and effort trying to do something that someone else has already done well
stick to your guns	refuse to change what you are saying or doing despite the opposition or criticism of other people
the tools of the trade	the skills and equipment that you need in order to do your job
turn over a new leaf	change your life by starting to be a better person or stopping a bad habit

Word formation

adapt	adaptation, adaptor, adaptable
adjust	readjust, adjustment, adjustable
alter	alteration, unalterable, unaltered, alternate, alternative
arrange	rearrange, (re)arrangement, arranged
capable	capability, incapable, capably
change	exchange, changeover, (un)changing, (un)changeable, interchangeable
continue	discontinue, continuity, continuation, continual(ly), continuous(ly)
convert	conversion, convertible
electric	electrify, electrician, electricity, electrified, electrifying, electrical(ly)
endure	endurance, (un)endurable, enduring
evolve	evolution, evolutionary, evolving
flexible	(in)flexibility, inflexible
influence	influential
mature	(im)maturity, maturation, immature
modern	modernise, modernisation, modernism, modernity, modernist
new	renew, renewal, newness, renewable, newly, anew
persist	persistence, persistent(ly)
place	replace, placement, placing, replacement, (ir)replaceable
process	processor, processing, processed
revolt	revolutionise, revolution, revolutionary, revolting

Topic vocabulary: Change

A Complete using the correct form of the words in the box.

decay • endure • innovation • mature • modify • potential • progress • shift • substitute • switch

1 Sometimes I wonder how many of the changes we see around us will really ....
2 There has been a real .... in attitudes towards this lately.
3 Mobile phones that receive TV programmes are a real ....
4 Iris has a lot of .... and should do well in her future career.
5 You have to try to be .... about the situation and use your experience to find a solution.
6 This isn't my laptop! Someone must have .... my bag and theirs.
7 We've made a lot of .... with the plans, but we still have a long way to go.
8 You might have learnt the theory, but there's no .... for practical experience.
9 When trees fall and start to .... , they provide a home for many insects.
10 I've .... the design by giving the car six wheels instead of four.

B Choose the correct word.

The changing face of Britain

It seemed to the generation of Britons alive before the Second World War that their way of life would (**1**) .... for many years to come. However, the war caused a (**2**) .... in British life that completely changed the (**3**) .... What had been a fairly (**4**) .... society up to that point, with people sharing many basic beliefs and values, underwent (**5**) .... changes after the war. The (**6**) .... was away from fixed social roles and towards a more (**7**) .... society. Britain began to (**8**) .... into its present form and many ideas that are accepted today, such as a large amount of freedom for teenagers, were at the time (**9**) .... and exciting. New and (**10**) .... music and fashion had a great (**11**) .... on young people and the whole of Britain became less (**12**) ....

1	A sustain	B maintain	C last	D be
2	A revolution	B revision	C rotation	D rejection
3	A social status	B status quo	C status symbol	D high status
4	A uniform	B same	C similar	D identical
5	A refined	B potential	C alternative	D radical
6	A reform	B trend	C fashion	D decay
7	A revised	B amended	C dynamic	D different
8	A refine	B progress	C substitute	D evolve
9	A novel	B mature	C alternate	D steady
10	A internal	B incoherent	C innate	D innovative
11	A substitute	B progress	C influence	D innovation
12	A conservative	B concerned	C convinced	D contained

C Complete using the correct form of the words in the boxes.

1 It's time we completely .... the whole prison system.
2 I'd like you to .... your report to include more information about costs.

reform • revise

3 I thought the report in the paper completely .... the truth.
4 I've .... the contract and it now says that you will receive 15%.

amend • distort

5 I sometimes find it hard to .... a balance between work and my home life.
6 The important thing is to .... calm and try to think logically.

maintain • remain

7 You can .... the chair to make it comfortable by pressing this button.
8 This company needs to .... or we're not going to survive.

adapt • adjust

9 Mike and I meet for coffee on .... Saturdays.
10 There's a lot of traffic, so I'm trying to find an .... route.

alternate • alternative

11 You'll regret it if you .... in annoying people like that.
12 Can the company .... the kind of growth we've had recently?

persist • sustain

13 Many people in Britain .... to Christianity during the Roman period.
14 Learning to use the Internet has really .... my life.

convert • transform

15 I hope the bad weather didn't .... your holiday.

deteriorate • spoil

Topic vocabulary: Technology

D If the word in bold is correct, put a tick. If it is incorrect, replace it with one of the words in bold from the other sentences.

1 The Internet is really a vast **console** of computers, all connected together. ....
2 Since we got **resource**, we've been watching music videos online. ....
3 Early computer games seem quite **nuclear** compared to today's games. ....
4 It seems to me that **primitive** power is far cleaner than oil. ....
5 These ancient tools have been **crafted** with an enormous amount of skill. ....
6 The next generation of games **technique** will have better graphics. ....
7 There's a **network** in computing called 'beta testing', which means you test something to see if it works properly before it becomes official. ....
8 This latest **breakthrough** will mean cheaper, faster internet access for all. ....
9 The computer has finished analysing all the **broadband**. ....
10 The sea is a great natural **data** but we need the right technology to use it. ....

E Complete using the correct form of the words in the box.

click • complex • download • electronics • file • manual • offline • online • programmer • upload

WANTED: COMPUTER GEEK

Some people think 'geek' is a negative term for someone who spends all their time on computers. Well, we at Compulearn think it's a positive thing! If you're interested in becoming a computer (**1**) .... , if you enjoy reading the (**2**) .... to find out what's really going on inside consumer (**3**) .... like the latest plasma TV, then we want to hear from you.
Our six-week course covers everything from (**4**) .... music (**5**) .... from the Internet to writing your own games. You'll learn how to (**6**) .... your own website to the Internet and how to solve (**7**) .... problems in the latest programming languages. Go (**8**) .... now and visit us on the net. (**9**) .... on 'Opportunities' and start your future now.
(If for any reason our website is (**10**) .... , or you are unable to connect to the Internet, call us on 0800-COMPULEARN.)

Phrasal verbs

F Write a phrasal verb in the correct form to replace the words in italics. Use the word given in brackets.

1 Why don't you *remove* .... those wet things and put something dry on? (**out**)
2 The image on the screen *slowly disappeared* .... and I knew it was a computer virus. (**away**)
3 Let's *try* .... your new game and see if it works. (**out**)
4 You'll regret it if you don't *make a copy of* .... your important data. (**up**)
5 Have you *recorded on all of* .... the blank CDs I gave you, or have you got some left? (**up**)
6 Did you hear they're thinking of *getting rid of* .... identity cards? (**away**)
7 You need to *put in using the keyboard* .... your details and then press 'enter'. (**in**)
8 We should *redecorate* .... Jake's bedroom now he's left home. (**up**)

G Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs in the box.

change around • change into • make into • mix up • switch on • take apart • turn into • wear out

1 Could you send someone to have a look at my computer, because nothing happens when I .... it .... ?
2 I .... my watch .... to see what was wrong with it, but I couldn't put it back together again!
3 Your essay would make more sense if you .... the second and third paragraphs ....
4 One of the miracles of nature is the way a caterpillar .... a butterfly.
5 I played so much football last season that I .... two pairs of boots!
6 In the story, Cinderella's coach .... a pumpkin at midnight.
7 My CDs were all in order and now someone's .... them ....
8 I think they've .... the old library .... a really nice space for children to read in.

H The phrasal verb *do up* means something like 'improve'. Put the following phrasal verbs into the sentences and tick the sentences where the phrasal verb means something like 'improve'.

bring up • brush up • cheer up • dress up • make up • take up • tidy up • turn up

1 Why don't you .... yoga? ....
2 I was depressed all day, but I started to .... when I saw Alec. ....
3 I'm going to .... my French before we go on holiday. ....
4 How could you .... such a ridiculous excuse? ....
5 If you .... your room, then you'll be able to find things more easily. ....
6 Why did you have to .... the fact that Dennis has lost his job? ....
7 Let's .... and go out to that new Italian restaurant tonight. ....
8 What time did Nigel finally .... at the party, then? ....

Phrases, patterns and collocations

I Write one word in each gap.

1 The government's decision not to publish this report represents a real .... with tradition.
2 Bill Gates made his money by satisfying the .... for computer operating systems that were easy to use.
3 You should .... better than to spend all your time playing computer games when you've got exams next week.
4 I was .... the Web when I came across a site that had lots of information about my favourite band.
5 Click on the .... below to become a member and enjoy everything that *Musiconline* has to offer.
6 We've lived in this area for over 20 years, and I can tell you that things have definitely .... for the worse.
7 When you're .... the wheel of the new T4 sports car, it's obvious that there's a lot of computing power under the bonnet, as well as engine power.
8 People's attitudes to disability are changing and more and more places have wheelchair .... these days.
9 Now, don't complain about having to spend the holidays away from your computer – it's for your own .... and you'll thank me later.
10 Since she changed jobs, Anne has really thrown her .... into her career.
11 You should keep your computer system up to .... , or you might find that some programs won't run.
12 The workman said that he needed a spanner and asked me to pass him one from his .... kit.

J Write one word in each gap.

Changing ambitions

It used to be accepted wisdom that higher education provides access (**1**) .... better-paid careers. However, the world of work has changed in recent decades, (**2**) .... one where few people had university degrees to one where they are very common. A (**3**) .... many underpaid teachers, managers and other professionals are considering a career change. Swapping the desk for the (**4**) .... box, many are retraining to become skilled manual workers, who are very much (**5**) .... demand.

Those who (**6**) .... the change are finding that as plumbers, gas fitters and electricians they can earn a good (**7**) .... more than they used to. Workers who (**8**) .... something about these vital services can demand high fees (**9**) .... customers and often enjoy considerable independence, in (**10**) .... of the controlled working environment in a school or office. Of course, those who (**11**) .... the break know that if it doesn't work out they can usually go back to their profession (**12**) .... a later date.

K **For each question, write one word which can be used in all three sentences.**

1 There will be a help and support line when the new computer system is in ....
I'm giving my laptop away because it's of no .... to me any more.
What's the .... of trying to keep up with fashions that change too quickly?

2 I think it's time Megan faced up to .... and realised that she's going to have to change her lifestyle.
There's a lot of talk about the effects of technology, but I don't think people have really changed that much in ....
It's amazing how popular .... TV has become in such a short time.

3 Many of today's mobile phones wouldn't look out of .... in science fiction films.
Vikram's been offered a .... at Oxford to study computer science.
Nothing will ever take the .... of my old, reliable transistor radio.

4 Do all these lights on the stereo serve a .... , or are they just for decoration?
Jerry seems to lack a sense of .... since he retired.
I can't believe that Alfie would've sent you a computer virus on ....

5 In this game, you compete against the .... to collect as many gold rings as you can.
People in my office waste time surfing the Net and watching the .... until it's time to leave.
We provide full technical support for all our products around the ....

6 During the 1970s, computer chips began to appear in people's homes in the .... of the first games consoles.
You need to fill out the .... online to become a member of the website.
All the players have been in good .... lately, so it should be a good match.

7 I was in the .... of texting Debbie when my phone rang and it was her!
Recent developments mean that there is a good chance the Middle East peace .... could be restarted.
If the monster isn't behind that door or that door, then it must be behind the third one – it's just a .... of elimination.

8 The path .... around the side of the building.
What .... you to come up with the idea of a clockwork radio?
The scientist .... me into the laboratory, where an experiment was going on.

Idioms

L **Complete each dialogue using the appropriate form of an idiom in the box.**

a leopard can't change its spots • all mod cons • break the mould • change your tune
have a change of heart • know sth inside out • reinvent the wheel • stick to your guns
the tools of the trade • turn over a new leaf

1 'Do you think they might pick Lisa on Thursday?'
'It would really .... for them to choose a woman to run the club, but I hope so.'

2 'I thought you were going to tell Nigel you were angry with him.'
'Well, I .... and decided to just ignore it after all.'

3 'Your son's behaviour in class has improved this term, Mrs Harris.'
'Oh, good. Let's hope he's ....'

4 'Is your research based on other people's work?'
'Some of it. Well, there's no point .... , is there?'

5 'I'm not sure whether to change my mind and let Jenny go to the party.'
'I think you should .... and show her you're serious.'

6 'I wish Terry wouldn't be so thoughtless all the time.'
'I know, but .... , you know.'

7 'I'm thinking of asking Felicity out on a date.'
'You've .... , haven't you? You said she annoyed you.'

8 'You've got lots of books on computing languages.'
'It's what I do for a living, so they're just .... , really.'

9 'You moved recently, didn't you? What's your new place like?'
'Oh, fantastic. It's got .... and it's handy for the train.'

10 'Maria came round and fixed my computer yesterday.'
'Oh, she .... computers .... , doesn't she?'

Word formation

M Use the word given in capitals to form a word that fits in the space.

We often think of ourselves as living in a time of (**1**) .... (**CONTINUE**) technological change and development. We tend to believe that we are unique in history in dealing with a constantly (**2**) .... (**EVOLVE**) world of gadgets, devices and innovations. However, the end of the nineteenth century and the start of the twentieth was also a time that saw many (**3**) .... (**REVOLT**) changes.

People had needed to show (**4**) .... (**FLEXIBLE**) throughout the nineteenth century, as the effects of the Industrial Revolution meant constantly making (**5**) .... (**ADJUST**) to deal with changing working conditions. Towards the end of the century, though, people had to become more (**6**) .... (**ADAPT**) than ever before. The typewriter (1873), the telephone (1876), the electric light bulb (1879) and other (**7**) .... (**INFLUENCE**) developments gave people the (**8**) .... (**CAPABLE**) to live and work in ways their grandparents could not have imagined. Over the next 30 years, little remained (**9**) .... (**ALTER**) as the camera, the cinema, the phonograph, the plane and radio all had an (**10**) .... (**ELECTRIC**) effect on people and society. The modern

N Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals.

1 The weather's been so .... today that I don't know what to wear. (**CHANGE**)
2 Bonnie showed a lot of .... in the way she handled the problem with Olivia. (**MATURE**)
3 The flats were built in the 1960s, but they were all .... in the 90s. (**MODERN**)
4 Jack got in a lot of trouble for .... breaking school rules. (**PERSIST**)
5 I really don't think I'd have the .... to finish a marathon! (**ENDURE**)
6 I feel a lot better since I decided to stop eating .... food. (**PROCESS**)
7 Can we .... the lesson for next Wednesday? (**ARRANGE**)
8 We need to rely more on wave power, wind power and other .... sources of energy. (**NEW**)
9 I gradually lost touch with Ricardo after his .... to Islam. (**CONVERT**)
10 I'm scanning my gran's photos onto my computer because they'd be .... if anything happened to them. (**PLACE**)

REVIEW 2

Units 3 and 4

A **Use the word given in capitals to form a word that fits in the space.**

Sir Clive Sinclair

Born in 1940, UK businessman Sir Clive Sinclair has an (**1**) .... (**ENDURE**) place in the minds of British people for two reasons. First, he was the man who (**2**) .... (**REVOLT**) home computing with the ZX series of computers, and secondly, he was the man whose (**3**) .... (**ALTER**) to the car, the C5, failed spectacularly to capture the public imagination.

Sinclair's products, the ZX81 and its successful (**4**) .... (**PLACE**), the ZX Spectrum, were small, affordable computers that sold in huge numbers in the early 1980s. Despite limited (**5**) .... (**CAPABLE**), they allowed people to play computer games in their own home for the first time, and even introduced people to the word (**6**) .... (**PROCESS**).

The C5, a one-person vehicle that ran on (**7**) .... (**ELECTRIC**), was produced in 1984 and was Sinclair's attempt to (**8**) .... (**MODERN**) transport. However, it was (**9**) .... (**PERSIST**) criticised in the press for being unsafe and impractical in the British climate and production of the C5 was (**10**) .... (**CONTINUE**) in August, 1985.

(1 mark per answer)

B **Circle the correct word or phrase.**

11 When I **saw / was seeing** Marty, he was chatting to someone outside the bank.
12 Jason wasn't interested in the film because he **already saw / had already seen** it.
13 I was shocked because it was the first time I **heard / had heard** Alec use such bad language.
14 In his younger days, my grandfather **would / used to** be a pretty good tennis player.
15 I **was / have been** really pleased when my little brother was born.
16 Tim **was always getting / had always got** into fights at school when he was a kid.
17 The dog **played / had been playing** in the mud, so he was absolutely filthy.
18 A week into our camping holiday, we **were used to cooking / used to cook** in the open air.

(1 mark per answer)

C **Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.**

19 Don't you think we should decorate the living room soon? **up**
Isn't it about time .... the living room?

20 Why should I offer you advice if you won't listen? **use**
What's .... you advice if you won't listen?

21 Being in prison seems to have changed Kevin's behaviour for the better. **leaf**
Kevin has .... he got out of prison.

22 Don't complain about it to me because it won't make any difference. **good**
It's .... it because it won't make any difference.

23 You only have a short time to do this work, so don't waste time. **clock**
You are .... , so don't waste time.

24 When her dream of meeting Kylie came true after so long, Carol couldn't believe it. **reality**
Carol couldn't believe it when her dream of meeting Kylie .... after so long.

25 I often think that Sean is actually his twin brother, Michael. **mix**
I often .... his twin brother, Michael.

26 Would you like to do what the Prime Minister does? **places**
Would you like to .... the Prime Minister?

(2 marks per answer)

D Write one word in each gap.

27 Johnson was .... the lead until the final bend, where he fell off his bike.

28 I'm afraid our Conference Room is .... use at the moment, but I'll call you when it's free.

29 The Internet provides access .... an incredible amount of information.

30 Dr Fisher told us that Grandad's health had changed .... the better, so we could see him.

31 The manager announced that the meeting had been postponed and would be held .... a later date.

32 Don't believe everything you read .... the Web.

33 I don't think Nikki would've hurt your feelings .... purpose.

34 The champion has been .... very good form recently, so he should win this match.

(1 mark per answer)

E Choose the correct answer.

35 When Josh phoned, he sounded like he .... quite a shock.
A had C had been having
B had had D would have

36 Just as you arrived, I .... ready to go out.
A have got C have been getting
B would get D was getting

37 The computer has had an enormous .... on the way we work.
A impression C change
B influence D alteration

38 It might sound strange, but dinner yesterday was the first time I .... octopus.
A was eating C have been eating
B have eaten D had eaten

39 Make sure you .... up the data on your computer, because you might get a virus.
A back C store
B copy D save

40 The Minister was accused of .... the truth.
A distorting C reforming
B revising D shifting

41 That new painting looks a bit out of .... in our living room, don't you think?
A room C place
B space D spot

42 I woke up late for my interview because I .... about it all night and didn't get much sleep.
A worried C had been worrying
B have been worrying D had worried

(1 mark per answer)

Total mark: ..../50

UNIT 5

Grammar

Future time

Often the same future event can be described in different ways:

✓ *The shop **closes** at 3 pm tomorrow.* ✓ *The shop **is closing** at 3 pm tomorrow.*

✓ *The shop **will close** at 3 pm tomorrow.* ✓ *The shop **is going to close** at 3 pm tomorrow.*

Which way you choose to describe something depends on a number of things:

- Function (For example do you want to express a request, a promise or an offer?)
- How you see the future event/situation. (For example, if you see a future event as a fixed event that cannot be changed, the present simple may be appropriate.)
- Level of formality (*will* is usually more formal than *be going to*)

In the tables below are the **main** uses of *will*, *be going to*, etc for the future.

will

Predictions	*It looks as if Jake **will lose** his job.*
Future facts	*The factory **will open** in July.*
Decisions made at the moment of speaking	*I know! **I'll ask** for a pay rise tomorrow.*
Offers	***I'll help** you with the advertising campaign.*
Promises	*I promise you you **won't lose** your job.*
Requests	***Will** you **give** a presentation on the sales figures?*
Refusals (*won't*)	*No, I **won't give** a presentation on the sales figures.*

Watch out!

- For offers and suggestions in the question form, with *I* and *we*, we use *shall* not *will*.
  ✓ ***Shall** I **help** you with the advertising campaign?* (offer)
  ✓ ***Shall** we **discuss** this in the morning?* (suggestion)
- For requests, we can also use *would*, *could* or *can*. *Would* and *could* are more polite than *will* and *can*.
  ✓ ***Would/Could/Can** you **give** a presentation on the sales figures?*
- For refusals, we can also use *couldn't* or *can't*. *Couldn't* is more polite than *won't* and *can't*.
  ✓ *No, I **couldn't/can't give** a presentation on the sales figures.*

🇺🇸 vs 🇬🇧 Grammar

In British English, *shall* is sometimes used with *I* and *we* in place of *will*.

✓ *I **shall** be in touch again soon.* ✓ *I **will** be in touch again soon.*

be going to

Predictions based on present evidence	*Look at that wall. It looks as if it**'s going to** fall down.*
Intentions	*I**'m going to get** my degree, then **get** a well-paid job.*

Present continuous

Arrangements	*I**'m meeting** Fiona on Friday to discuss the advertising campaign.*
Intentions	*I**'m asking** for a pay rise tomorrow.*

Watch out!

Both *be going to* and present continuous can be used for intentions. However, present continuous is **not** usually used for intentions in the distant future.

✓ *I**'m going to work** for a really successful company one day.*

✗ ~~*I'm working for a huge multinational one day.*~~

Present simple

Fixed future events (eg timetables and schedules)	*The shop **closes** at 3 pm next Saturday.*

Future perfect simple

Completed situations before a certain time	*It looks as if Jake **will have lost** his job by the end of the week.*
Continuing situations up to a certain time	*This time next month, I**'ll have worked** at the company for exactly 25 years.*

Future perfect continuous

Continuing situations up to a certain time (emphasises duration)	*This time next month, I**'ll have been working** at the company for exactly 25 years.*

Future continuous

Situations in progress at a certain time in the future	*This time next week I**'ll be travelling** round Russia on business.*
Situations which will happen in the future in the normal course of events	*The company Chairperson **will be arriving** on Thursday.*
Habits or repeated actions at a point in the future	*I think that, in the future, more and more people **will be commuting** to work by plane.*

Time clauses

After many time words and phrases, such as *when*, *while*, *once*, *as soon as*, etc, we do **not** use *will* or *be going to*. We use:

present simple	✓ *I'll give you a pay rise when you **start** working harder!*
present continuous	✓ *I'll give you a pay rise once you**'re bringing in** three new customers a week.*
present perfect simple	✓ *I'll give you a pay rise as soon as you**'ve proved** you're a hard worker.*
present perfect continuous	✓ *I won't give you a pay rise until you**'ve been working** here for three years.*

Other ways to express the future

be (just) about to	for the (very) near future	*I**'m just about to ask** for my pay rise.*
be (just) on the point/verge of	for the (very) near future	*I**'m just on the point/verge of asking** for my pay rise.*
be due to	for formal arrangements	*I**'m due to meet** my boss at eleven o'clock.*
be to do	for obligations for formal announcements	*You**'re to get** those reports written before Friday!* *The factory **is to open** in July.*
other modals (see Unit 9 for more information)	to express certainty, possibility, etc	*I **might** ask for a pay rise tomorrow.*

Future in the past

When we look back at what was the future once, we usually make the future verb forms past. *Will* becomes *would*, *is going to* become *was going to*, etc. Tenses such as present simple also change, by going back one tense.

will → would	Then: *I think the factory **will open** in September.* Now: *I thought the factory **would open** in September.*
present simple → past simple	Then: *I'm in a rush because the train **leaves** at 4.* Now: *I was in a rush because the train **left** at 4.*

A Circle the correct word or phrase. If both are correct, circle both.

1 Sonia looks like she's **falling / going to fall** asleep any minute!
2 When I leave school, I'm **being / going to be** a journalist.
3 When Jake's got his degree, he's **going / going to go** to drama school for a year.
4 Watch out or you're **getting / going to get** into trouble!
5 When are they **realising / going to realise** that they have to improve their customer service?
6 When are you **opening / going to open** a branch in Littlehampton?
7 It sounds like we're not **having / going to have** a sales conference this year.
8 I think house prices are **falling / going to fall** in about six months.
9 Why is Tony **applying / going to apply** for that position? He's not qualified at all.
10 We're **discussing / going to discuss** this in detail in the next meeting.
11 I'm pretty sure that building's **being / going to be** knocked down next week.
12 There's no doubt the events of the last few days are **being / going to be** written about by future historians.
13 You're not **handing / going to hand** in your resignation tomorrow, are you?
14 Fiona and Jerry aren't **becoming / going to become** arrogant when they release their CD, are they?
15 The airline industry's **having / going to have** to cut costs in the near future.

B Circle the correct word or phrase. If both are correct, circle both.

1 I can't come to the beach this weekend, I'm afraid, as **we'll visit / we're visiting** my grandparents.
2 The Prime Minister **will answer / is answering** all of your questions in due course.
3 What time **does your plane arrive / is your plane arriving**?
4 **I'll look / I'm looking** after the neighbours' kids tomorrow evening so I can't come bowling.
5 **Shall / Will** we move on to the next item on the agenda now?
6 'I don't feel well at all.'
'**Are you going to / Will you** be sick?'
7 The last bus **leaves / is leaving** at midnight.
8 Karen, **shall / will** I give you a hand with that report?
9 I'm afraid **I'm not having / I won't have** time to finish all this work today.
10 When **does she / is she going to** get round to having new business cards printed?

C Write a short phrase using *will*, *be going to*, present simple or present continuous on the line to complete each sentence. If more than one form is correct, write all possibilities.

1 (**I / come**) into the office on Saturday morning if you like, Pete. ....

2 Carol, (**you / show**) Harry how to use the photocopier, please? ....

3 From the look of things, (**it / snow**) later today.
....

4 Hurry up! (**We / miss**) the ferry!
....

5 (**The winner / announce**) on 14th January.
....

6 I can't come in to work this morning because (**I / go**) to the doctor's. ....

7 Don't worry! (**They / sack**) anyone for at least six months. ....

8 (**Jenny / find**) a job easily when she graduates?
....

9 No, I'm afraid (**I / be**) at the meeting tomorrow.
....

10 (**The new version / launch**) in the spring.
....

11 (**I / order**) a pizza, shall I?
....

12 It looks like (**some people / make**) redundant quite soon.
....

13 What time (**the train / leave**) on Saturday?
....

D If the phrase in bold is correct, put a tick. If it is incorrect, write the correct form on the line so that the sentence is in the future perfect.

1 I think **we'll have sold out** of these by the end of the day. ....
2 On Tuesday, Toby **will have been being** with the company for exactly 35 years. ....
3 **We'll have been becoming** the market leader by the end of the summer. ....
4 At the end of the summer, **I'll have taking** the same train to work every morning for 15 years. ....
5 When we meet tomorrow afternoon, **will you already have** a chance to look at the sales figures? ....
6 **You'll have driven** for hours without a break when we get there, so you'll need a rest before we go out. ....
7 A Managing Director **will have appointed** by the end of the month. ....
8 Sandra **won't have been finished** the reports by then, but she should at least have started. ....
9 Ron's going to be very surprised when he hears the news. He definitely **will have been expecting** it. ....
10 **Will you have managed** to put something down in writing by the end of the day? ....
11 Why **will they have been waiting** for hours? I thought you'd told them we were going to leave later. ....
12 It sounds like the invitations **won't all have delivering** by next Friday. ....

E Write the verb in brackets in the correct form (future perfect simple, future perfect continuous or future continuous) in each gap. If more than one form is correct, write all the possibilities.

1 By the end of today .... (**Ed / apply**) for over 17 jobs!
2 This time next year .... (**I / hopefully / run**) my own business.
3 In three days' time .... (**we / live**) here for exactly two years.
4 .... (**Gemma / already / arrive**) by the time we get there?
5 .... (**you / travel**) all day, will you? Surely .... (**you / have**) several stops on the way, won't you?
6 .... (**we / wait**) for you at reception when you arrive.
7 At the end of this sponsored jumpathon, ... (**1,000 people / jump**) up and down on the spot non-stop for 48 hours!
8 .... (**the boys / sign**) autographs all morning, so they'll need a couple of hours' break before the recording session.
9 How many people .... (**you / interview**) for the position tomorrow?
10 .... (**Terry / see**) the e-mail as he's only just got here so we'd better discuss that first.
11 What .... (**you / do**) this time next week?
12 .... (**we / see**) Ken and Tricia when we go to the States as they'll be away at the time, unfortunately.

F Complete each second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

1 The bell will ring and then you can all go home.
You can all go home when ....

2 Ahmed will ask the questions and I'll take notes.
I'll take notes while ....

3 You're a trainee for three months and then you become a junior employee.
You become a junior employee once ....

4 Miss Jones will be interviewing the candidates and Mr Dawkins will be recording the interviews.
Miss Jones will be interviewing the candidates while ....

5 The sales figures will come in and then we'll assess the situation again.
We'll assess the situation again as ....

6 Work for us for over a year and we'll consider promoting you.
We'll only consider promoting you once ....

7 They'll start selling in much larger quantities and then they'll make a profit.
They won't make a profit until ....

8 The publishing company will offer me a contract and then I'll know for sure that they're going to publish the book.
I'll know for sure that the book is going to be published when I ....

G Write a verb from the box in the correct form in each gap.

arrive • be • call • destroy • draw up • give • last • notify • record • show • take • wait

Information for job applicants

- When you (**1**) .... at the main gates, hand over the attached invitation letter to the security guard. You (**2**) .... where to park, and how to get to reception.
- As soon as you (**3**) .... your name to the receptionist, you (**4**) .... to Meeting Room 7.
- While you (**5**) .... in Meeting Room 7, please fill in one of the Personal Information forms which will be in the room.
- When you (**6**) .... for interview, please bring this form with you.
- Your interview (**7**) .... for approximately 45 minutes. Please note that all interviews (**8**) .... This is to help us with the selection process. Once the selection process (**9**) .... over, all recordings (**10**) ....
- You (**11**) .... as soon as a shortlist of candidates (**12**) ....

H Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

1 Shona will find out if she has been promoted very soon. **just**
Shona .... find out if she has been promoted.

2 They will decide very soon whether to close the Paris office. **point**
They .... whether to close the Paris office.

3 The plan is that I will give a presentation to the board on Friday morning. **due**
I .... a presentation to the board on Friday morning.

4 Are you going home in a minute? **about**
Are you .... home?

5 Actually, there won't be a general election for a while. **verge**
Actually, we .... a general election.

6 What time do the inspectors arrive tomorrow? **due**
What time .... tomorrow?

7 Keep this a secret. **to**
You are .... anyone about this.

I Write one word in each gap.

1 The company .... going to expand, but the economic downturn has put a stop to that.
2 No one had any idea that Dave .... resign the next day.
3 We were all standing around in front of the TV, knowing that the Minister .... to make a statement on the emergency in the next few minutes.
4 Ann .... to find the documents soon, or her boss would find out she'd mislaid them.
5 .... you going to apply for the post before you heard it had already been filled?
6 .... Bill .... on a business trip the next day anyway, or did he have to pack a suitcase and get a plane ticket at the last minute?
7 You're lucky you caught me. I .... just on the point of leaving.
8 We .... due to arrive at six, so I left a message saying we .... be there at nine.
9 I think they .... about to fire me when I quit!
10 Thompson understood the cryptic message. He was .... get to Berlin on the first flight.

J Write one word in each gap.

The office of the future

What (**1**) .... the office of 2020 be like? By then, it's highly likely that most of the western world will (**2**) .... been connected to a WiFi network. As (**3**) .... as that (**4**) .... , the physical restriction of phone lines (**5**) .... disappear. Some people will (**6**) .... have to commute to the office each day, but for many others their office will (**7**) .... wherever they are. More and more people will be (**8**) .... from home several days a week. It's no exaggeration to say that many businessmen and women will (**9**) .... sending e-mails and (**10**) .... business with clients (**11**) .... they (**12**) .... lying on a beach or flying across the Atlantic.
In terms of technology, mobile phones and laptops will have (**13**) .... even more lightweight and portable than they are now, and many new pieces of communication technology will have (**14**) .... introduced to make our working lives easier. Indeed, (**15**) .... 2020, it's quite possible that your mobile, camera, laptop and MP3 player will have been combined into one very small, but extremely powerful, business communications unit.

K Choose the correct answer.

1 We are pleased to announce that Keith Danish .... replace Susan Williams as Operations Manager from 24th September.
A does C is to
B is about to D is due

2 I .... Penny for her advice, but I'm not so sure that's such a good idea now.
A am going to ask C was asking
B was going to ask D will ask

3 Once .... broadband, you won't want to go back to a dial-up connection.
A you'll be using C you've been used
B you'll have used D you've used

4 .... find out more about the costs before we make a final decision?
A Do I C Shall I
B Will I D Am I due to

5 .... to the Finance Manager or the Accounts Manager?
A Will you be reporting C Shall you be reporting
B Will you have been reporting D Are you on the verge of reporting

6 This time tomorrow, Barry will .... across the Pacific for exactly three months.
A be rowing C be rowing
B have rowed D have been rowing

7 When .... treating me with some respect at work?
A will they have started C are they starting
B are they going to start D will they be starting

8 Were you really just on the point .... ?
A of resigning C with resignation
B to resign D of having resigned

UNIT 6

Vocabulary

Time and work

Topic vocabulary: Time

see page 227 for definitions

- abrupt (adj)
- anachronism (n)
- annual (adj)
- antique (adj, n)
- century (n)
- chronological (adj)
- contemporary (n, adj)
- decade (n)
- duration (n)
- elapse (v)
- era (n)
- eternal (adj)
- expire (v)
- frequency (n)
- instantaneous (adj)
- interim (n, adj)
- interval (n)
- lapse (v, n)
- lifetime (n)
- long-standing (adj)
- millennium (n)
- obsolete (adj)
- overdue (adj)
- period (n)
- permanent (adj)
- phase (n)
- postpone (v)
- prior (adj)
- prompt (adj)
- provisional (adj)
- punctual (adj)
- seasonal (adj)
- simultaneous (adj)
- span (v, n)
- spell (n)
- stint (n)
- subsequent (adj)
- temporary (adj)
- timely (adj)
- vintage (n, adj)

Topic vocabulary: Work

see page 228 for definitions

- civil service (n phr)
- client (n)
- colleague (n)
- consultant (n)
- effective (adj)
- efficient (adj)
- executive (n)
- fire (v)
- headhunt (v)
- leave (n)
- marketing (n)
- multinational (n, adj)
- promotion (n)
- prospects (n pl)
- public/private sector (n phr)
- recruit (v, n)
- redundant (adj)
- sack (v)
- strike (v, n)
- union (n)

Phrasal verbs

crop up	appear or happen suddenly or unexpectedly
dive in	start doing something in a very enthusiastic way
end up	be in a particular place or state after doing something or because of doing it
kick off (with)	begin (with)
knock off	stop working
knuckle down	start working hard, especially when you should have done this earlier
lay off	end someone's employment, especially temporarily, because there is not enough work for them; stop doing or using something, especially for a short period of time
lie ahead	if something lies ahead, it is going to happen to you in the future
make up	work at different times from usual because you have not worked enough at the normal times
press ahead/on (with)	continue doing something in a determined way, despite difficulties, opposition or interruptions
set out	start doing or working on something in order to achieve an aim *outset (n)*
snow under	if you are snowed under, you have too much of sth to deal with
take on	start to employ someone; accept some work or responsibility
tide over	help someone to get to the end of a difficult period of time, especially by giving them money until they can get some more
while away	spend time in a relaxed way when you have nothing else to do
wind down	end or finish something gradually; gradually reduce work before stopping completely; relax after a period of excitement or worry

Phrases, patterns and collocations

about partly/mainly/all about, do sth about, about time, about to do

age act your age, (at/by/from) the age of, under age, school/working/etc age, with age, age limit, age bracket/group, (in the) Stone/Bronze/Iron Age

ages take/spend ages (doing), ages ago, seems/feels like ages (since)

course run its course, in/during the course of, in due course, on a course, course of action/events

day make sb's day, day by day, from day to day, any day now, in this day and age, day off, day out, day trip

end come to an end, bring sth to an end, put an end to, at/by the (very) end (of), no end in sight (to), at an end, (for) hours/weeks/etc on end, in the end

Phrases, patterns and collocations

ever hardly ever, if ever, first/only/etc sth ever (to), bigger/better/etc than ever, as ever, ever since, forever/for ever

hours keep regular/late hours, work long hours, for hours (on end), (during) school/working/etc hours, at/until all hours, after hours, out of hours

job get/find/take/do a job, it's a good job, leave/lose your job, make/do a good/bad job of, make the best of a bad job, have a job to do / doing, sb's job to do, out of a job, on the job, job losses

moment take/be a moment, just/wait a moment, any moment (now), at the moment, at this/that moment in time, in a moment, the right moment (to/for), the moment of truth

never you never know, never again, never mind, never mind if/whether/etc, never ever, never-ending

now now is the time to, from now on, for now, up to now, right now, now that, any day/moment/etc now, just now, every now and then/again, nowadays

office take office, run for office, public office, head office, office holder, office block, office hours, office party

on on time, on and on, on end, from now/that moment/then on, You're on!

second give/take sb a second to do, in a second, within seconds, seconds later, a split second

start have/make a good/fine/bad/etc start, get off to a good/flying/head/bad/etc start, make a start (on/at), (right) from the start, for a start, (at/from the) start of, get (sth) started

term in the long/short term, end of term, term of/in office, term time, prison/jail term, fixed term, long-/short-term

time pass the time, spend time, make time, find the time, take time, in/on time, by the time, time after time, part-time, full-time, time frame, time limit

work work on/in/with/as/at/for, work like magic, work both ways, work a treat, work wonders, work your way (through/around), at work, out of / in work, piece of work

year years of age, years old, year on year, for years, not/never in a million years, leap year

Idioms

a stitch in time (saves nine)	used for saying that it is better to solve a problem now, rather than leave it until later when it may be more difficult to deal with
all in good time	used for telling someone to wait for something and not try to make you hurry
at the drop of a hat	immediately or in a way that shows that you have no doubts about doing something
before your time	used for saying that something happened or existed before you were born or before you lived or worked somewhere
for good	permanently, without the possibility of change in the future
for the time being	for now
from time to time	sometimes, but not often
in/for donkey's years	an extremely long time
in the nick of time	just in time to prevent something bad happening
once in a blue moon	very rarely
on the spur of the moment	if you do something on the spur of the moment, you do it suddenly and do not take time to plan it or think carefully about it
the other day	recently

Word formation

antique	antiquity, antiquated
apply	reapply, misapply, applicant, application, (in)applicability, (in)applicable, (mis)applied
compete	competition, competitor, competitiveness, (un)competitive(ly)
employ	(un)employment, underemployment, employer, employee, (un)employed, underemployed, (un)employable
end	ending, unending, endless(ly)
event	eventuality, (un)eventful, eventual(ly)
expect	expectation, expectancy, expectant(ly), (un)expected(ly)
future	futurist, futuristic(ally)
history	historian, historic, historical(ly)
incident	incidence, coincidence, incidental(ly), coincidental(ly)
job	jobbing, jobless
last	outlast, lasting, everlasting, lastly
manage	mismanage, manager, manageress, (mis)management, (un)manageable, mismanaged, managerial, managing
moment	momentous, momentary, momentarily
period	periodical, periodic(ally)
produce	producer, product, productivity, production, counterproductive, (un)productive(ly)
time	mistime, timer, timing, overtime, timetable, timelessness, (un)timely, timeless(ly)
work	rework, overwork, worker, works, reworking, workplace, overworked, working, (un)workable

Topic vocabulary: Time

A Write a word from the box in each gap.

obsolete • overdue • provisional • punctual • seasonal • simultaneous • temporary • timely

1 'I'll only be working here for a couple of weeks. I'm a .... worker.'
2 'It couldn't have happened at a better time! What a .... arrival!'
3 'It depends on the time of year. It's a .... problem.'
4 'I get to work at nine o'clock on the dot every day. I try to be ....'
5 'We both said it at exactly the same time. Our answer was ....'
6 'We can't use that software on our new computers. It's .... !'
7 'It's the first draft of the text. We can change it later if we want. It's only ....'
8 'They should have sent that to us ages ago. It's long ....'

B Write a word from the box in each gap.

century • era • frequency • millennium • phase • span • spell • stint

1 We live in a/an .... of mass communication.
2 After a short .... of being unemployed, I decided to set up my own business.
3 It was in the twentieth .... that humans first developed nuclear weapons.
4 Despite advances in technology, no human being will ever live for a .... in my opinion.
5 The council is planning to increase the .... of buses to the city centre.
6 I did a brief .... in the navy, and then decided it wasn't for me.
7 I've got a very short concentration ....
8 It's just a .... that most teenagers go through. Don't worry!

C Choose the correct word.

Dear Alan,

I am writing to thank the organisation for the (**1**) .... service I received when my membership (**2**) ....

As you may know, I am a (**3**) .... member of the Chaversham (**4**) .... Car Club, having spent most of my (**5**) .... working with cars built in the (**6**) .... following the First World War.

Indeed, I was under the impression that I did not have to renew my subscription each year as I had been granted the status of '(**7**) .... member' for the (**8**) .... I spent as Chairperson of the organisation in the 1970s. I was therefore more than a little surprised to receive a rather (**9**) .... e-mail from the club saying that as three months had (**10**) .... since my membership ran out I was no longer eligible to attend the (**11**) .... dinner next month.

I, of course, immediately replied, stating the facts as I saw them.

I received a (**12**) .... e-mail from the same person, apologising for the confusion, explaining that although I did not have to pay to renew my subscription, I still had to renew it. They kindly explained how I could do this online, and I must say I was most impressed with the whole thing, as the change from my being a non-member to being a member again was literally (**13**) ....

I am now looking forward to meeting up with some of my (**14**) .... at the dinner next week. I hope to see you there.

Warmest regards,

Robert Thompson

1 A prior B prompt
2 A postponed B expired
3 A long-standing B timely
4 A Vintage B Antique
5 A spell B lifetime
6 A duration B decade
7 A chronological B permanent
8 A period B interval
9 A interim B abrupt
10 A lapsed B elapsed
11 A annual B eternal
12 A subsequent B temporary
13 A simultaneous B instantaneous
14 A anachronisms B contemporaries

Topic vocabulary: Work

D Write a word from the boxes in each gap.

1 Would you like to work for a large .... corporation?
2 How much budget is there for the .... campaign?

marketing • multinational

3 Charlene is a freelance business .... ; companies hire her to solve particular problems they are facing.
4 My dad's a senior .... in a huge American corporation.

consultant • executive

5 The advertising campaign was .... in that it increased sales by over 50%.
6 Robots are often much more .... than people because they can work 24 hours a day without getting tired, and they don't make mistakes!

effective • efficient

7 The paper had to make several journalists .... last week due to loss of sales.
8 Darren's home on .... from the army at the moment.

leave • redundant

9 How long is the union planning to .... for?
10 They wouldn't .... someone just for stealing a bit of stationery, would they?

fire • strike

11 Sue used to work here, but then she was .... by a major law firm.
12 I can't believe they .... Jack just for taking a few paperclips home with him.

headhunted • sacked

E Circle the correct word.

If you're about to graduate but are unsure what to do next, why not consider a career in the **(1) state / civil** service?
Working in the public **(2) area / sector** provides job security and job satisfaction. There are excellent **(3) prospects / predictions** for **(4) promotion / progress**, and you'll know you're doing something to benefit society. You'll be working with highly experienced and professional **(5) colleagues / clients** in a modern, friendly working environment, and you'll receive a competitive salary too. We also respect our staff's right to be part of a **(6) club / union**.
We want to **(7) recruit / elect** the brightest and the best. If you think you fit the bill, fill in an application form today.

Phrasal verbs

F Choose the correct word.

1 I'm so .... under with work at the moment – it's awful!
A iced B rained C snowed D fogged

2 The company's announced it's .... off over 1,000 workers.
A leaving B laying C setting D giving

3 They're planning to .... down their operation in Greece and concentrate on Eastern Europe.
A wind B tie C roll D stretch

4 I'm not sure if I'm doing it right, but I'll try to .... ahead with it anyway.
A drive B bang C touch D press

5 Something's .... up, so I'm afraid I won't be able to make it this afternoon.
A shown B pulled C cropped D cut

6 Could you lend me some money to .... me over to the end of the month?
A hand B tide C get D make

7 I didn't .... out to be a millionaire – I just wanted to run a successful business.
A set B go C begin D watch

8 Mona's going to leave early this afternoon but she says she'll .... up the hours tomorrow.
A find B make C catch D bring

G Write a phrasal verb from the box in the correct form in each gap.

dive in • end up • kick off • knock off • knuckle down • lie ahead • take on • while away

1 If the business does well, I'll hopefully be able to .... a part-time assistant in the spring.
2 We .... having to scrap the whole advertising campaign and start again.
3 Let's .... this session by introducing ourselves, shall we?
4 Josh can .... a whole day playing online computer games with his mates.
5 No teenager really knows what .... for them career-wise in the future.
6 That's enough TV! It's time to .... and get on with your homework now.
7 I usually .... work at about half five so I'm home by six thirty most nights.
8 As soon as the food was brought out, everyone .... and helped themselves.

H Phrasal verbs with *away*, such as *while away*, are often connected to the idea of an action continuing for a long time. Which of these phrasal verbs with *away* are also connected to this idea?

1 Mary was **beavering away** at her desk when I last popped in to see her.
2 Let's **break away** from the main crowd and go over there for a while.
3 You can't **explain** it **away** as a simple mistake. You did it on purpose!
4 I think I'll **give** these old clothes **away**. Do you know any charity shops around here?
5 My fingers are tired! I**'ve been hammering away** at this keyboard for hours.
6 I'm sorry to tell you that your great-grandfather **passed away** during the night.
7 Keep **plodding away** and you'll finish your novel eventually.
8 Can we have a break? We've been **slaving away** all morning.
9 We can hear Carol **typing away** at her keyboard from the living room.
10 Don't disturb your father. He's **working away** on some designs at the moment.

Phrases, patterns and collocations

I Write one word in each gap.

1 The President's just been elected to a second term .... office.
2 I don't know how anyone can sit in front of a computer for hours .... end.
3 My great-grandmother used to work .... a servant in a huge mansion.
4 My exam results should come .... day now.
5 Applicants must be at least 18 years .... age.
6 You'd better start working a bit harder or you'll be .... of a job!
7 Never mind .... you get paid for it or not, you can't work this weekend. We're going to a wedding!
8 .... the time Jeremy got there, we'd already left.

J Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

1 The government needs to stop this ridiculous bureaucratic system. **put**
The government needs to .... this ridiculous bureaucratic system.

2 No one except Jake has ever beaten me at a game of chess. **only**
Jake .... beat me at a game of chess.

3 It's time we began to sort through these cupboards. **start**
It's time we .... through these cupboards.

4 Julie asked for a second's thinking time before she answered. **just**
'Could .... think before I answer?' asked Julie.

5 I can't really remember the last time I had a day off. **ages**
It feels .... I had a day off.

6 Sorry, Alan, but right now I'm rather busy. **in**
Sorry, Alan, but at .... I'm rather busy.

7 They painted the wall very well. **made**
They .... the wall.

K For each question, write one word which can be used in all three sentences.

1 Jenny, ... you've been here for three years, we need to start thinking about your promotion.
I'm sure Harold was here just .... , wasn't he?
You can share my computer for .... , but they'll have to get you your own quite soon.

2 Thanks so much for the flowers – they really made my ....
My grandparents love going on .... trips to towns by the sea.
You'd think that, in this .... and age, a 25 year old would know what a blog is.

3 I was just .... to go home, but that's okay.
It's .... time you got home – we've been worried sick!
We're definitely going to have to do something .... increasing our market share.

4 I should get a reply from them any .... now.
It'll only take them a .... to update the website.
Now is the .... of truth!

5 We're definitely living in the .... of information.
This particular wine doesn't really mature with ....
It's time you started acting your .... , young man!

6 It's just a typical 1960s .... block.
The media start prying into your private life when you run for public ....
You'd better talk to Derek at head ....

7 I began to realise in the .... of the meeting that my proposal was not going to be accepted.
We're going to have to decide on a .... of action to take.
All they said was that they'd contact me in due ....

8 I do hope we're going to arrive .... time.
How anyone could work in that office for years .... end I just don't know.
Jim bet me that Doug was going to get the sack so I immediately said: 'You're ....!'

Idioms

L Each of the words in bold is incorrect. Rewrite them correctly.

1 I haven't seen Carol in **monkey's** years. I wonder what she's doing these days.
2 When I started work here, we didn't have e-mail or even fax machines. That was long before your **moment**.
3 I was talking to Sandra in the Personnel Department the **recent** day and she didn't mention redundancies.
4 I nearly sent that e-mail to Dave by mistake, but luckily I realised in the **bill** of time.
5 Tina's happy with her job for the time **coming**, but I expect she'll start looking for a new one in a year or so.
6 The boss might take you out for a meal once in a blue **planet**, but don't expect it to happen any time soon!
7 Sheila says she's given up smoking **with** good and that she'll never have another cigarette as long as she lives.
8 I get to go on business trips from **once** to time, but it's certainly not a regular occurrence.
9 I invited Graham to dinner on the **edge** of the moment. I'm sorry I didn't ask you first.
10 Let me know if you need help and I'll be there at the drop of a **pen**!
11 'Have you finished the reports yet?' 'Not yet. All in **nice** time!'
12 The photocopier still worked, but I thought it needed a service. You know what they say: 'a **repair** in time saves nine' and all that!

Word formation

M Each of the words in bold is in an incorrect form. Rewrite them correctly.

1 The salary they offered me exceeded my wildest **expecting**!
2 I hope I **last** his previous secretary – she only worked here for a week!
3 Once you've been self-employed for a while, it's very difficult to become just another company **employer** again.
4 Hargreaves & Son are one of our main **competitions**.
5 There were over 100 **appliers** for the position, apparently.
6 Your supervisor will be checking up on you **period**.
7 If this project's successful, the possibilities for expansion are **unending**.
8 A good business suit is **timely** – it never goes out of fashion.
9 The building looks a bit **future** from the outside but it's quite traditional inside.
10 You have to be prepared for every **event** in this line of work.
11 Getting angry with your boss is **productive** because it'll just make a bad situation worse.

N **The prefix *counter-*, as in *counterproductive*, is sometimes used with nouns, adjectives and verbs to suggest the idea of 'opposite'. Write each of these words with *counter-* in the correct gap.**

counteract • counterattack • counterbalance • counterculture • counterintelligence
countermeasures • counteroffensive • counterpart

1 As a spy during the war, I was often involved in .... , where we tried to stop the enemy from discovering our secrets.
2 The government will have to take some .... to stop inflation from increasing.
3 The reports by independent journalists will hopefully .... the government's inaccurate propaganda.
4 The army's planning to mount a .... later today.
5 You'll have to speak to my .... in the New York office.
6 We have to .... this rise in crime by toughening up the sentencing laws.
7 I'm not interested in mainstream art; I'm far more concerned with art produced in the ....
8 If he accuses me of lying, I'm going to .... by saying I know he lied about the sales figures last month.

O **Use the word given in capitals at the end of the line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line.**

Margaret Thatcher

Few British politicians have aroused more passion than Margaret Thatcher, who was Prime
Minister from 1979 until 1990. It is not **(1)** .... that, during her premiership, Britain **INCIDENT**
went through a period of **(2)** .... change. Those who support Thatcher's policies say **MOMENT**
she was responsible for changing Britain's **(3)** .... union laws and smashing union **ANTIQUE**
power, paving the way for the creation of a modern, **(4)** .... economy which required **COMPETE**
much higher **(5)** .... , efficiency and wage-restraint on the part of the **PRODUCE**
(6) .... than in the past. One of her core beliefs was that it was **(7)** .... **WORK/MANAGE**
which was responsible for running companies, rather than unions or the government.
Critics of Margaret Thatcher point to the very high **(8)** .... figures of the 1980s – the **EMPLOY**
official **(9)** .... total had risen from just over one million people out of work in 1979 **JOB**
to over three million by 1982.
When Margaret Thatcher realised that she had lost the support of many of her MPs in November
1990 and stood down as Prime Minister, the nation was split. Some saw her resignation as
(10) .... , and wished she would continue. Others felt it could not have come too **TIME**
soon. Even today, **(11)** .... and economists are divided as to whether her legacy was **HISTORY**
positive or negative overall.

REVIEW 3 Units 5 and 6

A **Use the word given in capitals to form a word that fits in the space.**

(**1**) .... (**WORK**) at Shepparton Carpets Ltd voted today to continue with their industrial action. Union leader Elaine Watkins issued a statement saying: 'Although we do not envisage an all-out strike at this stage, everyone at the plant will continue to refuse to work (**2**) .... (**TIME**) until this dispute is settled. We urge (**3**) .... (**MANAGE**) to reconsider their proposals.' The industrial action, which began three weeks ago, has affected (**4**) .... (**PRODUCE**) at the factory. Joe Turner, Managing Director of Shepparton Carpets, has, however, refused to bow to union demands. 'If Shepparton Carpets wants to survive, it has to become more (**5**) .... (**COMPETE**),' he said. 'It is my responsibility as an (**6**) .... (**EMPLOY**) of over 500 (**7**) .... (**EMPLOY**) to ensure this company continues to make a profit. (**8**) .... (**PERIOD**), we have to make changes to improve efficiency. If we don't, we'll all be out of a job. It may not be pleasant, but it is essential. Some of the working practices at the factory are, frankly, (**9**) .... (**ANTIQUE**) and totally (**10**) .... (**APPLY**) to the modern world. I just wish the unions would work with me on this, rather than fighting me every step of the way.'

(1 mark per answer)

B **Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.**

11 That medicine was very effective and I started to feel better immediately. **magic**
That medicine .... and I started to feel better immediately.

12 The day started really well when we heard that Bob had been given his own TV series. **flying**
The day .... when we heard that Bob had been given his own TV series.

13 I do like this job, but I sometimes wonder if I've chosen the right career path. **again**
I do like this job, but .... I wonder if I've chosen the right career path.

14 The headmaster was determined to stop all bullying at the school. **end**
The headmaster was determined to .... to all bullying at the school.

15 No one nowadays believes in witches, do they? **age**
No one .... believes in witches, do they?

16 We were just about to leave for the airport when we heard all planes had been grounded. **point**
We were .... for the airport when we heard all planes had been grounded.

17 I'll just finish this e-mail and then I'll be with you. **second**
It .... finish this e-mail and then I'll be with you.

18 Ralph would hand in his resignation immediately if he could find a better job. **hat**
Ralph would hand in his resignation .... if he could find a better job.

(2 marks per answer)

C Write one word in each gap.

19 Are you really snowed .... with work at the moment?
20 Could you lend me five euros to tide me .... until I get my pocket money?
21 Something's cropped .... so I'm afraid we'll have to postpone the meeting.
22 We'd better not take .... any more staff until sales increase.
23 I can easily while the whole afternoon .... reading a good book.
24 What time does Jenny usually knock .... from work?
25 The Prime Minister is determined to press .... with the changes despite concerns from his own MPs.
26 Over 3,000 workers were laid .... when the company moved its factory abroad.

(1 mark per answer)

D If the word or phrase in bold is correct, put a tick. If it is incorrect, rewrite it correctly on the line.

27 This time next week **I'll laze** around at home. ....
28 Do you think **you'll have got** the computer set up by the time I arrive? ....
29 **Will I** get something for dinner when I go to the shop, Angie? ....
30 Sandy won't know which university she's going to until **she'll get** her exam results. ....
31 Watch out! That **car's reversing**! ....
32 When I grow up, **I'm being** a pop star! ....
33 Once we get your blood test results, **we decide** on the best course of action. ....
34 We **do change** trains at Birmingham tomorrow, actually. ....

(1 mark per answer)

E Choose the correct answer.

35 At the end of the month, Sarah .... in government for exactly 40 years.
A is working
B will work
C will be working
D will have been working

36 The film is .... released at the end of next year.
A on the verge of being
B on the point of being
C due to be
D about to be

37 We'd just been informed that Nick .... the new Managing Director.
A was to be
B was being
C is going to be
D will be

38 'Would you pick the kids up from school this afternoon?'
'No, I'm afraid I ....'
A wouldn't
B can't
C shan't
D don't

39 Toby's extremely .... ; he turns up every day at nine o'clock on the dot.
A temporary
B long-standing
C punctual
D subsequent

40 Have you considered applying for a job with the .... service?
A civil
B civic
C national
D governmental

41 Too many people work in the public .... in this country, in my opinion.
A division
B zone
C area
D sector

42 Most teenagers go through a rebellious .... for a few years but they soon grow out of it.
A stint
B span
C duration
D phase

(1 mark per answer)

Total mark: ..../50

UNIT 7

Grammar

Passives and causatives

The passive

When we don't know who does/did something	*The car **was stolen** at approximately 1.30 am.*
When it's obvious who does/did something	***Having been introduced** in 1988, the Road Traffic Act regulates all vehicle use on UK roads.*
When it's not important who does/did something	*The XL500 **was designed** with young families in mind, so there's plenty of room in the boot.*
To emphasise new information (which appears at the end of the sentence)	*This type of submarine **was developed** during the Second World War by the Americans.*
To avoid starting clauses with long expressions	*We **were surprised** by the number of people trying to leave the city for the long weekend.* (More natural than *The number of people trying to leave the city for the long weekend surprised us.*)
To produce a formal style	*All passengers **are required** to present their ticket to the inspector.*

Impersonal passive

Form	**Common verbs**	**Example**
noun + verb in passive form + infinitive / perfect infinitive *There* + verb in passive form + infinitive / perfect infinitive	*agree, assume, believe, claim, consider, estimate, expect, feel, find, guarantee, know, mean, presume, regard, report, say, suppose, think, understand*	*Tourism **is expected to become** a major part of the country's economy.* *There **are reported to have been** a record number of accidents on the roads this year.*
It + verb in passive form + *that* clause	*accept, agree, argue, assume, believe, calculate, claim, consider, estimate, expect, feel, know, presume, report, say, suggest, suppose, think, understand*	***It is thought that** the new railway will provide employment opportunities for local people.*

Direct and indirect object

Some verbs in active sentences can be followed by both a direct and an indirect object (usually a person). Common verbs include: *bring, buy, get, give, leave, lend, make, offer, owe, pass, pay, promise, refuse, send, show, take, teach, tell, write*, etc. There are two possible passive forms.

Active sentence: *Michael gave the plane tickets to Jill.*

With indirect object as subject of passive verb	***Jill** was given the plane tickets (by Michael).*
With direct object as subject of passive verb	***The plane tickets** were given to Jill (by Michael).*

Watch out!

- In the second structure in the table above, we sometimes omit the preposition before indirect object pronouns.
  ✓ *Sharon's Rolls-Royce was left (**to**) her by her grandfather.*
- With the verbs *explain* and *suggest*, the preposition before indirect object pronouns cannot be omitted. They cannot be used with the first structure in the table above.
  ✗ ~~*I was explained how to drive the train.*~~
  ✗ ~~*How to drive the train was explained me.*~~
  ✓ *How to drive the train **was explained to** me.*

Avoiding the passive

The passive is not normally used with verbs in the present perfect continuous, past perfect continuous, future continuous or future perfect continuous tenses. Various prepositional phrases are used to avoid the passive in these tenses, including the following.

in progress	✗ ~~*Preparations for the flight **will be being made** as the President arrives at the airport.*~~ ✓ *Preparations for the flight **will be in progress** as the President arrives at the airport.*
in training	✗ ~~*At the end of this year, I **will have been being trained** as a pilot for four years.*~~ ✓ *At the end of this year, I **will have been in training** as a pilot for four years.*
on display	✗ ~~*Vintage cars **have been being displayed** in the town centre all this week.*~~ ✓ *Vintage cars **have been on display** in the town centre all this week.*
under consideration	✗ ~~*By the time they came to a decision, the problem **had been being considered** for some time.*~~ ✓ *By the time they came to a decision, the problem **had been under consideration** for some time.*
under construction	✗ ~~*The new railway station **has been being built** for two years now.*~~ ✓ *The new railway station **has been under construction** for two years now.*

Watch out!

- Some verbs are not usually used in the passive. They include intransitive verbs such as *appear, arrive, die*, etc.
- Many verbs used statively are also not usually used in the passive. They include *consist, deserve, fit, have, lack, look, mind, realise, resemble, seem, suit*, etc.
- The verb *let* is not used in the passive when it means 'allow', although phrasal verbs with *let* can be used in the passive.
  ✓ *Alice was clearly guilty, but she **was let off** with a warning.*
- Some verbs can be followed by the bare infinitive (without *to*) in active sentences. They are followed by the full infinitive in passive sentences. These verbs include *hear, help, make* and *see*.
  ✓ *We **heard** Jim **say** he was going to Albania.* (active)
  ✓ *Jim **was heard to say** he was going to Albania.* (passive)

Causative: get/have sth done

Actions we arrange for other people to do for us	***Did** you finally **get your bike fixed**?*
Things we experience (usually negative and not intended)	*I heard that Susie **had her motorbike stolen**.*

Watch out!

- In general, *get* is more informal than *have* in causative structures.
- We can use other verbs instead of *get* and *have* with a causative meaning. They include *need, want* and *would like*.
  ✓ ***I'd like those cars washed** by this evening, please.*
- The structure *get sth done* can also mean 'finish doing something'.
  ✓ *We'll set off as soon as I've **got the car fixed**.*

Causative: get sb to do / have sb do

Actions we make somebody/something do for us	***Did** you **get Alex to drive you** all the way to London?*

Causative: get/have sb doing

Actions we make somebody/something start doing	*Don't worry. We'll soon **have your car running** like new.*

Watch out!

- Most of the time, we do not show who does/did an action (the 'agent') in a passive or causative sentence. When we do want to refer to the agent, we use *by*.
  ✓ *We should get the car looked at **by** a professional.*
- When we want to refer to materials or instruments used in a passive or causative sentence, we use *with*.
  ✓ *The engine is started **with** a special electronic card instead of a key.*
- We use other prepositions after some past participles that are used like adjectives.
  ✓ *I am frightened **of** driving on motorways.* ✓ *My car is covered **in** dirt.*

A If the verb in bold is correct, put a tick. If it is incorrect, rewrite it correctly.

1 Could you tell me where your passport **was been issued**? ....
2 When the winning actor **was** finally **announced**, a big cheer went up. ....
3 **Has** your business trip to Calcutta next week **confirmed** by the Indian office? ....
4 Everyone who **was been invited** to the wedding came. ....
5 The wire coat hanger **invented** in 1903 by a Mr Parkhouse. ....
6 The issue **has discussed** in Parliament yesterday, but no decisions were taken. ....
7 By the time we get there, the problem **should have been sorted out**. ....
8 Britain **was be invaded** by the Romans under Emperor Claudius in 43 AD. ....
9 The party **had been planned** months in advance, but we still had problems. ....
10 After **be treated**, I was allowed to leave the hospital. ....
11 We boarded the ship and **were showing** to our cabin by a steward. ....
12 The new supermarket **is to be opened** by an actor from a soap opera. ....

B Write a verb from the box in the correct passive form in each gap.

allow • ask • find • give • know • light • make • meet • show • write

1 The stolen items .... in the attic of an empty house last week.
2 When the open-air cinema opens, the first film .... will be *Vertigo*.
3 Questions .... in Parliament about the Minister's business interests.
4 We're looking forward to .... a guided tour of the whole factory.
5 Just imagine that when these words .... , Europeans had not yet discovered America.
6 Once the barbecue .... , we'll be able to start cooking.
7 Before .... to see the invention, I had to agree not to tell anyone.
8 I would really like .... at the airport, if that's possible.
9 It .... very clear to us that we weren't welcome.
10 Gareth says he's always wanted .... as someone with a good sense of humour.

C Circle the correct word or phrase.

1 Global warming is thought **to be caused / is caused** by pollution.
2 There **are to be estimated / are estimated** to be about 5,400 different species of mammals.
3 It **is to be reported / has been reported** that gunshots have been heard in the city centre.
4 The escaped prisoner is believed **to use / to have used** a rope to climb the wall.
5 It **is to be calculated / is calculated** that about 60% of a man's body mass is water.
6 Over 200 people **are being understood / are understood** to have been injured in the explosion.
7 It is considered impolite in some cultures **to be eaten / to eat** with your left hand.
8 There **mean / were meant** to have been 60 crates of olives in the order, not 600!
9 **It / There** has been suggested that people who don't recycle should pay more tax.
10 Your order is guaranteed **will be delivered / to be delivered** within three working days.

D Each sentence contains one verb in the wrong form. Underline the incorrect word or phrase and rewrite it correctly.

Heathrow

1 Heathrow Airport, near London, has called the world's busiest international airport and the 68 million passengers who are processed each year would probably agree. ....

2 The land on which the airport stands sold to Fairey Aviation by the local vicar and was used for test flights during the 1930s, under the name Great Western Aerodrome. ....

3 In 1944, the airport was handed over to the government and was developed for civilian use, was named after a small village that was removed to create space, Heath Row. ....

4 The first concrete slab of the modern runways was laid by Queen Elizabeth II in 1953, and the first terminal building, which has later renamed Terminal 2, was opened two years later. ....

5 The London Underground was extended to reach Heathrow in 1977, meaning that passengers could be transport from central London via the Piccadilly Line in just under an hour. ....

6 Four passenger terminals and a cargo terminal have been constructed and permission was been granted for a fifth passenger terminal in 2001. ....

7 It has been suggested that a new airport, which would lead to Heathrow being retired over a period of 20 years, has been built on a floating island in the Thames, although no firm plans have been drawn up. ....

E Complete the sentences describing each situation using the phrase given.

1 I started training to be an accountant six months ago. I've got six more months to go, and then I have to take exams. (**in training**)
By the time I take my exams, ...

2 The council have been thinking for some time of redeveloping the city centre. (**under consideration**)
The redevelopment of the city centre ....

3 They've been having discussions on the issue for over two weeks. (**in progress**)
Discussions on the issue ....

4 This weekend, the local Art Society will be displaying their latest works at the library. (**on display**)
The local Art Society's latest works ....

5 George seems to have been putting his website together for a long time. (**under construction)**
George's website ....

F If the word or phrase in bold is correct, put a tick. If it is incorrect, rewrite it correctly.

Hannah: … and that was that, really. Anyway, what about your new car? Tell me about that.

Alison: Oh, what a nightmare! We had to **have it repaired** twice! (**1**) ....

Hannah: Oh, no! What happened?

Alison: Well, we got **delivered it** to our house on Monday morning. (**2**) ....

Hannah: Right.

Alison: We decided to have it **check** straight away, because it had come all the way from America. (**3**) ....

Hannah: Oh, I didn't know you'd had them **do** that. (**4**) ....

Alison: Yeah. Anyway, we **had** my dad to have a look at it. And he found that the engine wasn't running properly. (**5**) ....

Hannah: Did you have the company **to come** to fix it? (**6**) ....

Alison: Well, not at first. We got my brother to **working** on it. (**7**) ....

Hannah: Oh, he's very good. I bet he soon had **running it** smoothly. (**8**) ....

Alison: Yes, but we still had to get the company **come out** in the end, because the fuel pump stopped working. (**9**) ....

Hannah: Terrible! You should **get** them to give you some compensation. (**10**) ....

Alison: Maybe. Oh, is that the time? Listen, give me a call …

G Complete each sentence using the noun in bold and an appropriate causative form of the verb in bold.

1 If you don't understand, ... it to you again after the lesson. (**your teacher / explain**)
2 I was a bit depressed, but watching my kitten play with a ball of wool soon .... much better. (**me / feel**)
3 Don't bother redecorating yourself – .... it. (**a professional / do**)
4 .... was so annoying because it meant I had to take the tube to work. (**our car / steal**)
5 You won't learn as much if you .... you with your homework all the time. (**your parents / help**)
6 The concert started quietly, but the band soon .... to their hit songs. (**us all / dance**)
7 Tell Gordon yourself! Don't try .... your dirty work for you! (**me / do**)
8 Have you thought about .... as short as mine? (**your hair / cut**)
9 I .... me how to juggle with five balls, but I still couldn't do it. (**Karen / show**)
10 Have you heard about the problems caused by students .... by companies on the Internet? (**their essays / write**)

H Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

1 They made me wait for over 20 minutes on the phone! **kept**
I .... for over 20 minutes on the phone!

2 Although people consider Ashley to be a star, she is always friendly towards everyone. **considered**
Despite .... , Ashley's always friendly towards everyone.

3 We have had reports that the Prime Minister is making a surprise visit to Syria. **be**
The Prime Minister .... a surprise visit to Syria.

4 The manager provided the staff with extra training. **by**
The .... the manager.

5 I think someone needs to explain this computer program to me. **explaining**
I think I need .... me.

6 They have been building the new stadium for much longer than they originally estimated. **under**
The new stadium .... for much longer than they originally estimated.

7 Do you know why they made Craig stay behind after the lesson? **to**
Do you know why .... behind after the lesson?

8 Call Lionel and ask him to send the reports up to my office. **have**
Call Lionel and .... the reports up to my office.

I Choose the correct answer.

1 When Nadine arrived, she soon .... at all her jokes.
A had everyone laughed
B had laughing everyone
C had everyone laughing
D had laughed everyone

2 The government must .... strong measures against crime.
A be seen be taking
B see to be taking
C seen to take
D be seen to be taking

3 Mrs Davies asked me to tell you that she would like .... by Friday at the latest.
A the orders sent
B sending the orders
C that you sent
D sent the orders

4 Joining a gym .... , but I didn't really fancy the idea.
A was suggested me
B to me was suggested
C was suggested to me
D was suggesting me

5 There .... between 4,000 and 6,000 languages in the world, depending on how you count them.
A say to be
B are said that
C are said to be
D said being

6 I spoke to Victor last night and he says he .... while he was on holiday.
A had stolen his phone
B got stolen his phone
C was got his phone stolen
D had his phone stolen

7 Why didn't you .... you when you moved house?
A have Aaron help
B have got Aaron help
C have Aaron helped
D get Aaron help

8 Profits .... slightly next year, although we don't predict any job losses.
A expect to fall
B are expecting to fall
C are expected falling
D are expected to fall

9 It's hard to believe that this film .... completely by computer.
A was been generating
B has generated
C has been generated
D was to generate

10 As soon as Dad .... , we can leave.
A has the car starting
B has got the car started
C got started the car
D was got starting the car

J Write one word in each gap.

The scramjet

Imagine (**1**) .... transported around the globe in a matter of hours, rather than the 24 hours which (**2**) .... currently required to get from London to Sydney. Such is the promise of the scramjet, a highly experimental type of engine which has been (**3**) .... development over the past couple of decades. In a conventional jet engine, air (**4**) .... sucked into the engine at speeds below the speed of sound, where it is mixed (**5**) .... fuel, ignited, and the exhaust gases provide thrust. In a scramjet, which has to (**6**) .... taken to supersonic speeds by conventional means before it will operate, the air enters at supersonic speeds.

It has (**7**) .... estimated that a scramjet might be capable of travelling at 12-24 times the speed of sound. However, the technology (**8**) .... been found to be extremely difficult to control. Although scientists (**9**) .... had scramjets perform short flights, commercial aircraft are still a long way in the future, and indeed may never (**10**) .... successfully developed.

UNIT 8

Vocabulary

Movement and transport

Topic vocabulary: Movement

see page 229 for definitions

- accelerate (v)
- approach (v, n)
- ascend (v)
- bounce (v, n)
- clamber (v)
- clench (v)
- clutch (v)
- crawl (v)
- creep (v)
- dash (v)
- descend (v)
- drift (v, n)
- emigrate (v)
- float (v)
- flow (v, n)
- fumble (v)
- gesture (v, n)
- glide (v)
- grab (v)
- grasp (v)
- hop (v, n)
- immigrant (n)
- jog (v, n)
- leap (v, n)
- march (v, n)
- migrate (v)
- point (v)
- punch (v)
- refugee (n)
- roam (v)
- roll (v)
- rotate (v)
- route (n)
- sink (v)
- skid (v, n)
- skip (v)
- slide (v, n)
- slip (v)
- step (v, n)
- stride (v, n)
- trip (v)
- velocity (n)
- wander (v)
- wave (v, n)

Topic vocabulary: Transport

see page 230 for definitions

- airline (n)
- cargo (n)
- carriage (n)
- charter (v)
- commute (v)
- destination (n)
- hiker (n)
- hitchhiker (n)
- jet lag (n)
- legroom (n)
- load (v, n)
- passerby (n)
- pedestrian (n)
- pier (n)
- pilot (v, n)
- quay (n)
- return fare (n phr)
- round trip (n phr)
- steer (v)
- steward (n)

Phrasal verbs

cordon off	stop people from entering an area by putting something such as a rope around it
creep up on	move towards someone quietly and slowly, especially because you want to surprise them
fall behind	move more slowly than other people so that you are behind them; make less progress or be less successful than other people who are doing a similar job or activity
go astray	become lost or go to the wrong place
head off	prevent someone from going somewhere by getting in front of them; prevent something from taking place
hold back	stop someone or something from moving forwards
move in (with)	start living in a different house or flat (with)
move on	leave one place and travel to another; stop discussing or doing something and begin discussing or doing something different
move out	permanently leave the house or flat where you live or the place where you have your business
move over	change your position in order to make space for someone or something
pull over	stop by the side of the road in a car or other vehicle
slip away	leave secretly
step aside	move so that sb can pass you; leave a job so that sb else can take over
stop off	visit somewhere before continuing to another place
tip up	(of an object) have one end move upwards, especially because something heavy has been put at the other end; turn a container upside down so that the things inside it come out
walk out	leave a meeting, performance, etc before the end, usually because you are angry or bored; suddenly leave a relationship, your family, your job, etc

Phrases, patterns and collocations

back back into sth, back onto sth, back sb (to do)

come come to a conclusion/decision/etc, come to power, come into view, come as a shock/etc, come to do sth, come true

drive drive (your point) home, drive sb crazy/mad, drive sb to do sth, drive at sth

drop drop sth off sth, drop sth into/onto sth, drop sb at, drop a hint, drop sb (from a team)

fall fall ill, fall into (a category), fall in love, fall into place, fall short, fall to pieces

fly fly a flag/kite, fly by, fly open, fly at

Phrases, patterns and collocations

follow follow sb's argument/etc, follow suit, follow sb's lead, follow sb's advice, as follows

get get going, get somewhere, get ill/angry/upset/etc, get sth wet/dirty/etc, get to do sth, get sb sth, get sth done, get sth doing

go go and do sth, go deaf/grey/crazy/bad/etc, go for days/weeks/etc (without sth), go hungry, go without, go to do sth

head head towards/for (a place), head a ball, head a committee/etc, head a list

jump jump at the chance (to do), jump the queue, jump to conclusions, jump the gun

move move it, get a move on, follow sb's every move, make a move, on the move

point point at/to/towards sth, get to the point, make a point of doing sth, make your point, miss the point, at some point, beside the point, up to a point, a sore point

raise raise your hand, raise sth with sb, raise a child/family, raise sb's hopes/expectations, raise a smile, raise your voice, raise an army

run run a business/campaign/etc, run riot, run on petrol/electricity/etc, run sb a bath, run through sth, run the risk of doing, run into problems

rush rush to conclusions, do sth in a rush, in a rush (to do sth), mad rush, rush hour, the Christmas/etc rush

steady steady yourself, steady your nerves, hold sth steady, steady relationship, steady growth, steady look, steady pace

track keep track of, lose track of time/etc, on the wrong track, on track (to do)

turn turn to do sth, turn a gun/etc on sb, turn to sb, turn cold/nasty/etc, turn 40/etc

way get in sb's way, know the way, lose your way, get sth out of the way, make way for, in the way, on the way, in this way, a way of doing, by the way

Idioms

a stone's throw (away/from)	very close (to)
as the crow flies	in a straight line (used for measuring distance)
follow your nose	go straight forward, without turning; do what you feel is right in a particular situation, although you are not certain
in the middle of nowhere	a long way from any town or city
lose your bearings	become confused about where you are and where other things are
make a beeline for	go towards someone or something in the quickest and most direct way
off the beaten track	away from populated areas or areas popular with tourists
stop dead in your tracks	suddenly stop, for example because you are surprised
take a short cut to	follow a path that is quicker and shorter than the usual way
take the scenic route	follow a longer path than the usual one because it is more attractive

Word formation

access	accessibility, (in)accessible
come	overcome, comeback, newcomer, outcome, income, coming, oncoming, incoming
go	undergo, underwent, undergone, for(e)go, for(e)went, for(e)gone, ongoing, outgoing
land	landing, landed, landless
mobile	(im)mobilise, (im)mobility, mobilisation, immobile
motion	motionless
move	mover, movement, (im)movable, moving
pass	passage, (im)passable, passing
progress	progression, progressive(ly)
rapid	rapidity, rapidly
speed	sped, speeding, speedy, speedily
stable	(de)stabilise, (in)stability, destabilisation, stabiliser, (de)stabilising, unstable
stand	withstand, withstood, standing, upstanding, outstanding, notwithstanding
steady	unsteady, (un)steadily
transit	transition, transitory, transitional, transitionally
up	upper, uppermost, upright, upward(s), upwardly

Topic vocabulary: Movement

A **Complete using the correct form of the words in the boxes.**

clench • clutch • fumble • gesture • grab • grasp • point • punch • wave

1 I .... my school bag from the table and rushed out of the house.
2 Grace .... in her bag for her car keys and finally found them.
3 A man ran from the burning house, ... a baby in his arms.
4 The old man .... his finger straight at me and I felt a chill go down my spine.
5 As the train left the station, Charlie .... goodbye.
6 Jamie came home from school with a black eye because someone had .... him.
7 I asked Karen where the phone was and without taking her eyes off the TV she .... lazily in the direction of the kitchen.
8 Lina .... her fists tightly in anger but managed to control herself.
9 He .... my hand firmly and I could see that he was trying to thank me.

crawl • creep • dash • hop • jog • leap • march • skip • step • stride

10 The burglar .... very quietly along the corridor, trying not to wake anybody.
11 How long do you think you could .... on one leg?
12 I .... in the park most mornings because I like to keep myself in shape.
13 Just .... this way, sir, and the customer services manager will be with you in a moment.
14 When we heard the noise, we quickly .... round the corner to see what had happened.
15 Before he learnt to walk, my younger brother used to .... everywhere on all fours.
16 The army .... for two days before they came to the outskirts of the city.
17 The speaker .... onto the stage and smiled confidently at the audience.
18 When he saw me coming, our dog .... over the gate and came to greet me.
19 Polly was so happy she .... along the pavement to school, jumping from one foot to the other.

drift • roam • wander

20 When the men were finally found, they had been .... at sea in a tiny boat for days.
21 Wolves used to .... this whole area, looking for food.
22 I was bored so I .... into the centre of town and did a bit of window shopping.

skid • slide • slip • trip

23 I didn't see the oil on the floor and I .... on it.
24 This wardrobe is really heavy, but maybe we can .... it along the ground.
25 I didn't see the step and I .... over it.
26 The road was wet, so when I pressed the brakes the car ....

B **Complete using the words in bold in the correct form.**

1 I .... over a rock and looked down into the valley below us. We had .... to 6,000 metres above sea level and the air was getting thin. Nick was injured, and I knew we would have to .... soon to get medical treatment. (**ascend**, **clamber**, **descend**)

2 The pilot held the controls. The engines were dead and the plane was .... towards the airfield. She knew that if she didn't have the .... to reach the runway, there was no way she could .... She just hoped that the air would continue to .... over the wings and stop her from .... too low. She .... the runway with her heart in her throat. (**accelerate**, **approach**, **flow**, **glide**, **sink**, **velocity**)

3 The arctic tern is an incredible bird. It .... thousands of miles each year, stopping occasionally to .... on the ocean to rest. How it remembers the .... is still not fully understood. (**float**, **migrate**, **route**)

4 In basketball, you must .... the ball when you are moving with it. When you take a shot, you should let the ball .... off your fingers so that it .... in the air. That makes it more accurate. (**bounce**, **roll**, **rotate**)

5 In the 1950s, many people .... from the West Indies to England. Life was often hard for these .... , but they eventually became part of British life. Today, Britain also welcomes .... from parts of the world that are affected by war. (**emigrate**, **immigrant**, **refugee**)

Topic vocabulary: Transport

C **Complete using the correct form of the words in the box.**

airline • carriage • charter • commute • destination • jet lag • legroom • steward

LET THE PLANE TAKE THE STRAIN

The railways changed the way we live and work. People started to (**1**) .... to work, travelling home in a crowded train (**2**) .... each day. Now a new (**3**) .... , *Officeways*, plans to extend the idea and hopes to get more of us taking the plane to work!

In the past, getting to work by air was only for the very wealthy, who could afford to (**4**) .... a plane or helicopter even if they didn't have their own private jet. Now, *Officeways*, which travels to (**5**) .... throughout Europe, is offering special deals on short trips to business travellers. You might have less (**6**) .... than on the train, but *Officeways* claims their (**7**) .... are specially trained to help you relax on the way to work. And with such short journey times, there's no risk of (**8**) .... ! So what are you waiting for? Turn to page 37 for our *Officeways* competition!

D Circle the correct word or phrase.

1 Running along the seafront, there was a short concrete **pier / quay**, where a dozen fishing boats bobbed in the afternoon sun.
2 Quite a few resorts in Britain have long **piers / quays**, which stick out into the sea, and which often have shows or other forms of entertainment on them.
3 This area is for **passersby / pedestrians** only and is closed to all traffic.
4 After the accident, **passersby / pedestrians** described the driver as a middle-aged man with a beard.
5 Keep both hands on the wheel and you'll find it easier to **pilot / steer** the car.
6 I'm hoping to train so that I can **pilot / steer** commercial aircraft.
7 As I came out of the petrol station, I saw a **hiker / hitchhiker** with his thumb out, trying to get a lift.
8 Local **hikers / hitchhikers** insist that they have the right to walk across the field, although the farmer who owns the land disagrees.
9 It's three and a half hours each way, so the **return fare / round trip** takes seven hours.
10 A single is €40, but the **return fare / round trip** is actually only €55.
11 A lorry lost its **cargo / load** on the motorway and there's white paint everywhere.
12 The area where the **cargo / load** is stored on a plane can actually get extremely cold during a flight.

Phrasal verbs

E Write one word in each gap.

1 The police officer told the homeless man to move .... and he walked slowly and painfully down the road.
2 Len has already left on foot, but if we take the car then maybe we can still head him .... before he gets home.
3 Would you mind moving .... so that I can sit here?
4 A young man was riding his motorbike on the pavement and everyone was forced to step .... to let him go past.
5 The area has been cordoned .... following a bomb threat.
6 As I leant on the table, it tipped .... and I fell over.
7 My mum's a bit upset because my sister's moving .... to go to university next week.
8 Daryl managed to keep up with the leader for most of the race, but eventually he started to fall ....

F Complete using a phrasal verb with a word from box A in the right form and a word from box B.

A creep • go • hold • move • pull • slip • stop • walk

B astray • away • back • in • off • out • over • up

1 Dimitri thought he heard a funny noise coming from the car engine, so he .... to investigate.
2 The police .... the crowd .... so that the ambulances could get to the scene more quickly.
3 The show was so boring that we .... after half an hour.
4 Remind me to .... on the way to your grandma's to get her a birthday card.
5 I wish you wouldn't .... on me like that! You frightened me to death!
6 Martha didn't want to interrupt the party, so she just .... quietly without anyone noticing.
7 Are you really thinking of .... with Josie? What about your own flat?
8 It seems that the explorers .... after losing their map and wandered in the jungle for days.

G The phrasal verb *cordon off* means something like 'prevent people entering'. Tick the words which could be used to complete this sentence to form phrasal verbs with a similar meaning.

The area has been .... off by police.

1 block ....
2 close ....
3 line ....
4 fence ....
5 put ....
6 rope ....
7 seal ....
8 take ....

Phrases, patterns and collocations

H Complete using the phrases in the box in the correct form. Change *sb*, *sth* or *do* into something appropriate.

back onto • do sth in a rush • drop sb at • fall in love • fly at • get a move on
get sth out of the way • get sth wet • go and do • jump at the chance
keep track of • raise sb's hopes

1 Look at the time! We'd better .... or we're going to be late.
2 My parents say they .... when they met on holiday in Turkey.
3 Your essay isn't good enough. It's obvious to me that you .... , rather than taking your time.
4 I've always wanted to fly and I would .... to visit the pilot in the cockpit.
5 One of the things I love about this house is that it .... the river.
6 I don't want to .... , but there's a chance we might be flying to America!
7 I can't believe you .... Ben what I said about him.
8 There's no need to .... me – I wasn't the one who crashed the car!
9 I've got a lot of homework, so let me .... first and then I'll call you.
10 You travel so much! I can't .... all the countries you've been to.
11 Since you're going that way, do you think you could .... my house?
12 Those sunglasses were expensive – take them off in the pool or you'll ....

I Write one word in each gap.

1 In the distance, a steam train .... slowly into view.
2 Don't .... your voice at me! I haven't done anything wrong!
3 We need to book our ferry tickets .... some point, so remind me later.
4 Suddenly, the door flew .... and there stood Mrs Singh.
5 It's the .... hour, so there'll be a lot of traffic on the roads.
6 My dad's beginning to .... grey, and he's only 35.
7 Even when his flight was cancelled, Jake still managed to .... a smile.
8 Do you know the .... to Ed's house from here?
9 Sam's not coming, but Isabelle's .... the way, so she should be here soon.
10 I can't believe that woman just tried to .... the queue and get to the front first.

J **For each question, write one word which can be used in all three sentences.**

1 I don't understand what .... Michael to leave his family like that.
The kids almost .... me crazy when we were on holiday.
I thought the journalist .... his point home well, and the politician didn't know what to say.

2 We decided to .... towards the small town we could see in the distance.
Joshua Reed has been appointed to .... the committee responsible for promoting local tourism.
Which places would you say .... the list of most popular tourist destinations in Britain?

3 I'm starting to .... to the conclusion that you don't want to go on holiday with me.
How did you .... to lose your passport?
I know it's going to .... as a bit of a shock to you, but I've decided to walk round the world.

4 We need to keep up a .... pace if we're going to get there before it gets dark.
Corey and Angela seem to have a very .... relationship, and I can't imagine them splitting up, can you?
Kelly gave me a .... look as if to say, 'I know where you've been.'

5 We always make a .... of inviting the old woman next door to join us for Christmas dinner.
Don't mention the fact that Chris failed his driving test – it's a bit of a sore .... with him.
I know she's your best friend, but that's beside the .... – you had no right to invite her on the trip without asking me.

6 It's hard to believe that Sandra .... 50 this year, isn't it?
The police officer .... her gun on the man and told him to lie down on the floor.
I .... to say something to Connor, but he had already left.

7 Jacob .... his doctor's advice and went away for a few days.
Hannah decided to start wearing earrings and her friends soon .... suit.
I .... the speaker's argument up to the final point, but I don't understand where his conclusions came from.

8 My dad's involved in .... a campaign to stop them building the new motorway near here.
These vehicles have the advantage of .... on electricity, rather than petrol.
You won't be able to avoid .... into problems, so just deal with them when they arise.

Idioms

K **Write one word in each gap.**

1 From our house to the centre of town is about four miles as the .... flies.
2 I know the brochure said the villa was 'peaceful', but it was actually in the .... of nowhere.
3 As soon as we got to the pool, the kids made a .... for the shop selling ice creams.
4 The soldier shouted 'Halt!' and I stopped dead in my ....
5 Cambodia? That's a bit off the beaten .... , isn't it?
6 Take the next left, then first right, and just follow your .... until you see the stadium on your left.
7 Wandering the streets of Prague, I lost my .... , so I had to ask the way to the castle.
8 We were quite lucky because our hotel was only a .... throw away from the beach.
9 It's about 20 minutes longer, but if we take the scenic .... you'll be able to take some photos.
10 Turn right here and we'll .... a short cut through the side roads.

Word formation

L **Use the word given in capitals at the end of the line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line.**

The stairlift

It's ironic that the very things that are supposed to provide access to the **(1)** .... **UP**
floors of buildings – stairs – often, in fact, make them **(2)** .... For many elderly **ACCESS**
people and others with limited **(3)** .... , getting upstairs can be a daily problem **MOBILE**
to be **(4)** .... However, stairlifts have been helping people solve that problem **COME**
since they first appeared in the US in the 1930s. Designs have **(5)** .... many **GO**
changes over the years and stairlifts have become **(6)** .... safer and easier to **PROGRESS**
use. Most consist of a seat which moves along rails that run along the wall.
The user controls how **(7)** .... the seat moves along the rails as it travels from **RAPID**
the bottom of the stairs to the **(8)** .... at the top. In today's models, the **LAND**
(9) .... is controlled by computers to give a smooth ride and the components are **MOVE**
designed to **(10)** .... constant use. Many people have been given a new lease **STAND**
of life by the stairlift.

M **Each of the words in bold is in an incorrect form. Rewrite them correctly.**

1 The situation has been getting **unsteady** worse for many years now. ....
2 The heavy snow meant that the mountain roads were **passage** for over a week. ....
3 People are being advised not to travel to the area because of the **outgoing** conflict. ....
4 Luckily, Tyrone made a very **sped** recovery after the car accident. ....
5 The service at the hotel was **upstanding**, and I'd definitely recommend it. ....
6 Every child needs security and **unstable** in their life. ....
7 It's not always easy to make the **transitional** from primary school to secondary school. ....
8 I sat completely **motion** as the spider crawled along my arm. ....

N **The prefix *de-*, as in *destabilise*, can be added to some verbs, nouns and adjectives in order to give them a negative meaning. Tick the words which can be made negative by adding *de-*.**

1 caffeinated ....
2 direct ....
3 form ....
4 hydrate ....
5 motivate ....
6 regulate ....
7 satisfy ....
8 sensitise ....
9 understand ....
10 value ....

O **Complete the sentences using words formed in exercise N.**

1 Drinking alcohol when it's very hot can .... you.
2 The government should .... this industry.
3 I have to drink .... coffee or I can't sleep.
4 If you don't tell staff how well they're doing, it can .... them.
5 Don't you think violent films .... people to violence in real life?
6 You'll .... your feet if you don't get shoes that fit you properly.
7 They've decided to .... the currency, so it'll be worth a lot less.

REVIEW 4 Units 7 and 8

A Write one word in each gap.

The Segway

The Segway HT (Human Transporter) (**1**) .... first presented to the public in 2001. It is a revolutionary form of transport, which runs (**2**) .... electricity and allows the rider to balance on a small platform between two wheels. Balance (**3**) .... maintained by two computers, which monitor the Segway's (**4**) .... move. As the vehicle moves off balance, the computers turn the wheels to compensate, (**5**) .... this way restoring balance. If the rider leans forwards or backwards, the Segway moves in that direction in an attempt to steady (**6**) .... If the rider continues to lean, the vehicle continues to move at up to 10 mph. Once you are (**7**) .... the move, the Segway (**8**) .... be steered in the direction you want to go using the handlebars.

(**9**) .... are thought to be a number of advantages to the Segway for short, inner-city journeys. It's a very safe, environmentally-friendly means of transport, and a number of organisations, such as police forces and postal services, consider (**10**) .... to be a possible alternative to cars and bicycles.

(1 mark per answer)

B Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals.

11 After a successful career, he retired in 2004, but now he's making a .... and he's released a new CD. **COME**
12 Mum's fine after her operation, although she's still a little .... on her feet. **STEADY**
13 I found her last book of poetry very .... **MOVE**
14 At the back of the cave, there was a narrow .... that seemed to lead further into the mountain. **PASS**
15 The party has a number of .... ideas which should appeal to many undecided voters. **PROGRESS**
16 The long-running civil war has .... the whole country. **STABLE**
17 Wilkinson went on to become a great athlete, his disability .... **STAND**
18 I can't believe you got another .... ticket! **SPEED**

(1 mark per answer)

C Circle the correct word.

19 Would you mind just **taking / running / doing** me a bath while I get changed?
20 I didn't tell you about the possibility of the trip because I didn't want to **lift / raise / boost** your hopes.
21 The colour of the computer is beside the **point / subject / theme** – I want to know that it's reliable.
22 When I got the opportunity to go to China, I **moved / jumped / ran** at the chance.
23 The lecture was interesting, but I found the argument quite difficult to **track / watch / follow**.
24 I didn't think my plan was going to work, but everything **fell / went / moved** into place at the right time.
25 We were enjoying the barbecue, but the weather started to **go / turn / do** a little cold so we went inside.
26 Millions of children around the world will **go / get / suffer** hungry tonight, and I don't think that's fair.

(1 mark per answer)

D Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

27 Smith gave the ball to Jones just before the referee blew his whistle. **by**
Jones .... Smith just before the referee blew his whistle.

28 Reports say that police have arrested a number of people since the robbery. **reported**
There .... a number of arrests since the robbery.

29 Try to stay level with the other runners at the start of the race. **fall**
Try .... the other runners at the start of the race.

30 The police have put a barrier around the building to keep people out. **cordoned**
The building .... police.

31 A friend of ours fixed our car for us. **had**
We .... our car.

32 The managing director always likes to welcome new employees on their first day. **point**
The managing director always .... new employees on their first day.

33 After a slow start, the audience were soon laughing at the comedian's jokes. **had**
After a slow start, the comedian .... at his jokes.

34 I just need to finish this work and then I'll call you. **way**
I just need to .... and then I'll call you.

(2 marks per answer)

E Choose the correct answer.

35 Why don't you have a doctor .... at your arm if it's hurting you?
A to look
B looking
C look
D for looking

36 I wonder if you could let me know what the .... fare to Berlin is?
A round
B double
C two-way
D return

37 Mr Parris said he'd like .... by Monday, if that's possible.
A finished the report
B the report will be finished
C the report finished
D have the report finished

38 Ben crept .... on Lisa and put his hands over her eyes.
A out
B round
C off
D up

39 The company is expected .... a healthy profit this year.
A make
B to make
C making
D for making

40 Maria was just walking along the road when someone on a motorbike .... her handbag.
A clutched
B clenched
C grabbed
D fumbled

41 Fred Astaire is one of my favourite dancers and I love the way he seems to .... across the floor.
A glide
B march
C skid
D dash

42 The new Arts Centre seems to have been .... construction for quite some time.
A in
B under
C on
D below

(1 mark per answer)

Total mark: ..../50

UNIT 9

Grammar

Modals and semi-modals

- The nine main modals (*will, would, can, could, may, might, shall, should, must*) have only one form (ie they do not change tense or person) and are followed by a simple or continuous bare infinitive (eg *could* + *do, be doing, have done, have been doing*). They can also be followed by a bare infinitive in the passive (eg *could* + *be done, have been done*).
- Semi-modals have similar meanings to modals. They include: *need (to), ought to, had better* and *have (got) to*.
- Some semi-modals, such as *had better*, do not change tense or person. Others, such as *have (got) to*, do.
- Some semi-modals can be used in combination with modals, producing phrases such as *might have to*.

Ability

Real ability	Current or general ability	*can, can't*	*You **can't** really **speak** seven languages fluently, **can** you?*
	Past ability	*could, couldn't*	*There's no way you **could read** when you were two!*
	Decisions made now about future ability	*can, can't, could, couldn't*	*I **can get** you a paper when I go to the shop, if you like.*
	Future ability	*will/won't be able to*	*One day, maybe, all adults **will be able to read** and write.*
Hypothetical ability	Current or general hypothetical ability	*could, couldn't*	*I **couldn't go** on a quiz show. I'd be too scared!*
	Future hypothetical ability	*could, couldn't*	*I **could go** with them to the cinema tomorrow but I won't because I've already seen the film.*
	Past hypothetical ability	*could have, couldn't have*	*They **could have asked** the Prime Minister much more searching questions. I wonder why they didn't.*

Watch out!

- The full negative form of modals is written as two words, eg *could not*. The exception is *cannot*, which is one word.
- *Can* and *could* cannot be used as infinitives. We can use *to be able to* instead.
  ✓ *I'd love **to be able to** come with you to the cinema tomorrow but I just can't.*
- We don't usually use *could* for past ability on one occasion. We use *was/were able to, managed* or *succeeded*, etc.
  ✓ *Luckily, she **was able to** finish the article in time.*
  However, with verbs such as *see, hear, feel*, etc we can use *could* for past ability on one occasion.
  ✓ *I **could see** that she was tired.*

Permission

Asking for permission	*may, could, couldn't, can, can't*	***Can** I **finish** watching this before I go to bed?*
Giving/refusing permission	*may, may not, could, couldn't, can, can't*	*No, you **can't**.*

Watch out!

- *May* is more polite and formal than *could*, and *could* is more polite and formal than *can*.
- We don't usually use modals to talk about past permission. We can use *was/were allowed to*.
  ✓ *We **were allowed to** buy one comic each.*
- However, we do use *could* to talk about past permission in reported speech. (see Unit 25 for more information)
  ✓ *Mum said we **could** buy one comic each.*

Advice

Asking for and giving advice	*should, shouldn't, ought to, oughtn't to, had better*	*You **should try** to get that poem published.*

Watch out!

- We can only use *hadn't better* in questions.
  ✓ ***Hadn't** you **better** check that these facts are actually true?*
- We can also use *might/may as well* to give advice and make suggestions. This suggests that, although the suggestion is not perfect, there is no better option.
  ✓ *We **may as well** watch this as there's nothing else on.*

Criticism

Criticising past behaviour	*should have, shouldn't have, ought to have, oughtn't to have*	*You* ***shouldn't have spoken*** *to Mrs Todd like that.*
Expressing annoyance at past behaviour	*could have, might have*	*You* ***could/might have told*** *me you were going to be late!*
Criticising general behaviour	*will*	*He* ***will*** *slam the door every time he goes out.*
Criticising a specific example of someone's general behaviour	*would*	*You* ***would*** *take the car just when I wanted to go out.*

Watch out!

We can also use *might as well* to suggest criticism.
✓ *I* ***might as well*** *be dead for all you care.*

Obligation

Current or general obligation	*must, mustn't, have (got) to, need (to)*	*You* ***have to be*** *a good communicator to be a press spokesperson.*
A lack of current or general obligation	*don't have to, haven't got to, needn't, don't need (to)*	*You* ***don't*** *always* ***need to have*** *a degree to become a journalist.*
Future obligation	*will have to, must, mustn't, have (got) to, (will) need (to)*	*You****'ll have to do*** *quite a lot of research before you write this report.*
A lack of future obligation	*don't/won't have to, haven't got to, needn't, don't/won't need (to)*	*I'm glad we* ***won't have to write*** *any more essays on this course.*
Past obligation	*had to, needed (to)*	*We* ***had to come up with*** *three questions each.*
A lack of past obligation	*didn't have to, didn't need (to), needn't have*	*In the past, politicians* ***didn't have to deal with*** *being in a 24-hour media spotlight.*

Watch out!

- We are more likely to use *must* for personal obligation (making our own decision about what we must do) and *have to* for external obligation (someone else making a decision about what we must do).
- Using *must* for questions is extremely formal. We usually use *have to*.
  ✓ ***Do*** *you* ***have to*** *have a degree to be a journalist?*
- *Mustn't* is used for prohibition. *Don't have to* is used for a lack of obligation.
- We can use *didn't have to* and *didn't need to* for things that we did or didn't actually do. However, we only use *needn't have done* for things that we actually did but weren't obliged to do.

Degrees of certainty

Certainty (or near certainty) about now, the future or generally	*will, would, must, can, can't, could, couldn't*	*'There's someone at the door.'* *'That****'ll be*** *the postman.'* *'It* ***can't be****. He's already been.'*
Certainty (or near certainty) about the past	*will have, won't have, would have, wouldn't have, must have, can't have, couldn't have*	*'They* ***won't have heard*** *the news, will they?'* *'They* ***must have heard*** *by now, surely.'*
Probability about now, the future or generally	*should, shouldn't, ought to, oughtn't to, may/might well (not), could well, might easily*	*'The weather* ***should be*** *good tomorrow, shouldn't it?'* *'Actually, the forecast said it* ***may well rain****.'*
Probability about the past	*should have, shouldn't have, ought to have, oughtn't to have, may/might well (not) have, might easily (not) have*	*'Jan* ***should have finished*** *writing her article by now, shouldn't she?'* *'She* ***may well have done,*** *but I haven't seen it yet.'*
Possibility about now, the future or generally	*could, may (not), might, mightn't, may/might/could just*	*I* ***might (just) have*** *time to get to the library before it closes.*
Possibility about the real past	*could have, may (not) have, might have, mightn't have*	*Jim* ***might not have checked*** *his e-mail yet.*

Watch out!

should and *should have* can be used in *that* clauses after words expressing importance and reactions.
✓ *It's strange that you* ***should*** *say that.* ✓ *Was it necessary that Alan* ***should have been invited*** *to the meeting?*

A Circle the correct word or phrase. If both are correct, circle both.

1 You **can't / couldn't** really talk when you were one year old, **can / could** you?
2 We **can / could** give you a lift home tonight, if you want.
3 I wish I **can / could** speak Russian, then **I'd be able to / I could** read Tolstoy in the original.
4 Excuse me, **could / may** you tell me how to get to the leisure centre from here?
5 I'm afraid we **can't / won't be able to** come to the wedding after all.
6 Thankfully, we **could / managed to** get to the airport just in time so we didn't miss the plane.
7 Dawn couldn't **go / have gone** to the barbecue as she had to work.
8 Would you like to **could / be able to** buy the flat you're renting?
9 In a thousand years, **can humans / will humans be able to** travel faster than the speed of light?
10 'Mum, can I watch TV and do my homework later?'
'No, you **may / might** not!'
11 We could **catch / have caught** the last train after all, but of course we didn't know that at the time.
12 **Mayn't / Can't** I at least stay up till the end of the film?
13 Everyone **could / was able to** tell that Julie was upset about something.
14 **May / Can** I open the window, please? It's a little stuffy in here.
15 Because we had guests last Saturday, the kids **could / were allowed to** stay up till midnight.

B Write a verb from the box in the correct form in each gap.

do • eat • feel • go • have • invite • provide • recover • sit • speak • stand • work

1 It seems there's nothing anybody can .... to stop the conflict escalating further.
2 She couldn't .... anything in her left arm for about two hours. She said it was completely numb.
3 I don't think the Prime Minister will ever manage .... from this scandal.
4 Can I .... Tracy round after tea? We want to play my new computer game.
5 Liz has had another ice cream so why can't I .... one? It's not fair!
6 When I was a child, my brothers and sisters and I weren't allowed .... with the grown-ups except on special occasions.
7 Darren's allergic to wheat, so he can't .... bread under any circumstances.
8 Dominic had said he spoke German, but when we got there it turned out he couldn't .... a word!
9 I'd love to be able .... from home, but in my job it's just not possible.
10 James could .... for Parliament at the last election – he had enough support – but he wasn't willing to sacrifice his privacy.
11 A small cot for babies can .... if you ask at reception.
12 We couldn't .... to the concert anyway as Jamie wasn't very well.

C If the word in bold is correct, put a tick. If it is incorrect, rewrite it correctly.

1 Shouldn't you **getting** planning permission before you start building? ....
2 Gavin really ought not to **be** worn casual clothes to the interview last week. ....
3 She might have **gave** us a call to let us know she was all right. ....
4 You **should** better get a second opinion before you do anything drastic like knock down a supporting wall. ....
5 I don't think you **must** go to school today if you're not feeling well. ....
6 We definitely **should** not judge Karen until we know exactly what happened. ....

7 I probably won't get the job but I **should** as well apply for it, I suppose. ....

8 You **could** have told us you'd changed your mind about the holiday. How are we going to find a fourth person at this late stage? ....

9 We had **rather** book the tickets now, hadn't we? They might have sold out on the day. ....

10 Terry **would** leave his bedroom in such a mess all the time. It's just not good enough. ....

11 Michael was late, but then again he **will** be. ....

12 You **may** have asked me if I wanted to come with you! You know I need to go to the bank! ....

D Write a word or short phrase in each gap so that the second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

1 I would suggest seeing a doctor if it doesn't clear up.
You had .... a doctor if it doesn't clear up.

2 It was typical of Jerry to forget to feed the cat, wasn't it?
Jerry .... to feed the cat, ... he?

3 I'm annoyed Diana didn't invite us to her engagement party.
Diana .... us to her engagement party.

4 Buying a yellow car was a mistake – everyone thinks I drive a taxi!
I .... a yellow car – everyone thinks I drive a taxi!

5 Teenagers are noisy, aren't they?
Teenagers .... make so much noise, ... they?

6 It won't harm us to see what special offers are on at the moment.
We .... what special offers are on at the moment.

7 Don't you think you should type that essay, rather than write it in pen?
.... better type that essay, rather than write it in pen?

8 It would probably have been a good idea if you'd asked Dad what he thought.
You .... to .... Dad what he thought.

E Write a word from the box in each gap. You will need two of the words twice.

doesn't • got • had • has • have • must • needn't • will

1 I .... have bothered preparing so much food; nobody ate anything anyway.

2 Do you .... to have that music on so loud? I can't concentrate!

3 You .... call before you come round, as we'll definitely be in.

4 It was difficult, but I knew I .... to apologise.

5 Trisha .... need to get a summer job as her parents are quite well-off.

6 .... you have to be there in court yourself, or can a lawyer represent you?

7 We didn't .... to wear a uniform to school today, so I went in jeans and a T-shirt.

8 I think Damien .... to stay in hospital for the next four or five weeks.

9 Children .... not be left unattended under any circumstances.

10 We haven't .... to move out for another six months, but we've started looking for a new place anyway.

F Complete using *must, have to, need* or *need to* in the correct form and the correct form of the words in brackets.

1 You .... (**pay**) me back now, but of course you can if you like!
2 Dogs .... (**keep**) on a leash at all times.
3 If Linda .... (**pick up**) from school tomorrow, maybe we could spend the afternoon in town.
4 We .... (**rely**) on phone lines in the future as we'll all have mobile phones which connect to the Internet.
5 The invitations .... (**send off**) soon otherwise they won't get there in time.
6 Sorry I'm late. I .... (**get**) a few things from the supermarket on my way here.
7 .... (**you / make**) a fuss to get your money back, or was the manager quite reasonable?
8 You .... (**believe**) everything Graham tells you. He's lied to me before.
9 Thankfully we .... (**put**) Flossie in a cattery as our neighbours offered to feed her.
10 What time .... (**farmers / get up**) every morning?
11 I'd hate .... (**commute**) to work every morning and evening, wouldn't you?
12 Although we took CDs with us we actually .... (**do**) as there was no CD player to play them on.

G Write one word in each gap.

A tabloid editor speaks

As editor of the most popular British tabloid, I need (**1**) .... make sure we give our readers what they want. And what do they want? Scandal. It is my job to tell the readers when a celebrity has done something they should not have (**2**) .... , or when a politician (**3**) .... to have done something but didn't. One accusation that is often levelled at tabloids is that we think we (**4**) .... not need to worry about the truth, but that is just not true. I have (**5**) .... be shown proof from at least two sources before I run a story. As a newspaper, you have (**6**) .... to get your facts right and you (**7**) .... not print a story just because you want it to be true. There are times when, in retrospect, we (**8**) .... not have been so careful and could have broken a story days before we did, but we (**9**) .... to have absolute proof first.

I often get asked why so many celebrities sell their stories to us. The truth is that we tell them we are going to run a story about them anyway, so they realise they might as (**10**) .... put their side of the story across. They know they (**11**) .... definitely have to speak out at some point, so why wait? And, let's face it, celebrities need to (**12**) .... talked about constantly or they stop being famous, so they (**13**) .... not complain, in my view.

What I would say to celebrities and politicians that do criticise tabloids is that you (**14**) .... not fear us if you haven't done anything wrong. But if you have, you (**15**) .... better look out, because we are going to catch you.

H Circle the correct word or phrase. If both are correct, circle both.

1 'Did you hear a noise?'
'**That'll / That must** probably be the cat.'

2 'I had to walk all the way here.'
'You must **be / have been** exhausted. Put your feet up. I'll make us a nice cup of tea.'

3 'Your favourite programme's on.'
'It **mustn't / can't** be. It's only half past five.'

4 'Andy made me redo every single one of the reports.'
'You **must / can** have been furious.'

5 'Laura walked right past me in the street without saying a word.'
'She **can't / couldn't** have seen you.'

6 'I can't believe I got the final question in the pop quiz wrong.'
'Don't worry. I **wouldn't / won't** have known the answer either.'

7 'I can't wait to get that blue top tomorrow.'
'I wouldn't get too excited. They only had one left, so they **may / might** well have sold out.'

8 'It's got very cold.'
'Yes, I think it **must / might** easily snow tonight.'

9 'I can't wait till Roger gets here!'
'He should **land / have landed** by now, so he'll be here in about an hour.'

10 'I hope they've got some tickets left.'
'We **should / might** just be lucky and get the last two.'

I Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

1 It's possible that Greg didn't go to Swansea after all. **not**
Greg .... to Swansea after all.

2 It's quite likely that Sasha was lying about what Doug said. **well**
Sasha .... about what Doug said.

3 The most likely situation is that they awarded Grandpa the medal during the war. **must**
Grandpa .... during the war.

4 I'd be surprised if Derek has already arrived. **ought**
Derek .... yet.

5 Jake, is it definite that they haven't announced the winner yet? **will**
Jake, ... announced yet?

6 It's highly likely that Stephen was listening. **may**
Stephen .... listening.

7 It's not possible that Andrew is half Spanish. **be**
Andrew .... half Spanish.

J Choose the correct answer.

1 Even in a million years, we .... go back in time.
A couldn't
B can't
C won't be able to
D aren't able to

2 I .... at the exam paper lying on Mr Gregson's desk, but I didn't want to risk it.
A could look
B can look
C can have looked
D could have looked

3 .... Eliot better tell his mum what happened?
A Mustn't
B Oughtn't
C Shouldn't
D Hadn't

4 You .... have let us know you'd changed your phone number.
A may
B could
C would
D will

5 .... lectures at your university?
A Haven't students got to have attended
B Needn't students have attended
C Mustn't students to attend
D Don't students have to attend

6 We .... as well try to sell this old sofa before throwing it out.
A could
B should
C might
D can

7 Jeremy may well not .... about the accident yet.
A tell
B to tell
C have told
D have been told

8 It's essential that the documents .... be destroyed immediately.
A should
B would
C ought to
D had better

9 Luckily I .... a new pair of sunglasses as I found mine at the bottom of a bag.
A needn't have bought
B didn't need to buy
C needed not to buy
D hadn't to buy

10 I'm thinking of going on *Million Euro Spender*; I'd love to .... spend a million euros in one day!
A have to
B must
C can
D be able

UNIT 10

Vocabulary

Communication and the media

Topic vocabulary: Communication

see page 230 for definitions

allege (v)
ambiguous (adj)
assert (v)
blunt (adj)
boast (v, n)
clarification (n)
colloquial (adj)
comprehend (v)
confide (v)
confirm (v)
context (n)
contradict (v)
convey (v)
declare (v)
denounce (v)
disclose (v)
exaggerate (v)
flatter (v)
gist (n)
hint (v, n)
illegible (adj)
inkling (n)
insist (v)
jargon (n)
literal (adj)
mumble (v, n)
murmur (v, n)
petition (n)
placard (n)
quibble (v)
rant (v, n)
rave (v)
relevant (adj)
scribble (v, n)
slang (n, adj)
stumble (v, n)
stutter (v, n)
tip (n)
utter (v)
vague (adj)

Topic vocabulary: The media

see page 231 for definitions

anchor (v, n)
broadcast (v, n)
caption (n)
columnist (n)
correspondent (n)
coverage (n)
critic (n)
footnote (n)
ghostwriter (n)
handbook (n)
manifesto (n)
novelist (n)
pamphlet (n)
prerecorded (adj)
reviewer (n)
spine (n)
subtitles (n)
supplement (n)
tabloid (n, adj)
trailer (n)

Phrasal verbs

blurt out	say something suddenly and without thinking about the effect it will have, usually because you are nervous or excited
catch on	understand; become popular or fashionable
come out	become available to buy or see; become easy to notice; become known; be spoken, heard, or understood in a particular way
come out with	say something suddenly, usually something that surprises or shocks people
dry up	stop talking because you have forgotten what you were going to say
get across	make people understand something
get (a)round	if news gets (a)round, a lot of people hear it
get through (to)	be connected to a place by telephone; make someone understand what you are trying to say
let on	talk about something that is intended to be a secret
pass on	give someone something, for example a message, that someone else has given you
put across/over	explain an idea, belief, etc in a way that is easy to understand
set down	write something on a piece of paper so that it will not be forgotten and can be looked at later; state officially how something should be done
shout down	make it difficult to hear what someone says by shouting while they are speaking
speak out	state your opinion firmly and publicly about something, especially in order to protest against or defend something
talk over	discuss a problem or a plan
talk round to	succeed in persuading someone to agree something; discuss something in a general way and without dealing with the most important issues

Phrases, patterns and collocations

answer answer to sb, give sb an answer, answer charges/criticisms, answer a need, answer sb's prayers, answer the description of, (have a lot to) answer for, in answer to

argument have / get into an argument (with sb), win/lose an argument, argument about/over, argument for/against, without (an) argument

ask ask yourself sth, ask sb a favour, ask a lot / too much (of sb), ask sb over/round, ask sb in, for the asking, asking for trouble/it/etc, if you ask me

book read sb like a book, (do sth) by the book, book about/on, a closed book, an open book, in my book, in sb's good/bad books

discussion (have a) discussion about/on, (have a) discussion with, discussion of, in discussion with, under discussion, heated discussion, discussion group

letter (get/receive) a letter from, send/write sb a letter, letter of, follow/obey sth to the letter, the letter of the law, letter bomb, letterbox

Phrases, patterns and collocations

notice bring sth to sb's notice, come to sb's notice (that), escape sb's notice, take notice (of), at short / a moment's / a few hours' notice, until further notice

paper piece/sheet of paper, (present/write/etc) a paper on, (put sth) on paper, paper over (the cracks), not worth the paper it's written/printed on, paper round, paper qualifications, paperwork

pen put pen to paper, the pen is mightier than the sword, pen-pusher, pen friend/pal

print print on, print in, in print, out of print

read read sb's mind, read sb like a book, read between the lines, read sb's lips, take sth as read, a good/depressing/etc read

record keep/maintain/compile a record (of), set/put the record straight, on record, on the record, off the record

say have your say, (have) the final say, go without saying (that), say the word, can't say fairer than that, say your piece, a horrible/stupid/strange/etc thing to say

speak speak well/highly/badly/ill of, speak for yourself, speak your mind, speak out of turn, not sth to speak of, so to speak

speaking broadly/generally speaking, on speaking terms, speaking of, speaking as

talk talk sb into / out of (doing), talk your way into / out of (doing), talk sense into, talk the same language as, have a talk (with), be all/just talk, the talk of, talk is cheap

tell tell the truth / a lie, tell yourself (that), tell the difference (between), tell the time, tell it like it is, there's no telling, you're telling me, that would be telling

understanding come to / reach an understanding, have an understanding (with sb), an understanding of, on the understanding (that)

word put in a (good) word for sb, (have) a word with sb (about), spread the word, put words in sb's mouth, give/say the word, from the word go, word of mouth, in other words

write write for a magazine/etc, have sth / be written all over your face, nothing to write home about, writer's block

Idioms

big mouth	used as a criticism of someone when they say things they should not
come clean (about sth)	tell the truth about something that you have kept secret
get/catch sb's drift	understand the basic meaning
get sth off your chest	talk to someone about something that has been worrying you, so that you feel better about it
get the wrong end of the stick	understand something completely wrongly
give sb your word	promise to do something
(hear sth) on/through the grapevine	the way in which information spreads quickly from one person to another through conversation
keep sb posted	regularly give someone information about something they are interested in, for example how a situation is changing or developing
keep sth under your hat	keep something secret
lay/put your cards on the table	tell people exactly what you are thinking or what you are intending to do
speak volumes	provide a lot of information, especially in an indirect way
tell tales	tell someone in authority about bad things that someone else has done, because you want them to be punished

Word formation

declare	declaration, (un)declared
edit	edition, editor, editorship, (un)edited, editorial(ly)
exclaim	exclamation, exclamatory
express	expression, expressiveness, expressionism, expressionist, expressive(ly), expressionless(ly), expressly
hear	overhear, hearing, hearsay
imply	implicate, implication, implicit(ly)
insist	insistence, insistent
mean	meaning, meaninglessness, meaningless, meaningful(ly)
phrase	rephrase, paraphrase, phrasing, phraseology
print	reprint, printing, printer, printout, imprint, printed, (un)printable
public	publicise, publicity, publication, publicist, publicly
say	gainsay, saying, unsaid
speak	spoke, speech, speaker, spokesman/men/woman/women/person/people, outspokenness, (un)spoken, speechless, unspeakable, unspeakably, outspoken(ly)
state	restate, overstate, understate, statement, understatement, overstatement, understated, overstated
suggest	suggestion, suggestibility, suggested, suggestive(ly), suggestible
talk	talker, talkie, talkback, talkative
type	typeset, typecast, typify, typist, typewriter, typeface, typesetting, typesetter, typescript, typewritten, typical(ly)
word	reword, (re)wording, wordplay, wordy, (re)worded, wordless(ly)
write	rewrite, (re)wrote, (re)written, writing(s), writer, unwritten

Topic vocabulary: Communication

A **Complete using the correct form of the words in the boxes.**

boast • contradict • exaggerate • flatter

1 I think Dave's .... the magazine's importance. It actually has a very small readership.
2 Caroline said the hotel was fantastic and then Paul immediately .... her and said it wasn't actually very nice at all.
3 I know Suzanne's wealthy but there's no need for her to .... about it to everyone all the time.
4 Adam said I could be a professional model but I think he was just .... me.

allege • assert • insist • utter

5 The politician has continually .... his innocence.
6 As your lawyer, I .... on your telling me the truth.
7 Thompson is .... to have accepted a bribe from a local businesswoman.
8 Don't .... a single word until you've spoken to your lawyer.

confide • confirm • convey • disclose

9 You know you can .... in me at any time, don't you?
10 We would like to .... that your application has been approved.
11 Your password will not be .... to any third party.
12 I can't begin to .... how sorry I am for the trouble I've caused.

mumble • murmur • stumble • stutter

13 I could hear the audience .... but couldn't make out any distinct comments.
14 It's so embarrassing when a newsreader .... over their words.
15 I stood there .... in shock, unable to think of anything sensible to say.
16 Please don't .... when you're talking to me. Open your mouth when you talk!

quibble • rant • rave • scribble

17 Linda was .... about that new sitcom on ITV. She said it's hilarious.
18 Stop .... on the desk!
19 There's no point .... over the bill. It's only a few euros more than we thought it would be anyway.
20 When my boss gets in a bad mood, she just .... at everybody.

clarification • context • gist • tip

21 Here's a .... for all budding writers out there. Never let the truth get in the way of a good story!
22 Please do contact me if you require further .... on any of these issues.
23 I understood the .... of her argument, but I can't say I understood all the fine points.
24 They quoted me completely out of .... I didn't mean that at all.

B Circle the correct word.

- Are you fed up with complicated (**1**) **jargon / slang** in official documents that's impossible to fully (**2**) **comprehend / contradict**?
- Do you hear politicians use (**3**) **vague / relevant** and (**4**) **literal / ambiguous** language and realise you haven't got a/an (**5**) **inkling / hint** what they really mean?
- Do you find doctors' handwriting (**6**) **colloquial / illegible** on prescriptions?

We (**7**) **declare / denounce** all uses of language that confuse rather than explain.
Let's be (**8**) **blunt / sharp**. A lot of people in public life could do much better.
Sign our (**9**) **placard / petition** today and make your feelings clear.

Topic vocabulary: The media

C Write a word from the box in each gap.

anchor • broadcast • caption • correspondent • coverage • footnote
pamphlet • prerecorded • spine • trailer

1 The programme doesn't go out live. It's ....
2 And now let's go over to our political .... , who's live at Westminster.
3 The title of a book is usually printed on the cover and on the ....
4 I'd really love to be the main .... hosting a national, nightly news show.
5 There's usually massive media .... when a celebrity couple splits up.
6 I haven't seen the film yet but I saw the .... ; it looks quite interesting.
7 There's no .... under this photo so I don't know who it's of.
8 If you think I need to provide more detail, I'll add a short .... at the bottom of the page.
9 I think they .... the show live usually, don't they?
10 Someone in the street gave me a small .... about energy conservation at home.

D Write a word from the box in the correct form in each gap.

columnist • critic • ghostwriter • handbook • manifesto • novelist • reviewer
subtitles • supplement • tabloid

Freelance writing

When you're a freelance writer, there are many varied opportunities open to you. You may be working on that great work of fiction and know that within a couple of years you'll be regarded as a hugely successful (**1**) .... , but until then there are bills to be paid. The Sunday colour (**2**) .... are filled with feature articles. They all have to be written, and they're often written by freelancers. Offer your services. Know two languages? Consider doing the (**3**) .... for foreign films and TV programmes. They're usually commissioned on a film-by-film basis. Enjoy politics? Offer to help a political party to produce its next (**4**) .... – for a small fee, of course. Like technology? Someone has to write the instructions or (**5**) .... that comes with every piece of equipment we buy. It could be you! Set yourself up as a gossip (**6**) ...., film (**7**) .... or book (**8**) .... for a small local newspaper. Once you've got some pieces behind you, you can move on to a bigger paper, or even a national (**9**) .... And when you've made a few contacts and had a few things published, there's a fair amount of work out there for (**10**) .... – people who write celebrities' autobiographies for them.

Phrasal verbs

E Write a phrasal verb from the box in the correct form in each gap.

blurt out • dry up • get across • pass on • shout down • speak out • talk over • talk round

1 Could you .... the message to Darren when you see him, please?
2 I knew it was supposed to be a secret but I just .... it .... before I could stop myself!
3 Rudy was really opposed to the idea at the start, but we managed to .... him .... in the end.
4 I've tried to explain to Sean how I feel several times, but I just can't seem to .... my point of view ....
5 Dave and I .... the whole thing .... last night and we've agreed to have separate holidays this year.
6 All of us who oppose this new road need to .... against it as loudly and clearly as we can.
7 The Minister was .... by protestors angry at the government's proposals.
8 My speech is okay but I just hope I don't .... as soon as I get to the podium.

F Write one word in each gap.

1 No one's supposed to know yet, so don't .... on, whatever you do!
2 The magazine .... out every Friday.
3 News .... around very fast in this town!
4 I couldn't believe it when Jake .... out with the news that he was going to move to Australia.
5 You'll need to .... your views across extremely diplomatically otherwise some people might take offence.
6 We've .... down our beliefs and policies very clearly in our latest manifesto.
7 Everyone except Meg .... on immediately that I was only joking.
8 I've been trying to explain the situation to Ben for weeks but I just don't seem to be able to .... through to him.

G Phrasal verbs with *down*, such as *shout down*, are sometimes connected to the idea of 'defeating someone or being defeated'. Tick the phrasal verbs which are also connected to a similar idea.

1 Rose **backed down** when she realised she was wrong. ....
2 With my arthritis, it's actually quite difficult to **bend down**. ....
3 I almost **broke down** in tears when I heard the news. ....
4 If the vote goes the wrong way, it could **bring down** the government. ....
5 The council's planning to **clamp down** on youths drinking in the streets. ....
6 The Minister was forced to **climb down** in the face of so much evidence against his position. ....
7 The government's planning to **crack down** on anti-social behaviour. ....
8 I was in such a hurry, I just **gobbled down** my breakfast and left. ....
9 Both Jo and I **went down** with food poisoning on the first day of the holiday. ....
10 I'll just **jot** a few notes **down** while we talk. ....
11 Gareth really **let** me **down** when he told Andrea what I'd told him in confidence. ....
12 Dave didn't want to get married at first, but I've managed to **wear** him **down**! ....

Phrases, patterns and collocations

H Write one word in each gap.

1 Obviously it goes .... saying that I don't want you to tell anyone else about this.
2 Reading .... the lines, it seems that the government's considering tightening media regulations.
3 I'm afraid that book's .... of print, but I'll see if we can find a second-hand copy for you somewhere.
4 I followed your instructions .... the letter but I still couldn't get the printer to work properly.
5 Getting Elaine to edit your article is just asking .... trouble; you know how pedantic and opinionated she is!
6 .... answer to your question, no, I have never had any business dealings with Mr Partridge.
7 Even if you've got a great idea for a novel, it's incredibly hard putting pen .... paper for the first time.
8 Put your ideas down .... paper and we'll discuss them at the next meeting.
9 You've had some good news, haven't you? It's written all .... your face!

I Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

1 The adverts look exactly the same as the articles in this magazine. **difference**
It's impossible .... the adverts in this magazine.

2 I assume you've checked your facts carefully. **read**
I .... you've checked your facts carefully.

3 You've got to persuade the editor not to publish that story. **out**
You've got to .... that story.

4 Terry and I started arguing about the situation in the Middle East. **into**
I .... about the situation in the Middle East.

5 I'm sure we'll be able to agree on this matter. **understanding**
I'm sure we'll be able to .... on this matter.

6 I'd discuss this with Phil before making a final decision. **discussion**
I'd .... before making a final decision.

J For each question, write one word which can be used in all three sentences.

1 All of your managers seem to .... very highly of you.
There were no problems to .... of with the printing.
As an investigative journalist, I'm a bit of a crusader, so to ....

2 Do please spread the .... about my new website.
I think you should have a .... with Sue about this.
I knew from the .... go this book would be difficult to write.

3 Helen and I are barely on .... terms these days.
Generally .... , we liked your screenplay very much.
Well, ... as someone who's in the public eye constantly, I must say I do value my privacy.

4 Many politicians will only speak to journalists if their comments are off the ....
I'd appreciate the chance to set the .... straight on this matter.
We're trying to compile a .... of all previous holders of the post.

5 When you stop being prime minister, not many people take any .... of what you think any more.
The library will be closed until further ....
They contacted me at very short .... and said I had to go to South America to report on the elections there.

6 No politician ever tells the complete truth in my ....
Don't break any rules – just do it by the ....
I always know what Fred's thinking – I can read him like a ....

7 Mr Davis has so far refused to .... the charges that have been levelled against him.
When you're self-employed, you don't have to .... to anyone but yourself.
We believe this new radio show will .... the needs of all those who wish to take part in current affairs discussions in the afternoon.

Idioms

K **Each of the words in bold is in the wrong sentence. Write the correct words on the line.**

1 Don't tell Irene any of your secrets. She's got a very big **grapevine**! ....
2 Keep me **clean** about any developments. ....
3 Billy, stop telling **drift** about your sister. ....
4 The Minister's disappearance speaks **cards** about his involvement in the corruption scandal. ....
5 I heard through the **tales** that you and Rick are thinking of splitting up. ....
6 Get it off your **word** and tell me exactly what's wrong. ....
7 You should just put your **hat** on the table and tell them you're leaving unless they give you a pay rise. ....
8 Keep it under your **stick**, but Julie's going to have a baby. ....
9 I wasn't sure whether to tell you, but then I thought it was best to come **posted** about it myself before you found out from someone else. ....
10 I give you my **mouth** that I won't tell anybody. ....
11 If I catch your **volumes**, you're saying you're leaving me. Is that right? ....
12 Eddie thought I was a football fan – he must have got completely the wrong end of the **chest**. ....

Word formation

L **Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals.**

1 She stood there completely .... , so I had no idea at all what she was thinking. **EXPRESS**
2 Film studios spend millions of dollars on .... for new movies. **PUBLIC**
3 That news conference was .... boring! **SPEAK**
4 I'm not very keen on the .... of this dictionary definition. **WORD**
5 The problem with Michael is that he's just so .... – he never shuts up! **TALK**
6 I don't think you should have any .... marks in your PhD dissertation. **EXCLAIM**
7 Any actor who becomes known for one role is in danger of becoming .... **TYPE**
8 Advertising is particularly effective on people who are highly .... **SUGGEST**
9 There are so many swear words in this article that I think it's .... **PRINT**
10 Rose was extremely .... that we rewrite the introduction. **INSIST**

M **The prefix *over-*, as in *overstate*, is used with many nouns, adjectives and verbs to suggest the idea of 'too much'. Which of these words can take *over-* to mean 'too much'?**

1 act ....
2 book ....
3 cook ....
4 crowded ....
5 do ....
6 dressed ....
7 excited ....
8 grown ....
9 heat ....
10 priced ....
11 protective ....
12 rate ....
13 react ....
14 read ....
15 spend ....
16 step ....
17 stretched ....
18 surprised ....
19 try ....
20 weight ....

N **Complete the sentences using words with *over-* in exercise M.**

1 The rice and sauce were okay, but I thought the chicken was a little .... and tough.
2 Everyone else was in jeans and T-shirts – I felt completely ....
3 I've .... this month and haven't got any money left!
4 Calm down! You're getting .... !
5 You've really .... the mark this time. How could you be so thoughtless?
6 The house is in good condition, but the garden is completely .... and needs a lot of work.
7 The doctor said I was .... so she's put me on a diet.
8 It's a nice vase, but I think it's a bit .... Let's find something cheaper.

O **Use the word given in capitals at the end of the line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line.**

The (**1**) .... 'never judge a book by its cover' could not be more true for	**SAY**
Ridiculous Rules by Marjorie Allen. The cover is completely blank, whereas the book is	
crammed full of wonderful examples and anecdotes. Allen is an (**2**)	**SPEAK**
critic of much of what is taught to native and non-native speakers of English, and has	
issued a (**3**) .... of war against textbooks and style books which tell	**DECLARE**
lies.	
Take the ridiculous and (**4**) .... rule of never ending a sentence with a	**MEAN**
preposition. The lovely – if famous – story goes, that Winston Churchill, well known for	
his numerous (**5**) .... as well as for being British Prime Minister during	**WRITE**
the Second World War, received a manuscript back from an ignorant (**6**)	**EDIT**
.... , who had told him rather rudely that he had to (**7**) .... a sentence	**PHRASE**
which ended with a preposition. Churchill responded by making the simple yet forceful	
(**8**) .... in the margin: 'This is an impertinence up with which I will not	**STATE**
put.' – the (**9**) .... being that not to end a sentence with a preposition	**IMPLY**
often sounds ridiculous in English. Sadly, Allen informs us that the story is probably mere	
(**10**) .... , and that Churchill may have actually only written 'rubbish!' in	**HEAR**
the margin.	

REVIEW 5 Units 9 and 10

A **Choose the correct answer.**

Wikipedia

The online encyclopaedia Wikipedia challenges our preconceptions about factual information.
Before Wikipedia, it was (**1**) .... as read that encyclopaedias were written by paid experts. In other (**2**) .... , before Wikipedia, the 'reader' of an encyclopaedia had no control over the content. Wikipedia has changed all that, as anyone is allowed to edit and add content. The idea has certainly (**3**) .... on and, for millions of people, Wikipedia (**4**) .... a vital need.
Wikipedia's founders (**5**) .... that, on the whole, the information on the site is no less accurate than more traditional encyclopaedias. Despite this, critics have (**6**) .... the site for its inaccuracies. Articles on the site have certainly (**7**) .... things which are not in fact true. However, although these have received wide media (**8**) .... , they essentially (**9**) .... the problem. Most people have little (**10**) .... how many inaccuracies there are in traditional printed encyclopaedias too.

1	A given	B taken	C made	D put
2	A speech	B ways	C words	D terms
3	A got	B put	C taken	D caught
4	A says	B responds	C tells	D answers
5	A insist	B assist	C consist	D desist
6	A pronounced	B renounced	C denounced	D announced
7	A assented	B assigned	C asserted	D associated
8	A treatment	B coverage	C handling	D usage
9	A exaggerate	B boast	C flatter	D extend
10	A gist	B hint	C hunch	D inkling

(1 mark per answer)

B **Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.**

11 My dad's not happy with me at all because he heard me swearing. **books**
I .... because he heard me swearing.

12 There's no need for me to tell you that you'll be paid handsomely for this. **saying**
It .... that you'll be paid handsomely for this.

13 He hasn't announced anything, but my take on the situation is that the Prime Minister's going to resign soon. **lines**
He hasn't announced anything, but, ... , I'd say that the Prime Minister's going to resign soon.

14 Tom and Barbara aren't talking to each other at the moment. **terms**
Tom and Barbara aren't .... at the moment.

15 Persuading Adrian to lie for you was a bad thing to do. **talked**
You should .... for you.

16 I'm sure she discussed this with Bob first. **word**
She .... this first.

17 I'm sure Jasmin didn't misunderstand, Carol. **stick**
Jasmin can't .... , Carol.

18 It's not necessary for you to promise – I know I can trust you. **word**
You .... – I know I can trust you.

(2 marks per answer)

C Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals.

19 Under her fine .... , circulation has increased by 100,000. **EDIT**
20 It's pure .... – there's no evidence to support these allegations at all. **HEAR**
21 The factory's closure will have far-reaching .... for the whole region. **IMPLY**
22 Saying Shakespeare was 'quite a good writer' is a bit of a/an .... , don't you think? **STATE**
23 Greg's not a very .... person, really. **TALK**
24 There's a/an .... rule in this office that we all go out for a drink together after work on a Friday. **WRITE**
25 In formal writing, it is unusual to make use of the .... mark to express surprise. **EXCLAIM**
26 You are .... forbidden to use a calculator in this examination. **EXPRESS**

(1 mark per answer)

D Write one word in each gap.

27 What day of the week does that magazine come .... on?
28 Mum took some persuading, but we managed to talk her .... in the end.
29 I can't give you permission now – I'll have to talk it .... with your mother first.
30 I know it's a secret but you can tell me. I won't let .... , I promise!
31 I stupidly blurted .... in front of Rachel that it's your fortieth birthday next week.
32 I've learnt all my lines for the play now, but there's always the fear that you'll dry .... when you actually get on stage.
33 It's time somebody spoke .... loudly and clearly against this war.
34 The Minister was shouted .... by hecklers and was unable to finish her speech.

(1 mark per answer)

E Choose the correct answer.

35 You .... that film last week – it was only released yesterday.
A can't have seen C mustn't have seen
B couldn't see D didn't need to see

36 .... we better get an expert's opinion on this before we make a decision?
A Hadn't C Didn't
B Oughtn't D Shouldn't

37 I'd love .... afford to take a month or two off.
A I could C that I will
B to can D to be able to

38 They're definitely not going to call now, so we might .... go to bed.
A and C as well
B too D also

39 .... stand up when the teacher entered the room at your school?
A Had you C Must you
B Did you have to D Needed you to

40 Tamsin .... to her graduation ceremony, but she decided not to in the end.
A could go C can have gone
B can go D could have gone

41 You .... have told us you were going to be a bit late!
A could C would
B may D will

42 Thankfully we .... another ticket as Jean didn't turn up.
A needn't have got C needed not to get
B didn't need to get D hadn't to get

(1 mark per answer)

Total mark: ..../50

UNIT 11 Grammar

Conditionals

Zero conditional (if/when/whenever + present tense, present tense)

General or scientific facts and definitions	***If** you **burn** fossil fuels, carbon dioxide **is produced**.*

First conditional (if + present tense, will + bare infinitive / imperative)

Real conditions in the present or future and their results in the present or future	***If** we **continue** to pollute our planet, future generations **will suffer**.*
To give conditional instructions	***If** the people from Greenpeace **call**, **tell** them I'll call them back later.*

Watch out!

Other modals and semi-modals can be used instead of *will* in the result clause in first conditionals. These include *be going to, can, could, may, might, shall, should, have to* and *ought to*.
✓ *We **might** prevent disaster if we change the way we live now.*

Second conditional (if + past simple / past continuous, would + bare infinitive)

Hypothetical conditions in the present or future and their hypothetical results in the present or future	*What **would** the local government **do if** there **was** an earthquake in the area?*

Watch out!

Other modals can be used instead of *would* in the result clause in second conditionals. These include *might* and *could*.
✓ *If the weather was better, we **could** have a picnic.*

🇺🇸 vs 🇬🇧 Grammar

- In British English, we can use both *was* and *were* after *if* with first and third person singular. *Were* is more common in a formal style. In American English, it is usual to use *were*.
  UK: *If I **was/were** a gambler, I'd put money on Jim being late.*
  US: *If I **were** a gambler, I'd put money on Jim being late.*
- In both British and American English, *were* is usually used in the phrase *If I were you, …* .

Third conditional (if + past perfect, would have + past participle)

Hypothetical conditions in the past and their results in the past	*A lot more people **would have been trapped** by the flood **if** there **hadn't been** a warning.*

Watch out!

Other modals can be used instead of *would* in the result clause in third conditionals. These include *might, could* and *should*.
✓ *If you hadn't had a lot of luck, you **could** have lost all your money.*

Mixed conditionals

Hypothetical conditions in the past and their results in the present	*You **might not be** in so much trouble **if** you **hadn't started** gambling.*
Hypothetical conditions in the present and their results in the past	***If** I **were** you, I **would have made** Paula buy her own lottery ticket.*

Inverted conditionals

More formal form of the first conditional (with *should*)	***Should** the drought continue, many people will be forced to leave their villages. (= If the drought should continue … / If the drought continues …)*
More formal form of the second conditional	***Were** we **to** stop using fossil fuels tomorrow, it would still take decades for the planet to recover. (= If we were to stop … / If we stopped …)*
More formal form of the third conditional	***Had** Charles Darwin not visited the Galapagos Islands, he might never have developed his theory of evolution. (= If Charles Darwin hadn't visited …)*

Watch out!

- When the verb to be inverted is negative, we put *not* after the subject.
  ✓ *Had we **not** attended the meeting, we would have had no idea of the council's plans.*
- When the *if* clause comes before the result clause, we usually separate the two clauses with a comma. When the result clause comes first, we do not use a comma.
  ✓ *If you share a car to work**,** you can save on energy.* ✓ *You can save on energy if you share a car to work.*

Other conditional structures

As/so long as	*We'll go up to the mountains this weekend **as long as** the weather's okay.*
Provided/Providing (that)	*You can have a pet **provided that** you promise to look after it properly.*
On condition (that)	*Applications for membership are accepted **on condition** that applicants are over 18.*
Suppose/Supposing	***Supposing** the price of oil tripled tomorrow. What do you think would happen?*
If it wasn't/weren't for + noun	*I think I'd be quite lonely **if it wasn't/weren't for** my dog, Buster.*
Were it not for + noun	***Were it not for** my dog, Buster, I think I'd be quite lonely.*
But for + noun	***But for** your help, I wouldn't have been able to quit gambling.*
If it hadn't been for + noun	***If it hadn't been for** your help, I wouldn't have been able to quit gambling.*
Had it not been for + noun	***Had it not been for** your help, I wouldn't have been able to quit gambling.*
If … (should) happen to	***If** you **(should) happen to** see Davina, ask her whether she would look after the cats this weekend.*
If … should	***If** you **should** see Davina, ask her whether she would look after the cats this weekend.*
If … happened to	***If** you **happened to** see someone drop litter in the street, what would you do?*
If … were to	*Do you think it would reduce pollution **if** the government **were to** introduce a new tax on petrol?*
If so/not	*Are you concerned about the environment? **If so**, you might be interested in joining Greenpeace.*
Otherwise	*You should have your air conditioner serviced, **otherwise** you'll waste a lot of energy.*
Unless	***Unless** governments act now, the environment is really going to suffer.*
In case of + noun	***In case of** fire, leave the building by the nearest emergency exit.*
In case	*Take a coat with you **in case** the weather gets worse.*

Other uses of if

To mean 'if it is true that'	***If** you were at the meeting, why didn't you raise the issue of recycling?*
To mean 'if you are willing to'	***If** you'll follow me, I'll show you into the park manager's office.*
To mean 'I'm saying this in case'	***If** you like zoos, the one in Singapore is fantastic.*

A Match to make sentences.

1 If you stay with us for three days, ...
2 If you decide not to vote in the election, ...
3 If you didn't eat your lunch so fast, ...
4 If there were a few more people working, ...
5 If you forget to take your passport, ...
6 If the hire car isn't there when you arrive, ...
7 If the city continues to expand, ...
8 If the police didn't fine people, ...
9 If you did decide to leave the company, ...
10 If MPs wish to resign, ...

A we might get served a bit more quickly.
B give us a call and we'll come to pick you up.
C very few people would obey the law.
D you wouldn't get hiccups, would you?
E they have to go through a complicated procedure.
F we'd be happy to give you a good reference.
G I'm pretty sure they won't let you check in.
H more areas of natural beauty will be destroyed.
I we'll have enough time to see a few sights.
J you can't really complain about the government.

B Rewrite using an appropriate conditional form, starting with the words given.

1 Sue didn't get me a birthday present, which is why I didn't get her one.
If Sue ....

2 We didn't pay them on time because they made a mistake with our order.
If they ....

3 The climate is undergoing such radical changes that scientists are worried.
If ....

4 Did California become an important area because they found gold there?
Would .... ?

5 It's the sunset that attracts tourists to that place.
If it ....

6 There was a traffic jam on the motorway so I was late for my interview.
If there ....

7 I suggest you use a sunblock, and then you won't go red.
If I were ....

8 The accident happened as a result of the driver's not paying attention to the road.
If the driver ....

C Complete using the correct form of the verbs in bold. Add any other words you need.

17th March

So, today marks one year since I became a Park Ranger. If I (**1**) .... (**do**) that then, I never (**2**) .... (**have**) so many fantastic experiences. If you (**3**) .... (**ask**) me now, I would say that I knew nothing when I started, but I've learnt a huge amount. In a typical day, I'll deal with complaints, check on the running of the park and lead guided tours, if any (**4**) .... (**book**). If it's low season, I (**5**) .... (**have**) time to check on forest management and fire control measures. It can get stressful at times, especially if visitors to the park (**6**) .... (**get**) lost or injured. We had a case last week, which wouldn't (**7**) .... (**happen**) if the woman involved (**8**) .... (**be**) a bit more careful. You see, if you (**9**) .... (**wander**) around a large National Park like this without a map, you're bound to get lost. This particular case might (**10**) .... (**be**) so bad if it (**11**) .... (**start**) raining. She was only wearing light clothes, so she was wet through and freezing when we found her. I dread to think what might (**12**) .... (**happen**) if we hadn't!

D Circle the correct word or phrase.

1 If we hadn't taken a wrong turning back there, we wouldn't **be / have been** in this mess now.
2 **Should / Would** you need any further assistance, please don't hesitate to ask.
3 **Had they not / Hadn't they** warned people in time, a lot more lives could have been lost.
4 If you **worked / had worked** last weekend when the boss asked you, then you wouldn't have to work this weekend.
5 Were all the members of staff to attend the conference, would the hotel **have / have had** enough rooms for everyone?
6 Had the government acted sooner, the general public wouldn't **be worrying / have worried** so much about the current situation.
7 Tom Cruise wouldn't be the star he is today **had he not / should he not have** made a good impression in his early films.
8 **Weren't we / Were we not** to build more roads, the traffic system would collapse by 2020.
9 It would be hard enough to pass the exam tomorrow even if you **went / had gone** to all the lectures this year.
10 You can contact the hotel manager on extension 142 **should / could** you need to.
11 **Shouldn't you / Should you not** receive confirmation of your flight by e-mail, please click the link below.
12 I would have asked the person for ID before I let him in, if I **were / have been** you.

E Complete using the words in the box.

case • condition • long • otherwise • provided • so • suppose • unless

1 Do you want a highly-paid career, and, if .... , are you prepared to retrain? Contact us.
2 I'm quite happy to lend you money, as .... as you make sure I get it back.
3 The village fair should be a great success, ... we don't have the same problems with the weather as last year.
4 It'd be great to see you on Saturday evening, ... you've already got other plans.
5 Could you go to the shop for me? I have to stay in in .... the courier comes.
6 Your idea sounds fine in theory, but just .... something goes wrong. What then?
7 Write your name at the top of your essay, ... I won't know which one's yours.
8 The judge allowed the accused to stay at home on .... she reported to the police every morning.

F Write one word in each gap.

1 I would never be able to afford a new house if .... wasn't for all the overtime I've been doing.
2 If it hadn't .... for the fact that his uncle was a partner in the business, Angus would never have got the job.
3 How do you think you'd feel if someone happened .... damage your car like that?
4 .... for the kindness of a complete stranger, I would never have found the hotel.
5 I don't think I'd be surprised in the slightest .... Paul were to suddenly announce that he was moving abroad.
6 Don't forget to mention the new schedule to Veronica if you .... happen to see her this evening.
7 Football matches would be ideal family outings .... it not for the danger of violence.
8 If it hadn't been .... the children, I'm sure Trisha would have left Tom a long time ago.
9 I would have lost the game .... it not been for some quick thinking.
10 If you .... find the book I was asking you about, give me a call.

G Rewrite the sentences, starting with the words given.

1 The only reason we won the contract was Debbie's fantastic presentation.
We wouldn't have ………………………………………………………………………… .

2 The eventual arrival of the ferry prevented a fight from breaking out amongst the passengers.
If it hadn't been for ………………………………………………………………………… .

3 None of the passengers was injured because of the driver's quick reaction.
But ………………………………………………………………………… .

4 We'll have to cancel the meeting if Wendy doesn't turn up soon.
Unless ………………………………………………………………………… .

5 Mr Jones would be quite lonely if he didn't have his daughter's visits.
Were it ………………………………………………………………………… .

6 Here's my phone number, because you might need it.
In case ………………………………………………………………………… .

7 Agree to be back by midnight and you can go.
Providing ………………………………………………………………………… .

8 Officer Hughes prevented the robbers from escaping.
Had it ………………………………………………………………………… .

H Choose the correct answer.

1 If you saw another student cheating in an exam, …………………… somebody?
A did you tell C would you tell
B do you tell D have you told

2 Make sure you mix the ingredients well, …………………… you might get lumps in your cake.
A unless C provided
B otherwise D supposing

3 Were …………………… my dad, I would never have started playing tennis in the first place.
A it for C it to be for
B it hadn't been for D it not for

4 If I …………………… hear from Nigel, I'll tell him you were asking after him.
A happened C should to
B should happen to D will happen to

5 The book would have been perfect …………………… the ending.
A had it not been for C it hadn't been for
B it had not been for D hadn't it been for

6 If you hadn't taken the money, you …………………… in prison now.
A wouldn't have been C haven't been
B hadn't been D wouldn't be

7 Do you think that if we …………………… earlier we might not have missed the coach?
A have been leaving C had left
B left D have left

8 Unless Ray …………………… here soon, I'm going to leave because I'm getting bored.
A doesn't get C won't get
B gets D will get

9 What if I …………………… you that there's a good chance I can get tickets for the concert?
A were to tell C have told
B were telling D would to tell

10 If there …………………… happen to be any reason for late delivery, please inform our Accounts Department.
A might C would
B could D should

I **Write one word in each gap.**

CFCs

Had (**1**) .... not been for the invention of CFCs (chlorofluorocarbons) in the 1920s, at least one environmental problem might have been avoided. In fact, (**2**) .... they to be invented today, they (**3**) .... no doubt be immediately banned. For fifty years, though, if you bought an air conditioner or a spray, there (**4**) .... a good chance that it contained CFCs – and those CFCs are still around in the atmosphere.

If you (**5**) .... able to travel into the upper layers of the atmosphere, you (**6**) .... see the chlorine and fluorine from CFCs breaking down the ozone (a form of oxygen). Ozone could damage your lungs (**7**) .... you were to breathe it, but high in the atmosphere it performs the function of blocking ultraviolet rays from the sun, rays which can cause skin cancer if you (**8**) .... exposed to them. We might (**9**) .... have known about the process (**10**) .... it not been for the work of two American scientists, Frank Rowland and Mario Molina. A number of industries fought against their conclusions, and might have won (**11**) .... the evidence not been so clear. Rowland and Molina received the Nobel Prize for Chemistry in 1995 for their work on the ozone layer, but (**12**) .... which we might today be facing an even greater problem.

J **Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.**

1 Without this new diet, Henry would never have lost so much weight. **it**
Had .... this new diet, Henry would never have lost so much weight.

2 Unless the plans change, we'll see you on the 19th. **no**
Provided .... the plans, we'll see you on the 19th.

3 If you applied now, there's a good chance you would get the job. **apply**
Were .... , there's a good chance you would get the job.

4 I didn't know about your problem so I didn't offer to help. **have**
If I'd known about your problem, ... to help.

5 It could get cold at night, so take some warm clothes. **in**
Take some warm clothes .... cold at night.

6 I'd love to travel the world if I didn't have to pay off my mortgage. **having**
Were .... to pay off my mortgage, I'd love to travel the world.

7 Ten years ago, people would have complained at seeing this film. **seen**
Had .... , they would have complained.

8 Drivers are allowed to park here if they display a local resident permit. **condition**
Drivers are allowed to park here .... they display a local resident permit.

UNIT 12

Vocabulary

Chance and nature

Topic vocabulary: Chance

see page 232 for definitions

approximate (v, adj)
ascribe (v)
assign (v)
attribute (v)
blow (n)
cause (v, n)
coincidence (n)
curse (v, n)
deliberate (adj)
determine (v)
fate (n)
fluctuate (v)
foresee (v)
freak (n, adj)
gamble (v)
haphazard (adj)
hazard (n)
inadvertent (adj)
instrumental (adj)
jinxed (adj)
likelihood (n)
lucky charm (n phr)
meander (v)
mishap (n)
mutate (v)
odds (n)
pick (v, n)
pot luck (n phr)
random (adj)
sign (n)
speculate (v)
spontaneous (adj)
startle (v)
statistics (n)
stray (v, adj, n)
superstition (n)
superstitious (adj)
transpire (v)
uncertainty (n)
wobble (v)

Topic vocabulary: Nature

see page 233 for definitions

agriculture (n)
appreciate (v)
catastrophe (n)
crop (n)
drought (n)
evacuate (v)
exploit (v)
famine (n)
flood (v, n)
fossil fuels (n phr)
global warming (n phr)
greenery (n)
habitat (n)
harvest (v, n)
hurricane (n)
instinct (n)
natural disaster (n phr)
resource (n)
scarce (adj)
species (n)

Phrasal verbs

chance upon	find or see someone or something when you did not expect to
come across	meet someone or find something by chance
cool down	become cooler, or make something cooler
cut back (on)	reduce the amount of something, especially money that you spend
die out	become weaker or less common and then disappear completely
dig up	remove something from under the ground by digging; dig holes in an area of land; find information by searching carefully
dry up	if something dries up or is dried up, all the water comes out of it; stop being available
get through	use or finish something; manage to deal with a difficult situation or stay alive until it is over; finish dealing with some work, a subject, etc
heat up	make something hot; become hot
kill off	destroy living things so that most or all of them are dead
put down to	if you put something down to a particular reason, you think it has happened for that reason
slip up	make a careless mistake *slip-up (n)*
spring up	appear or be produced suddenly and quickly
store up	keep a lot of something so that you can use it later; do something that will cause problems in the future
throw out	get rid of something that you no longer want, for example by putting it in a dustbin; force someone to leave a place or group; if someone in authority throws out a plan, proposal, etc they refuse to accept it
throw up	produce something new or unexpected; cause something such as dust or water to rise into the air

Phrases, patterns and collocations

bet bet (sth) on, make a bet (with sb), safe bet

certain know/say for certain, certain to do, make certain, certain of/about, a certain (amount of sth)

chance take a chance (on), leave to chance, by chance, by any chance, the/sb's chances of (doing), the chance to do, second chance, last chance, pure/sheer chance, there's every/no chance that

dint by dint of

disposal waste disposal, at sb's disposal, at the disposal of

find find yourself (doing), find sb doing, find sth difficult/interesting/etc, find your way

green green politics, green belt, (give sb) the green light, greenhouse, the greenhouse effect

guess guess at, guess that, guess right, take/make/hazard a guess (at), rough guess, lucky guess, wild guess, educated guess, at a guess

happen happen to do, it so happens that, as it happens

lightning thunder and lightning, a bolt/flash of lightning, struck by lightning, at lightning speed

Phrases, patterns and collocations

luck push your luck, wish sb luck, trust to luck, bring you luck, the luck of the draw, a stroke/piece of luck, as luck would have it, in luck, with any luck

natural completely/totally natural, natural causes, natural ability, natural resources, natural selection

nature the nature of, by nature, in nature, Mother Nature, human nature, second nature

odds the odds of doing, the odds are (that), the odds are in favour of/against, against all the odds

rain rain hard/heavily, pour with rain, heavy/light rain, rainbow, rainwater, caught in the rain

risk risk sth on, risk doing, risk one's life, take a risk, run the risk of, put sth at risk, pose a risk to, the risk of, at the risk of doing

sun sun yourself, in the sun, sunbathe, sunlight, sunrise, sunset, sunshine

threat pose a threat (to), face a threat, under threat, threat of, idle threat, bomb threat, death threat

weather good/bad/etc weather, freak weather, in all weathers, under the weather, weather forecast, weatherproof

wind light/strong wind, gust of wind, in the wind, winds of change

Idioms

an act of God	an event such as a flood, lightning or an earthquake that is produced by natural forces, and that people have no control over
come rain or shine	used for saying that something always happens or someone always does something despite bad weather or difficult conditions
down on your luck	having a long period of difficulty finding work and earning money
draw the short straw	be chosen to do something unpleasant
have green fingers	be good at growing plants
let nature take its course	allow something to develop without trying to influence it
no rhyme or reason	used for emphasising that there is no reason or explanation for something
out of the blue	happening in a way that is sudden and unexpected, and does not seem connected with anything that happened before
the luck of the draw	used for saying people have limited control over what life brings them
touch wood	used when you have said that you have had good luck in order to prevent bad luck from happening to you

Word formation

assess	reassess, (re)assessment, assessor, assessed
cause	causation, causal, causative
conserve	conservation, conservationist, conservatism, conservative(ly)
ecology	ecologist, ecological(ly)
elude	elusiveness, elusive(ly)
erode	erosion
erupt	eruption
extinct	extinction
favour	favouritism, favourite, (un)favourable, (un)favourably
fortune	misfortune, (un)fortunate(ly), fortuitous(ly)
instinct	instinctive(ly)
intend	intention, (un)intended, (un)intentional(ly)
mount	surmount, mountain, mountaineer(ing), (in)surmountable, mountainous
mystery	mystify, mystification, mysterious(ly)
occur	recur, occurrence, recurrence, recurring, recurrent
probable	(im)probability, improbable, (im)probably
risk	risky
seem	seeming(ly)
threat	threaten, threatened, threatening(ly)
wild	wilderness, wildlife, wildness, wildly

Topic vocabulary: Chance

A Complete using the correct form of the words in the box.

attribute • determine • fluctuate • foresee • gamble • meander
mutate • pick • startle • wobble

1 The woman claimed to be able to .... the future, but I knew she was only guessing.
2 In a moment of madness, I decided to .... everything on the turn of one card.
3 It seems that one of the genes has .... , causing the frog to be blue.
4 Following the investigation, the accident was .... to chance.
5 When the glass fell off the table on its own, it really .... me.
6 A casino's profits might .... from month to month, but you can be sure they will always make money.
7 Police have yet to .... what caused the building to collapse.
8 The first I knew of the earthquake was when the furniture started to ....
9 Is there a winning roulette system that can help you .... the right number?
10 As the river gets closer to the sea, it begins to .... across the flat lowlands.

B Choose the correct answer.

1 What's the .... number of accidents which happen in the home each year?
A approximate B random C close D inexact

2 I always take my lucky .... with me into an exam.
A sign B item C charm D spell

3 Did you plan to meet up with Emma in London, or was it just a .... ?
A freak B fate C coincidence D luck

4 Johnnie broke the vase, but I'm sure it wasn't ....
A purposeful B instrumental C desirable D deliberate

5 We can only .... as to the causes of the disaster.
A think B speculate C consider D ponder

6 The .... of one winning the lottery is hardly worth even considering.
A hazard B luck C fortune D likelihood

7 I didn't know my guess was going to be right – it was just ....
A pot luck B odds C draw D gamble

8 Do you believe in that old .... about not walking under a ladder?
A curse B misfortune C uncertainty D superstition

C Complete using the correct form of the words in the boxes.

haphazard • spontaneous

1 Have you ever done something completely .... , like suddenly deciding to quit your job?
2 This government doesn't seem to have a plan and is just reacting to events in a .... manner.

blow • mishap

3 Having an accident in the first race was a real .... to Johnson's ambitions of becoming world champion.
4 We should get there by midnight, as long as there are no .... along the way.

5 Nobody could have foreseen what would happen – it was just a .... accident.
6 The politician's .... comments to the press started a national scandal.

freak • inadvertent

7 It seems to me that you can prove just about anything with ....
8 The .... are 7-1 against Argentina getting to the final of the competition.

odds • statistics

9 Seven people have got ill on the voyage so far; I think the cruise is ....
10 Aren't .... people just looking for a way to control things that are really out of their control?

jinxed • superstitious

11 Andy's been lucky enough to be .... to the Sydney office and he's leaving next week.
12 Wilson .... his defeat to bad luck.

ascribe • assign

13 Apparently, the car was hit by a .... bullet during the riot.
14 Just think of a .... number and then write it on here.

random • stray

15 It looks like the fire was .... by a discarded cigarette.
16 We may never know what .... that fateful night.

cause • transpire

Topic vocabulary: Nature

D If the word or phrase in bold is correct, put a tick. If it is incorrect, replace it with a word or phrase in bold from another sentence.

1 The earthquake was a real **resource** and destroyed most of the buildings in the city. ....
2 They are going to **harvest** the local people because the volcano might erupt. ....
3 We need to find alternatives to **catastrophe** before we destroy our planet. ....
4 There's so much **fossil fuels** in England during the summer. ....
5 The panda is threatened by the destruction of its **greenery**. ....
6 They were planning to **evacuate** the grapes the next day and nobody could have predicted the storm. ....
7 Some animals seem to know by **species** when bad weather is on the way. ....
8 The oil fields are a vast natural **habitat** that belongs to all the people, not just a few businessmen. ....
9 The sparrow is becoming increasingly **scarce** in this area. ....
10 Scientists claim to have identified a new **instinct** of monkey. ....

E Circle the correct word or phrase.

1 It seems that **agriculture / crop** first developed in the Middle East.
2 Coffee is a very important **agriculture / crop** in Brazil.
3 The **drought / famine** was caused by war in the region.
4 If the **drought / famine** continues, the government is planning to introduce a ban on washing cars.
5 You have to stop and get out of your car to really **appreciate / exploit** the natural beauty of the area.
6 Why do you think that we don't have the right to **appreciate / exploit** nature to make money?
7 Some scientists still dispute that **global warming / natural disaster** is caused by human activity.
8 Over half a million people were forced to leave their homes as a result of the recent **global warming / natural disaster**.
9 It's been raining for days and there's a real danger of **floods / hurricanes** if it doesn't stop soon.
10 This area is frequently hit by **floods / hurricanes** that start at sea and then move inland.

Phrasal verbs

F Write one word in each gap.

Global warming

There has been a steady rise in the average temperature around the planet over the last hundred years or so, and the majority of scientists put it (**1**) .... to human activity. The solution, they claim, is to cut back (**2**) .... our consumption of fossil fuels, which produce the carbon dioxide that drives global warming. However, some scientists argue that the historical evidence shows that over time the Earth heats (**3**) .... and cools (**4**) .... naturally. According to them, we should just continue to get (**5**) .... the fossil fuels that are available and find alternatives when they run out.

Whatever the cause of global warming, the increase in temperature is undeniable. It is predicted that over the next few decades many species will die (**6**) .... as once fertile areas turn to desert. Seas will rise in some areas and rivers will dry (**7**) .... in other areas, killing (**8**) .... animal and plant life that rely on them. It looks like this debate will only get more intense.

G Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs in the box.

chance upon • come across • dig up • slip up • spring up • store up • throw out • throw up

1 We were walking through the woods when we .... a trap set by hunters.
2 It's a huge risk, and we can't afford to .... or everything will go wrong.
3 Don't just .... those plastic bottles – we can recycle them.
4 Isn't it amazing how squirrels .... nuts to make sure they have enough to eat in the winter?
5 The new law has .... a number of problems for farmers that weren't expected.
6 As I was flicking through the magazine, I .... an article about the local nature reserve.
7 According to the evidence that has been .... , people have been farming this area for over a 1,000 years.
8 Organisations concerned about the environment seem to have .... everywhere these days.

H The phrasal verb *kill off* means something like 'remove'. Put the following phrasal verbs into the sentences in the correct form and tick the sentences where the phrasal verb means something like 'remove'.

chop off • cross off • drop off • go off • peel off • set off • shave off • wipe off

1 After what Maria said, I think we should .... her .... the guest list. ....
2 Calvin .... the chocolate .... his mouth with the back of his hand. ....
3 Do you think Dad will ever .... his beard .... ? ....
4 There's a funny smell, like something's .... in the fridge. ....
5 Aren't you going to .... the head .... the fish before you serve it? ....
6 I'm so tired after work that I often just .... in front of the TV. ....
7 We're going to .... early in the morning, so try to get some sleep. ....
8 You need to .... the paper .... the top of the ice cream before you eat it. ....

Phrases, patterns and collocations

I Write one preposition in each gap.

1 It's a million to one against you being struck .... lightning.
2 We got caught .... the rain so we were completely soaked when we got home.
3 Many people only manage to give up gambling .... dint of a lot of hard work.
4 A sudden gust .... wind blew the letter out of my hand.
5 I can't believe you bet your car .... the toss of a coin!
6 I'd love to be a cat and spend all day lying .... the sun.
7 I believe we're .... luck this time and we won't have lost our money.
8 You're either lucky .... nature or you have to work hard all your life.

J Write one word in each gap.

Earthquake prediction

If you were to hazard a (**1**) .... at when and where the next major earthquake will strike, there's (**2**) .... chance that you'd be almost as accurate as the experts. The science of earthquake prediction is still in its infancy, which is uncomfortable, considering the threat posed (**3**) .... human civilisation. Even with vast resources at (**4**) .... disposal, often the best that scientists can do is say that (**5**) .... odds are that an earthquake will strike where one occurred before. One reason the chances (**6**) .... making an accurate prediction are so low is the nature (**7**) .... the forces involved. It seems to be impossible to tell the difference between a small earthquake and a warning tremor. Scientists need to decide whether to put lives at (**8**) .... by not issuing a warning, or constantly issue warnings about the threat (**9**) .... an earthquake that may be ignored. In the end, the odds seem to be (**10**) .... us solving this difficult problem any time soon.

K Write one word in each gap.

1 I think Jay plays poker, but I couldn't .... for certain.
2 If one species survives at the expense of another, then I think that's just .... selection.
3 I'll just call Jimmy to .... certain he can look after the dogs.
4 The Minister gave the .... light for the bypass to go ahead.
5 You were a bit hard on him for crashing your car – give him a .... chance!
6 People are .... their luck a bit too far when they live on the slopes of a volcano.
7 Global warming will .... a great threat to mankind in years to come.
8 Just at the moment we had to go out, it started to .... with rain.

L For each question, write one word which can be used in all three sentences.

1 Have you ever .... yourself wondering what it would be like to be someone else?
I'm surprised you .... the test so difficult after all that revision.
After wandering in the forest for an hour, Gale finally .... her way out.

2 The problem of conservation is essentially economic in ....
It's only human .... to want to acquire more wealth.
I'm quite a calm person by .... , but things like this make me really angry.

3 Let's go through things again; I don't want to leave anything to ....
Excuse me, but are you Mr Whitehouse, by any .... ?
I mean it – this is your last .... and next time you make a mistake, you're out.

4 I haven't been at work all week because I've been a bit under the ....
According to the .... forecast, we're in for thunderstorms.
We've had some really awful .... lately, haven't we?

5 I was wondering how to get home when, as .... would have it, Ben drove past in his car.
The assistant said that I was in .... and that they only had one pair left but they were my size.
You've won by betting on red the last three times, but don't push your .... !

6 It so .... that I've already decided to do that, anyway.
As it .... , we can cancel the demonstration because the council have changed their mind.
When a freak storm .... , we are not always given any warning of it.

7 I have to admit to feeling a .... amount of fear as I stepped into the lions' cage.
The press are .... to find out about this, and then it'll be all over the papers.
A .... Mr Pratt rang this afternoon about your donation to the WWF.

8 I .... you must be right about the weather – it feels hot!
Don't ask me to .... at her age as I'd be miles out.
You'd never .... they were married from the way they act in public, would you?

Idioms

M **Complete each dialogue using the appropriate form of an idiom in the box.**

act of God • come rain or shine • down on your luck • draw the short straw • have green fingers
let nature take its course • no rhyme or reason • out of the blue • the luck of the draw • touch wood

1 'I feel sorry for Mrs Shepherd.'
'Yes, she does seem to have been rather .... lately, doesn't she?'

2 'I'm sure Carol will get over the divorce eventually.'
'Yes, I think we should just .... and see what happens.'

3 'I couldn't believe it when I saw him.'
'It must have been a real shock when he turned up .... after all these years.'

4 'Does Dave still go to the football every week?'
'Oh, yes. You know him. He's there ....'

5 'How come the company chose you to go to New York?'
'I don't know. It was just .... , I guess.'

6 'Why wasn't there any warning before the floods?'
'Well, it's not easy to predict that kind of .... , is it?'

7 'I don't understand Harry's decision.'
'Me neither. There seems to be .... to it.'

8 'Who's babysitting tomorrow night?'
'Well, I .... , so I'm staying in while the others go out.'

9 'I'm so looking forward to the wedding this weekend.'
' The weather should be good, ...'

10 'I love your garden!'
'Thanks. Yes, I suppose I've always ....'

Word formation

N Use the word given in capitals to form a word that fits in the space.

WWF

The World Wide Fund for Nature (WWF) has been involved in (**1**) .... (**CONSERVE**) since its foundation in 1961. Its (**2**) .... (**INTEND**) has always been to protect (**3**) .... (**WILD**) against the effects of human activity. Working very closely with both expert (**4**) .... (**ECOLOGY**) and ordinary local people, the organisation aims to help those animals (**5**) .... (**THREAT**) by the destruction of habitats. Economic growth and tourism force some species to the brink of (**6**) .... (**EXTINCT**). (**7**) .... (**FORTUNE**), the WWF work hard to ensure that animals such as the giant panda will (**8**) .... (**PROBABLE**) survive for a few more years yet. Refusing to accept that the problems are (**9**) .... (**MOUNT**), the WWF works tirelessly on a (**10**) .... (**SEEM**) never-ending list of projects, all of which help to protect the diversity of life on Earth.

O Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals.

1 The chances against this kind of unusual .... are very high. **OCCUR**
2 I'm not convinced that there's a .... link between pollution and global warming. **CAUSE**
3 The .... of the cliffs by the sea has completely changed the landscape. **ERODE**
4 Female animals have an .... need to protect their young. **INSTINCT**
5 The police are investigating the .... disappearance from the zoo of a number of animals. **MYSTERY**
6 We knew that getting between the whale and the ship was .... , but it was the only way to stop them hunting. **RISK**
7 What's your .... of the situation? **ASSESS**
8 We have to wait for .... conditions to launch the boat. **FAVOUR**
9 The expedition travelled miles in search of the .... mountain gorilla. **ELUDE**
10 Following the .... of the volcano, hundreds of villages were destroyed. **ERUPT**

P The suffix *-y*, as in *risky*, can be added to some nouns and verbs to form adjectives. Tick the words which can have *-y* added to them to make adjectives. You may need to double a final letter or remove a final *-e*.

brain • bump • curl • flavour • guilt • hair • haste • juice • luck • lump • meat
milk • scare • shine • sport • spot • taste • waste • water • wealth

6 Units 11 and 12

A **Use the word given in capitals to form a word that fits in the space.**

Life in extreme conditions

Until relatively recently, it was thought that extreme heat and cold presented (**1**) .... (**MOUNT**) problems to living organisms and that all life existed in a narrow range of (**2**) .... (**FAVOUR**) temperatures. However, the discovery of extremophiles has forced a (**3**) .... (**ASSESS**) of that view.

Extremophiles are bacteria that survive, and even thrive, in (**4**) .... (**SEEM**) impossible conditions. (**5**) .... (**PROBABLE**) as it may seem, some exist at temperatures exceeding 80^{0}C in geysers and hot springs, while others live in the freezing conditions of the Antarctic (**6**) .... (**WILD**). While most species of larger animals are (**7**) .... (**THREAT**) by global warming, even to the point of (**8**) .... (**EXTINCT**), that kind of (**9**) .... (**ECOLOGY**) change may actually benefit the extremophiles. These (**10**) .... (**MYSTERY**) organisms may survive long after the human race.

(1 mark per answer)

B **Circle the correct word or phrase.**

11 We wouldn't have had a problem if you **haven't / hadn't** mentioned it to Tony.
12 If you **would / should** happen to bump into James, ask him to call me, would you?
13 We should take our tent with us **in case / unless** we can't find rooms to stay in.
14 If you had been more careful, you wouldn't **have / have had** an accident.
15 If he **was / had been** born two hundred years later, would Mozart have become a pop star?
16 **Unless / Otherwise** we pay the electricity bill soon, they might cut us off.
17 It would have been a boring film **but for / if not** the action scenes, which were excellent.
18 We'll hire a car when we get there, **supposing / providing** it's not too expensive.

(1 mark per answer)

C **Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.**

19 The only reason I haven't moved to London yet is the cost. **for**
Had .... , I would already have moved to London.

20 What do you think was the reason for the failure? **down**
What do you .... to?

21 Ian was ill yesterday so he didn't go into work. **weather**
Ian was .... yesterday so he didn't go into work.

22 If the council stopped wasting money, more people might approve of them. **to**
Were .... money, more people might approve of them.

23 The doctor's advice was to just wait and see what happened and the baby would be fine. **nature**
The doctor said that we should .... and the baby would be fine.

24 If the English team can work together, they should win. **so**
The English team should win, ... work together.

25 I made a slight mistake at the beginning, so my whole answer to the maths problem was wrong. **slipped**
My answer to the maths problem would have been right .... at the beginning.

26 There's a good chance that Ed will be picked for the team. **being**
Ed's .... for the team are good.

(2 marks per answer)

D Write one word in each gap.

27 During your stay, all the hotel's facilities are .... your disposal.
28 Pete gave up smoking .... dint of a lot of determination and willpower.
29 .... the risk of appearing rude, Minister, would you please answer the question?
30 I don't have a watch, but .... a guess I would say it was about eleven o'clock.
31 John's a very keen fisherman and goes out .... all weathers.
32 I realised I didn't have any money on me, but .... luck would have it I wasn't far from the bank.
33 I did a lot of research before the job interview because I didn't want to leave anything .... chance.
34 Dad's not much of a gambler, but he does occasionally bet .... a football match.

(1 mark per answer)

E Choose the correct answer.

35 The new regulations have .... up a number of problems for the company.
A come C got
B thrown D moved

36 We .... on the beach now if we hadn't missed the plane.
A might have lain C could be lying
B would lie D would have lain

37 I admit breaking the window, but it wasn't ....
A instrumental C deliberate
B purposeful D desirable

38 Ian Mills won the election .... all the odds.
A despite C against
B without D below

39 We're saving for our holiday, so we're .... back on luxuries this month.
A dropping C giving
B moving D cutting

40 It would have been a great journey, ... we not got lost along the way.
A had C should
B would D might

41 Nobody wanted to tell Richard he wasn't invited, but I drew the short .... so I had to do it.
A straw C pole
B stick D rod

42 Scientists are predicting that the volcano might erupt so people have been .... from the area.
A escaped C exported
B emigrated D evacuated

(1 mark per answer)

Total mark: ..../50

Progress Test 1: Units 1-12

A **Use the word given in capitals at the end of the line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line.**

Car review: the XR1200

Although still a relative (**1**) .... to the world of high-performance sports **COME**
cars, General Autos has (**2**) .... quite a transformation since their first **GO**
effort, the Xtreme, attracted such (**3**) .... comment in the motoring press, **FAVOUR**
which led to disappointing sales. Their latest effort, the XR1200 (**4**) .... , **CONVERT**
went into (**5**) .... last month, and I had the chance to test-drive one. **PRODUCE**
To say that the XR1200 is better than the Xtreme is a huge (**6**) .... Not **STATE**
only is it much better, it represents a (**7**) .... new approach to this class of **REVOLT**
car. From the seats to the angle of the steering wheel, everything on this car is
(**8**) .... , meaning that you can set the car up to fit you perfectly. The **ADJUST**
engine, too, is easy to set up for maximum efficiency, with the help of powerful dual
(**9**) .... that monitor performance 1,000 times a second. **PROCESS**
Even the bodywork incorporates state-of-the-art ideas, with a new durable material
that should mean that your XR1200 (**10**) .... almost anything else **LAST**
on the road.

(1 mark per answer)

B **Write one word in each gap.**

11 Did you hear that Rita told Charles the wrong time for the meeting .... purpose so that he'd be late?
12 We will be writing to you .... due course with details of the conditions of your employment.
13 She didn't understand what I was driving .... so I had to make it very simple for her.
14 The company is currently .... discussion with the bank regarding a large loan.
15 I think you need to focus more .... the central character of the book in your essay.
16 From now .... , all orders must be accompanied by form E4-17.
17 I didn't manage to book anything, so we'll just have to trust .... luck and hope we find rooms when we get there.
18 There are a number of changes .... the way, and I'm afraid that some people will lose their jobs.

(1 mark per answer)

C **Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.**

19 We need to do two hours' work before we can take a break. **been**
We can't take a break .... two hours.

20 I was just about to ask Amy to marry me when she told me she wanted to split up! **verge**
I was just .... Amy to marry me when she told me she wanted to split up!

21 We were going to be 12 for dinner, but Vicky couldn't come in the end. **meant**
There .... 12 for dinner, but Vicky couldn't come in the end.

22 Dad decided to pay a mechanic to look at the car when he couldn't find the problem. **looked**
Dad decided to .... by a mechanic when he couldn't find the problem.

23 Jan has been having problems with her e-mail so it's quite likely she hasn't got your message. **well**
Jan .... your message because she's been having e-mail problems.

24 Letting Brittany walk home on her own was a mistake. **have**
You .... Brittany walk home on her own.

25 I strongly suggest that you don't forget your dictionary next lesson. **better**
You .... your dictionary next lesson.

26 I'm sure that the only thing that prevented me from leaving university was my dad's advice. **it**
I'm sure that .... I would have left university.

27 You have to put more effort in if you want to succeed. **fail**
You .... you put more effort in.

28 The start of the debate is scheduled for six. **due**
The debate .... at six.

(2 marks per answer)

D Complete using the words in the box. There is one word you will not need to use.

abrupt • alternate • ambiguous • colloquial • ingenious • provisional • simultaneous • timely

29 What you've written here is a bit .... and your position isn't really clear.
30 We've made a/an .... decision, but you'll know our final decision at the end of the week.
31 I've just bought myself a/an .... device that turns any mobile into a metal detector.
32 You might hear native speakers saying 'ain't' in .... speech.
33 My flying lessons came to a/an .... halt when the flying school closed down.
34 Only the .... intervention of the managing director prevented a costly mistake.
35 The film was the first to have a/an .... launch in the US, Europe and Japan.

(1 mark per answer)

E Write one word in each gap.

Instant decisions

We often assume the best way to come to a decision is to **(36)** .... ages taking **(37)** .... account a lot of information before we arrive **(38)** .... our conclusion. We weigh the evidence **(39)** .... the belief that instant decisions are unreliable. However, there are arguments **(40)** .... a reassessment of that view. It may be that from **(41)** .... to time our subconscious mind does a better job **(42)** .... a moment than our conscious mind does.

When Evelyn Harrison, an expert on sculpture, **(43)** .... shown a statue that the J. Paul Getty Museum had purchased for $10 million, she blurted **(44)** .... that it was a fake. It came **(45)** .... a shock to the museum. Harrison was unable to explain why she had formed that impression, but it was enough to cast doubt **(46)** .... the statue. Now most experts have come **(47)** .... to her position, but how did she tell the **(48)** .... between that and the real article so quickly?

It's probable that her subconscious mind sorted through information that **(49)** .... the notice of her conscious mind. Although we are rarely, **(50)** .... ever, aware of our subconscious mind, it can be surprisingly effective.

(1 mark per answer)

F Complete using the words in the box. You will have to use some words more than once. There is one word you will not need to use.

apart • down • in • on • out • over • through • up

51 Timmy's only six, but he comes .... with the funniest things sometimes.
52 The destruction of this area of habitat will mean that some species of plant will die ....
53 You're going to have to knuckle .... if you don't want to fail the exam next month.
54 Could you pass a message .... to your brother?
55 I see that you've managed to take the dishwasher .... , but can you put it back together again?
56 I decided to have a few lessons to brush .... my German before I went on holiday.
57 I had to give a talk about history, so I spent the weekend reading .... on the Second World War.
58 Mull my offer .... for a few days and then let me know what you think.
59 You'll have to postpone your holiday because I'm afraid something has cropped .... at work.
60 I can't believe you've already got .... the lemonade I bought at the supermarket.

(1 mark per answer)

G For each question, write one word which can be used in all three sentences.

61 Have you ever seen Ivor doing an .... of Mike? It's hilarious!
I'm going to wear my new suit to the interview to make a good ....
We were under the .... that the order would be delivered by today.

62 Let's just .... through what's going to be happening at the wedding tomorrow.
We should have finished building by the end of July, if we don't .... into any problems.
I always get a headache when we visit Georgia because she just lets her kids .... riot.

63 I don't know what the .... for the council's decision was, but it doesn't seem like a good idea.
I've been promoted to assistant manager on a temporary .... , but I hope it'll become permanent.
On the .... of your interview, we're very happy to be able to offer you a position at our company.

64 The new legislation has .... up a number of unexpected problems.
The board of directors have .... the budget out and asked that we look at the figures again.
Mr Parris turned round from the blackboard and demanded to know who had .... the piece of paper.

65 The detectives checked everyone's story and by a .... of elimination they were left with one suspect.
It is hoped that the current peace .... will bring the civil war to an end.
I was in the .... of cooking dinner when Madison rang to say that she'd be late.

66 Our teacher keeps a .... of our test scores so that she can see how much we've progressed.
I wrote my autobiography because I want to set the .... straight about a few things that have appeared in the press.

(1 mark per answer)

H Write one word in each gap.

67 No matter what we said, Dimitris .... to his guns and wouldn't change his mind.
68 The fact that Jenny and Ben didn't invite us to the wedding .... volumes.
69 Matt finally decided to .... clean and admitted that he'd broken the TV.
70 Take the second left and then just .... your nose and the post office is on the right.
71 As soon as the kids got to the party, they .... a beeline for the ice cream.

72 You should sit down and .... stock of your life and decide whether this is the right thing to do.
73 Jill .... cars inside out, so why don't you get her to have a look at the engine?
74 I .... two and two together and realised that Tracy had been lying to me.

(1 mark per answer)

I Choose the correct answer.

75 I expect you'll feel a lot better when you .... your exams out of the way.
A will get C had got
B have got D are getting

76 I suppose I found it hard at my new school because I just .... to the situation.
A didn't use C wasn't used
B used not D wasn't getting used

77 By the end of next month Annabel and I .... out with each other for three years.
A will have been going C have been going
B will go D will be going

78 We have to leave now because we are due .... in Edinburgh by six.
A being C to be
B to being D be

79 Our plane tickets never arrived, ... in the post.
A were lost C had been lost
B having lost D having been lost

80 It .... that there is easily enough food in the world to feed everyone.
A has been calculated C being calculated
B calculates D would calculate

81 It was the first time I .... in such an important match.
A was ever playing C have ever been playing
B have ever played D had ever played

82 It turned out that I .... have bought Frank a present after all.
A mustn't C needn't
B oughtn't D mightn't

(1 mark per answer)

J Choose the correct answer.

83 Nobody has any firm information, so we can only .... on what caused the accident.
A guess C speculate
B contemplate D assume

84 Cars have been banned from the city centre, which makes the area much safer for ....
A passersby C pedestrians
B onlookers D footmen

85 There has been a real boom in .... electronics over the last three decades.
A consumer C buyer
B customer D client

86 When I realised that I'd left my homework at home, I quickly .... back to get it.
A crept C crawled
B dashed D drifted

87 I know it's got his name on the cover, but he used a ....
A correspondent C ghostwriter
B model D fellow

88 The text doesn't give you the answer explicitly – you have to .... it from the evidence.
A convert C reckon
B grasp D deduce

89 Are you having a .... exam before you sit the actual exam in June?
A fake C false
B mock D dress

90 I couldn't decide what to write about, when I suddenly .... upon the idea of doing something on writer's block.
A thought C hit
B chanced D arrived

(1 mark per answer)

Total mark: ..../100

UNIT

13 Grammar

Unreal time

- Sometimes we use the past simple and continuous to refer to the present, the future or a general situation.
- Sometimes we use the past perfect simple and continuous to refer to a hypothetical past that didn't actually happen.

Watch out!

- For all of the situations below with the past simple and past continuous, with the verb *to be* after *I* and *he/she/it*, there is a choice of *was* or *were*. ✓ *I wish I* ***was*** *rich.* ✓ *I wish I* ***were*** *rich.*
- Both *was* and *were* are common in informal English but *were* is sometimes more appropriate in formal, written English and is always used in the phrase *If I were you …*

Conditionals

For hypothetical and unlikely current, future or general conditions (see Unit 11 for more information)	*I wouldn't accept a job unless I* ***was*** *absolutely sure what the salary was.* *If you* ***were travelling*** *to Russia, would you get roubles before you left or when you arrived?*
For hypothetical past conditions (see Unit 11 for more information)	*If I* ***had known****, I would have taken some dollars with me.* *If I* ***had been running*** *the bank, I would have given you an overdraft!*

imagine / what if / suppose / supposing

To consider hypothetical or unlikely current, future or general situations	*Supposing you* ***were given*** *ten million euros, what would you spend it on?* *What if you* ***were walking*** *down the street and you suddenly found a wallet? Would you hand it in?*
To consider hypothetical or unlikely past situations	*Suppose you* ***had won*** *the lottery last night. What would you have done?* *Imagine you'****d been working*** *there for 40 years. What kind of pension would you have got?*

Watch out!

We can also use a present tense instead of past simple or past continuous after these words and phrases. This indicates that the situation is more likely to happen.
✓ *Supposing you* ***become*** *a millionaire, how will it change your life?* (more likely)
✓ *Supposing you* ***became*** *a millionaire, how would it change your life?* (less likely)

as if / as though

For current, future or general untrue, hypothetical comparisons	*She acts as if/though she* ***was*** *a millionaire.* *Colin acts as if/though he* ***were making*** *a million pounds a month.*
For past untrue, hypothetical comparisons	*Tony looks as if/though someone* ***had*** *just* ***handed*** *him a million euros.* *It's almost as if/though they'****d been working*** *for free.*

Watch out!

- When the verb before *as if/though* is in a present or present perfect tense, we only use a past tense for comparisons that we know aren't true. ✓ *She behaves as if she* ***were*** *really wealthy.* (= She's not really wealthy.)
- When the verb before *as if/though* is in a present or present perfect tense, for comparisons that are possible, we use a present or present perfect tense after *as if/though.*
  ✓ *She looks as if she'****s*** *really wealthy.* (= It's very possible that she is wealthy.)
- When the verb before *as if/though* is in a past tense, we use a past tense after *as if/though* for comparisons that are either true or hypothetical.
  ✓ *She* ***looked*** *as if she* ***was*** *really wealthy but I knew she wasn't / so maybe she was.*

Questions and requests

To make questions and requests more polite	*How much money **did you want** to spend, madam?* *I **was wondering** whether you might be able to give me some advice.*

it's (high/about) time

To suggest that something should be done now or in the immediate future	*It's (high/about) time I **got** a mortgage.* *It's (high/about) time we **were leaving**.*

Watch out!

- With *It's (high/about) time*, there is often no real difference in meaning between past simple and past continuous.
  ✓ *It's time I **went** home.* ✓ *It's time I **was going** home.*
- We can also use a full infinitive after *It's time*, but not after *It's high/about time*.
  ✓ ***It's time to think** about getting a loan.*

would rather/sooner

For current, general or future preference	*Jan would rather/sooner we **bought** a house than **carried** on renting.* *Would you rather/sooner I **was begging** in the streets?*
For past preference	*We'd rather/sooner you **hadn't lent** Kurdip the money.*

Watch out!

Would rather/sooner + past simple/continuous is only used to talk about preference regarding someone else. When there is no change of subject, we use *would rather/sooner* + bare infinitive, or *would prefer* + full infinitive.
✓ ***She'd rather** not **borrow** any money from you.* ✓ ***She'd prefer** not **to borrow** any money from you.*

wish / if only

Wishes about now, the future or generally	*Do you wish you **had** a bigger house?* *If only I **was earning** a reasonable salary.*
Wishes about the past	*If only I**'d bought** a lottery ticket this morning.* *Carla wished she**'d been keeping** a much closer eye on her investments.*

Watch out!

When *wish* is in the past simple, it is still followed by the past simple or past continuous for current, future or general wishes.
✓ *Simon dearly **wished** that he **had** a bigger house.* ✓ *I sat there and **wished** I **was earning** a reasonable salary.*

Other structures with wish / if only

To criticise other people or wish for a situation to be different	*Wish / If only* + *would*	*I wish they **would** offer me a pay rise.*
Wishes about ability or permission	*Wish / If only* + *could*	*I wish I **could** find a job that pays well.*
Wishes about past ability or permission	*Wish / If only* + *could* + perfect infinitive	*I wish I **could have got** a mortgage with a fixed interest rate.*
To express desires in a very formal way	*Wish* + full infinitive	*I wish **to speak** to the bank manager.*
To wish someone luck/happiness/success/etc	*Wish* + noun	*I wish him every **success**.*

Watch out!

- We do not usually use *would* when the subject of *wish* is the same as the subject of *would*.
  ✗ ~~*Pete wishes he would earn more.*~~
- We do not use *wish* to express desires about a real, possible future. ✓ *Pete wishes he earnt / could earn more.*
- We can use *hope* instead.
  ✗ ~~*I wish the cheque arrives tomorrow.*~~ ✓ *I **hope** the cheque arrives tomorrow.*

A Write the verbs in brackets in the correct form in each gap.

The importance of nothing

There is a lateral thinking question which asks: 'If the Romans (**1**) .... (**have**) all the technology we have today, why would they not have been able to get to the moon?' (**2**) .... (**we / be**) to think about this logically, we would probably be unable to come up with a satisfactory reason. However, with lateral thinking, there is a perfectly reasonable explanation. (**3**) .... (**the Romans / be**) as technologically advanced as we are, they would indeed be stuck here on Earth. Why? Because if, 2,000 years ago, they (**4**) .... (**employ**) a Roman centurion to count down their Roman space rocket, he would have started at ten (in Latin, of course), got down to one and then stopped. The Romans had no word for 'zero', so there would have been no 'Lift-off!'

Of course, the truth is that if these hypothetical Romans (**5**) .... (**have**) the number 'zero', it would be impossible for them to have all our technology. If the concept of zero (**6**) .... (**develop**), we would not have computers today. Modern maths and physics relies absolutely on there being a numeral to represent nothingness. It may seem obvious to us now that zero should exist, but many philosophers in the past were very uncomfortable with the idea. The ancient Greeks tied themselves in logical knots by stating: 'If nothing (**7**) .... (**be**) a number, then it would be something. And if it (**8**) .... (**do**) become something, then it would no longer be nothing.' If it (**9**) .... (**be**) for an Indian mathematician called Brahmagupta, who knows what would have happened? He wrote the earliest known text stating that zero was a number. If he (**10**) .... (**do**), we might not have set foot on the moon either.

B Write the verbs in brackets in the correct form in each gap to make hypothetical situations.

1 Supposing you .... (**have**) the chance to spend a year in space, would you take it?
2 What if we .... (**decide**) to run away right now and never come back?
3 Suppose all your friends .... (**say**) bad things about you behind your back and you found out. What would you do?
4 Imagine you .... (**have**) any money or any means of getting any. What on earth could you do?
5 What if the Internet .... (**invent**)? Wouldn't that be weird?
6 Supposing the sun .... (**stop**) shining right now, how long would it take for us to realise?
7 Imagine we .... (**just / tell**) that a huge meteor was on its way to Earth. What would be the best thing to do?
8 Suppose you .... (**can**) travel back in time. Where would you go?
9 What if everyone in the world .... (**speak**) the same language?
10 Suppose it .... (**prove**) that aliens existed and were living among us!
11 I do realise it'll probably never happen but imagine her song .... (**become**) really popular!
12 What if you .... (**give**) three wishes by a genie in a bottle? What would you wish for?
13 Supposing you .... (**wake**) up one morning and found you'd gone back in time, how would you feel?
14 I know we can't travel faster than the speed of light but suppose for a moment that we .... (**be**) able to.
15 Imagine that humans .... (**can**) speak. How do you think we'd communicate?

C Look at the questions that follow each sentence and circle the answer, A, B or C which is *not* correct.

1 Why do you always act as if you were better than everyone else, John?
Is John better than everyone else?
A Yes, he is.
B No, he isn't.
C He might think he is.

2 Rod often acts as if he had lots of brothers and sisters.
Does Rod have lots of brothers and sisters?
A Yes, he does.
B No, he doesn't.
C He could have but we don't know.

3 They look as if they've been running fast.
Have they been running fast?
A Yes, they're probably sweating.
B No, they haven't.
C They could well have been.

4 There's no need to be frightened of him. Just treat him as if you didn't know he'd spent some time in prison.
Do you know about the time he spent in prison?
A Yes, you do.
B No, you know nothing about it.
C You probably do.

5 It was scary! At one point, it felt like we weren't ever going to get out of that jungle alive.
How did you feel in the jungle?
A You would get out of it easily.
B You would possibly die in the jungle.
C You didn't know if you would survive the jungle or not.

6 Sara looked as if she had just woken up.
How did Sara look?
A She looked tired and she wasn't wearing her make-up.
B She certainly hadn't just woken up then.
C She could possibly just have looked tired but got up a lot earlier.

D Write the verbs in brackets in the correct form in each gap. When a situation is hypothetical or unlikely, use unreal tenses.

1 Dave talks as though he .... (**grow up**) in the UK, but he actually only moved here three months ago.
2 I was such a mess when I got home I looked as if I .... (**drag**) through a hedge backwards!
3 It was such a bad case of flu that I honestly felt as if I .... (**go**) to die.
4 When I saw Corin on TV last night, it felt as if he .... (**do**) chat shows for ages. I can't believe this was his first one!
5 Hardip looked as if he .... (**have**) the worst possible news. In fact, he'd failed his finals.
6 Don't you think Maria sometimes looks as though she.................................. (**wish**) she'd been born in another century?
7 Rupert often dresses as though he .... (**roll**) in money but he's actually on the dole.
8 You kids are behaving as if it .... (**be**) a school night. It is, you know!
9 How can you sit there as if nothing .... (**happen**)?

E Make each of these statements or questions as polite as possible by using past tenses.

1 What time .... (**you, want**) to be woken tomorrow morning?
2 I .... (**look**) for an engagement present for a young couple.
3 We .... (**wonder**) whether you .... (**want**) to go out this evening.
4 Excuse me, sir. .... (**you, plan**) to park there for long?
5 .... (**you, wish**) to see me about something, Mr Patel?
6 .... (**you, look**) for anything in particular?
7 .... (**you, want**) milk and sugar in your tea?
8 I .... (**hope**) you .... (**give**) me a hand tomorrow.
9 How long .... (**you, intend**) to stay here?
10 I .... (**wonder**) if you .... (**pay**) by credit card, madam.

F Write a verb from the box in the correct form in each gap.

allow • buy • call • do • get up • give • go • learn • look • make • start • stop

1 It's high time you .... smoking. It's a disgusting habit!
2 It's time you .... for a job, young man!
3 I think it's time we .... a new carpet. This one's got holes in it!
4 It's time for you kids .... your homework.
5 It's about time the government .... listening to the views of ordinary people.
6 Wake up, Bonnie. It's time .... now.
7 Don't you think it's time you .... a pay rise?
8 It's time for you .... a partner in the firm; you've been with them for over eight years, after all.
9 It's definitely time I .... to stay out after ten o'clock at night.
10 It's time for us .... now, Sammy. Are you ready?
11 Isn't it about time you .... to drive?
12 Is it a good time .... Aunty Audrey? What time is it in Australia?

G Write a word or short phrase in each gap so that each second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

1 We'd prefer the successful candidate to have previous experience in the field.
We'd rather the successful candidate .... previous experience in the field.

2 Would you prefer me to come back later?
Would you rather .... later?

3 To be honest, I'd prefer you not to tell anyone about this.
To be honest, I'd rather .... anyone about this.

4 I'd prefer us to get a new kitchen rather than go on an expensive holiday.
I'd sooner .... a new kitchen than .... on an expensive holiday.

5 Dad said he'd prefer Brian to be living nearer home and I agree with him.
Dad said he'd rather Brian .... nearer home and I agree with him.

6 I would prefer her to be sent on a training course rather than sacked.
I would rather .... on a training course than sacked.

7 I'd prefer us not to talk about this right now, if you don't mind.
I'd sooner .... about this right now, if you don't mind.

8 Of course I would have preferred you to tell me the truth!
Of course I would rather .... me the truth!

9 I think Jeanne would definitely prefer to have a traditional wedding.
I think Jeanne would definitely rather .... a traditional wedding.

10 We would have preferred them not to have stayed so long, that's true.
We would sooner .... so long, that's true.

H Circle the correct word or phrase. If both are correct, circle both.

1 All of my friends have got mobiles. I wish I **have / had** one too!
2 Don't you sometimes wish you **ran / were running** this company?
3 If only we **didn't leave / hadn't left** the map at home!
4 If only we **don't / didn't** have to go to school tomorrow!
5 I do wish the bus **came / would come**. I'm going to be late.

6 Do you ever wish that you **sang / could sing** really well?

7 There's only really one thing I regret. I wish I could **go / have gone** to university but of course, in those days, it just wasn't possible.

8 Excuse me, I wish **I spoke / to speak** to the person in charge.

9 I **wish / hope** it snows tomorrow!

10 Why on earth does Geoffrey wish **he would be given / they would give him** a knighthood?

11 Well, I don't think it's a very sensible business venture, but I do wish you **luck / lucky**.

12 My grandfather always wished that he **was / had been** taller.

13 If only **you were / you'd been** watching Thomas instead of checking your e-mail. He wouldn't have fallen off the slide then.

14 I do wish the taxi driver **didn't go / wasn't going** so slowly. We're never going to get there!

15 If only Peggy **wasn't / hadn't been** sent off. I'm sure we'd have won the match.

I Choose the correct answer.

1 Imagine .... when the ancient Egyptians built the pyramids. How would your life have been different?
A you'd been living C you live
B you're living D you've been living

2 What if your cat suddenly .... to you right now? How would you react?
A had started talking C starts talking
B is starting to talk D started talking

3 Would Rubik have become rich if he .... the Rubik's Cube?
A hadn't invented C didn't invent
B hadn't been inventing D wasn't inventing

4 It's high time .... rid of this old sofa.
A we got C for us to get
B we get D to get

5 It's amazing how Jenny acts as though she and Darren .... serious problems at the moment.
A aren't having C hadn't had
B weren't having D hadn't been having

6 .... either of you want some more dessert?
A Had C Did
B Would D Were

7 If you .... to attend the wedding, would you still have to reply to the invitation?
A aren't planning C weren't planning
B don't plan D hadn't been planning

8 Apparently, Lewis would rather we .... anything special for his 18th birthday next month.
A don't organise C haven't organised
B didn't organise D aren't going to organise

J Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

1 Pauline doesn't want to be given a main part in the school play. **rather**
Pauline .... a main part in the school play.

2 We didn't get to meet the Minister and that was a great shame. **only**
If .... to meet the Minister!

3 Why don't they stop making so much noise downstairs? **wish**
I .... making so much noise downstairs!

4 What a shame I didn't see his face when you told him the news. **could**
I wish .... his face when you told him the news.

5 Don't you think they should bring out a new version of *MatchPlayer*? **about**
Don't you think it's .... out a new version of *MatchPlayer*?

6 I only knew about the meeting because Cynthia rang me. **if**
I wouldn't have known about the meeting .... me.

UNIT

14 Vocabulary

Quantity and money

Topic vocabulary: Quantity

see page 233 for definitions

- abundant (adj)
- ample (adj)
- area (n)
- average (n, adj)
- batch (v, n)
- bulk (n)
- considerable (adj)
- countless (adj)
- dimension (n)
- diminish (v)
- equation (n)
- equidistant (adj)
- expand (v)
- extent (n)
- finite (adj)
- force (v, n)
- fraction (n)
- heap (v, n)
- imbalance (n)
- immense (adj)
- intensity (n)
- magnitude (n)
- major (adj)
- mass (n)
- meagre (adj)
- minor (adj)
- minute (adj)
- multiple (n, adj)
- proportion (n)
- quantify (v)
- rate (v, n)
- ratio (n)
- ration (v, n)
- shrink (v)
- sufficient (adj)
- sum (n)
- uneven (adj)
- vast (adj)
- volume (n)
- widespread (adj)

Topic vocabulary: Money

see page 234 for definitions

- benefit (v, n)
- compensation (n)
- damages (n)
- debt (n)
- deduct (v)
- deposit (v, n)
- direct debit (n phr)
- dividend (n)
- down payment (n phr)
- finance (v, n)
- insurance (n)
- interest (n)
- investment (n)
- lump sum (n phr)
- mortgage (n)
- overdraft (n)
- pension (n)
- share (n)
- speculate (v)
- withdraw (v)

Phrasal verbs

add up to	if separate amounts add up to a total amount, together they form that total; combine to produce a particular result or effect
break down	divide something such as a total amount into separate parts *breakdown (n)*
build up	increase or make something increase; gradually develop; talk about someone or something in a very positive way so that people are impressed with them; make someone bigger, healthier and stronger, especially by making them eat more *build-up (n)*
buy off	give someone money so that they do not act against you
buy out	pay money to your business partner so that you can control all of a business you previously owned together *buyout (n)*
buy up	buy large amounts of something or all of it that is available
carry over	take something that you earn or are given in one year or period of time into the next one *carry-over (n)*
clock up	reach a particular number or amount
club together	if people club together, each of them gives some money so all the money collected can be used to buy something
drum up	try to make people support you or buy something from you
mount up	get much larger
pay back	give someone the same amount of money that you borrowed from them
pay out	spend or pay money, especially a lot of money; provide money from an amount invested over a period of time
size up	think carefully and form an opinion about a person or a situation
take away	remove one number or quantity from another number or quantity
weigh down	make someone heavy and unable to move easily; cause problems for someone or something or make someone worried

Phrases, patterns and collocations

big make a big thing out of, make it big, big on, big of sb (to do), great big, big business, big-headed, big-hearted, Big Bang, big name, big money, big game

deal deal in, deal with, deal a blow to, make a big deal (out) of, cut/make/reach/strike a deal (with), get/have a good deal (on), big deal, a good/great deal of

depth in depth, to/at a depth of, hidden depths, the depths of, out of your depth

fat get/grow fat (on), fat chance, a fat lot of good/help/use

high look/search high and low, high risk of, high priority, in high spirits, high finance, high time, on a high, a new/all-time/record high, high tech, high street

large (as) large as life, at large, in large measure/part, larger than life, large-scale

Phrases, patterns and collocations

length go to great/any/etc lengths, run the length (and breadth) of, of (un)equal length, in length, (for any) length of time, at (some/great) length

load load sth with/into, take a load off (your feet), a (whole) load of, loads of, a heavy load to bear/carry

long take a long hard look at, at long last, long way, in the long run/term, long time no see, as/so long as, long-distance, all day/week/etc long

lot that's your lot, have a lot on, lots of, a lot of, an awful lot, a lot on your mind, the lot, sb's lot (in life)

money make/earn/spend/cost/etc money, get your money's worth, put your money where your mouth is, pay good money for, made of money, for my money

pay pay dearly for, pay sb a compliment, pay your way, pay your (last) respects to, pay the penalty/price for, it pays to, pay rise, pay and display, pay freeze, take-home pay

poor (come a) poor second, poor loser, poor girl/boy/etc, poor relation, a poor man's sth

rich rich in, filthy/stinking rich, rich and famous, (the) rich and (the) poor

share share with/between/among, share and share alike, share in/of, shareholder, share index, share option, share-out

short (run) short of, (have a) short temper/fuse, draw/get the short straw, make short work of, a short while/period/spell, at short notice, short and sweet, shortlist

size that's about the size of it, cut sth to size, in size, full size, size of, downsize

small feel/look small, (it's a) small world, in a/some/no small way, with a small 'c'/etc, small change, small hours, small screen, small talk

thin have a thin skin, skating on thin ice, out of/from/into thin air, thin on the ground, thin on top

weak weak at the knees, weak on, on weak ground, weak argument, weak point/spot, weak-willed

Idioms

a drop in the ocean	a very small amount that will not have much effect
break even	if a person or business breaks even, they neither make a profit nor lose money
fall short	not reach a particular level or to fail to achieve something you were trying to do
fifty-fifty	equal, or into two equal parts
go halves	share the cost of something with someone so that you each pay 50%
it's as broad as it's long	used for saying that you cannot choose between two things or actions because they are equal
keep up with the Joneses	try to be as rich, successful, etc as your neighbours
knee-high to a grasshopper	very small, because you were very young
line your pocket(s)	obtain money, especially by acting dishonestly
lock, stock and barrel	including every part of a particular thing, situation, place, etc
six of one (and) half a dozen of the other	used for saying that two things are equally good or bad
tidy sum/amount	large sum/amount

Word formation

add	addition, addendum, addenda, additive, additional(ly)
benefit	beneficiary, beneficial(ly)
brief	debrief, (de)briefing, brevity, briefs, briefly
broad	broaden, breadth, broadly
consider	consideration, considered, considering, (in)considerable, considerably
deep	deepen, depth, deeply
distant	(equi)distance, equidistant, (equi)distantly
draw	withdraw, withdrew, drew, drawn, withdrawal, drawing, overdraft, overdrawn, withdrawn
extend	extent, extension, (un)extended, extensive(ly)
finite	infinity, infinitive, infinite(ly), infinitesimal(ly)
high	heighten, highlight, height, Highness, heightened, highbrow, highly

large	enlarge, enlargement, largely
long	prolong, lengthen, length, longevity, longhand, longing(ly), longwinded, lengthy, prolonged, lengthways, lengthwise
lot	allot, allotment
magnify	magnificence, magnification, magnificent(ly), magnifying
major	majority, majorette
minor	minority
pay	overpay, underpay, repay, overpayment, underpayment, (re)payment, payback, payee, payer, payload, payoff, payout, payroll, payslip, overpaid, underpaid, payable
portion	apportion
weigh	weight, weightlifter, weightlifting, weighting, overweight, underweight, weighted, weightless, weighty

Topic vocabulary: Quantity

A Choose the correct word.

1 Thankfully, she only suffered .... injuries in the accident.
A minor C minute
B meagre D tiny

2 A half, written as a/an .... , looks like this: 1/2.
A fraction C ratio
B rate D equation

3 In a few hundred years' time, oil will not be nearly so .... here on Earth.
A abundant C considerable
B ample D immense

4 .... is measured in cm^3 or m^3.
A Mass C Volume
B Extent D Magnitude

5 Don't wash that sweater in really hot water or it'll ....
A diminish C reduce
B shrink D decrease

6 Maps on paper can only show the world in two ....
A areas C dimensions
B masses D proportions

7 Why are all your clothes in a .... on the floor?
A bulk C heap
B batch D sum

8 Sending out e-mails that people haven't asked for to .... addresses is often known as 'spamming'.
A sufficient C countless
B widespread D multiple

B Each of the words in bold is in the wrong sentence. Write the correct words on the lines.

1 The **uneven** age of everyone in this class is 16.5. ....
2 It's impossible to **expand** how much destruction the hurricane has caused. ....
3 There was a severe shortage of food in the Second World War so many governments had to **force** it. ....
4 Balloons **ration** when you blow into them. ....
5 There isn't a/an **equidistant** number of numbers because you can always add one more onto the biggest number you can think of. ....
6 Russia is an absolutely **finite** country – it can take two weeks to travel from one side to the other by train. ....
7 Any point on a circle is **vast** from the centre. ....
8 There's a huge **quantify** between what the rich and the poorest members of society earn. ....
9 The **imbalance** that makes things drop to the ground is called gravity. ....
10 The walls of the old cottage were rough and **average** in height. ....
11 The density of an object is calculated by dividing its **intensity** by its volume. ....
12 The storm hit the coast with such **mass** that many buildings in the region were destroyed. ....

Topic vocabulary: Money

C Circle the correct word or phrase.

1 The judge awarded us 1,000 euros **damage / damages** when the builder admitted he hadn't followed safety standards.
2 The hotel was so bad I'm thinking of asking for **compensation / debit** from the travel agency.
3 Many companies **withdraw / deduct** tax from your salary before you get paid.
4 Hello. I'd like to **withdraw / deduct** 500 euros from my account, please.
5 You can pay in 12 monthly instalments, but you'll have to make an initial **lump sum / down payment** of £25.
6 If you win, you can choose to receive it all in one go as a **lump sum / down payment** or you can have a certain amount per year for life.

7 I'll **finance / deposit** the money in your bank account in the morning.
8 I'm thinking of **speculating / depositing** on the stock exchange. Do you think it's risky?
9 Why don't you arrange to pay your bills by direct **debt / debit**? That way, they're automatically paid from your account.
10 Where is the company planning to get the **sum / finance** for this project from?

D **Write a word from the box in the correct form in each gap.**

benefit • debt • dividend • insurance • interest • investment • mortgage • overdraft • pension • share

Money management – an introduction

- Different bank accounts pay different amounts of (**1**) .... It makes sense to shop around before you open an account.
- If your salary doesn't always get you to the end of the month, you'll have to arrange a/an (**2**) .... with your bank, so it's worth being on good terms with your bank manager.
- If you're planning to buy a house, you'll probably need to get a/an (**3**) .... Once again, shop around to get the best deal.
- If you're thinking about taking out life (**4**) .... , make sure you talk to an independent financial advisor. They'll give you unbiased advice.
- Make sure you know what (**5**) .... you're entitled to. If you're on a low income and have a family, you may be surprised how much you'll receive from the state each month.
- Even if you're only in your early twenties, it pays to plan for the future. If you can, start paying into a/an (**6**) .... scheme now to ensure you have a comfortable retirement.
- It goes without saying that you should try to avoid getting into too much (**7**) .... Only buy things on credit if you're sure you can afford to pay the monthly instalments.
- If you do manage to start saving a little each month, you might want to think about buying some (**8**) .... Their value can go down of course, but they can be a good (**9**) .... , particularly in the mid- to long-term. Many companies pay an annual (**10**) .... to shareholders – this can be a welcome source of extra income if the company's doing well.

Phrasal verbs

E **Write one word in each gap.**

Dealing with debt

If your debts are mounting (**1**) .... and your financial problems are weighing you (**2**) .... , the first thing to do is to stay calm. Sizing (**3**) .... your financial situation – however painful – is far better than just ignoring it. The next thing to do is to make a financial plan.

At the top, write down your total monthly income. Then make a list of all your monthly outgoings. Break these outgoings (**4**) .... into essentials (such as electricity bills and food) and luxuries (such as nights out). Cross the luxuries off – there's no more of them for the time being – and take your essential outgoings (**5**) .... from your income. The amount that's remaining is the amount you can afford to pay (**6**) .... to your creditors each month. Most credit card companies are willing to accept payment in instalments as they know that if you – and they – just let the debt build (**7**) .... indefinitely it will never be paid off. If your essential expenses add up (**8**) .... more than your income, then your situation is more serious and you'll have to consider drastic action either to increase your income or reduce the amount of money you have to pay (**9**) .... each month on essentials.

F **Match to make sentences.**

1 The big supermarket chains have bought ....
2 If we club ....
3 Phil's clocked ....
4 One good way to drum ....
5 Six managers bought ....
6 I've got two weeks' holiday left but I think I'll carry ....
7 I'd never buy ....

A up over 700 hours of flying time already.
B up support is to get people in the high street to sign a petition.
C it over till next year and take it in January.
D up most of the land round here already.
E out the company when it was threatened with closure.
F blackmailers off – I'd rather go to the police and face the consequences.
G together, I'm sure we can afford to get Mrs Timms a nice leaving present.

G **Phrasal verbs with *together*, such as *club together*, often contain the idea of people doing something as a group. Tick the sentences which contain that idea.**

1 Eight countries in the region have **banded together** to make a free-trade zone. ....
2 I didn't know anyone was coming to dinner, so I had to **cobble** a meal **together** from whatever was in the fridge. ....
3 Why don't we all **get together** on Tuesday evening? ....
4 The twins have been behaving so badly recently. I should **knock** their heads **together**! ....
5 Everyone in the village **pulled together** to make the carnival a success. ....
6 The only way we'll all get off this mountain alive is if we **stick together**. ....
7 The three of us **put together** quite an interesting proposal. ....

Phrases, patterns and collocations

H **Circle the correct word.**

1 It took quite a while but at **slow** / **long** last the website's starting to take off.
2 Did you really offer Liz a 50 per cent **share** / **piece** in the business?
3 No, you can't borrow a thousand euros! I'm not made **of** / **with** money, you know!
4 Nice apartments are a bit **thin** / **slim** on the ground round here.
5 I literally went weak **on** / **at** the knees when he told me how much he'd won.
6 Let's discuss this **in** / **with** depth tomorrow.
7 The field's just over four hectares **at** / **in** size.
8 They said on the news the escaped convict's still **at** / **in** large.
9 The problem with Jimmy is that he's such a **weak** / **poor** loser.
10 I hate landlords who grow **fat** / **large** on the rent they collect.
11 The area used to be very **rich** / **wealthy** in tin and copper.
12 It's a good business opportunity **for** / **with** my money.
13 There were a whole **number** / **load** of people I knew at the opening.

I **Write one word in each gap.**

1 Jane just stood there and watched while we did all the work. A .... lot of use that was!
2 You can make a lot of money if you work in .... finance.
3 We've travelled the length and .... of the country looking for the next Teen Star!
4 Hi Chloe! Long time no .... !
5 The first moments of the universe are often known as the Big ....
6 It only cost five euros and we were there all day. We really did get our money's ....

7 It's a pay and .... car park, so get a ticket from the machine before you go shopping.
8 'That was very generous of you to give half of your lunch to Tony.'
'Share and share .... , that's what I say.'
9 And suddenly Diana appeared out of .... air.
10 I think you're on very weak .... with that argument.

J For each question, write one word which can be used in all three sentences.

1 I think we're running .... of petrol.
Nick would be a terrible teacher – he's got such a .... temper.
At least she apologised for calling me in at such .... notice.

2 It .... to shop around when you're looking for a mortgage.
I don't mind Guy moving in for a few weeks as long as he .... his way.
It always puts a smile on my face when someone .... me a compliment.

3 You can have one more bowl of ice cream but then that's your ....
Maybe it's just my .... in life never to find someone to settle down with.
I've got a .... on this weekend, so I doubt we'll be able to meet up unfortunately.

4 Pauline seems to be in very .... spirits this afternoon.
There's quite a .... risk of side effects with this medicine, apparently.
It's .... time you started thinking about your future.

5 Tom's actually quite a .... name in the poultry industry.
I've said I'm sorry; there's no need to make such a .... thing out of it.
It's every teenager's dream to make it .... in the entertainment business.

6 I don't think I've got any .... change, I'm afraid.
You made me feel so .... when you criticised me like that in front of everyone.
I'm really not keen on making .... talk at parties.

K Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

1 Some people will do anything to make money. **lengths**
Some people will .... to make money.

2 I don't know why you're saying this is so important. **deal**
I don't know why you're .... this.

3 Simon said he had no idea what he was doing for the first few weeks of his new job. **depth**
Simon said he .... for the first few weeks of his new job.

4 I think they're largely responsible for what's happened. **small**
I hold them .... responsible for what's happened.

5 We've searched everywhere for the lottery ticket and can't find it anywhere. **low**
We've searched .... for the lottery ticket and can't find it anywhere.

6 We talked about investments for a very long time. **length**
We talked .... about investments.

Idioms

L Each of the words or phrases in bold is incorrect. Rewrite them correctly.

1 I was hoping I'd raise about 1,000 euros for the local hospital, but I fell **small** by a few hundred euros. ....
2 Jerry and I agreed to split the costs **twenty-twenty** so we'd each pay exactly half. ....
3 There are two ways to get to Innsbruck, but I think it's as **wide** as it's long. ....
4 My dad taught me about the importance of saving money when I was knee-high to a **locust**. ....
5 So many politicians just seem to be trying to line their own **wallets** these days – it's disgraceful. ....
6 We shouldn't worry about paying for that advert. The cost is a drop in the **sea** in terms of the whole marketing budget. ....
7 I've decided to sell the whole business – lock, stock and **trigger**. ....
8 Don't pay the whole bill. Let's go **half**. ....
9 There are two ways to get to Innsbruck, but I think it's six of one and half a **twelve** of the other. ....
10 Lucy managed to save quite a **clean** sum last summer. ....
11 We're not going to make a profit this year, but we should just break **equal**. ....
12 Colin gets a new car every August. He's just trying to **stay** up with the Joneses, if you ask me. ....

Word formation

M Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals.

1 How dare they .... blame without knowing all the facts first? **PORTION**
2 At the .... of summer, the temperature can reach 50^{O}C. **HIGH**
3 I'd like to make a .... from my bank account, please. **DRAW**
4 Doris Carter, who is 107 today, puts her .... down to having a loving family, and seven cups of tea a day. **LONG**
5 A .... of residents now support the proposal to build a new roundabout in the town centre. **MAJOR**
6 What strength .... do those binoculars have? **MAGNIFY**
7 We took out a loan from the bank, so we're going to have to make monthly .... for the next five years. **PAY**
8 Liskeard and Callington are basically .... from here, so it'll take about the same time to get to either of them. **DISTANT**
9 Their help was hugely .... **BENEFIT**
10 Please keep e-mails short. .... makes everyone's lives easier. **BRIEF**
11 The school's football pitch has been .... over the summer to conform to new national standards. **LONG**
12 I don't want to .... the agony for you, but I'm afraid you'll have to wait another two days to know how much money you've won. **LONG**
13 You might find it hard to answer all the questions in the .... time. **LOT**

N **Use the word given in capitals to form a word that fits in the space.**

Albert Einstein

Albert Einstein's work has enormously (**1**) .... our understanding of the **BROAD**
universe and has had a (**2**) .... impact on all our lives. Thanks to his equation **CONSIDER**
$E=mc^2$, we now know that energy and mass (or matter) are directly related to each other. To
a very great (**3**) .... , it is Einstein who is responsible for our now knowing that **EXTEND**
space and time are actually one thing: space-time. (**4**) .... , without $E=mc^2$, **ADD**
we would not have nuclear power – and nuclear weapons – today.
Einstein did not become famous because of $E=mc^2$, which was first published in 1905. At the
time, his paper was (**5**) .... ignored, even by most scientists. Indeed, it was **LARGE**
14 years later that Einstein first made headlines round the world, when scientific evidence
began to show that his Theory of General Relativity, which was an (**6**) .... of his **EXTEND**
1905 paper, was correct.
The idea that only a tiny (**7**) .... of scientists can understand Einstein's theories **MINOR**
comes from this media reporting. The *New York Times* asked its golfing correspondent to cover
the story. As he was clearly out of his (**8**) .... , he presumed that everyone else **DEEP**
was too. A myth was born.
Space, time, energy and mass are (**9**) .... subjects – no pun intended – to **WEIGH**
get to grips with, but Einstein's ideas are not impossible to understand by any means. The
implications of Einstein's work for our lives, however, may well be (**10**) .... **FINITE**

O **The prefix *en-*, as in *enlarge*, can be put on some adjectives, nouns and verbs to make verbs. Write these words, with *en-*, in the correct category.**

able • act • circle • code • danger • dear • force
large • list • rage • rich • slave • throne • tomb • trap

put in/on (a) ...	make ...	bring into effect
encircle	*enlarge*	*enact*

P **Write a word with *en-* from exercise O in the correct form in each gap.**

1 Are you really thinking of .... in the army?
2 This new software should .... us to speed up the distribution process no end.
3 There's no point having a law if the police can't .... it.
4 We were completely .... by journalists and photographers and couldn't get to the car.
5 The destruction of the rainforests is .... the survival of a number of species.
6 Can we .... the photo so we can see their faces in a bit more detail?

7 Units 13 and 14

A **Use the word given in capitals to form a word that fits in the space.**

A recent government report (**1**) .... (**HIGH**) the (**2**) .... (**EXTEND**) to which credit card debt is spiralling. Blame is (**3**) .... (**PORTION**) solely to the credit card companies, who, the report claims, will go to any (**4**) .... (**LONG**) to attract new customers. (**5**) .... (**ADD**), according to the report, they are responsible for encouraging existing customers to borrow more by raising their monthly limit. Certainly a recent advertising campaign by a major credit card company – which has since been (**6**) .... (**DRAW**) – seems to bear these findings out.

However, while the responsibility of the credit card companies is not (**7**) .... (**CONSIDER**), it is, in my opinion, unfair to lay all the blame on their shoulders. The (**8**) .... (**MAJOR**) of credit card users are able to make their (**9**) .... (**PAY**) on time without difficulty. There will always be a (**10**) .... (**MINOR**) of people in our society who are financially irresponsible. If they run up huge debts, is it really the credit card company's fault?

(1 mark per answer)

B **Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.**

11 You're asking for trouble by arguing with the boss so aggressively like that. **ice**
You're .... by arguing with the boss so aggressively like that.

12 Are you saying Dan gets angry easily, Fiona? **short**
Are you saying Dan .... , Fiona?

13 There's no doubt shopping around is a good idea. **pays**
There's no doubt .... around.

14 I'd prefer to get value for money by staying at the theme park all day. **worth**
I'd rather I .... by staying at the theme park all day.

15 I think Dad's worried about a lot of things at the moment. **mind**
I think Dad .... at the moment.

16 Why didn't you search everywhere for your wallet? Then you might have found it. **low**
If .... for your wallet, you might have found it.

17 I can't cope at all with my new job, and that bothers me. **depth**
I wish .... my new job.

18 Jane was the unlucky one so she had to tell Ed he was losing his company car. **straw**
If Jane .... , she wouldn't have had to tell Ed he was losing his company car.

(2 marks per answer)

C Write a word from the box in each gap. There is one word you will not use.

compensation • debit • deposit • dividend • mortgage • overdraft • payment • pension • sum

19 It'll take me 25 years to pay off the .... Then the house will be mine!

20 We pay all our bills by direct .... , so we don't have to spend hours in long queues.

21 We're paying for the car in instalments. In fact, we made the first down .... yesterday.

22 When the insurance policy matures, you can either have a one-off lump .... payment, or receive a certain amount per month for ten years.

23 My grandfather used to be in the army, so he gets a small serviceman's .... every month.

24 I never seem to have any money left in the last week of the month. Maybe I should arrange a/an .... with the bank.

25 We ask that you pay a 10% .... now, and the balance on receipt of the goods.

26 The judge awarded Mrs Thompson £300,000 .... for unfair dismissal.

(1 mark per answer)

D Circle the correct word.

27 If we all **collect / club / group** together, we should be able to afford something special.

28 You'll need to **drum / beat / bang** up a lot more support before the council listens to you.

29 Reggie's **watched / timed / clocked** up over 3,000 hours' flying time already.

30 My debts are **mounting / climbing / getting** up and I'm not bringing enough money in. It's worrying!

31 Let's **shape / size / lengthen** the situation up very carefully before making any important decisions.

32 I know it sounds a lot, but if you **break / knock / hit** it down into an amount per month, it's actually not that much.

33 I will lend you the money, but you have to **give / pay / hand** me back by the end of the week.

34 Hundreds of British people have been **buying / spending / purchasing** up land all over western Crete.

(1 mark per answer)

E Choose the correct answer.

35 It's high time .... up to your responsibilities as a parent.
A to face
C you faced
B you face
D you have faced

36 I'd rather you .... anything for tonight, but I suppose it's too late to change things now.
A not arrange
C didn't arrange
B don't arrange
D hadn't arranged

37 Do you wish .... a formal complaint?
A to make
C you made
B making
D you to make

38 If only people in our grandparents' generation .... the opportunities that we take for granted nowadays.
A could have
C would have had
B could have had
D have had

39 Joan definitely wishes she .... to do all the housework.
A doesn't have
C wouldn't have
B didn't have
D hadn't

40 .... any heavier, we'd never have made it on time.
A Were the traffic
C Should the traffic be
B Had the traffic been
D Be the traffic

41 I'd never kill an animal unless it .... me first.
A has attacked
C attacks
B will attack
D attacked

42 Imagine the Internet .... created. Our lives would be so different, don't you think?
A wasn't
C to not be
B hadn't been
D to not have been

(1 mark per answer)

Total mark: ..../50

UNIT 15 Grammar

Adjectives and adverbs

Position of adjectives

Before a noun	*I love your **new house**.*
After verbs such as *appear, be, become, feel, get, grow, look, seem, smell, sound, taste* and *turn*	*The material this dress is made out of **feels rough**.*

Watch out!

- The verbs in the table above are not normally followed by adverbs. However, some of them can be followed by adverbs when the verb refers to an action.
  ✓ *She **looked angrily** at the man behind the counter.*
- After *as, how, so, this* (= *so*), *that* (= *so*) and *too*, adjectives come before the article.
  ✓ *I could never live in **as crowded a city** as Tokyo.* ✓ *Tokyo's **so/that crowded a city** that I'd hate to live there.*
  ✓ ***How crowded a city** is Tokyo?* ✓ *I could never live in Tokyo – it's **too crowded a city**.*
- Some adjectives only appear after a verb and not before a noun. These include adjectives beginning with *a-*, such as *afraid, aghast, alike, alive, alone, asleep, awake, etc*
  ✓ *A boy was **asleep** in the street.* ✗ ~~*There was an **asleep** boy in the street.*~~

Position of multiple adjectives

When more than one adjective is used before a noun, they usually appear in the following order, sometimes separated by commas: judgement, size, shape, colour, origin, material, purpose	*We've got a **lovely little wooden** cabin in the mountains.* *I love your **long, red, Chinese, silk** curtains.* *What you need for your living room is a **large oak dining** table.*

Adjectives used as nouns

To refer to members of a general social group	*We need to provide better housing for **the poor**.*
To refer to members of a specific group	*When the building collapsed, **the injured** were rushed to hospital.*
To refer to some nationalities	***The French** have introduced new housing regulations in Paris.*

Position of adverbs

There are three places in a clause where an adverb (or adverbial phrase) might appear: at the beginning, at the end and with the verb. Different kinds of adverb go in different positions, and some may go in more than one position.

Adverbs do not normally appear between a verb and its direct object.	✗ ~~*They built **very quickly** the house.*~~ ✓ *They built the house **very quickly.***
With verbs formed using auxiliary verbs, the adverb normally follows the (first) auxiliary.	✓ *The town **has always been** popular with tourists.* ✓ *Our house **will probably have been decorated** by the time you get there.*
Adverbs of frequency (*always, often*, etc) follow auxiliary verbs and *be* and come before other verbs.	✓ ***I'm rarely** in the city centre.* ✓ *I **rarely go** to the city centre.*
Connecting adverbs usually go at the beginning of a clause.	✓ *We bought it as an investment; **then**, all the property prices in the area fell.*

Comparisons

Comparative: to compare things or people that are different	*Your flat is much **bigger** and **more comfortable** than ours.*
Superlative: to compare one member of a group of people or things with the whole group	*Mexico City is probably my **least favourite** city.* *I think my home town is the **best** place in the world.*

Comparative and superlative modifiers

Modifiers with comparatives: *(quite) a bit, a great deal, a good deal, a little, (quite) a lot, any, considerably, even, far, just, little, much, no, slightly, somewhat*	*This area has become **considerably** more crowded and **far** noisier in the last ten years.*
Modifiers with superlatives: *by far, far and away, easily, far from, much, quite*	*If you ask me, Ladybridge is **easily** the nicest area of town to live in.*

Structures used to make comparisons

(nearly/almost/just/half/twice/easily/etc) as … as	*Platinum is about **twice as** expensive **as** gold.*
not (nearly/quite) as/so … as	*Iron is**n't nearly as** hard **as** diamond.*
nothing like as … as / nowhere near as … as	*Iron is **nothing like as / nowhere near as** hard **as** diamond.*
the … , the …	***The taller** the building, **the greater** the fire risk.*

Watch out!

✓ *Paper **is not nearly as** strong **as** plastic.* (large difference between the things being referred to)

✓ *Gold **is not quite as** valuable **as** it was last month.* (small difference between the things being referred to)

Gradable and ungradable adjectives

Ungradable adjectives describe qualities which are extreme and which cannot be 'more' or 'less', eg *amazing, dead, exhausted, fantastic, helpless, impossible, incredible, necessary, perfect, pointless, right, splendid, unacceptable, wonderful, wrong*, etc. Other adjectives are **gradable**.

Modifiers with ungradable adjectives: *absolutely, completely, quite, totally, utterly*, etc	*After working on the building site all day, Tim was **absolutely exhausted**.*
Modifiers with gradable adjectives: *a bit, a little, fairly, quite, really, too, very*, etc	*Pete was **a bit tired** after working on the building site all day, but it wasn't too bad.*

Watch out!

When *quite* is used with gradable adjectives, it means 'rather, fairly'. When *quite* is used with ungradable adjectives, it means 'absolutely, completely'.

✓ *Our flat's **quite** nice, but not perfect.*

✓ *I love your flat! The balconies are **quite** splendid!*

Confusing cases

Some words have the same form as an adjective and as an adverb and some also form adjectives with *-ly*. The different forms can have different meanings. These include:

fair / fairly
straight
free / freely
fine / finely
late / lately
high / highly
short / shortly
right / rightly
fast
well
hard / hardly
wide / widely
near / nearly

✓ *Sandstone is not a very **hard** material.*
✓ *I could **hardly** hear the music.*
✓ *Hit it too **hard** and you'll break it.*
✗ ~~*Hit it too **hardly** and you'll break it.*~~

Watch out!

Some adjectives end in *–ly*, eg *costly, deadly, friendly, likely, lively, lonely, lovely*.
They do not form adverbs, but we often use a phrase such as *in a … way* to describe how something is done.

✓ *She looked at me **in a very friendly way**.*

A If the word in bold is correct, put a tick. If it is incorrect, rewrite it correctly.

1 Whenever she gets home from work, Mum always seems **unhappily** about something. ....
2 I don't know what's in it, but it smells **strongly** of cinnamon. ....
3 When Terry finally became **calmly**, I asked him what had happened. ....
4 I'm glad I didn't go on holiday with Efy and Graham because it sounded **dreadfully**. ....
5 It's hard to believe that the seeds you planted have grown so **quickly**. ....
6 The car sped past me and turned **sharply** into the next street. ....
7 The actors could tell that the audience were growing **restlessly**. ....
8 Why are you looking so **accusingly** at me? ....
9 Add some chilli to the curry because it doesn't taste **spicily** enough. ....
10 I don't think I get **angrily** very often, but one or two people do really annoy me. ....
11 In the darkness, I felt **nervously** for the light switch and finally found it. ....
12 Tim appeared **tiredly** after his tennis match. ....

B Complete the sentences using the words in bold. Add any other words you need.

1 I haven't had this .... at work for a long time. (**day**, **hard**)
2 So .... was it that I never went back to that country again. (**experience**, **frightening**)
3 If we'd known how .... it was going to be, we wouldn't have agreed to do it. (**difficult, task**)
4 It was as .... as I'd seen in a long time. (**moving, performance**)
5 Alex has got that .... he never seems to have to work hard at school. (**good, memory**)
6 It was too .... to turn down. (**offer**, **tempting**)
7 No matter how .... you have, there's always the risk of failure. (**career**, **successful**)
8 I don't think I'll ever be as .... as my brother. (**good, pianist**)

C Complete the sentences using the words in bold in the correct order.

1 Oh, what a/an .... sculpture! Did you buy it when you were there? (**African**, **gorgeous**, **little**)
2 Have you seen my .... boots anywhere? I'm sure I left them here. (**black**, **climbing**, **leather**)
3 They've got some .... shoes in the sale at Derbyshire's. (**ballet**, **fantastic**, **pink**, **Russian**, **silk**)
4 Didn't the bride look lovely in that .... dress? (**beautiful**, **cotton**, **cream**, **wedding**)
5 Does Spencer still drive that .... car of his? (**blue**, **foreign**, **ugly**)
6 It's hard to imagine that such a .... frog is so important to the local environment. (**Amazonian**, **green**, **tiny**)
7 Andrea has a .... rug on the floor in her bedroom. (**long**, **lovely**, **sheepskin**, **white**)
8 The clown was wearing a .... wig and a red nose. (**funny**, **plastic**, **red**)
9 I couldn't believe it when Sylvia turned up in the same .... hat that she wore last time. (**horrible**, **wide**, **yellow**)
10 When are you going to get rid of those .... trousers? (**dreadful**, **French**, **nylon**, **short**)

D Circle the best position for each adverb in bold. There may be more than one answer.

THE MILLENNIUM DOME

1 The Millennium Dome, or the O_2 as (**A**) it (**B**) is (**C**) called (**D**) now that the mobile company of that name owns the naming rights, has become a distinctive part of the London skyline. (**correctly**)

2 It was built for the millennium celebrations of 2000, and (**A**) a number of people (**B**) criticised (**C**) the high cost of construction (**D**). (**strongly**)

3 Costing £789 million to build and operate for a year, (**A**) it (**B**) failed (**C**) to reach (**D**) its target of 12 million visitors. (**completely**)

4 Even Michael Heseltine, the politician who was originally in charge of the Dome, later admitted that (**A**) it (**B**) would (**C**) have been (**D**) better to build something else. (**probably**)

5 Although the press were critical, (**A**) people who visited the Dome (**B**) had (**C**) a positive experience (**D**). (**often**)

6 Even with low visitor numbers, (**A**) it (**B**) was (**C**) the most popular attraction in Britain in 2000 (**D**). (**easily**)

7 Although (**A**) it (**B**) is (**C**) closed (**D**), the Dome has a bright future as a venue for pop concerts and other

E Complete with an appropriate comparative or superlative form of the words in the box. Add any other words you need.

demanding • few • funny • hard • long • observant • reliable • slight • ugly • valuable

1 I thought this week's programme was far .... last week's, so it's definitely improving.
2 My new laptop is .... my old one, but I suppose it was quite cheap so I shouldn't be surprised.
3 Jim Carter knows what he wants from employees, and I don't think I've ever worked for .... manager.
4 Because of its internal structure, diamond is .... substance known.
5 Beside the house, there stood .... tower block I had ever seen.
6 If the conflict goes on any .... , more people are going to lose their lives.
7 .... his *Portrait of Dr. Gachet*, van Gogh's *Irises* still sold for $49 million.
8 Even .... amongst us soon realise when a friend has changed their appearance in some way.
9 I'm afraid that what you're saying doesn't make .... difference to how I feel.
10 Frankly, I think .... people who know about this, the better.

F Circle the correct word or phrase.

1 It's good to see that Rebecca has become a great **lot / deal** more independent than she used to be.
2 The hotel was **away / far** from the most luxurious I've stayed in.
3 The new law is **less / little more** than an attempt to divert attention from the real problems.
4 This is **by / from** far the worst public transport system I've ever been on.
5 Have you noticed that the neighbours' trees have grown **easily / considerably** bigger?
6 My mum's getting **a little / little** older now, so she needs someone to look after her.
7 It was **quite / somewhat** the most delightful little puppy I had ever seen!
8 If you have **any / even** further problems with your computer, don't hesitate to call me.
9 I'd say that the woman I saw running away from the bank was **any / no** taller than I am.
10 Imogen was told that she would have to work a **better / good** deal harder than she had been doing.

G Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

1 The red shoes are slightly more expensive than the green ones. **quite**
The green shoes .... the red ones.

2 Richard is much more committed to the project than Grant seems to be. **like**
Grant seems to be .... to the project.

3 If you argue about it more, we'll get to Denver later. **the**
The .... we'll get to Denver.

4 My new MP3 player was twice the price of yours. **expensive**
Your MP3 player was .... mine.

5 England is much bigger than Wales. **nowhere**
Wales .... England.

6 Derek is quite a bit more adventurous than his sister, Annabelle. **nearly**
Annabelle .... her brother, Derek.

7 Bigger cities have higher crime rates. **the**
The .... the crime rate.

8 Their first album was considerably more successful than their second. **near**
Their second album .... their first.

H Underline the word or phrase which cannot complete the sentence.

1 Jackie didn't like the show so much, but I thought it was **absolutely** / **quite** / **very** perfect.
2 You were **completely** / **fairly** / **totally** right about Laura – she is from Manchester.
3 We've been **absolutely** / **a little** / **quite** busy at work, so I'm looking forward to a break.
4 It's **completely** / **totally** / **very** pointless trying to persuade Michael to lend you his new car.
5 Anthony seems to be **a little** / **really** / **utterly** worried about the situation.
6 Jackson's shot from the halfway line was **absolutely** / **quite** / **too** incredible.
7 If you think I'm going to help you after what you did, you're **a bit** / **completely** / **quite** wrong.
8 In the end, the documents that the tax office sent us were **completely** / **totally** / **very** useless.

I Complete using the words in the boxes. You need to use one word in each box twice.

hard • hardly

1 Don't press the keys so .... or you'll break the keyboard.
2 This is .... the most attractive part of the city, is it?
3 It's .... to understand why Isabelle reacted in the way she did.

fair • fairly

4 It's not ....! You never let me go to parties!
5 Divide the money between you ....
6 I'm .... satisfied with your progress.

free • freely

7 They're giving away .... tickets to the concert!
8 This tool moves .... in any direction.
9 Can we get in .... if we're members of the club?

high • highly

10 I'm always uncomfortable in .... places.
11 This request is .... unusual.
12 The dog jumped .... and cleared the fence.

J Write one word in each gap.

VERTICAL LIVING

In the 1950s and 60s, the tower block seemed to offer a solution to two problems. Firstly, houses built (**1**) .... earlier in the century, or even in the nineteenth century, were (**2**) .... longer suitable for people to live in. Secondly, an increasing population placed a great (**3**) .... more strain on available space. New, vertical tower blocks, able to house more people in a relatively small space (**4**) .... a horizontal street, started to appear. The more people got used to living in these structures, (**5**) .... more they would form the heart of communities, or so the thinking went.

Initially, these blocks were (**6**) .... popular than the old housing they replaced. They were (**7**) .... and away the (**8**) .... affordable alternative for many people, and they also offered excellent views.

However, these buildings soon became (**9**) .... attractive to residents as crime rose. It also became clear that a tower block was (**10**) .... like as friendly a place to live in (**11**) .... a traditional street. More often (**12**) .... not, residents in a tower block didn't interact with each other on a regular basis. Although modern tower blocks are making something of a comeback amongst young professionals, they still have a poor reputation in the minds of many people.

K Choose the correct answer.

1 I .... when Colin asked me to make him a cup of tea.
A had sat hard down C had hardly sat down
B had sat down hardly D had hard sat down

2 Where's that .... dress that your grandma gave you?
A lovely, long, pink, silk C lovely, pink, long, silk
B pink, long, lovely, silk D long, pink, silk, lovely

3 Although he .... to Ernest Hemingway, I think his books are unique.
A often has been compared
B has often been compared
C has often compared
D has been comparing often

4 Don't you think .... in society have a responsibility to help those less fortunate?
A wealthy C wealthiest
B wealthier D the wealthy

5 The rents in this area are .... the highest in the city.
A far from away C far and away
B away by far D far to away

6 The coastguard boarded the ship and found ....
A four injured alive men C four injured men alive
B alive four men injured D injured four alive men

7 To be honest, Harry has .... than you have.
A been more helpful considerably
B been considerably more helpful
C been more considerably helpful
D considerably been more helpful

8 I'm .... my brother is.
A nowhere like so ambitious
B nothing near as ambitious as
C nothing as ambitious than
D nowhere near as ambitious as

UNIT 16 Vocabulary

Materials and the built environment

Topic vocabulary: Materials

see page 235 for definitions

block (v, n)
brittle (adj)
chip (v, n)
compact (v, adj)
concentrate (v)
crack (v, n)
crumb (n)
crush (v, n)
dense (adj)
dilute (v, adj)
dissolve (v)
fabric (n)
firm (adj)
flake (v, n)
fragile (adj)
friction (n)
grain (n)
gravity (n)
grind (v)
hollow (adj)
liquid (n, adj)
lump (v, n)
mineral (n)
mould (v, n)
opaque (adj)
pat (v, n)
pile (v, n)
polish (v, n)
scratch (v, n)
scrub (v, n)
smash (v)
solid (n, adj)
speck (n)
squash (v, n)
squeeze (v, n)
stack (v, n)
stiff (adj)
stroke (v, n)
stuff (v, n)
substance (n)
synthetic (adj)
tear (v, n)
texture (n)
transparent (adj)

Topic vocabulary: The built environment

see page 236 for definitions

built-up (adj)
bypass (v, n)
construct (v)
demolish (v)
district (n)
dwell (v)
estate (n)
evict (v)
high-rise (adj)
housing (n)
infrastructure (n)
inner city (n phr)
occupy (v)
populated (adj)
skyline (n)
skyscraper (n)
structure (n)
suburban (adj)
surroundings (n pl)
urban (adj)

Phrasal verbs

board up	cover a window or door with wooden boards
close up	lock the doors of a building or business
come out	be removed from something such as clothing or cloth by washing or rubbing; have a particular result or end in a particular way
cut out	remove something from a larger piece by cutting; stop eating something or doing something, especially because it is bad for your health
fix up	clean, repair or decorate something
knock/pull/ tear down	destroy a building or wall
pile up	if something piles up or someone piles it up, the amount of it increases a lot
prop up	stop something from falling by putting something under it or against it; help a government, system, organisation, etc continue to exist, especially by providing financial or military support
put in	fix something such as equipment in the place where it will be used and make it ready to use; make an official request, claim, offer, etc
put together	make something by joining all its parts; produce or organize something using many different things; choose people or things to form a team or group
put up	build something such as a wall, fence or house; let someone stay in your house
set up	build a structure or put it in a particular place; make a piece of equipment ready for use
spread out	if people in a group spread out, they move away from one another so that they cover a large area
take down	separate a large structure into pieces; write down information or a statement
water down	add water to a drink or liquid in order to make it less strong, dilute; make something such as a statement or newspaper article less offensive, powerful or detailed
wear down	make something gradually disappear or become thinner by using or rubbing it; make someone gradually lose their energy or confidence

Phrases, patterns and collocations

bend bend sth into (shape/a circle/etc), (go) round the bend, sharp/tight bend

block block sb's way, block of flats, apartment block, high-rise block, mental/writer's block

brick bricks and mortar, brick wall, bricklayer

erect erect (a statue/monument/etc) to sb, stand erect, erect posture

Phrases, patterns and collocations

floor take/have the floor, ground/first/etc floor, floor show, floor plan, floorboard

fold fold sth in half/two, fold sth neatly/carefully, fold flat, fold your arms

foundation lay the foundations of, have no foundation, without foundation, foundation course, foundation stone

house move house, on the house, housework, housekeeping, housekeeper, housewife, houseproud

mark mark sth with/on, leave a mark on, burn/scratch/etc mark, the halfway mark, be quick/slow off the mark, hit/miss the mark

material material goods/possessions, material rewards, material resources, raw material(s)

matter a matter of, in a matter of (days, etc), no matter how, no matter what, to make matters worse, as a matter of fact/course/urgency, a matter of opinion, subject matter

metal precious metal, metal detector

shape shape sth into, take the shape of, take shape, in / out of shape, all shapes and sizes

sharp keep a sharp eye on, sharp rise/increase/drop/fall, sharp criticism, have a sharp tongue

smooth smooth the way for, smooth-talking, smooth sailing, smooth operator

surface on the surface, beneath/under the surface, surface area, kitchen surface

table set/clear/lay the table, table a proposal/etc, on the table, table manners, timetable

tough get tough with, tough on, tough luck, tough love, tough guy

town town planning, the town of, the outskirts/edge of town, town centre

window window-shopping, window dressing, out (of) the window, a window on/onto/into

Idioms

a home from home	a place where you feel as relaxed as you do in your own home
blot on the landscape	something that makes a place look less attractive, for example an ugly building
commuter belt	area surrounding a large city where many people who work in that city live
concrete jungle	unpleasant part of a city where there are a lot of ugly buildings close together
home sweet home	used for saying that you are happy to be back in your own home
in the sticks	in an area far from the town or city
make yourself at home	feel relaxed and behave in the same way as you do in your own home
on the street	with no place to live
on the town	spending the evening enjoying yourself in bars, clubs, theatres, etc
satellite town	town or city that is close to and depends on a larger city

Word formation

analyse	analysis, analyst, analytic(al), analytically
architect	architecture, architectural(ly)
dense	density, densely
house	housing, household(er), houseful
inhabit	inhabitant, habitat, habitation, habitable, (un)inhabitable, (un)inhabited
manufacture	manufacturer, manufacturing
material	materialise, materialism, materialistic, immaterial, materially
metal	metallic, metallurgy
object	objective, objection, objectivity, objector, (un)objectionable, objectively
repair	repairman/men, repairer, reparation, repairable, irreparable, irreparably

reside	residence, residency, resident, residing, residential(ly)
rigid	rigidity, rigidly
round	surround, surroundings, roundness, roundabout, surrounding, roundly
shelf	shelve, shelves, shelving
slip	slippage, slippery
soft	soften, softener, softly
solid	solidify, solidity
space	spacing, spaciousness, spacious(ly)
structure	infrastructure, structural(ly), (un)structured
substance	substantiate, substantiation, unsubstantiated, (in)substantial(ly)

Topic vocabulary: Materials

A Complete using the correct form of the words in the boxes.

1 When are you going to move that .... of clothes in your bedroom?
2 The old man slowly put a few more .... of coal on the dying fire.
3 We need to redecorate. Look – there are .... of paint coming off the walls.
4 The building is composed of .... of concrete held together by metal poles.
5 When I come back, I don't want to find a single .... of dust in here.
6 How many .... of sand do you think there are on this beach?
7 Eat your sandwich in the kitchen, because I don't want .... on my new sofa.
8 Be careful! I dropped something and there are .... of glass all over the floor.

block
chip
crumb
flake
grain
lump
pile
speck

9 Don't .... your mosquito bites or you'll make them worse.
10 I felt great when the coach .... me on the back and said, 'Well done'.
11 Martin quickly .... his shoes and walked out the door.
12 Don't .... the dog's fur the wrong way. She doesn't like it.
13 I had to really .... that wall to get the graffiti off it.

pat
polish
scratch
scrub
stroke

14 You'll have to .... your T-shirt to get all the water out of it.
15 You get the orange juice, and I'll .... some ice.
16 I like to .... my own coffee because it tastes so much better.
17 Don't .... that spider! Just put it outside on the grass.
18 .... the paper in half and give half to the student next to you.
19 You haven't broken the window, but you have .... it.
20 Eva was so angry she .... a glass against the wall.

crack
crush
grind
smash
squash
squeeze
tear

21 Be careful with that old wedding dress – it's very ....
22 Why can you see through glass, whereas concrete isn't .... at all?
23 This paper isn't .... enough to make a birthday card out of.
24 The windows of the limousine were .... , so I couldn't see who was inside.
25 After being out in the sun for a month, the plastic container became ....
26 Rocks sink in water because they are ....
27 This wall appears solid, but when you knock on it, it sounds ....

brittle
dense
fragile
hollow
opaque
stiff
transparent

28 Alice quickly .... a few clothes into a suitcase and ran out of the house.
29 You could help by .... those boxes over there.
30 Try to .... the clay into the basic shape of a vase.

mould
stack
stuff

B Complete using the words in bold in the correct form.

1 Why do we slip on ice, but not on wood? The answer is .... , the force that stops one object moving against another. When two .... are in contact, tiny bumps on each surface prevent them from moving easily. The surface of ice is actually covered in .... , so your shoes slide over it. Once you slip, the force of .... takes over, and you fall down! (**friction**, **gravity**, **liquid**, **solid**)

2 Nylon was the first .... material to be produced using coal, water and air. Since its invention in 1935, it has been used to make many products and long thin strands of it can be made into .... for clothing. Although cheap, many people dislike the plastic .... of nylon and prefer natural fibres, such as cotton. (**fabric**, **synthetic**, **texture**)

3 Rocks are formed in different ways. One type, metamorphic rocks, are produced by high pressure beneath the Earth's surface, which .... the rocks and makes them .... Most rocks are a mixture of different chemicals. When a .... occurs in rock form but is not mixed with other chemicals, it is known as a .... (**compact**, **firm**, **mineral**, **substance**)

4 If you take a glass of water and .... salt in it, you produce what's called a solution. If you add more water, the solution becomes more .... You can .... the solution by adding more salt. (**concentrate**, **dilute**, **dissolve**)

Topic vocabulary: The built environment

C Complete using the correct form of the words in the box.

bypass • construct • district • dwell • inner city • occupy
populated • suburban • surroundings • urban

ROW OVER NEW ROAD INTENSIFIES

The proposed (**1**) .... around the city of Rushton has run into more controversy. The local council have been attempting to (**2**) .... the road for five years now in order to ease traffic in the (**3**) .... , which is amongst the most densely (**4**) .... areas in the country. However, residents in (**5**) .... areas, on the outskirts of the city, are up in arms about the plan, which they claim would spoil the (**6**) ....

'We live in beautiful (**7**) .... here,' commented Ada Fowler, one of those whose house (**8**) .... a position next to the proposed route of the new road. 'The council have no real concept of (**9**) .... planning.'

Many of those who (**10**) .... in the area agree. The council were unavailable for comment.

D Circle the correct word.

1 I'd hate to live in such a **built-up** / **high-rise** area as this.
2 My grandparents have just moved into a **built-up** / **high-rise** block and they seem to like it.
3 The first **skyline** / **skyscraper** was made possible by advances in the use of metal and glass as building materials.
4 I love to look at the **skyline** / **skyscraper** of London at night, don't you?
5 The government is planning to provide low-cost **estate** / **housing** for people on low incomes.
6 I grew up on a local **estate** / **housing**, so I know the area quite well.
7 They're going to **demolish** / **evict** the old Town Hall today.
8 You can't **demolish** / **evict** a poor old woman like that and just leave her homeless!
9 St Paul's Cathedral is a really impressive **structure** / **infrastructure**.
10 This country just doesn't have the **structure** / **infrastructure** to host the Olympic Games.

Phrasal verbs

E **Write one word in each gap.**

Britain's Inner Cities

After decades of neglect, it's not unusual to see buildings which have been boarded (**1**) .... in Britain's inner cities. After businesses have closed (**2**) .... for the day, many city centres are depressing, no-go areas. The problems of decay have been piling (**3**) .... for years and will not be solved easily. However, some councils are finally deciding to fix inner city areas (**4**) .... to attract residents and investors back. The process begins by knocking (**5**) .... old, ugly buildings and putting (**6**) .... attractive office and apartment blocks. Advertising hoardings are taken (**7**) .... and facilities to attract families, such as play areas, are put (**8**) .... Urban regeneration can be a long, expensive process, but for many towns and cities it has paid off.

F **Complete using a phrasal verb with a word from box A in the right form and a word from box B. You need to use some words from box B more than once.**

A come • cut • prop • put • set • spread • water • wear

B down • out • together • up

1 The fair must be happening in town because they've .... tents.
2 .... a circle .... of the first piece of card and stick it on the second piece.
3 If the juice is too strong for you, why don't you .... it .... ?
4 That wall would fall over if it wasn't .... with planks of wood.
5 You've got blood on your collar. It won't .... , you know.
6 I've got a large family, but they've all .... across the whole country.
7 I hate buying furniture from that place because you have to .... it .... yourself.
8 The steps were .... after many years of use.

G **The phrasal verb *pile up* has a meaning connected to 'increase'. Tick the sentences where the phrasal verb means something like 'increase'.**

1 I see the supermarket has **put** its prices **up** again. ....
2 **Speed up**, or we're never going to get there! ....
3 Pass me a cloth and I'll just **wipe up** that water on the table. ....
4 Work is really beginning to **mount up**, so I'll have to go into the office this weekend. ....
5 Marianne had something stuck in her throat, but she finally **coughed** it **up**. ....
6 You'll have to **speak up** because I'm a little deaf, you know. ....
7 You need to **build up** your strength if you're going to take part in the marathon. ....
8 Oh, I wanted to watch this programme. **Turn** the TV **up**. ....
9 Jill and I had a terrible row, but we soon **made up**. ....
10 Honestly, I couldn't eat another thing! What are you trying to do – **fatten** me **up**? ....

Phrases, patterns and collocations

H Complete using the phrases in the box.

bricks and mortar • on the house • on the table • out of shape • precious metal
raw materials • smooth sailing • the town of

1 We had a few difficulties at first, but it was pretty .... after that.
2 Don't worry – these drinks are ....
3 Lance built a log cabin in a Canadian forest, using .... that were all around him.
4 Isambard Kingdom Brunel, the great engineer, was born in .... Portsmouth in 1806.
5 The offer .... is far too low and I'm going to ask them to increase it.
6 I would invest in .... , because property is usually a safe investment.
7 Charles was so .... that he was exhausted after just half a day on the building site.
8 A .... such as silver is valuable because of its rarity.

I Write one word in each gap.

Building the home of the future

I've always kept a sharp eye (**1**) .... developments in building, so when it was time to plan my own home, I was determined to build the home of the future. It wasn't easy. There are rules and regulations everywhere that seem to block (**2**) .... way and, to (**3**) .... matters worse, not everyone agrees on the best way to go about it. It certainly gave me a window (**4**) .... the world of architecture to hear my architect explain the problems he knew we were going to face. Perhaps I was crazy (that's a (**5**) .... of opinion!), but I knew what I wanted. It had to look great, but (**6**) .... the surface I wanted it to be high-tech *and* environmentally friendly. I did a lot of research, and that certainly smoothed the (**7**) .... for what was to come. I did some of the physical work myself, putting up walls and bending things (**8**) .... shape, and I'd like to erect a monument (**9**) .... the person who invented solar-powered heating. In the end, my architect's predictions of doom (**10**) .... no foundation and it all took just eight months.

J For each question, write one word which can be used in all three sentences.

1 These accusations are completely without ....
The .... stone for the new hospital was laid by the Mayor.
You have to do a .... course before you can start your degree.

2 Joshua looks aggressive, but he's not such a .... guy once you get to know him.
It's time this government got .... with people exceeding the speed limit.
The last few years have been quite .... on Amanda and I'm glad things seem to be getting better.

3 The building collapsed only a .... of months after construction was completed.
My parents said that I have to find a flat of my own this month, no .... what.
We need to install traffic lights at this junction as a .... of some urgency.

4 There was a hush in Parliament as the Minister took the ....
I'd be afraid of burglars if I lived in a ground .... flat.
I quite enjoyed the club, but I thought the .... show was terrible.

5 The Smiths were pretty quick off the .... to sell when they heard house prices were falling.
I think that what you said to Rita about her taste in furniture really hit the ....
Poverty and unemployment have certainly left a .... on this area.

6 A record number of businesses are predicted to .... in the next 12 months.
Now carefully .... the paper in two, and you can begin to see the shape of the paper plane.
Don't .... your arms and talk to me in that tone of voice!

Idioms

K Complete using the words in the box. You have to use some words more than once.

belt • home • jungle • landscape • sticks • street • town

1 That awful new office block is a real blot on the ....
2 The crime rate is soaring! It's becoming a real concrete .... out there.
3 Make yourself at .... while I just put the kettle on and make us a nice cup of tea.
4 It's my birthday, so I'm planning to go out on the .... with my friends this evening.
5 Living in the commuter .... is okay, but I'd love to move back into the city.
6 I don't know how Nicole survives, living all the way out in the ....
7 We couldn't afford to live in London, so we ended up living in a satellite .... about half an hour away.
8 I love this hotel, and it's always been a kind of .... from home for me.
9 After losing his job and getting divorced, it seemed only a matter of time before Anthony was out on the ....
10 It's fine to travel, but there's nothing better than .... sweet home.

Word formation

L Each of the words in bold is in the wrong form. Rewrite them correctly.

1 The **manufacturer** industries are a major employer in this area. ....
2 Dunscar and the **roundness** areas have seen a sharp increase in house prices. ....
3 When the mixture starts to **solidity**, put it in the freezer. ....
4 Each **housing** is responsible for maintaining the area in front of their house. ....
5 'I'll always be here for you,' Brittany said **soften**. ....
6 Be careful – the floor's wet and it's a bit **slippage**. ....
7 I dropped a spanner and it made a loud, **metallurgy** sound. ....
8 There have been **substance** improvements to the local area. ....
9 The council apply the rules on building quite **rigidity**. ....
10 After the earthquake, all the buildings were checked for **structure** damage. ....

M **Use the word given in capitals at the end of the line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line.**

Rebuilding Coventry

In the late 30s, (**1**) .... knew that the centre of the historic town of Coventry in the **ANALYSE**
West Midlands needed to be redeveloped. Plans had to be (**2**) .... when the Second **SHELF**
World War started in 1939. However, the architects' opportunity (**3**) .... when the **MATERIAL**
city centre was practically destroyed during the war. Many buildings were (**4**) .... **REPAIR**
damaged and demolition work began. Aiming to create a much more (**5**) .... area **SPACE**
for (**6**) .... to work and shop in, town planners came up with a radical idea. They **RESIDE**
would make the city more (**7**) .... by pedestrianising the centre, preventing cars **INHABIT**
entering. There were (**8**) .... from local shopkeepers, who thought that it would **OBJECT**
have an impact on trade, but the planners went ahead. What was once a (**9**) .... **DENSE**
populated area became a pleasant, attractive place to visit. It was a real (**10**) .... **ARCHITECT**
achievement, one that many British towns have emulated since.

N **The suffix *-en*, as in *soften*, can be added to nouns or adjectives to form verbs and means 'cause to become' or 'become'. Tick the nouns and adjectives below which can take *-en* to form verbs. You may have to double a final letter or remove a final *-e*.**

1 black ....
2 bright ....
3 broad ....
4 brown ....
5 damp ....
6 deep ....
7 fright ....
8 hard ....
9 length ....
10 loose ....
11 narrow ....
12 red ....
13 short ....
14 strength ....
15 tall ....
16 tight ....
17 weak ....
18 wide ....

O **Complete the sentences using words formed in exercise N in the correct form.**

1 Apparently, they're going to .... the road here so that it can cope with the heavy traffic.
2 This decision by the authorities only .... our determination to fight on.
3 Ryan's face .... as he realised what a terrible mistake he'd made.
4 The dress suits you, but it's a bit long. You can always .... it.
5 Could you help me .... my seat belt? It's a bit loose.
6 Some flowers in here would certainly .... the place up, wouldn't they?
7 They leave the clay in the sun to .... and use the bricks to build houses.
8 We must remain strong and not .... if we're going to stop this bypass being built.

REVIEW

8 Units 15 and 16

A **Use the word given in capitals to form a word that fits in the space.**

Taking your house with you

For most of us, our (**1**) .... (**RESIDE**) is a permanent structure. Whether a flat or a mansion, our (**2**) .... (**ROUND**) are not built to move. For those who prefer a mobile lifestyle, but want more (**3**) .... (**SOLID**) than a tent can offer, there is an intriguing (**4**) .... (**ARCHITECT**) solution: the shipping container.

Shipping containers are large metal boxes that (**5**) .... (**MANUFACTURE**) use for transporting goods by ship. One of these containers can form the basis of a surprisingly (**6**) .... (**SPACE**) dwelling, and one which can be easily shipped to different parts of the world. It's easy to design the inside: wooden panels can be used to create separate areas and to make (**7**) .... (**SHELF**). More difficult is creating the (**8**) .... (**STRUCTURE**) that all homes need to make them (**9**) .... (**INHABIT**): connections to electricity and water. As long as your container isn't too far away from a (**10**) .... (**RESIDE**) area, and as long as you are prepared to adapt to local conditions, it may well be possible to connect to local supplies. When you decide to move, simply pack up and arrange for your house to be delivered to your destination!

(1 mark per answer)

B **Circle the correct word or phrase.**

11 Alex was **far and away / considerably** more successful at school than his twin brother.
12 It's **nothing / nowhere** like as hot today as it was yesterday.
13 The last show was nowhere **near / close** as good as this one.
14 You'll have to work **hard / hardly** if you're to pass the exam next month.
15 I thought the concert was **quite / a good deal** extraordinary.
16 The quicker you work, **so / the** sooner you'll finish.
17 We found a sick bird and nursed it back to health before setting it **free / freely** in the park.
18 The ice-skaters' performance was **absolutely / very** perfect and the judges gave them full marks.

(1 mark per answer)

C **Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.**

19 There is no truth behind these accusations in the press and I shall be consulting my lawyers. **foundation**
These accusations in the press .... and I shall be consulting my lawyers.

20 You need to watch Lauren closely to make sure she does her work properly. **sharp**
You need to .... Lauren to make sure she does her work properly.

21 It only took us a few days to get to Milan. **matter**
We got to Milan .... days.

22 Daniel didn't get the job because he was considerably less experienced than Hannah. **deal**
Hannah got the job because she had .... Daniel.

23 The accusation was that the Prime Minister made his statement less forceful because of public opinion. **watering**
The Prime Minister was accused .... because of public opinion.

24 The council's decision will mean that the bypass can now be built. **smooth**
The council's decision will .... the bypass to be built.

25 Wilson has so much talent that a number of different clubs are interested in him. **so**
Wilson .... player that a number of different clubs are interested in him.

26 The new theatre is extremely ugly and spoils the view of the village. **blot**
The new theatre is .... and spoils the view of the village.

(2 marks per answer)

D Write one word in each gap.

27 Please make .... at home while I get us some drinks.
28 If you want tickets to the game, you'll have to be quick .... the mark.
29 Don't worry. I'll support you, no .... what.
30 The Home Secretary promised to be tough .... crime.
31 The waiter told us that dessert was .... the house, which was nice.
32 The hotel looked good from the outside, but we soon realised it was just .... dressing.
33 The music coming from next door is driving me .... the bend!
34 Whether Carol is a good cook or not is a matter of .... Personally, I wasn't impressed.

(1 mark per answer)

E Choose the correct answer.

35 It was .... from the most comfortable flight I've ever been on.
A far
B further
C away
D way

36 This fabric has the .... of silk but it's very cheap.
A stroke
B substance
C friction
D texture

37 This winter wasn't .... as difficult as last winter.
A almost
B closely
C nearly
D just

38 The gym instructor told us to spread .... so that we'd have enough room to do the exercises.
A over
B round
C out
D off

39 Reports are coming in that a flood has hit a heavily .... area in the south of India.
A crowded
B personalised
C peopled
D populated

40 The couple were finally .... by the landlord after not paying rent for six months.
A demolished
B evicted
C rejected
D evacuated

41 It was getting .... dark so we decided to head for home.
A utterly
B absolutely
C totally
D fairly

42 You'll have to .... your jacket quite hard to get the grass stain off it.
A polish
B scrub
C pat
D crush

(1 mark per answer)

Total mark: ..../50

UNIT 17 Grammar

Clauses

Relative pronouns in relative clauses

who	to refer to people (and animals when we want to give them a personality)	*There are a lot of people* ***who*** *hate having injections.*
which	to refer to things and concepts (and animals when we don't want to give them a personality)	*This is the prescription* ***which*** *the doctor gave me.*
whom	a formal word for *who;* as an object; must be used directly after a preposition	*That's the consultant with* ***whom*** *I spoke.*
that	a more informal word for *who, which, when, where, why;* only used in defining relative clauses	*This is the prescription* ***that*** *the doctor gave me.*
when	to refer to time; = *in/on/*etc *which*	*I'll never forget the day* ***when*** *I broke my finger.*
where	to refer to place or situation; = *in/at/*etc *which*	*Harley Street,* ***where*** *she was born, is famous for its clinics.*
why	often after the word *reason;* = *the reason for which;* only used in defining relative clauses	*And that's (the reason)* ***why*** *I wanted to become a vet.*
whose	the possessive of *who* and *which;* can also come after a preposition	*There are several kids in my class* ***whose*** *parents are doctors.*
what	= *the thing(s) which;* only used in defining relative clauses	***What*** *I don't understand is why she didn't take her pills.*

Watch out!

- When we use a preposition with a relative pronoun, it is more formal to put the preposition before the pronoun.
  ✓ *This is the medical encyclopaedia* ***to which*** *I referred.* (very formal)
  ✓ *This is the medical encyclopaedia* ***which*** *I referred* ***to****.* (less formal)
- *Which* can refer to the whole preceding clause, rather than just the preceding noun.
  ✓ *She announced that she wanted to be a pathologist,* ***which*** *really shocked us.* (= the announcement shocked us)

Defining and non-defining relative clauses

Defining relative clauses	**Non-defining relative clauses**
These tell us which one of a group of things/people we are talking about. The sentence doesn't usually make complete sense if we remove the relative clause. ✓ *That's the doctor* ***who did Karen's operation****.*	These simply give us more information about someone/something. The sentence makes complete sense if we remove the relative clause. ✓ *Dr Lake****, who has been working here for over ten years,*** *is a very experienced surgeon.*
We can use *that* instead of *who/which/*etc. This is more informal. ✓ *That's the doctor* ***that*** *did Karen's operation.*	We cannot use *that* instead of *who/which/*etc.
We don't use a comma or commas. ✓ *That's the doctor who did Karen's operation.*	We must use a comma or commas. ✓ *Dr Lake****,*** *who is an experienced surgeon****,*** *is my uncle.*
We can omit the relative pronoun if it is the object. ✓ *That's the doctor* ***who she saw****.* (more formal) ✓ *That's the doctor* ***she saw****.* (less formal)	We cannot omit the relative pronoun. ✓ *Dr Lake,* ***who*** *is my uncle, is 50 years old.*
When, where and *why* can be omitted. ✓ *I'll never forget* ***the day when I broke*** *my arm.* ✓ *I'll never forget* ***the day I broke*** *my arm.*	We do not use *why.* We cannot omit *where* and *when.* ✓ *Harley Street,* ***where*** *she was born, is famous for its clinics.*
We cannot put a number or a determiner such as *some, none, much* and *many* before *of which* or *of whom.*	We can put a number or a determiner such as *some, none, much* and *many* before *of which* or *of whom.* ✓ *I bought some drugs,* ***some of which*** *were expensive.*

Participle clauses

To replace a relative clause	*She was the nurse **looking** after the patients at the time.* (**who was looking**) *The boy **taken** to hospital was 13 years old.* (**who was taken**)
With prepositions and conjunctions	*After **giving** blood, I went home.* *After **having given** blood, I went home.*
To explain the reason for something	***Being** frightened of needles, Tony was not looking forward to the injection.* ***Having had** several operations before, Ali wasn't particularly nervous this time.*
To talk about actions happening at the same time	***Sitting** in the waiting room, I could hear the sound of the dentist drilling.*
To talk about actions happening in sequence	***Having found** an optician close to the office, I made an appointment for that evening.*
As an alternative passive form	***Given** an aspirin, I began to feel better.* (**when/because I was given** an aspirin)
As an alternative conditional form	***Given** the chance, I'd definitely study pharmacology.* (**if I were given** the chance)

Watch out!

When the participle clause doesn't have its own subject, the clause and the rest of the sentence must both refer to the same subject.

✓ ***Standing** in the hot, crowded room, **I** began to feel dizzy.* (= I was standing)

✗ ~~***Standing** in the hot, crowded room, **my head** began to feel heavy.*~~ (= my head wasn't standing)

Infinitive clauses

To start a sentence	***To be** a successful surgeon **is** the dream of many young children.* (= ***It is** the dream of many young children **to be** a successful surgeon.*)
After the verb *to be*	*My job was **to give** the patients their lunch.*

Concession clauses

although / though / even though	***Even though** she'd put on sun cream, Tamsin got burnt.* *Tamsin got burnt, **though** she had put on sun cream.* *Tamsin put on sun cream. She still got burnt, though.*
in spite of / despite (+ noun or *-ing*)	***Despite** putting on sun cream, Tamsin got burnt.* ***In spite of** the fact that she put on sun cream, Tamsin got burnt.* ***Despite** the sun cream, Tamsin still got burnt.*
while/whereas	***While** antibiotics are effective against bacteria, they do not work against viruses.* *Bacterial infections can be cured with antibiotics, **whereas** viruses cannot.*
however	*Penicillin is a powerful antibiotic. **However**, some people are allergic to it.* *Penicillin is a powerful antibiotic. Some people are allergic to it, **however**.* *Penicillin is a powerful antibiotic. Some people, **however**, are allergic to it.*
other phrases and structures	***Try as he might,** he couldn't put up with the pain.* ***However hard he (might have) tried,** he couldn't put up with the pain.* ***Hard though/as he tried,** he couldn't put up with the pain.* ***Much as he tried,** he couldn't put up with the pain.*

Watch out!

- With *in spite of / despite + -ing*, both parts of the sentence must refer to the same subject.
- *Even if* is used to emphasise that it doesn't matter if something happens or is true, another situation remains the same.
  ✓ ***Even if** they found a cure for cancer tomorrow, it would take several years before it was available.*
- *Even if* is used to suggest that something may or may not happen, whereas *even though* suggests that the action actually takes place.
  ✓ ***Even if** she tried to give her an injection, she couldn't.* (= She probably hasn't tried yet.)
  ✓ ***Even though** she tried to give her an injection, she couldn't.* (= She tried and was unsuccessful.)

A Write a relative pronoun in each gap. Do not use the word *that.*

1 Davina, ... kids you met last weekend, works for Cooper's in the high street.
2 I'll never understand the reason .... you decided to join the army.
3 The village .... Alan grew up in is only a few miles from here.
4 Have you spoken to that guy .... daughter might be able to help you with the contract?
5 Back in the 1970s, ... I was a teenager, no one .... I knew had a computer.
6 They've just announced that Beddington youth club, ... we all used to hang out after school, is going to be turned into a casino.
7 Chicago's a city .... I've always wanted to visit.
8 Do you remember the time .... we got totally lost?
9 The cows .... are in that field over there are Friesians.
10 Our cat Tibby, ... loves being stroked all the time, is 16 years old today!
11 Bob wants to become a pop star, ... seems like a totally unrealistic ambition to me.
12 The official to .... you need to address your enquiry is temporarily unavailable.
13 .... spoils the film for me is the ending, ... is just ridiculous.
14 Julian was the prefect .... we all liked the best.

B Tick the relative pronouns in exercise A which can be replaced by *that.*

C Circle the relative pronouns in exercise A which can be omitted.

D If a word or phrase in bold is correct, put a tick. If it is incorrect, rewrite it correctly on the line.

1 We took the dog **who we'd found it** abandoned in the street straight to the vet. ....
2 Would any boys **who's** surnames begin with M please raise your hands? ....
3 The day **which** I first met your mother was the best day of my life. ....
4 Alfredo thought for a second, and then began to write: 'To **Whom** It May Concern …' . ...
5 The woman **who I spoke to** was extremely helpful. ....
6 The film **which I really want to see it** is the new one with Johnny Depp. ....
7 No, the hospital where **you were born there** was closed down quite a while ago. ....
8 Could you just give me one **reason why** you would say something like that? ....
9 The table **where** we sat at had a lovely view of the Acropolis. ....
10 **That** bothers me is why the police took so long to charge them. ....
11 The guy **whose car you just hit it** is a traffic warden! ....

E Add commas to the sentences where necessary.

1 We were staying at the hotel that you recommended to us.
2 The film which was directed by Mel Gibson is actually in Hebrew.
3 The person who I look up to more than anyone else is my Uncle Geoffrey.
4 I bumped into Katherine the other day which was a strange coincidence.
5 Is that the book which you were telling me about the other day?
6 The best man at my wedding who used to live in Germany has just moved to China.
7 Have you got a suggestion which doesn't involve spending a lot of money?
8 Warwick University where I spent three wonderful years is one of the top ten universities in the country.

F Write one word in each gap.

1 Do you really think the month .... which you're born affects your character?
2 They declared war on Austria, the reason .... which completely escapes me now.
3 There are five slices of pizza left, two .... which we'd better save for Justin.
4 Is the day .... which you arrive a Friday?
5 Josephine came to the rescue, of course, ... which I'm eternally grateful.
6 There were 20 people at the meeting, some .... whom I'd never met before.
7 The law needs to be strengthened, ... which I mean the police need to be given new powers.
8 .... whom did you speak?
9 I looked at several possible presents, none .... which were appropriate.
10 She studied in Berlin from 1916 to 1923, ... which time many people still believed that women had no role in scientific research.
11 The region .... which most of the wine is produced is to the south.
12 Jackson directed over 30 westerns, many .... which are now available on DVD.

G Rewrite as one sentence using a relative clause.

1 That tree is an oak. My grandfather planted it 60 years ago.
....

2 Tina and Charlie are having a party this Saturday. They're identical twins.
....

3 On the Friday, we spent most of the day sitting in the port. On the Friday, the ferry was delayed.
....

4 Barbara used to work in the Personnel Department. You met her at Libby's last Thursday.
....

5 Let's go to da Vinci's. They do a great pepper steak there.
....

6 This book was once owned by Sir Francis Drake. It was given to me by my great aunt.
....

7 Why did Danny decide to enter the marathon? Danny's totally unfit.
....

8 Guy is now engaged to my sister. His sister is married to my brother.
....

H Circle the correct word or phrase. If both are correct, circle both.

1 After **eating / having eaten** three hamburgers, it's no wonder you feel sick!
2 **Having been told / Telling** exactly what to do, I was pretty confident I wouldn't embarrass myself.
3 **Given / Giving** the opportunity, would you like to spend a year abroad?
4 Philip was the only person **keeping / who was keeping** the committee on track.
5 **Having seen / Seen** an advert in the paper, we decided to write off for more information.
6 The zoo-keeper **injured / having injured** in the incident is now in a stable condition.
7 **Not being / Not to be** a US citizen, Eleni knew it would be difficult to get a visa.
8 After **made / having made** a statement, I was allowed to leave.
9 **Shown / Having been shown** how to use the software, Adrian quickly started designing his logo.
10 **Listening / Having listened** from the top of the stairs, Jill and I could hear raised voices.
11 **To get / Getting** onto the property ladder is the aim of most young couples.
12 I was told that I was **to make / making** sure that the press would be there.

I Write the verb in brackets in the correct form. Write only one or two words in each gap.

1 I'd love to get some work experience in an office, ... (**give**) the chance.
2 After .... (**get**) so bad a school report, you can't blame your parents for being angry.
3 The three men .... (**arrest**) have not been named.
4 We were only given a room with a balcony after .... (**complain**) to the manager.
5 .... (**see**) *Arctic Monkeys* play live before, Josh was desperate to get tickets to their next gig.
6 .... (**swim**) along the seabed, the divers were shocked to find a sunken car.
7 .... (**apply**) for the job, I forgot all about it until the letter came.
8 Is Bentley's the only department store .... (**start**) its sale on Boxing Day?
9 .... (**want**) to create trouble, Dad didn't raise any objections.
10 It's Sophie's role .... (**wait**) at the entrance on Tuesday evening to welcome the guests.
11 .... (**shoot**) in the arm, the man ran bleeding into the undergrowth.
12 .... (**make**) mistakes is only human!

J Choose the correct answer.

Out-of-body experiences

(**1**) .... most scientists dismiss tales of out-of-body experiences on the operating table as dreams and delusions, there are some cases which seem to defy rational explanation. Take Margaret Frobisher. In 2003, she was undergoing a routine operation under general anaesthetic at Sansdown Hospital in Kent. There were serious complications, (**2**) .... , and her heart stopped beating. Try (**3**) .... they might, the surgeon and anaesthetist were unable to resuscitate her. Finally, after eight minutes, they succeeded. (**4**) .... having been clinically dead, Margaret suffered no brain damage and no adverse side effects. The story doesn't stop there, (**5**) .... When the anaesthetist went to visit her in her hospital bed, Margaret Frobisher recounted an amazing story. She said she vividly remembered floating above the operating table. And (**6**) .... her never having been conscious in that room at any time, she described the room and the resuscitation attempt in great detail. She said that (**7**) .... three of the walls were bright white, one was dark grey. This was true. She also said that, on the top of a cabinet in a corner of the operating theatre, there was an old book. (**8**) .... the anaesthetist didn't – and couldn't – believe her, she checked. There, just as Margaret Frobisher had described it, was the book. (**9**) .... as they tried, no one at the hospital could explain how Margaret could have known about the book. Even (**10**) .... one does not believe in a 'soul' or in life after death, it is difficult to explain what happened in that operating theatre when Margaret Frobisher's heart stopped beating.

1	A Despite	B While	C However	D In spite
2	A whereas	B although	C however	D despite
3	A as	B for	C with	D so
4	A However	B Whereas	C Although	D Despite
5	A even if	B even though	C although	D though
6	A in spite of	B although	C however	D while
7	A nevertheless	B whereas	C in spite of	D however
8	A In spite	B However	C Even though	D Despite
9	A Most	B More	C Much	D Many
10	A so	B if	C though	D that

K Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

1 Despite having looked for it everywhere, Donald never found his contact lens. **he**
Even .... for it everywhere, Donald never found his contact lens.

2 The stadium won't be ready for the Olympics whether they start building tomorrow or not. **even**
The stadium won't be ready for the Olympics .... building tomorrow.

3 The electricians are on strike but the BBC is still broadcasting. **spite**
The BBC is still broadcasting .... the electricians are on strike.

4 Although no one gave us an invitation, we were still able to get into the club. **given**
We were still able to get into the club in .... an invitation.

5 Dom couldn't finish the crossword despite really trying hard. **might**
Try .... , Dom couldn't finish the crossword.

6 Although Sarah shouted loudly, she wasn't able to get the audience to pay attention. **might**
However .... , Sarah wasn't able to get the audience to pay attention.

7 I couldn't persuade Tim in spite of my begging him to come with us. **as**
Much .... , I couldn't persuade Tim to come with us.

8 Despite our being late, we didn't think for a second we wouldn't make it on time. **though**
Late .... , we didn't think for a second we wouldn't make it on time.

L Choose the correct answer.

1 More than 80 people came to the exhibition, many of .... children had pictures on the walls.
A who C whose
B whom D which

2 The man .... to safety was in his forties.
A who was lifting C lifted
B lifting D having been lifted

3 Who was the receptionist .... the phone at the time?
A answering C having answered
B was answering D to answer

4 .... a scholarship, I entered the frightening and unknown territory of private education.
A To award C Having awarded
B To be awarded D Having been awarded

5 .... half a chance, I'd be there in a flash!
A Giving C Being given
B Given D To be given

6 .... quickly we ran, we just couldn't catch up with the van.
A Although C Much
B Even D However

M Write one word in each gap.

Broken bones

Most of us will suffer from a 'fracture', (**1**) .... is the medical term for a broken bone, at some point in our lives. A patient (**2**) .... arm, let's say, is suspected of being broken will first be given an X-ray. (**3**) .... determined the extent of the fracture, the orthopaedic surgeon will decide on the most effective treatment. For a fracture (**4**) .... manipulation is required, (**5**) .... may involve the patient being given a general anaesthetic while the bone is essentially re-broken. Patients (**6**) .... have more serious fractures may require 'fracture fixation', (**7**) .... which pins and rods are connected to the bone to strengthen it. (**8**) .... , for simple fractures, a cast – often (**9**) .... out of plaster of Paris or fibreglass – is all that is required.

(**10**) .... a broken upper leg can take anything up to twelve weeks to heal, a broken toe can heal in just three weeks.

Their plaster cast (**11**) .... off, the patient will almost certainly require physiotherapy to exercise a limb (**12**) .... has been inactive for several weeks.

(**13**) .... advances in medical technology, (**14**) .... get a frail elderly person's fracture to heal is still remarkably difficult. Even (**15**) .... the fracture has been treated in the right way, it is quite possible that the bone will never fully heal.

UNIT 18 Vocabulary

Reactions and health

Topic vocabulary: Reactions

see page 237 for definitions

acknowledge (v)
agonise (v)
apathy (n)
avoid (v)
behaviour (n)
chuckle (v, n)
comfort (v, n)
conduct (v, n)
consequence (n)
contentment (n)
cross (adj)
dignity (n)
disgust (v, n)
disillusioned (adj)
fed up (adj)
giggle (v, n)
glance (v, n)
glimpse (v, n)
gloat (v)
glum (adj)
grimace (v, n)
grin (v, n)
handle (v)
impatient (adj)
inertia (n)
manners (n)
manoeuvre (v, n)
moan (v, n)
mock (v)
neglect (v, n)
peep (v, n)
peer (v)
prevent (v)
rejoice (v)
resent (v)
resolute (adj)
smirk (v, n)
snap (v)
tactic (n)
terror (n)

Topic vocabulary: Health

see page 238 for definitions

administer (v)
admit (v)
agony (n)
antidote (n)
consultant (n)
diagnosis (n)
inoculate (v)
irritation (n)
numb (adj)
nursing home (n phr)
paralysis (n)
plaster (n)
prescribe (v)
prevent(at)ive medicine (n phr)
prognosis (n)
sick leave (n phr)
side effect (n phr)
syringe (n)
vaccine (n)
ward (n)

Phrasal verbs

black out	suddenly become unconscious; make a place dark by turning off all the lights, *blackout (n)*
come out in	become covered in spots
come round	become conscious again after being unconscious; happen again; go to a place where someone is, to visit them; be persuaded to change your opinion or decision
cotton on	begin to realise or understand something
crease up	laugh a lot, or make someone laugh a lot
follow up	check the health of someone who has received medical treatment; try to find out more about something *follow-up (n)*
get down	make someone feel sad or lose hope
get over	start to feel happy or well again after something bad has happened; solve or deal with a problem
go down (well/badly) (with sb)	produce a particular reaction
lash out	try to hit or attack someone suddenly and violently; speak angrily to or against someone
pass away/ on	die (used to avoid saying 'die' when you think this might upset someone)
play up	cause difficulties or pain for someone; behave badly
pull through	manage to stay alive after you have been very ill or very badly injured; succeed in a very difficult situation, or help someone do this
shrivel up	become smaller and thinner and not look fresh and healthy; become weaker or smaller
summon up	manage to produce a quality or a reaction that helps you deal with a difficult situation
ward off	do something to prevent someone or something from harming you

Phrases, patterns and collocations

act act in good/bad faith, act out of desperation/necessity, act the part/role of, act on sb's advice/orders/behalf, put on an act, get your act together, in the act (of doing)

behaviour behaviour towards, pattern of behaviour, on your best behaviour, aggressive/antisocial/violent/bad/ good/ exemplary behaviour

consequence accept/face the consequences, consequence of, serious/disastrous/dire consequences, as a consequence, in consequence, of no/little consequence

cry cry with pain/happiness/relief, cry over/about, cry for help, cry yourself to sleep, cry your eyes/heart out, cry on sb's shoulder, have a (good) cry, cry of, a far cry from

dead go dead, drop dead, dead (set) against (doing), in dead trouble, dead and buried, dead silence, dead centre, dead and gone, dead tired, dead ahead

effect have an/no/little/some effect (on), come into effect, put/bring sth into effect, adverse/beneficial effect, for effect, in effect, with effect from

feel get/have a feel for, feel free, feel like (doing), feel as if / as though, feel strongly about, feel the effects/ benefits of, feel guilty, feel your way, feel at home

health good/bad for your health, in good/poor health, ill health, health and safety, health hazard/risk, health centre, health club, health food, health service

Phrases, patterns and collocations

ill fall / be taken ill (with), critically/seriously/terminally ill

kind kind of sb to do, respond in kind, kind(s) of, of some/any kind, of a/the kind, kind regards

laugh laugh at/about, laugh in sb's face, make sb laugh, have a good laugh, have the last laugh, don't make me laugh, for a laugh, a laugh a minute

life put sb's life at risk, lose a life, bring sth to life, come to life, not on your life, save sb's life, take your own life, that's life, this is the life, quality of life

live live a life of crime/luxury, live to the age of, can live with, live and let live, live and learn, live beyond/within your means, live in hope, live a lie, live to tell the tale

medicine take medicine, alternative/complementary/herbal medicine, medicine cabinet

polite polite to, polite of, just/only being polite, polite conversation, polite company, polite society

react react to, react by doing, react accordingly/appropriately, react with, react against

reaction cause/produce/provoke/trigger a reaction (to), reaction against, adverse/gut/immediate reaction, chain reaction

response response to, in response to, response from, no response, response time

sick call in sick, feel sick, make sb sick, sick as a parrot, worried sick, sick and tired (of), sick with fear/worry/etc, sick at heart, sick bag

treat treat cruelly/badly/fairly/unjustly, treat sb with, treat sb for, treat sb like, treat sb to, treat a/an illness/disease/patient/etc, in for a treat

Idioms

cry over spilt milk	waste time feeling upset about something bad that has happened and cannot be changed
fly off the handle	suddenly become extremely angry without a good reason
give sb a taste/dose of their own medicine	treat someone in the same bad way they treat other people
give sth a miss	decide not to do something that you usually do
grin and bear it	accept a difficult situation without complaining or showing how you feel
keep a straight face	remain serious and not laugh
keep your hair on	used for telling someone not to get angry or upset
kick yourself	be very annoyed because you have made a mistake, missed an opportunity, etc
let off steam	shout or do something that allows you to get rid of anger
let sleeping dogs lie	leave a person or situation alone if they might cause you trouble
never/don't look a gift horse in the mouth	if you are given something good, you should not complain about it or try to find things that are wrong with it
up in arms about	angry and complaining about something

Word formation

act	enact, react, counteract, interact, transact, overact, overreact, (de/re)activate, acting, actor, actress, action, (in)activity, radioactivity, transaction, activist, activism, interaction, (over)reaction, overacting, reactionary, reactor, transactional, active, hyperactive, radioactive, overactive, (in)active(ly)
approve	disapprove, (dis)approval, (dis)approved, (dis)approving(ly)
avoid	avoidance, (un)avoidable, unavoidably
content	(dis)contentment, discontent, (dis)contented
depend	(in)dependence, dependant, dependency, depending, dependable, (in)dependent(ly)
derive	derivation, derivative
effect	(in)effectiveness, (in)effectual, (in)effective(ly)
fold	enfold, unfold, folder, (un)folding, foldaway
fruit	fruitfulness, fruitlessness, fruition, fruitful(ly), fruitless(ly)
hand	handle, handler, handling, handout, handover, handful, handmade, underhand, handy
illusion	disillusion, disillusionment, disillusioned, illusory
know	acknowledge, knowledge, acknowledgement, knowledgeable, acknowledged, (un)known, knowing
neglect	negligence, negligible, negligibly, negligent(ly), neglectful(ly)
patient	patience, impatient, (im)patiently
prevent	prevention, preventative, preventive, (un)preventable
regret	regrettable, regrettably, regretful(ly)
resolve	(ir)resolution, resoluteness, (un)resolved, (ir)resolute(ly)
respond	response, respondent, (un)responsive(ly)
result	resultant, resulting
sense	(de)sensitise, sensation, (in)sensitivity, hypersensitivity, hypersensitive, oversensitive, sensuality, sensuousness, sensor, sensory, (in)sensitive(ly), (un)sensational(ly), sensual(ly), sensuous(ly)

Topic vocabulary: Reactions

A **Complete using the words in the boxes in the correct form.**

1 It's not very good .... to eat with your mouth open, Timothy.
2 I expect very good .... from all of you while I'm out of the classroom.

behaviour • manners

3 There's no way you can .... me from seeing my friends!
4 Let's .... the city centre as there'll be loads of traffic.

avoid • prevent

5 The girls were .... excitedly in their room – it was extremely irritating!
6 He occasionally .... quietly to himself as he read the letter.

chuckle • giggle

7 The boys were .... after the film so I think they had a good time.
8 Stop .... in such an unpleasant way. Just because you won the game doesn't make you better than me, you know!

grin • smirk

9 I .... something through the window but I've got no idea what it was.
10 Terry .... at the clock and realised he was late.

glance • glimpse

11 The window was so dirty we had to .... through it to see inside.
12 Don't .... ! Keep your eyes closed or it'll ruin the surprise.

peep • peer

13 I'm .... It's boring just sitting here. Let's go out for a walk.
14 Mr Jenkins was so .... when he heard the news he went red with anger.

cross • fed up

15 Reversing round a corner is a difficult ....
16 I'm going to have to use some underhand .... to get Adam to agree.

manoeuvre • tactic

B **Each of the words in bold, except one, is in the wrong place. Write the correct words on the lines.**

A young child's emotions

Young children express their emotions much more openly than most adults. In the playground, they often (**1**) .... **neglect** and ridicule the 'weaker' children and 'social misfits'. When they're successful at something, they (**2**) .... **grimace** openly. When they're taking horrible medicine, they (**3**) .... **conduct** in a way that adults rarely do. When they're (**4**) .... **impatient**, you know about it immediately. The (**5**) .... **gloat** a young child can experience during a nightmare often seems far more extreme than the fear adults have. Children's emotions are often very unpredictable too. When something angers them, they (**6**) .... **mock** instantly. A young child can go from peaceful (**7**) .... **terror** to extreme anger and back again in just a couple of minutes. If you give a small child a pet, they'll love it for a day or two, but then they might completely (**8**) .... **snap** it. All of this is for many reasons. Firstly, humans have to learn how to (**9**) .... **contentment** and control their emotions. And that takes time. Secondly, humans have to learn how to (**10**) .... **handle** themselves within a society. That also takes many years. Indeed, many adults still have a lot to learn when it comes to that.

C Complete using the words in the boxes in the correct form.

acknowledge • agonise • comfort • disgust • moan • rejoice • resent

1 I've been .... over this decision for ages but I've definitely made my mind up now.
2 The whole country was out on the streets .... when they won the World Cup.
3 Do you at least .... that not everyone thinks about things the same way you do?
4 I was in such pain I just lay in bed ....
5 I'm .... with the way this company's dealt with this problem. I'm going to complain.
6 I do .... the fact that Josh was promoted and I wasn't, yes.
7 We all need to .... Joyce at such a difficult time for her.

disillusioned • glum • resolute

8 Monica's absolutely determined to get this law changed. I've never seen her so .... about anything before.
9 You look a bit .... today. Is anything the matter?
10 Joe said he's so .... with his job he's thinking of quitting.

apathy • consequence • dignity • inertia

11 No one knows exactly what the .... of this action will be.
12 I thought the Prime Minister handled her resignation speech with great ....
13 The bureaucratic system in this country is suffering from extreme .... Nothing ever gets done!
14 There's just so much .... from young people these days when it comes to politics. They're just not interested.

Topic vocabulary: Health

D Circle the correct word or phrase.

1 If he's been bitten by a snake, we'll have to get him to a hospital to get the **vaccine / antidote** immediately.
2 They give most children a number of **vaccines / antidotes** these days to stop them getting serious diseases.
3 Have you been **inoculated / injected** against tetanus?
4 The symptoms are small red spots and slight skin **irritation / annoyance**.
5 I've cut my finger. Have you got **plaster / a plaster**?
6 Richie's broken his leg and it's in **plaster / a plaster**.
7 My **diagnosis / prognosis** is that you're suffering from stress.
8 If you carry on taking the tablets, then your **diagnosis / prognosis** is excellent.
9 **Preventive / Protective** medicine's all about not getting diseases rather than curing them after you've got them, isn't it?
10 My grandmother spent the last two years of her life in a nursing **house / home**.

E Complete using the words in the box in the correct form.

administer • admit • agony • consultant • diagnosis • leave
numb • paralysis • prescribe • side • syringe • ward

> 26th August I haven't written anything for about two weeks, so it's time to catch up on what's been going on. So, the morning after my last entry, I woke up in (1) .... I've never felt so bad in my life. In fact, it felt like I'd been shot in the stomach. I immediately arranged to go on sick (2) .... from work. Then I called the doctor, who came that morning and (3) .... some medicine for me. I took it for about two days but my stomach was still really bad, so I called the doctor again. He said I'd have to be (4) .... to hospital! Well, I've never been in hospital in my life. They took me in an ambulance and put me in a (5) .... with about 20 other people. In the afternoon, the (6) .... came to see me. Her (7) .... was that I'd got some kind of ulcer caused by bacteria. She said they'd have to (8) .... antibiotics via an intravenous drip. So, basically for the next six days I had a big (9) .... sticking into my arm pumping in antibiotics on a regular basis. It wasn't much fun, but I did start to feel better pretty quickly. One problem, though, was that the drugs did produce one strange (10) .... effect. Apparently that sometimes happens. The whole of the left side of my face went (11) .... It wasn't exactly (12) .... because I could still move my cheek – I just couldn't feel it. Very weird! Anyway, I'm home now, and feeling fine. And back to work tomorrow, thank goodness.

Phrasal verbs

F Choose the correct word.

1 I don't know how I'm going to summon **up / back** the courage to tell Dad.
2 It really got me **out / down** when the doctor said I'd have to be off work for eight weeks.
3 Grandpa says his leg's playing **up / around** again so he's not going to come for a walk with us.
4 Did it take June a long time to get **over / by** her glandular fever?
5 We all creased **up / off** when Nick walked in wearing a skirt.
6 Antony says he felt a little dizzy when he came **round / back** from the anaesthetic.
7 These carrots have shrivelled **up / down** a bit so I think I'll throw them out.
8 Jerry's come **out / over** in spots all over his face.

G Write a phrasal verb from the box in the correct form in each gap.

black out • cotton on • follow up • go down • lash out • pass away • pull through • ward off

1 Mr Deacon next door had a very serious operation. Apparently, it's a miracle he ....
2 The first comedian didn't .... well with the audience at all and he was booed off the stage.
3 It took Terry a while to .... to the fact I was joking.
4 There's no point .... at Dr Barker. She's not responsible for what's happened.
5 I don't know what happened. I was just sitting at my desk and I suddenly .... for a few minutes.
6 In some cultures, they wear jewellery to .... evil spirits.
7 The researchers .... a number of patients who had taken the drug to determine what side effects they had experienced.
8 Susie, I'm afraid I've got some bad news. Your grandmother .... peacefully during the night.

H **Phrasal verbs with *through*, such as *pull through*, sometimes contain the idea of completing something successfully. Tick the phrasal verbs in these sentences which contain that idea.**

1 It's going to be tough but we'll **muddle through** somehow, you'll see. ....
2 I was **going through** my wardrobe when I found these jeans. Would you like them? ....
3 I'm determined to **see** this **through** to the bitter end. ....
4 Eliot did well in physics, but he only just **scraped through** his chemistry exam. ....
5 Truth and justice will **win through** in the end – they always do. ....
6 The government's totally committed to **carrying through** these reforms. ....

Phrases, patterns and collocations

I **Write one word in each gap.**

1 I want you kids to be .... your best behaviour tonight.
2 My father's been .... poor health for a while now.
3 You shouldn't have reacted .... getting so annoyed.
4 We were always polite .... our teachers when I was at school.
5 I don't think I'll ever be rich, but you live .... hope, don't you?
6 I hope I live to the grand old age .... 94!
7 I am writing .... response to your letter of 15th July.
8 So .... effect what you're saying is that I'm being made redundant.
9 Sue left and, ... a consequence, I was promoted to Senior Nurse!
10 I know I did the wrong thing, but I was acting .... good faith, you know.

J **Complete using the words in the box in the correct form.**

adverse • aggressive • alternative • dire • health • polite • quality

1 Do you know what time the .... centre opens in the morning?
2 What we do here is ensure that our terminally ill patients get the best .... of life possible.
3 Of course hitting someone's an example of .... behaviour!
4 There shouldn't be any .... effects with these pills, but if there are, let me know.
5 I hate the thought of standing there making .... conversation to strangers.
6 The consequences could be .... if you don't start eating properly and get some exercise.
7 Some doctors think there's a lot to be said for .... medicine.

K **For each question, write one word which can be used in all three sentences.**

1 I used to be .... against plastic surgery but I've changed my mind now.
There was .... silence throughout the room, and I realised my joke had offended people.
If you do that again you'll be in .... trouble!

2 If you treat people well, they usually respond in ....
I didn't say anything of the .... !
That was very .... of you to help Mrs Taylor carry her shopping.

3 The play really came to .... in the second act.
Darren asked me to go with him to the prom; 'Not on your .... !', I told him.
You know you're putting your .... at risk by smoking, don't you?

4 The way Hilary treats Carl just makes me ....
We were worried .... because we had no idea where Karen was and she hadn't called.
I'm not feeling well at all, so I think I'm going to call in .... this morning.

5 We only went there for a .... ; we didn't know it would cause so much trouble.
You always have to have the last .... , don't you?
It's a .... a minute when Daniel's around.

6 She only said that for .... ; she doesn't really believe it.
The new regulations will come into .... from midnight tonight.
Caffeine has very little .... on me, so I can sleep at night however many cups of coffee I drink.

L Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

1 Spending two weeks in hospital was very different from lying on the beach! **cry**
Spending two weeks in hospital was .... lying on the beach!

2 The medicine should start working soon. **benefits**
You should .... soon.

3 I just did what the sergeant ordered me to do, sir. **acting**
I .... , sir.

4 I had no idea everyone would react so violently to my suggestion. **cause**
I had no idea I .... by suggesting that.

5 Don't you think you should be a bit more respectful to them, Edward? **treat**
Don't you think you should .... , Edward?

6 Alan's got food poisoning. **taken**
Alan .... food poisoning.

Idioms

M Each of the words in bold is incorrect. Rewrite them correctly.

1 Thanks for inviting me but I think I'll give it a **leave**, if you don't mind. ....
2 I could have **hit** myself when I invited Claudia to the beach. I'd completely forgotten she's got to stay indoors until she's completely recovered. ....
3 I'm going to be in plaster for six months so I'm just going to have to **smile** and bear it. ....
4 **Hold** your hair on! It's nothing to get upset about, you know. ....
5 I know you were angry but there was no need to fly off the **doorknob** like that. ....
6 After working all day, I like to go out with some friends just to let off **air**. ....
7 The best way to deal with bullies is to give them a taste of their own **tablets**. ....
8 They're closing the local hospital and everyone round here is up in **guns** about it. ....
9 Fiona's offered to help you. Don't ask why – never look a gift **cow** in the mouth. ....
10 You could complain to her boss, but it's probably better just to let sleeping **cats** lie. ....
11 What's done is done – there's no point crying over spilt **liquid**. ....
12 It was hard to keep a **plain** face when Jenny told me how Toby had broken his arm. ....

Word formation

N Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals.

1 Colin became a political .... when he was at university. **ACT**
2 Do you know the .... of the word 'handsome'? **DERIVE**
3 I know it's a bit annoying but there's no need to .... to such an extent. **ACT**
4 Have you got any .... in your toes at all, Mr Babcock? **SENSE**
5 We stood there watching the .... drama with shock on our faces. **FOLD**
6 In medicine, ... is always better than cure. **PREVENT**
7 If one of our nurses has acted .... , you can be assured we will take the strongest possible action against him or her. **NEGLECT**
8 It's .... even trying. We'll never get to the hospital in time. **FRUIT**
9 We were all jumping around .... in the corridor, desperately waiting to hear if it was a boy or a girl. **PATIENT**
10 Do you really think your plans are going to come to .... ? **FRUIT**
11 By the angry looks on people's faces, I would say there was widespread .... for the proposed changes to the health centre's opening times. **APPROVE**
12 I used to think I could change the world, but then .... set in when I reached my early thirties. **ILLUSION**
13 I can't believe you forgot to get your wife a birthday present. You're so .... sometimes! **NEGLECT**
14 She told me she's not .... in the slightest for what she said. **REGRET**
15 The whole incident was extremely .... **REGRET**
16 There's a lot of .... with the government at the moment. I think they might well get kicked out at the next election. **CONTENT**
17 As I told Rose how I felt she was completely .... , so I had no idea at all what she was thinking. **RESPOND**

O Use the word given in capitals at the end of the line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line.

Voluntary euthanasia

There are many moral issues which remain (**1**) .... to this day. One of these is **RESOLVE**
voluntary euthanasia. Let's say there is a patient who has a terminal disease. All possible treatments
known to science are (**2**) .... There's no cure, and no hope. The patient's death **EFFECT**
from this disease at some point in the future is (**3**) .... Most of us would say that, as **AVOID**
long as the patient is fairly comfortable and pain-free, there's no moral issue. But what if the patient is
in extreme agony? They cannot live (**4**) .... of machines and 24-hour care. What if the **DEPEND**
patient (**5**) .... and continually asks for their life to be brought to an end by doctors? **RESOLVE**
Should the doctors refuse? At present, in most countries, there are laws against voluntary euthanasia.
But from a moral point of view, we have to (**6**) .... that there is a problem. Do the **KNOW**
doctors really have the right to be (**7**) .... to the patient's wishes? **SENSE**
On the other hand, opponents of voluntary euthanasia argue that scientific (**8**) .... **KNOW**
is increasing all the time. An incurable disease one day may be curable the next. They also argue
that if the law was changed, the (**9**) .... situation would put doctors in a much worse **RESULT**
position. They currently have no choice. Do we as a society have the right to expect doctors to
(**10**) .... such a difficult and complex issue? **HAND**

9 Units 17 and 18

A Write one word in each gap.

Crying

A boyfriend or girlfriend we love dumps us. How do we react? Most of us go through a period of crying our eyes (**1**) .... But have you ever wondered why humans cry? Most mammals produce tears to clean and lubricate the eyes but humans are unique – perhaps with the exception of gorillas and elephants – in producing tears in response (**2**) .... emotional stimuli. We might feel (**3**) .... crying when we hear sad news, or even cry (**4**) .... happiness. Scientists are unsure what, if any, benefits there are from crying as it seems to have little or no immediate effect (**5**) .... the situation that has produced the tears. However, many people do say that they feel the benefits (**6**) .... a good cry in that after it they are emotionally stronger, so it's possible that crying does in some way help us to get (**7**) .... difficult emotional situations.

Some societies look down on adults crying. This attitude is sometimes seen in the society's language. Expressions such as 'there's no point crying over (**8**) .... milk' and '(**9**) .... and bear it' in English reflect a culture that – at least historically – does not value adult crying.

Crying can also be used as a means of deception. If you cry 'crocodile tears', you are (**10**) .... on an act – pretending to be upset when in fact you are not.

(1 mark per answer)

B Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

11 That's the impressionist the audience didn't like. **badly**
That's the impressionist .... the audience.

12 He was arrested when they caught him driving a stolen vehicle. **act**
Being .... a stolen vehicle, he was arrested.

13 Where we live now is nothing like Coventry city centre, where we used to live. **cry**
Where we live now is .... Coventry city centre, where we used to live.

14 The price of prescriptions will increase tomorrow. **effect**
The price of prescriptions will increase .... tomorrow.

15 I can't understand why anyone would want to commit suicide, can you? **own**
I can't understand why anyone would want to .... , can you?

16 You're going to enjoy tonight! **treat**
You're .... tonight!

17 Honestly, it was impossible not to laugh when Mrs Harrison slipped in the corridor. **face**
Honestly, ... was impossible when Mrs Harrison slipped in the corridor.

18 The parents of that girl are furious about her expulsion. **arms**
That's the girl .... about her expulsion.

(2 marks per answer)

C Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals.

19 Don't be so .... Can't you see you've upset Guy? **SENSE**

20 Steve's bought a .... little gadget for tuning his guitar. **HAND**

21 I want to make sure all my .... will be financially secure if I'm incapacitated in any way. **DEPEND**

22 The audience showed their .... by booing and slowly clapping their hands. **APPROVE**

23 I don't consider myself a political .... , but I am interested in current affairs. **ACT**

24 At the start of the seminar, they gave us a number of handouts and a nice little .... to keep them all in. **FOLD**

25 There's a risk factor with all medication, but honestly the risk with this particular drug is .... **NEGLECT**

26 We still don't know whether the plan will ever come to .... or not. **FRUIT**

(1 mark per answer)

D Write a verb from the box in the correct form in each gap. There is one verb you will not need.

black • come • cotton • crease • get • pass • play • pull • ward

27 I thought Tim was serious at first, but then I .... on to the fact that he was pulling Graham's leg.

28 I've .... out in a rash all over my body.

29 I almost .... up when I heard Doug was going to be playing Romeo in the school play.

30 I'm afraid Mr Jenkins .... away in his sleep last night.

31 He's in a critical condition in hospital, so we're all praying he'll .... through.

32 I started to feel dizzy and then completely .... out.

33 Did people really think that if you hung garlic by your bed it would .... off vampires?

34 My grandad's old war wound is .... up again, he says.

(1 mark per answer)

E Choose the correct answer.

35 I got totally fed up with telesales, ... being quite good at it.
A although C however
B despite D even if

36 .... they get the letter tomorrow, you still won't get a reply before the weekend.
A Even though C While
B Even if D However

37 The woman .... is being held at Granchester Police Station.
A who arrested C arrested
B arresting D was arrested

38 Britain has been in the European Community for more than 30 years. .... , there are still occasional calls for its withdrawal.
A However C Even though
B Despite D In spite of

39 .... I'd like to help you out, I'm afraid I just haven't got any spare money at the moment.
A Even C Much as
B Despite D Try as

40 Is that the bookshop .... they've also got a café?
A where C whose
B which D with whom

41 You're the first person I've met .... political views are more left-wing than mine!
A who has C whose
B who's D for whom

42 This government would destroy all our civil liberties, ... half a chance.
A giving C given
B being given D having been given

(1 mark per answer)

Total mark: ..../50

UNIT 19 Grammar

Complex sentences

Inversions with negative adverbial words and phrases

hardly (… when)	***Hardly** had the new law been introduced **when** the mistake was realised.*
scarcely (… when)	***Scarcely** had I opened the front door **when** I heard a noise from the kitchen.*
barely (… when)	***Barely** had we solved one problem **when** another one arose.*
no sooner (… than)	***No sooner** had the alarm gone off **than** the police arrived.*
only	***Only** in an emergency should you dial 999.*
only after	***Only after** I had checked that the burglars had left did I call the police.*
only when	***Only when** we agree what measures are needed will we be able to solve the problem.*
not until	***Not until** the next election will we know how the public feel about this news.*
at no time/point/stage	***At no point** did I realise that he was the Prime Minister.*
in no way	***In no way** does this decision represent a change in government policy.*
little	***Little** did Ralph know that the burglar was still inside his house.*
never	***Never** have I heard such a ridiculous suggestion!*
not	***Not** one vote did the proposal receive.*
not only (… but also/too)	***Not only** has this government failed **but** it has **also** stolen ideas from other parties.*
on no account	***On no account** should you try to tackle a burglar yourself.*
rarely	***Rarely** do the newspapers present a balanced view of current events.*
seldom	***Seldom** do people leaving prison stay out of trouble.*
under no circumstances	***Under no circumstances** will we accept an increase in working hours.*

Watch out!

With *not until* and *only (when/after)*, you have to be careful to invert the verb and subject in the main clause.
✓ ***Not until** / **Only when** this government realises what a mistake it is making will things change.*

Inversions with adverbial expressions of place (+ verb of movement/position)

here	***Here** comes the Minister now.*
there	***There** stood the next king of England.*
adverbial phrases	***At the top of society** are the aristocracy.*
	***Beside the Town Hall** stood the public library.*
	***In this prison** are housed some of the most dangerous criminals.*
	***On the corner of the street** sat a homeless man.*
participle phrases	***Running down the road** was a young man with a woman's handbag under his arm.*

Other inversions

in short answers using *so, neither* and *nor*	*'I voted for Smith.'* *'Did you? **So did I**.'*	*'I don't believe a word this government says.'* *'No, **neither do I**.'*
after *as, than, so* and *such*	*I am very worried about bullying in the school, **as** are a lot of the parents.* *The police in this area make more arrests **than** do officers in other parts of the country.* ***So** rare is burglary here that many people don't bother to lock their doors.* ***Such** public interest was there in the story that it was on the front pages of the newspapers.*	
in conditional sentences (see Unit 11)	***Were** the Foreign Secretary to resign, it would cause serious problems for the Prime Minister.* ***Should** the Foreign Secretary resign, it would cause serious problems for the Prime Minister.* ***Had** I **known** about the crime problem, I would never have moved here.*	

Cleft sentences

all (that)	***All that** Keith wanted was to get his money back.* *To get his money back was **all that** Keith wanted.*
It is/was … who/which/that	***It was** Carol **who/that** called the police.*
the … thing	***The first thing** is to check to see what's missing.* *To check to see what's missing is **the first thing**.*
the day/etc when/that *the day/etc on/in/at which*	***The year when** this government came to power was 2006.* *2006 was **the year when** this government came to power.* *2006 was **the year in which** this government came to power.*
the person who/that	***The person who** stole the money was Thomas.* *Thomas was **the person who** stole the money.*
the place where	***The place where** the Queen stays in Scotland is Balmoral Castle.* *Balmoral Castle is **the place where** the Queen stays in Scotland.*
the reason (why)	***The reason (why)** I joined this political party was to make a difference.* *To make a difference was **the reason (why)** I joined this political party.*
the thing that	***The thing that** annoys me is the boss's attitude.* *The boss's attitude is **the thing that** annoys me.*
what	***What** annoys me is the boss's attitude.* *The boss's attitude is **what** annoys me.*
what … do/did	***What** Churchill **did** was bring people together.*
what happens/happened is/was …	***What happened was** that a witness saw the man leave the house.*

Watch out!

With *it is/was …* in cleft sentences, there are two possibilities when the subject is a pronoun. They differ in formality.
✓ *It was **I who** stole the money.* (formal)
✓ *It was **me that** stole the money.* (informal)

so/such/too/enough

so	*It all happened **so** quickly **that** I didn't have time to see the man's face.* *This problem has gone on for **so** long **that** I don't think they'll ever find a solution.* *It was **so** terrible a crime **that** the judge sentenced him to life in prison.* *There is **so** much crime around here **that** I'm thinking of moving.*
such	*This problem has gone on for **such** a long time **that** I don't think they'll ever find a solution.* *It was **such** a terrible crime **that** the judge sentenced him to life in prison.* *There is **such** a lot of crime around here **that** I'm thinking of moving.*
too	*I had **too** little time **to** get a good look at his face.* *This problem seems to be **too** difficult **for** them **to** solve.* *The police responded **too** slowly **to** have any chance of catching the burglar.*
enough	*There just aren't **enough** police officers on the streets.* *The police weren't quick **enough to** catch the burglar.* *The police didn't respond quickly **enough to** catch the burglar.*

Watch out!

- *So* and *such* can also be used in various ways without a *that* clause.
  ✓ *There's **so** much crime around here these days.* ✓ *Politics is **so** boring!* ✓ *You're **such** a bully!*
- We only use *too* to describe something that is more than necessary and which has a negative effect. It is not the same as *very, really, extremely*, etc.
- It is not necessary to add an extra object in sentences such as the following:
  ✗ ~~*This problem seems to be too difficult for them to solve **it**.*~~
- *Enough* usually comes before nouns and after adjectives and adverbs.

A If a phrase in bold is correct, put a tick. If it is incorrect, rewrite it correctly.

1 Hardly **I had sat down** when the doorbell rang. ....

2 Scarcely **had Julian finished** writing when the teacher told the students to put their pens down. ....

3 We had barely set off on our journey when **the kids started** asking when we would get there. ....

4 No sooner **the government changes** the tax laws than businesses find a way around them. ....

5 Scarcely **they had finished** painting the house when it started to rain. ....

6 Hardly **the new computer system had been installed** when it started to go wrong. ....

7 It's true that no sooner **we had started** eating than we realised we had forgotten the potatoes. ....

8 Barely had the politician started to speak when **began the crowd** to boo. ....

9 Hardly **the new park was finished** when vandals destroyed the flowerbeds. ....

10 Scarcely **Keith had arrived** in Argentina when he was arrested. ....

B Complete using the words and phrases in the box.

at no point • in no way • little • never • not • not only
only after • on no account • rarely • under no circumstances

1 .... were the security guards to blame for what happened.

2 .... once did the old woman thank me for helping her.

3 .... seeing the doctor was Theresa allowed to leave hospital.

4 .... will passengers be allowed to carry more than 6 kg of hand luggage.

5 .... were you late, but you also forgot to bring the correct documents.

6 .... during the meeting did anyone mention that the managing director was planning to leave.

7 .... did the passengers know that the driver was really an undercover police officer.

8 .... do you meet anyone as charming as Mr Beeching.

9 .... should unaccompanied children be allowed to enter the area.

10 .... before has the company found itself facing such stiff competition.

C Complete using the words in bold with the verb in the correct form.

1 Not until the area is made safe .... (**construction / can continue**)

2 In no way .... (**the announcement / affect**) how strongly we felt about the situation.

3 Seldom .... (**you / see**) a vintage car in quite such good condition these days.

4 Not only .... (**Jerry / forget**) my birthday, but he also forgot our wedding anniversary.

5 At no time .... (**I / ask**) my opinion on the subject.

6 Only when .... (**I / checked**) the ticket again did I realise that I had won first prize!

7 Little .... (**Caroline / realise**) that I had a big surprise planned for her.

8 Under no circumstances .... (**you / should sign**) a contract you haven't read thoroughly.

9 At no stage .... (**it / appear**) likely that Wilkinson would win the championship.

10 Only if the weather is clear .... (**the space shuttle / will allow**) to launch.

D **Complete using a verb from the box in the correct form. Try to use each verb at least once.**

appear • be • come • go • lie • sit • stand

Neighbourhood noise

'There (**1**) .... our new neighbour now,' said Joe. I looked up and coming along the path (**2**) .... a short, fat man. On his head (**3**) .... a bright red baseball cap. He ignored us and went into the house next door. We waited a moment. From an upstairs window (**4**) .... the sound of loud rock music. Joe sighed.

'Every day for the past week has been the same,' he said. 'Well, today's going to be different.' In his hand (**5**) .... a letter from the council. 'This'll stop him,' he said.

We went next door and knocked. After a moment, the door opened and the music suddenly got louder. There (**6**) .... a little old woman, looking up at us, smiling. On the sofa behind her (**7**) .... a fat old cat.

'Erm … we've come about the noise,' mumbled Joe, confused at finding the old woman.

'Eh?' she said.

'About the noise. I've got a letter from the council,' shouted Joe. Suddenly, in the doorway (**8**) .... the same fat man I had seen earlier.

'She's quite deaf. That's why she plays her music so loud. Can I help you?'

Joe looked at the little old woman. 'Er … no. No. That's okay.' He screwed the letter up and put it into his pocket.

E **Circle the correct phrase. If both are correct, circle both.**

1 Dave doesn't really trust Ian, and I have to say that neither **I do / do I**.

2 Such a valuable painting **it is / is it** that the public are not allowed to get close to it.

3 So **we could / could we** watch TV while we ate, we moved the television onto the balcony.

4 My dad's never been abroad, and nor **my mum has / has my mum**.

5 Such **the media interest was / was the media interest** in the wedding that there were over a dozen photographers.

6 It's been a hard season for the team, as **last season was / was last season**.

7 Russia is a country with vast natural resources, and so **China is / is China**.

8 We in this country spend more per person on fuel than **the French do / do the French**.

9 The Minister was forced to resign, such **the pressure was / was the pressure** on her.

10 So nervous **he was / was he** that I was almost certain he was lying.

F Rewrite the sentences, starting with the words given.

1 The window was broken by a cricket ball.
It ....

2 I will never forget the day I heard I'd got into my chosen university.
The day on ....

3 Glynn became a social worker to help people less fortunate than himself.
The reason ....

4 Getting through the summer without getting injured was the only thing the athlete wanted.
All ....

5 The driver didn't see the motorcyclist.
What happened ....

6 Christopher Columbus discovered America.
The person ....

7 Seeing Patricia cry like that made me feel guilty.
What ....

8 What we had to do first was decide where to meet.
The first thing ....

9 There are lots of facilities where we go camping.
The place ....

10 Einstein proved that energy and mass are basically the same thing.
What ....

G Write *so*, *such*, *too* or *enough* in each gap.

1 It was .... good a meal that we left the waiter quite a large tip.
2 It's becoming increasingly clear that there just aren't .... people willing to buy our products online.
3 I'm quite enjoying my maths degree, but I just find statistics .... boring!
4 Angela seemed to be having .... a good time at the party that I decided not to tell her how late it was.
5 We've all been working .... hard on the latest project the manager gave us a couple of extra days off.
6 I worry about my grandparents because they have .... a lot of health problems.
7 It's .... early to tell whether the business is going to succeed or not.
8 Set the alarm or we'll never wake up early .... to catch the first train.
9 I never knew that Andrew had .... few friends.
10 Everyone was surprised when Dan failed because he's .... a good student.
11 A year after losing my job, I had .... many debts that I was really beginning to panic.
12 I was hoping to have a word with Alan before he left, but it seems to be .... late now.

H Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

1 I had to clear the spare room before I could start decorating. **cleared**
Only when .... start decorating.

2 The phone rang again as soon as I put it down. **had**
Hardly .... it rang again.

3 The Watsons moved to London and very soon after they decided to get divorced. **had**
No sooner .... they decided to get divorced.

4 I had no idea the manager wanted to see me to fire me. **realise**
Little .... the manager wanted to see me to fire me.

5 I was told about the website by Charlie. **who**
It .... me about the website.

6 Buying a plane ticket at the last minute isn't often possible. **to**
Rarely .... a plane ticket at the last minute.

7 They didn't ask me anything about my plans for the summer. **question**
Not .... about my plans for the summer.

8 There is no situation in which we will allow the management to lower wages. **no**
Under .... the management to lower wages.

I Choose the correct answer.

1 Not until we have no choice .... the business down.
A close we C will we close
B we will close D we close

2 It was .... a victory that even Smith's fans couldn't believe it.
A such surprising C too surprising
B so surprising D surprising enough

3 At no time .... I was going to fail the exam.
A did I think C I thought
B thought I D was I thought

4 So .... that they actually finished three weeks early.
A were the builders fast C the builders were fast
B fast the builders were D fast were the builders

5 Never .... complete and utter rubbish!
A have I heard so C did I hear so
B I heard such D have I heard such

6 In no way .... that people will be prevented from organising peaceful protests.
A this law means C does this law mean
B means this law D this law does mean

7 If you don't put the tent up .... , it might blow away!
A too carefully C such carefully
B so carefully D carefully enough

8 No sooner .... everyone started to gossip about him.
A had Mike left than C left Mike when
B did Mike leave when D Mike had left than

9 'I can't stand this hot weather!'
'No, ... Dreadful, isn't it?'
A so can't I C so I can't
B neither can I D nor I can

10 'We were at the *Rolling Stones* concert last weekend.'
'Were you? So .... !'
A I was C I was there
B was I being D was I

J Write one word in each gap.

Problems close to home

Rarely (**1**) .... neighbours have the best of relationships for any length of time. Of course, some people become close friends, but only if there is a lot of give and take (**2**) .... this possible. (**3**) .... common are disputes between neighbours that there are many laws to cover arguments over noise, property and rubbish. Before things go (**4**) .... far for the relationship to be saved, there are a few simple things you can do. The first is (**5**) .... speak to your neighbour. You'd be amazed at how many arguments are avoided by (**6**) .... a simple step. Not (**7**) .... does it give you the chance to express your complaint, it (**8**) .... gives your neighbour the chance to explain and, perhaps, take action.
Secondly, check your rights. On (**9**) .... account should you do anything to damage your neighbours' property, or their overhanging trees if that's the problem, without knowing what your legal rights are. (**10**) .... until you are sure you are acting within the law should you do anything. And remember – a little understanding can go a long way.

UNIT 20 Vocabulary

Power and social issues

Topic vocabulary: Power

see page 238 for definitions

- aggression (n)
- authority (n)
- benign (adj)
- bully (v, n)
- command (v, n)
- conquer (v)
- consent (v, n)
- controversy (n)
- dictator (n)
- dominate (v)
- eliminate (v)
- enforce (v)
- entitled (adj)
- exempt (adj)
- former (adj)
- impose (v)
- inferior (adj)
- intimidate (v)
- label (v, n)
- liberate (v)
- mainstream (n, adj)
- master (v, n)
- minister (n)
- monarch (n)
- prohibit (v)
- reign (v, n)
- reinforce (v)
- reluctant (adj)
- resist (v)
- restrict (v)
- society (n)
- subject (v, n)
- subjective (adj)
- submit (v)
- summon (v)
- superior (adj)
- undermine (v)
- unrest (n)
- victimise (v)
- vulnerable (adj)

Topic vocabulary: Social issues

see page 239 for definitions

- abolish (v)
- advocate (v)
- alleviate (v)
- bureaucracy (n)
- charity (n)
- class (n)
- community (n)
- convict (v, n)
- corruption (n)
- deterrent (n)
- heritage (n)
- immigration (n)
- industrial action (n phr)
- institution (n)
- legislation (n)
- prejudice (n)
- prison reform (n phr)
- privileged (adj)
- prosecute (v)
- state (n)

Phrasal verbs

back down	stop asking for something or stop saying that you will do something, because a lot of people oppose you
blend in	if someone or something blends in, they are similar to the other people, objects, buildings, etc around them, and so they seem appropriate or you do not notice them
bring about	make something happen, especially to cause changes in a situation
crack down (on)	start dealing with someone or something much more strictly *crackdown (n)*
get in	be elected for a political job
get off	not be punished severely or at all for something you have been accused of in court; have a particular period of time as a holiday; send something, for example in the post
give in	stop competing or arguing and accept that you cannot win; if you give in to something, you can no longer control the feeling of wanting it
hit back	criticise someone who has criticised you; deliberately hurt someone who has hurt you
lock up	put someone in a prison; lock all the doors and windows of a building so that no one can get in
opt out (of)	decide not to take part in something or stop taking part in it
phase out	gradually stop using something
push around	keep telling someone what to do in an unfair or unpleasant way
single out	choose one person from a group for special attention
stand up to	not allow yourself to be treated badly, especially by someone in authority
take over	take control of something; begin to do something that someone else was doing
talk down to	talk to someone as if you think they are not as clever or important as you are

Phrases, patterns and collocations

arm arm sb with, arm yourself against, take up arms (against), lay down (your) arms, up in arms (about), arms control, arms race

authority have the authority to do, grant sb the authority to do, have authority over, have sth on good authority, in authority, with authority, the authorities, local authority

charge charge sb with, charge sb for, take charge, (put) in charge (of), overall charge

class class sb/sth as, social class, working/middle/upper class, ruling class, class system, class differences, class war

Phrases, patterns and collocations

crime commit/report/witness/solve a crime, fight/combat crime, the scene of a crime, organised crime, crime prevention, crime rate, crime wave

deny deny sb sth, deny a request, deny that, deny doing, deny having done, deny (all) responsibility for

example make an example of, set an example, follow an example, give an example, an example of, classic/prime example

force force sb to do, force sth on sb, force your way into/through, force a smile, with force, police force, armed forces

grant grant sth to, grant sb permission/authority, grant a request, grant sb's wish

law become law, break/follow/uphold the law, pass/amend/repeal a law, lay down the law, practise law, against the law, above the law, by/under law, law and order

lock lock sth in, lock horns with, under lock and key, locksmith

peer peer group, peer pressure

power take/seize/hold/exercise/exert/wield/abuse power, in power, beyond sb's power, power to do, power struggle, power structure, power base

prison go to prison, send sb to prison, in prison, prison term, prison sentence, prison reform, prison officer, open prison

provoke provoke sb into doing, provoke a reaction/protest/response, provoke outrage

right have a/the/no/every right to do, give sb the right to do, right and wrong, right in saying/thinking/believing, right (of sb) to do, equal rights, human rights, animal rights

rule break/bend/follow the rules, against the rules, as a rule, rule of law, rule of thumb, rules and regulations

sentence sentence sb to, pass sentence, serve a sentence (of five years, etc), prison sentence, death sentence

social social conditions, social contact, social security, social services, social call, social worker, social club, social life

subject subject sb to, bring up / get onto a subject, drop/change the subject, subject to, the subject of, British subject

Idioms

bury your head in the sand	ignore a problem or an unpleasant situation and hope that it will disappear
gain/get/have/take the upper hand	gain/get/have/take control or advantage over a person or situation
get/have your way	be allowed to have or do what you want
live and let live	used for saying that you should accept other people's beliefs and way of life, even if they are very different from your own
pull (a few) strings	use your influence in order to get something you want or to help someone, especially when this is unfair
red tape	documents, rules or processes that cause delays
take the law into your own hands	punish someone in your own way without involving the police or the courts, often by doing something illegal yourself
the powers that be	the people who control a situation
throw the book at sb	punish someone very severely
under sb's thumb	completely controlled by someone else

Word formation

aggression	aggressiveness, aggressor, aggressive(ly)
argue	argument, argumentative(ly), (un)arguable, arguably
charity	charitableness, (un)charitable, (un)charitably
crime	(de)criminalise, criminal, criminality, criminally
dominate	domineer, domination, (pre)dominance, dominant, domineering, dominating, predominant(ly)
duty	dutiful(ly)
example	exemplify, exemplification, exemplary
govern	misgovern, government, governor, governess, governing, governmental, ungovernable
hard	harden, hardship, hardness, hardy, hardly
indicate	indication, indicator, indicative
institute	institutionalise, institution, institutional, institutionalised
might	mighty, mightily
moral	moralise, demoralise, (im/a)morality, moralist, morale, (im/a)moral, (im/a)morally
office	officiate, official(dom), officer, officious, (un)official(ly)
permit	permission, permissiveness, permissible, permissive
persuade	dissuade, persuasion, persuasiveness, persuasive(ly)
power	empower, overpower, empowerment, powerlessness, powerful(ly), powerless(ly)
prejudice	(un)prejudiced, prejudicial
provoke	provocation, provocative(ly)
signify	(in)significance, (in)significant(ly)

Topic vocabulary: Power

A Circle the correct word.

1 The operation can only go ahead if the child's parents **consent / submit** to it.
2 In Britain, prisoners are not **entitled / exempt** to vote in elections, but I think they should be allowed to.
3 Colonel Wilson **commands / intimidates** over 5,000 men.
4 We need to plan carefully to **eliminate / prohibit** all risk of failure.
5 Queen Victoria saw many changes during her time as **dictator / monarch**.
6 It's one thing having this law, but unless the police **enforce / reinforce** it, it's useless.
7 I don't think I'll ever **master / reign** surfing.
8 Our manager at work just tries to **bully / conquer** us all into doing what she wants.
9 But surely the council don't have the **aggression / authority** to change the law, do they?
10 Didn't the government foresee that there would be a lot of **controversy / unrest** in the papers about this latest proposal?

B Complete using the words in the box.

benign • former • inferior • mainstream • minister • reluctant • society • subjective • superior • vulnerable

1 Bill Clinton, ... President of the United States, arrived in Beijing today.
2 After years in small political parties, I gradually became more interested in .... politics.
3 My boss doesn't know what he's doing, but I can't tell him that because he's .... to me.
4 I was .... to help her, but I had no choice.
5 You might think people want this law, but that's just your .... opinion and you don't have any facts to back it up.
6 A dictator might appear .... , but you never know when they might start to abuse their power.
7 We must do all we can to help those who are in a .... position.
8 Each department is controlled by a .... , who is part of the government.
9 Don't think I'm .... to you. I'm just as good as you are.
10 I'm sick of worrying about what .... thinks and I'm just going to do what I want.

C Complete using the correct form of the words in the box.

dominate • impose • label • liberate • resist • restrict • subject • summon • undermine • victimise

Power

We are (**1**) .... to many different forms of power. There are those forms of power that exist by law: the right of the government to (**2**) .... laws on a country and to (**3**) .... what we are allowed to do. There is also the right of courts to (**4**) .... people to appear to stand trial or to give evidence. There is also, of course, power on a more personal level.

People are constantly struggling for power and social status. This might take the form of attempting to (**5**) .... a conversation, something that is relatively easy to (**6**) .... since it is so obvious. It is more difficult to (**7**) .... ourselves from other forms of social power. When we are (**8**) .... as 'this' or 'that' by other people and put into a category, that too is a form of power. Bosses at work might (**9**) .... their employees by making them work long hours. A parent might (**10**) .... their child's self-confidence with constant criticism. Power is everywhere and the more you understand it, the more you may be able to control it.

Topic vocabulary: Social issues

D Complete using the correct form of the words in the box.

bureaucracy • community • convict • corruption • deterrent • institution
legislation • prejudice • reform • state

Crime and *punishment*

The demand for prison (**1**) .... has steadily increased as more and more people have come to see that locking people up in (**2**) .... simply doesn't reduce crime. Not only does it fail to act as a (**3**) .... , but it does very little to help (**4**) .... readjust to life back in the (**5**) .... after they have served their time. Prisons are isolated places, where prisoners learn from other criminals, and where bullying, bribery and other forms of (**6**) .... spread. Once outside prison, offenders face (**7**) .... , which tends to force them back into a life of crime. Even once the (**8**) .... recognises the need for change, it is notoriously slow. It usually demands new (**9**) .... to change the system, and while the slow processes of (**10**) .... go on, more and more lives are affected.

E If the word in bold is correct, put a tick. If it is incorrect, replace it with one of the words in bold from the other sentences.

1 It's ridiculous to think that we should **advocate** passports and just let everyone go where they like. ....
2 What I don't understand is why the government aren't doing the work that this **heritage** is doing. ....
3 Don't you think that our library system is an important part of our national **action**? ....
4 Unions are threatening industrial **class** unless the pay offer is increased. ....
5 Do you **alleviate** capital punishment for very serious offences? ....
6 Derren came from a working **immigration** background but eventually became a lord. ....
7 Warning: We will **abolish** anyone caught shoplifting. ....
8 I suppose I was **privileged** to go to private school, but I don't think about it much. ....
9 More must be done to **prosecute** the suffering of the poorest in society. ....
10 High levels of **charity** to Australia from Europe in the nineteenth century meant there was a rapid increase in its population. ....

Phrasal verbs

F Match to make sentences.

1 No matter what I said, Chris refused to back ....
2 Hardly had they locked the shop ....
3 Only radical action will bring ....
4 What annoys me is that the man got ....
5 The Prime Minister hit ....
6 Things have certainly improved since you took ....
7 The authorities shouldn't give ....
8 I don't care who gets ....

A in to this kind of blackmail from the workers.
B off with just 100 hours' community service.
C in at this election because it doesn't make any difference.
D down from her position on abortion.
E over the business and rearranged things.
F up when the alarm went off.
G about the changes that we so desperately need.
H back at her critics and claimed she had done nothing wrong.

G **Write a word in each gap so that each second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.**

1 They're gradually getting rid of the old-style passports.
They're .... out the old-style passports.
2 Did you know that you can choose not to pay into the state pension scheme?
Did you know that you can .... out of the state pension scheme?
3 The police are making a special effort to deal with illegal parking around here.
The police are .... down on illegal parking around here.
4 Police officers in plain clothes tried to join the crowd and not be noticed.
Police officers in plain clothes tried to .... in with the crowd.
5 You shouldn't let Stephanie bully you.
You should .... up to Stephanie.
6 The press directed most of their criticism at the Deputy Prime Minister.
The Deputy Prime Minister was .... out for criticism by the press.
7 I wish you wouldn't speak to me as if you were superior.
I wish you wouldn't .... down to me.
8 Kyle got in trouble for bullying kids in the playground.
Kyle got in trouble for .... kids around in the playground.

H **Some phrasal verbs with *up*, such as *lock up*, have meanings connected to 'fastening or restricting'. Tick the sentences where the phrasal verb has a meaning connected to 'fastening or restricting'.**

1 I heard on the news that terrorists have **blown** a train **up** in India. ....
2 I think it's cruel to leave a dog **chained up** like that all day. ....
3 It's freezing outside. **Do up** your coat before you go out. ....
4 Sorry! I didn't mean to **mess** your room **up**, but I was looking for something. ....
5 Why don't you **sew up** that hole in your jeans before you go out? ....
6 The parcel was **taped up** so I had to use scissors to open it. ....
7 I found a rope to **tie** the burglar **up** with and then I called the police. ....
8 Can you help me? I can't **zip up** my top. ....

Phrases, patterns and collocations

I **Write one word in each gap.**

The Hoody

The hooded top, or 'hoody', has become something of a symbol of youth crime in Britain. It seems to get a mention whenever the newspapers get (**1**) .... the subject. Those wearing them are often classed (**2**) .... yobs or hooligans, even when they have done nothing (**3**) .... the law. The problem is that hoodies can easily hide their identity from CCTV cameras. Those (**4**) .... authority in some places such as shopping centres have even gone so far as to ban people wearing hoodies. They claim that the threat of crime (**5**) .... them the right to do it, but there is a danger that young people will actually be provoked (**6**) .... behaving in antisocial ways through rules like this. They may feel that those (**7**) .... power are discriminating against them, and that they refuse to listen when they deny (**8**) .... done anything wrong. It seems to be a classic example (**9**) .... older people feeling threatened by the fashions of the young. At the end of the day, what the members of their peer (**10**) .... think will always be more important to the young than what people running shopping centres think they should or shouldn't wear.

J For each question, write one word which can be used in all three sentences.

1 We don't go out during the week as a .... , but we'll make an exception tonight.
People must be made to respect the .... of law, or we'll have anarchy.
A good .... of thumb is that you should allow 15 minutes per exercise in the exam.

2 Did you hear that the guy who lives in the flat upstairs has been .... with burglary?
I couldn't believe they .... me three euros for a bottle of water!
The children ran out of the school gate and .... down the hill.

3 We have it on good .... that they're thinking of closing the local office.
The professor spoke with .... on the subject of young people and crime.
Responsibility for running the prison has been taken out of the hands of the local ....

4 The headteacher punished Aaron severely in order to make an .... of him.
Why can't you follow your brother's .... and go to university?
Give me one .... of a place round here where young people can go in the evenings.

5 The politician .... all responsibility for the prison escape.
The authorities .... the couple's request to be allowed to stay in Britain.
I didn't believe Abigail when she .... knowing who had stolen the money.

6 My parents have decided to lay down the .... so I can't come out this weekend.
This government's top priority is .... and order.
Have things improved since the Freedom of Information Act became .... ?

K Choose the correct answer.

1 We all have to follow the rules, and none of us is .... the law.
A beyond B over C above D onto

2 Apparently, before the fight some of the youths had .... themselves with knives.
A fitted B installed C armed D readied

3 The woman was convicted and sentenced .... six months in prison.
A for B on C with D to

4 Since it was a minor offence, Derek was sent to .... prison.
A an open B an easy C a soft D a weak

5 A middle-aged man was seen running away from the .... of the crime.
A place B scene C location D point

6 I work such long hours that I don't really have time for much of a .... life.
A friendly B outgoing C social D free

7 Don't worry – the documents are safely .... lock and key at my place.
A under B in C on D within

8 The most powerful force in a teenager's life is probably .... pressure.
A friend B peer C company D crowd

9 We are pleased to inform you that we have decided to .... your request for British citizenship.
A give B grant C permit D donate

10 We finally managed to .... our way through the crowd and reach the exit.
A create B insist C move D force

Idioms

L **Complete using the words in the box.**

book • hand • head • law • live • powers • strings • tape • thumb • way

1 You can't just bury your .... in the sand and hope that this problem goes away, you know.
2 My dad pulled a few .... and got me the job.
3 You can't just take the .... into your own hands and attack someone like that.
4 Ian's really under his boss's .... and isn't allowed to make any decisions himself.
5 It was a difficult game, but I eventually managed to gain the upper ....
6 Our neighbour's a bit strange, but .... and let live, I always say.
7 The .... that be have decided to ban skateboarding in the park.
8 I had to get through a lot of red .... , but I finally got the documents I needed.
9 If you let Vanessa have her own .... all the time, you'll spoil her.
10 This is the third time Heather's been caught – they're really going to throw the .... at her this time.

Word formation

M **Use the word given in capitals at the end of the line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line.**

A Reader Writes ...

We have all had the experience, I am sure, of feeling (**1**) .... **POWER**
in the face of civil servants. All nations need bureaucrats, but too many
have become (**2**) .... and inflexible. While some carry **INSTITUTE**
out their jobs (**3**) .... , others apply the letter of the law but **DUTY**
not the spirit, and behave in an (**4**) .... manner, relying on **OFFICE**
computers and rules to tell them what is (**5**) .... and what is **PERMIT**
not. The number of civil servants has increased (**6**) .... **SIGNIFY**
under this current government, which I believe is a good
(**7**) .... of where their priorities lie. I agree with Jack Turner **INDICATE**
(*Letters*, 16th May) that it is a (**8**) .... waste of taxpayers' **CRIME**
money and I find his argument that we only need one third of
them very (**9**) .... indeed. We in this country have **PERSUADE**
(**10**) .... the biggest civil service in this part of the world and **ARGUE**
it is time something was done about it.

Yours sincerely,
A. P. Kennedy (Mrs)

N Each of the words in bold is in an incorrect form. Rewrite them correctly.

1 The **domineering** view is that it's time this Prime Minister went. ....
2 Since the factory closed, many people in the area have been living in **hardly**. ....
3 I find a lot of what is on TV these days offensive and **moralise**. ....
4 Did you know that you can claim **charity** donations against tax? ....
5 Peter gave the ball a **mightily** kick and sent it over the wall. ....
6 From what she said, I think Katie is **prejudicial** against black people. ....
7 Calm down! There's no need to get so **aggression** about the situation! ....
8 Verity won a prize at school for her **example** behaviour. ....
9 It's not often you see such agreement between the opposition and the **governor** party. ....
10 I'm sure Scott wouldn't have hit the other boy if he hadn't had some kind of **provocative**. ....
11 Lois can be so **arguable** sometimes and never seems to listen to the other person's point of view. ....
12 I know I'm successful, but I only got where I am today by working **hardly**. ....
13 I'm only telling you this **officialdom**, but it looks like you are going to be promoted. ....
14 This problem may seem **significance** to you, but I can assure you that the council takes it very seriously. ....
15 After the recent civil war, the country is almost **government** and crime rates have soared. ....
16 I managed to **persuasive** Mike from sacking you, but just be more careful next time. ....

O The prefix *mis-*, as in *misgovern*, can be used with some nouns and verbs to mean 'bad/badly' or 'wrong/wrongly'. Tick the words below which can form words using *mis-*.

1 apply ....
2 behave ....
3 calculate ....
4 conduct ....
5 direct ....
6 fire ....
7 fortune ....
8 hear ....
9 inform ....
10 judge ....
11 lead ....
12 listen ....
13 manage ....
14 organise ....
15 place ....
16 print ....
17 read ....
18 satisfy ....
19 spell ....
20 trust ....
21 understand ....
22 use ....

P Complete the sentences using words formed in exercise O in the correct form.

1 Oh, I thought you said Saturday. I must have .... you.
2 I hope I never have the .... to meet that horrible man ever again!
3 The secretary was arrested for .... the club's money.
4 When I looked at the bill, I realised that they had .... it by nearly five per cent.
5 Now, be good. I don't want you to .... while Mrs Charlton is here.
6 I always .... 'potato' because I always think there's an 'e' on the end.
7 I used to think Molly was unfriendly, but I think I .... her and she's actually quite nice.
8 The gun .... and injured the soldier.

REVIEW 10 Units 19 and 20

A **Write one word in each gap.**

Book review

Rarely (**1**) .... one find as clear an account of social change as Olivia Harris's *Changing Britain*. Those who prefer to bury their heads in the (**2**) .... and imagine that Britain is the same as it was even 20 years ago are in for a shock. Harris convincingly argues that (**3**) .... only have those (**4**) .... authority increased their power, but ordinary people are also less likely to stand (**5**) .... to those in office. At (**6**) .... point in the book (**7**) .... any of Harris's claims presented without evidence, and neither does she talk (**8**) .... to the non-expert. Her main conclusion, that (**9**) .... until we all realise that there is a problem and decide to confront the powers that (**10**) .... will the situation improve, is powerful and irresistible.

(1 mark per answer)

B **Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals.**

11 The local people then leave the clay to .... in the sun, creating simple bricks. **HARD**

12 The attack in the city centre last night .... the kind of behaviour amongst young people that many object to. **EXAMPLE**

13 I was a bit .... by my performance in the first exam, but I decided to make an extra effort in the ones left. **MORAL**

14 When confronted with a mass of red tape, many people feel a sense of .... **POWER**

15 I really believe that it would be a major mistake to .... any drugs that are currently illegal. **CRIME**

16 Local elections can often seem .... , but in fact they send an important signal to the government. **SIGNIFY**

17 Suddenly, without .... , the dog sank its teeth into my leg. **PROVOKE**

18 There's so much fighting between rival groups that the country has become practically .... **GOVERN**

(1 mark per answer)

C **Write one word in each gap.**

19 I'm in bed by eleven when I've got lectures the next day .... a rule.

20 Am I right .... saying that you used to live in Saudi Arabia?

21 Of course, this decision is subject .... confirmation by the whole company board.

22 I've .... my sentence, but it's not easy fitting back into society.

23 The hotel manager promised to keep my valuables .... lock and key.

24 Politicians should remember that no one is .... the law.

25 The rebel group in the north of the country have laid .... their arms and agreed to discuss the situation.

26 The headteacher decided to .... an example of Richard and exclude him from the school.

(1 mark per answer)

D Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

27 I'd like to remind you that there are no circumstances in which employees are allowed to leave early. **under**
I'd like to remind you that .... employees allowed to leave early.

28 I wouldn't confront the manager if I were you. **horns**
I wouldn't .... the manager if I were you.

29 Passengers can only board the plane when all bags have been checked. **after**
Only .... board the plane.

30 The website wouldn't allow me to access certain pages. **denied**
The website .... certain pages.

31 The kids dived straight into the pool when we arrived. **had**
No .... the kids dived into the pool.

32 A reliable source told me that the local newspaper is going to shut down. **authority**
I .... that the local newspaper is going to shut down.

33 There was so much concern about the situation that the police were called. **so**
The police were called, ... there.

34 Why do you think you are allowed to criticise me like that? **gives**
What do you think .... to criticise me like that?

(2 marks per answer)

E Choose the correct answer.

35 There has been a lot of .... surrounding the government's proposed scheme.
A controversy
B consent
C conformity
D consequence

36 Our town has a real problem with youth crime, ... do many other British towns.
A so
B nor
C as
D like

37 Warning: anyone caught stealing from these premises will be ....
A advocated
B undermined
C prosecuted
D enforced

38 The local authorities need to .... down on illegal parking, in my opinion.
A hit
B force
C move
D crack

39 If the service isn't up to standard, I think you have .... right to complain.
A all
B each
C much
D every

40 Jim's a tough character and certainly won't let anyone push him ....
A up
B off
C around
D through

41 The .... I don't understand is why Emily lets her boyfriend get away with it.
A reason
B object
C item
D thing

42 My uncle pulled a few .... and got me a job in the company where he works.
A ropes
B strings
C threads
D chords

(1 mark per answer)

Total mark: ..../50

UNIT 21

Grammar

Noun phrases

Countable nouns

- Countable nouns have a singular and plural form. ✓ *That* ***painting is*** *amazing.* ✓ *Those* ***paintings are*** *dreadful.*
- Some countable nouns …
  - have irregular plurals, eg *person/people, mouse/mice.*
  - do not change in their plural form, eg *the* ***sheep*** *is …* , *the* ***sheep*** *are …*
- With hyphenated countable nouns, we usually form the plural by pluralising the key word, eg *brother**s**-in-law* and *over-achiever**s**.*
- With organisations and groups of people (eg *group/team/*etc), it often makes no difference whether the verb is singular or plural. ✓ *The government* ***is/are*** *not doing anything to help the arts.*
- With some countable nouns, when we want to refer to a group, we use certain phrases ending in *of*. These include: *a flock of birds/sheep, a herd of cows/elephants, a pack of cards/dogs, a bunch of flowers/grapes/keys, a set of encyclopaedias/keys*

Singular uncountable nouns

- Singular uncountable nouns only have a singular form. They only take verbs in the singular. ✓ ***Is the information*** *reliable?*
- Singular uncountable nouns include: *advice, blood, bread, furniture, hair, information, jewellery, knowledge, luggage, milk, money, news, permission, respect, water*
- With singular uncountable nouns, if we want to describe one particular item, we have to use a phrase ending in *of* before the noun. Common phrases include: *a bar of chocolate/soap, a bit of help/advice, a blade of grass, a block of concrete, a breath of fresh air, a drop of water, a grain of salt/sand, a gust of wind, a loaf of bread, a lump of sugar, a piece of bread/information, a scrap of paper, a sheet of paper, a slice of bread/cheese, a speck of dust/dirt, a spot of ink*

Plural uncountable nouns

- Plural uncountable nouns only have a plural form. They only take verbs in the plural. ✓ *The* ***scissors aren't*** *on the table.*
- Plural uncountable nouns include: *arms, binoculars, cattle, clothes, congratulations, earnings, glasses, goods, groceries, jeans, odds, pants, pliers, premises, pyjamas, regards, remains, savings, scales, scissors, shorts, surroundings, thanks, tights, trousers, valuables*
- With plural uncountable nouns, we can sometimes use *a pair of*, usually when we see something as having two parts/legs/etc, eg *a pair of binoculars/trousers/scissors/*etc.

Watch out!

- Some uncountable nouns end in *-s* but are singular, eg *diabetes, news, physics, politics.*
- Many nouns are countable with one meaning and uncountable with another meaning. These include: *cake, chicken, chocolate, damage, glass, hair, paper, time, wood, work*

  ✓ *The table is made of* ***wood****.* (uncountable, = the material)
  ✓ *It's a picture of* ***a*** *local* ***wood****.* (countable, = a small forest)
- Some nouns which are usually uncountable are used as countable nouns in certain expressions, eg *a knowledge of, a great help.*

Quantifiers only used with countable nouns	Quantifiers only used with singular uncountable nouns	Quantifiers used with all nouns
a couple of (the), a number of, another (of the), both (of) (the), each (of the), either (of the), every, neither (of the), the entire, the whole (of) (the), (a) few (of the), only a few (of the), half (of) (the), many (of the), several (of the)	*an amount of, a great deal of, a little (of the), little (of the), much (of the), only a little (of the)*	*all (of) (the), a lot of / lots of (the), all (of) (the), any (of the), enough (of the), more (of the), most (of the), no, none (of the), plenty of (the), some (of the)*

Watch out!

- *a few* = some; *few* = not many; *only a few* = not many
- *little* + countable noun = small; *little* + uncountable noun = not much; *a little* + uncountable noun = some

Indefinite articles: a/an

With singular countable nouns	talking about one thing, but not being specific	*I'd like to go to* ***a*** *concert tonight but there's nothing good on.*
	mentioning something for the first time	*I've had* ***a*** *great idea!*
	talking about things generally (formal)	***A*** *poet sees the world differently.* (= ***Poets*** *see …*)

Watch out!

- We use *a* before a consonant sound, and *an* before a vowel sound. It is the sound and not the spelling that is important (eg ***a unique*** *experience*, ***an umbrella***).
- We use *a/an* to show what group someone or something belongs to, or to classify it/him/her. ✓ *Liz is* ***a modernist***.

Definite article: the

singular countable nouns	being specific	*Is that* ***the*** *band you were talking about?*
	talking generally (formal)	***The*** *guitar is one of the oldest musical instruments.* (= *Guitars are …*)
plural countable and uncountable nouns	being specific	***The*** *scales are balanced to symbolise equality.*
singular uncountable nouns	being specific	*Who did* ***the*** *publicity for the show?*
with some adjectives to mean groups of people	talking generally (formal)	*Pop music has always appealed more to* ***the young*** *than* ***the old***.

Watch out!

- We often use *the* with physical things that are unique (eg *the moon, the Queen*).
- We often use *the* with superlatives (eg *the best*) and cardinal numbers (eg *the first*).
- We can use *the* to mean *the well-known* or *the famous*.
  ✓ *I bumped into Damian Hirst,* ***the artist****, in the supermarket.* (= the well-known artist)

Zero article: no article at all

With plural countable and uncountable nouns	talking generally	*Don't let your young child use* ***scissors*** *unsupervised.*
With singular uncountable nouns	talking generally	*An artist always needs* ***inspiration***.

Watch out!

We often use no article for concepts (ie not physical things), eg *society, space, nature*.

Articles by category and with particular phrases and expressions

	indefinite article	**definite article**	**zero article**
Time	*in* ***an*** *hour, in* ***a*** *second*	*in* ***the*** *1840s, in* ***the*** *winter, in* ***the*** *afternoon*	*in 2010, in winter, in December, on Tuesday, at night*
People and work	*have* ***a*** *job, work as* ***a*** *teacher, I met* ***a*** *very nice American last night*	***the*** *King,* ***the*** *Principal,* ***the*** *President,* ***the*** *British*	*Russians, become President, go to work, be at work, have work to do*
Places	*Is there* ***a*** *beach near here?*	***the*** *Himalayas,* ***the*** *Pacific Ocean,* ***the*** *Seine,* ***the*** *Earth,* ***the*** *Antarctic,* ***the*** *USA,* ***the*** *UK,* ***the*** *Scilly Isles*	*Mount Everest, Berlin, America, Antarctica, Jupiter, Fleet Street, Lake Michigan, Mykonos*
Public buildings	*Is there* ***a*** *bank near here?*	***the*** *bank,* ***the*** *post office, go to* ***the*** *hospital/prison/school (as a visitor)*	*go to school/hospital/prison (as a student/patient/prisoner)*
Entertainment and sport	*Play us* ***a*** *song!, I've got* ***a*** *tennis ball.*	*play* ***the*** *guitar,* ***the*** *media, on* ***the*** *radio, go to* ***the*** *cinema, watch* ***the*** *TV*	*play tennis, play guitar, listen to music, on television, watch TV*
Organisations	*Does Switzerland have* ***an*** *army?*	***the*** *BBC,* ***the*** *police,* ***the*** *emergency services,* ***the*** *United Nations*	*NATO*
Education	*have* ***a*** *lesson, take* ***an*** *exam*	*be in* ***the*** *first year*	*geography, be in class/year/form 5*
Travel	*take* ***a*** *taxi, catch* ***a*** *bus/train*	*in* ***the*** *car/taxi, on* ***the*** *bus/plane*	*on foot, go home, go by car/plane*
Health	*have* ***a*** *cold /cough/ headache/toothache/ stomach ache*	*have* ***the*** *flu/measles*	*have flu/measles/toothache/ stomach ache*

A Circle the correct word. If both are correct, circle both.

1 Are those **sheep / sheeps** or goats in that field over there?
2 How many **sister-in-laws / sisters-in-law** have you got?
3 Look at those lovely little **fish / fishes**!
4 I've only got one important piece of **new / news** to tell you, I think.
5 The hairdresser quickly swept up the **hair / hairs** on the floor.
6 I'll be giving you a lot of **information / informations**, so do please take notes.
7 We've bought quite a lot of **furniture / furnitures** in the last few days.
8 Could you give us both **permission / permissions** to miss PE tomorrow?
9 **Physic / Physics** is my favourite subject by far.
10 I think I've got some **money / monies** on me.
11 I'm going to give them all the **advice / advices** I can.
12 What kind of **jewellery / jewelleries** are you interested in getting?
13 Would you like some **chocolate / chocolates**?
14 You've got to have very good general **knowledge / knowledges** to go on *Who Wants To Be A Millionaire*.
15 I've always been interested in **politic / politics**.

B Complete using the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1 .... (**be**) all the furniture very expensive when you got it?
2 My earnings .... (**increase**) considerably over the last two years.
3 .... (**be**) all the luggage yours?
4 Your pyjamas .... (**be**) on your bed, I think.
5 Politics .... (**be**) a love of mine, as well as my profession.
6 .... (**be**) your team doing well in the league right now?
7 The people over there .... (**need**) serving.
8 .... (**be**) the news good or bad?
9 There .... (**be**) blood all over the floor!
10 The cattle .... (**eat**) at the moment.
11 Diabetes .... (**be**) very common these days.
12 Where .... (**be**) the scissors?
13 My work .... (**be**) the most important thing in my life.
14 I think the milk .... (**go off**). Shall I pour it away?
15 The jeans I tried on in the shop yesterday .... (**be**) far too small.

C If a word in bold is correct, put a tick. If it is in the wrong sentence, write the correct word on the line.

1 I'm off to the newsagent's to get a **pair** of chocolate. Do you want anything? ....
2 Could you get me a **flock** of chewing gum when you go to the shops? ....
3 I think I'll have another **herd** of toast. ....
4 Just add a **breath** of milk if the mixture starts to get a bit dry. ....
5 I'm popping out for a **pack** of fresh air. Do you want to come? ....
6 There was a **block** of cows being taken down the lane for milking, and it took us ages to get by. ....
7 You said you wanted to get a new **bar** of trousers, didn't you? ....
8 Get us a **bunch** of bread when you go to the shops, won't you? ....
9 I was thinking of getting Jill a **blade** of flowers for our anniversary. Do you think that's romantic? ....

10 There was a really strong **drop** of wind and it blew a man's wig off! ....
11 My mum's so houseproud; there's never a **gust** of dust anywhere in the house. ....
12 Could you cut me off a small **slice** of that cheese? ....
13 That **speck** of birds will be migrating south for the winter, I'd imagine. ....
14 Since we got the goat, there's not a **loaf** of grass longer than about two centimetres! ....
15 We do like a nice **bit** of steak every now and again, don't we, Francis? ....
16 How heavy's that **sheet** of concrete, would you say? ....
17 We'll give you a **set** of keys and a security pass. ....
18 There's not a **grain** of truth in what she said. ....
19 Is one **piece** of sugar enough? ....
20 I'll tear you off a **lump** of paper if you're going to take notes. ....

D Complete the pairs of sentences using the correct form of a word in the box.

arm • cake • chicken • chocolate • damage • glass • hair
help • knowledge • paper • space • time • wood • work

1 Right! I'm off to ....
How many .... of art by Picasso can you actually name?

2 The storm did quite a lot of .... , so I hear.
The jury awarded them .... of over €500,000.

3 I don't think I've ever baked three .... from scratch in one day.
Would you like another piece of .... ?

4 Thanks, you've been a great ....
Without your .... , we don't know what we'd have done.

5 Ed was looking in the mirror and noticed one of his .... had gone grey.
I gather that long .... is back in fashion amongst the young.

6 Did you know that .... is actually a kind of liquid?
I can't find my .... Have you seen them anywhere?

7 Is your left .... really longer than your right?
The .... trade is an industry I'd rather have nothing to do with.

8 Let's have a picnic in the ....
That table's not made of .... It's plastic!

9 Phil's .... of eighteenth century pottery is astounding.
Phil's got a great .... of eighteenth century pottery.

10 No one can hear you scream in .... because there's no sound.
Why are there no parking .... round here at all?

11 How did people write things down before .... was invented?
The story appeared in most of the Sunday ....

12 One of our .... is ill so we've had to call the vet out.
This .... tastes delicious!

13 How many .... have I told you not to do that?
What .... did you get home last night?

14 Let's get a big bar of milk ....
Oh no! There are only two .... left in the box!

E Complete each second sentence using one of the two words in bold and any other words you need so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

1 Only two boys volunteered to hand out programmes. **double / couple**
Only .... boys volunteered to hand out programmes.

2 There were quite a few people at the party who I knew. **number / amount**
There were .... people at the party who I knew.

3 When I was small, I'd never heard of computers. **little / few**
When I was .... girl, I'd never heard of computers.

4 There's not much ketchup left in the bottle. **little / few**
There's only .... ketchup left in the bottle.

5 Some kids have put their names down already. **little / few**
.... kids have put their names down already.

6 I haven't got much money on me, I'm afraid. **number / amount**
I've only got .... money on me, I'm afraid.

7 I didn't understand a lot of what she said, to be honest. **much / many**
I didn't understand .... what she said, to be honest.

8 Not enough British people can speak a foreign language. **little / few**
.... British people can speak a foreign language.

F Circle the correct word or phrase. More than one option may be correct in each sentence.

1 Would you like **any / some** coffee?
2 I've hardly got **any / some** money left!
3 **Only a few / Few / A few** of the ducks have names.
4 I've only got **a little / little / a small amount of** time, so make it quick!
5 **Neither / Neither of the / Both** guards was injured in the attack.
6 **All / Most / Many / Much / Both** of the clothes were filthy.
7 **None / Half / Whole / Each / Every** of the glasses had been smashed.
8 **Each / Every / All** student in the class whose surname begins with a vowel, please stand up.
9 There's **a little / little / not much / not many** we can do about the situation, I'm afraid.
10 We've got **most / plenty / a lot / lots / lot** of time, don't worry.

G Complete the sentences with *a*, *an* or *the*. If no article is required, put a dash (-).

1 I think there's .... chemist open in .... main road somewhere.
2 One of .... people who I met at .... lecture .... last night is .... architect for quite .... well-known firm.
3 .... quality screwdriver is .... essential part of any tool box.
4 Who designed .... invitations for .... wedding?
5 .... poor and .... elderly are often left behind when it comes to .... modern technology.
6 When I was at .... school, we had to wear .... shorts until we were .... 11 and then we were allowed to wear .... pair of long trousers.
7 I met .... writer .... Catherine Hawkins .... other day. She signed .... copy of her .... latest book for me.
8 I honestly believe that .... car is one of .... worst inventions in .... history of .... world.
9 Is that .... ewe or .... elk?
10 What's .... difference between .... unicorn and .... postbox? You don't know? Then, I'm not going to ask you to post .... letter for me!

H Circle the correct answer.

1 Are these windows really not made of .... ?
A the glass C glass
B a glass D glasses

2 I fancy playing poker. Have we got a .... of cards anywhere?
A pack C bunch
B pair D set

3 Luckily, only .... of the medicine got spilt.
A little C few
B a little D a few

4 The .... on the kitchen table.
A grocery is C groceries is
B grocery are D groceries are

5 Hardly .... of the paintings at the gallery were for sale.
A none C some
B few D any

6 It's .... opportunity to see African wildlife in its natural environment.
A an unique C the unique
B a unique D unique

7 You can't just demand .... , you have to earn it.
A a respect C any respect
B the respect D respect

8 Almost .... person I've asked says they're going on the anti-war demonstration next Saturday.
A every C all the
B each D the entire

I Write one word in each gap.

Artists and money

In publishing, (**1**) .... author will usually earn royalties on sales. For (**2**) .... book sold, the author gets a percentage. The more successful the author, the more they are able to negotiate with their publisher, and (**3**) .... bigger the percentage they can get. Although the 'struggling author' is still common, it is quite possible for a successful novelist to earn a (**4**) .... deal of money. You only have to look at (**5**) .... children's author J. K. Rowling to see that.

For a painter or sculptor, however, the situation is more difficult. A painter sells his or her work for (**6**) .... fee. As the painter becomes more successful, the painting becomes valuable. (**7**) .... time it is sold, its value increases. The painter doesn't receive (**8**) .... benefit from this, though. To make money, the artist has to be continually producing new pieces. More than a (**9**) .... artists today, however, are very aware of this, and so practise what is sometimes called 'holding back'. They produce, say, ten paintings for an exhibition, but only allow a certain (**10**) .... of them, say eight, to be sold. The other two they keep, in (**11**) .... hope that when they sell them in later years they will have greatly increased in value.

For musicians, there are royalties for performance (eg on CD) and for writing. However, since (**12**) .... illegal transfer of digital music via the Internet has become widespread, (**13**) .... songwriters and performers have become worried that their main source of income will dry up. Certainly, the (**14**) .... music industry – be it pop, rock or classical – is in turmoil at the moment, but its future is not bleak. There is still a huge (**15**) .... of money to be made from live performances.

UNIT 22 Vocabulary

Quality and the arts

Topic vocabulary: Quality

see page 240 for definitions

aggravate (v)
better (v)
blemish (n)
chaos (n)
cheapen (v)
contaminate (v)
decay (v)
decline (v)
defective (adj)
detrimental (adj)
devastate (v)
enhance (v)
evaluate (v)
exacerbate (v)
exquisite (adj)
first-rate (adj)
flaw (n)
ideal (adj)
inadequate (adj)
invaluable (adj)
optimum (n, adj)
outclass (v)
prime (adj)
redeeming feature (n phr)
refurbish (v)
reinforce (v)
renovate (v)
rotten (adj)
rusty (adj)
satisfactory (adj)
shambles (n)
shoddy (adj)
sound (adj)
stale (adj)
streamline (v)
strengthen (v)
surpass (v)
ultimate (adj)
worsen (v)
wreck (v, n)

Topic vocabulary: The arts

see page 241 for definitions

abstract (n, adj)
auction (n)
audition (n)
bestseller (n)
collector's item (n phr)
curator (n)
fine art (n phr)
installation (n)
lines (n pl)
lyrics (n pl)
masterpiece (n)
paperback (n)
period (n, adj)
priceless (adj)
recital (n)
retrospective (n, adj)
score (n)
sketch (v, n)
work of art (n phr)
worthless (adj)

Phrasal verbs

brighten up	start to have more colour or light; give something more colour or light; start looking or feeling happier; if the weather brightens up, it becomes sunnier
brush up (on)	practise and improve your skills or knowledge of something
check out	examine someone or something in order to be certain that everything is correct, true or satisfactory; if information checks out, you feel that it is true after examining it
liven up	make something more interesting or exciting, or become more interesting or exciting; give something a more interesting appearance, taste or other quality
make over	change or improve the appearance of someone or something *makeover (n)*
mess up	make a mistake or do something badly; make something dirty or untidy; be the cause of someone's physical, emotional or mental problems
paper over	hide a problem or disagreement rather than finding a satisfactory solution to it
patch up	repair something, often quickly and not very well; become friends with someone again after a disagreement; give basic medical treatment to someone who is injured
pick up	improve
run down	if an organisation or area is run down, its size, importance and activity is reduced *run-down (adj)*
scrape through	succeed in doing something, but not in a very impressive way
smarten up	improve the appearance of something, for example by cleaning or painting it; if you smarten up or smarten yourself up, you make yourself look tidy and clean
stand out	be much more impressive or important than others; be easy to see or notice because of being different *outstanding (adj)*
touch up	make a surface look better with small improvements
waste away	gradually become thinner and weaker over a period of time, usually because of an illness
write off	damage a vehicle so badly that it is not worth repairing; decide that someone or something will not succeed and stop giving them your attention and energy *write-off (n)*

Phrases, patterns and collocations

art have/get sth down to a fine art, art of doing, art to doing, art deco, art form, art gallery, art house

bad go bad, go from bad to worse, feel bad (about), bad for, bad at (doing), in a bad way, (in) bad faith, bad apple, bad blood

best make the best of, do your best, (all) for the best, at best, at your best, to the best of my knowledge, to the best of sb's ability, the best of both worlds, best friend

better get better, get the better of, had better, (all) the better for, better than nothing, better luck next time, better off, better yet, for better or (for) worse, better half

Phrases, patterns and collocations

bottom come bottom, get to the bottom of, the bottom drops/falls out of, at the bottom (of), from the bottom of my heart, bottom line

clean give sth a (good) clean, make a clean break, make a clean breast of, clean and tidy, a clean bill of health, a clean slate/sheet, clean sweep

clear make/get sth clear, make yourself clear, (have) a clear conscience, clear in your mind (about), clear as a bell, clear as mud, clear case (of), clear evidence/indication

dirty do the dirty on, do sb's dirty work, get your hands dirty, give sb a dirty look, dirty word, dirty tricks

fine cut it fine, fine by sb, fine details/points, fine line between, with a fine-tooth(ed) comb, fine print

fresh fresh from, fresh out of, fresh-faced, freshwater, fresh start, fresh air

new new to, brand new, whole new, good as new, new-look, new age

nice nice of sb (to do), nice for sb (to do), nice to sb, nice to meet/see sb, nice and warm/comfortable/clean, nice as pie, nice one

old get/grow old, poor old, old age, old flame, old folk(s), old hand, old hat, old people's home, the Old Testament

quality high/good/top quality, poor/bad/low quality, personal qualities, leadership qualities, quality control, quality of life, quality time

style style sth/yourself as, style of, in style, out of style, with style

top come out on top, sth gets on top of you, at the top of, on top (of), off the top of your head, on top of the world, top prize, top priority, top secret

worse get worse, make matters/things worse, (take a turn) for the worse, worse for wear

worst do your worst, fear the worst, be your own worst enemy, if (the) worst comes to (the) worst, at worst, the worst of all/both worlds

Idioms

a sight for sore eyes	someone or something that you are very pleased to see
Achilles' heel	a weak feature of someone or something that could cause failure or be attacked
add fuel to the fire	make a bad situation worse
below/under par	below the usual or expected standard
clean as a whistle	completely honest or legal; extremely clean
draw the line (at)	say that you will definitely not allow or accept something
last word in	the newest and best type of something
out of this world	extremely good or impressive
over the top	more than what is considered normal or suitable
pride of place	in the place that is most central or important
steal the show	receive a lot of attention because you give the best performance in a show or other event
the edge over	an advantage that makes someone or something more successful than other people or things

Word formation

adequate	(in)adequacy, inadequate, (in)adequately
admire	admiration, admirer, admirable, admirably, admiring(ly)
art	arts, artfulness, artificiality, artist, artiste, artistry, artlessness, artwork, artifact/artefact, artifice, arty, artistic(ally), artificial(ly), artful(ly), artless(ly)
awe	awfulness, awesomeness, awestruck, awful(ly), awesome(ly)
class	outclass, (de)classify, classics, classifieds, classification, classlessness, classmate, classroom, classwork, classic, classy, classless, (de)classified, classical(ly)
collect	collector, collection, collectable, collected, collective(ly)
destroy	destroyer, destruction, indestructible, destructive(ly)
good	goods, goodness, goodwill, goody/goodie
ideal	idealise, idealism, idealisation, idealist, idealistic, idealised, ideally
imitate	imitation, imitator, imitative, inimitable
impress	impression, (un)impressiveness, impressionism, impressionist, (un)impressed, impressionable, impressionistic, (un)impressive(ly)
improve	improvement, improvable, improved
match	matchmaker, matchmaking, matchstick, matchwood, matchbook, matchbox, matching, unmatched, matchless
perfect	(im)perfection, perfectionist, perfectionism, perfectible, perfectly, imperfect(ly)
quality	qualitative(ly)
strong	strengthen, strength, stronghold, strongly
terror	terrorise, terrify, terrorist, terrorism, terrible, terrific, terrifying, terrified, terribly
use	abuse, misuse, reuse, overuse, (ab)user, usefulness, usage, uselessness, (un)used, (un)usable, reusable, abused, abusive(ly), useful(ly), useless(ly)
value	revalue, overvalue, evaluate, (re)valuation, evaluation, overvaluation, valuer, valuables, (in)valuable, valueless
worth	worthlessness, worthy, worthless, worthwhile

Topic vocabulary: Quality

A Circle the correct word. If both are correct, circle both.

1 The procedure's good, but I think we can **better / streamline** it further to make it more efficient.
2 The shell of the building has been completely **renovated / refurbished** and the interior decorators will be starting inside next week.
3 The Minister's inflammatory comments are just **exacerbating / aggravating** an already difficult situation. He should think before he opens his mouth next time.
4 The inspectors are going to be **evaluating / valuing** the performance of every teacher.
5 In Berkshire, a lorry carrying chemicals has crashed into a river and has **decayed / contaminated** the local water supply.
6 I set the school record for the 100m over eight years ago and it's never been **strengthened / bettered** to this day.
7 This new browser should **enhance / reinforce** everyone's experience online.
8 The number of school-leavers going on to university has **declined / devastated** since the government introduced tuition fees.
9 We must never let inflation **surpass / outclass** the three per cent mark again.
10 This accident has **wrecked / worsened** Dagli's chances of competing in the final.
11 Pop songs have **cheapened / worsened** the word 'love' so that it's meaningless nowadays.
12 The rock festival was fun, but it was marred by the organisation, which was a **chaos / shambles**.
13 The face in the picture is angelic, except for that tiny **blemish / flaw** just below the eye – can you see it? – that seems to be some kind of scar or birthmark.

B Circle the word which best matches each statement.

1 'I've never seen a more beautiful diamond!' **exquisite / sound**
2 'His honesty is the only feature about him that's positive.' **redeeming / ultimate**
3 'These metal railings are really old and brown.' **stale / rusty**
4 'It's just not good enough.' **invaluable / inadequate**
5 'The workmanship on this cabinet isn't very good.' **detrimental / shoddy**
6 'This CD-ROM drive isn't working properly.' **defective / detrimental**
7 'This apple's completely black.' **rotten / stale**
8 'This was the most important reason for us.' **optimum / prime**
9 'The job couldn't have been done without your help.' **exquisite / invaluable**
10 'The price seems reasonable to me. I'll take it.' **ultimate / satisfactory**
11 'This bread's not very fresh.' **rotten / stale**
12 'I think the government's measures are going to do quite a lot of damage.' **detrimental / defective**
13 'It's the most exciting experience you'll ever have!' **ultimate / optimum**
14 'I think it was a sensible decision.' **prime / sound**
15 'This is exactly what I need.' **ideal / prime**
16 'Excellent work. Well done!' **satisfactory / first-rate**
17 'Four is the right number of people for this project.' **ultimate / optimum**

Topic vocabulary: The arts

C **Write a word from the boxes in each gap.**

I haven't read Susan Bashworth's latest yet but I've heard it's very good. It became a (**1**) .... within weeks of being published. I'm actually waiting for it to come out in (**2**) .... before I get it.

bestseller • paperback

I've learnt all my (**3**) .... for the play, which was easy, but we have to sing a song at the end and I'm just no good at remembering (**4**) ....

lines • lyrics

The school orchestra's giving a (**5**) .... tonight which sounds quite interesting. They've got a guest conductor who's quite famous. Apparently, he's written the (**6**) .... for a number of movies.

recital • score

We went to that (**7**) .... of Lewis' paintings at the Granchester Museum last week. It was very good. We got chatting to the (**8**) .... , who told us a very interesting story about one picture ...

curator • retrospective

He told us that someone had found it in their attic, thought it was (**9**) .... and so gave it to a neighbour. In fact, it turned out to be (**10**) .... !

priceless • worthless

One of the (**11**) .... I'd love to do is restoring damaged or faded (**12**) .... of art. It must be really satisfying seeing an old painting come to life again.

jobs • works

D **Complete using the words in the box in the correct form. There is one word you will not need.**

abstract • auction • audition • fine • installation • item • masterpiece • period • sketch

An alternative to galleries

When most of us think of works of art, we tend to think of pieces in galleries, whether they be famous (**1**) .... (such as da Vinci's *Mona Lisa*) hanging on the wall, or bizarre (**2**) .... (such as a pile of bricks with a red shoe on top).

Certainly, galleries are one of the main ways in which people can view art. Another way is to go to a/an (**3**) .... You don't have to be rich to attend (entrance is usually free), although if you're going to bid for a Van Gogh, you'd better take your bank details with you.

They're actually a great way to learn about art, because the catalogue gives detailed information about each piece, and there's often more variety than in a gallery. On any one day, there may be (**4**) .... in pencil (artists generally do these before painting the actual picture), (**5**) .... art (which includes sculptures and ceramics as well as paintings), collector's (**6**) .... (anything from broomsticks to postcards), (**7**) .... paintings (the catalogue will help you work out what the artist was trying to express) and even (**8**) .... furniture.

Phrasal verbs

E Write one word in each gap so the second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

1 You'll have to improve your general knowledge before you go on that quiz show.
You'll have to .... up on your general knowledge before you go on that quiz show.

2 The car was so badly damaged it had to be destroyed.
The car was so badly damaged it had to be .... off.

3 One of the poems is particularly noteworthy due to its interesting use of imagery.
One of the poems particularly .... out due to its interesting use of imagery.

4 If attendance doesn't improve soon, the play will probably have to close.
If attendance doesn't .... up soon, the play will probably have to close.

5 I've heard a new gallery has opened in St Ives, so I'm going to see what it's like.
I've heard a new gallery has opened in St Ives, so I'm going to .... it out.

6 Susan only just passed her history of art course.
Susan .... through her history of art course.

7 The photo's got a couple of marks on it, so I'll scan it and make it look better with some software I've got.
The photo's got a couple of marks on it, so I'll scan it and .... it up with some software I've got.

8 On the show today, we're going to completely change the look of the Simpsons' spare bedroom.
On the show today, we're going to completely .... over the Simpsons' spare bedroom.

F If a word is in the wrong sentence, write the correct word on the line. If it is correct, put a tick.

1 The party was a bit boring to start with but everyone **livened** up when Rod got out his guitar. ....
2 I'm not very pleased with this drawing actually as I think I've **papered** up the perspective a little. ....
3 I've only **wasted** this up for now – I won't be able to fix it properly until we get home. ....
4 Julie and Simone have **messed** over their differences while they get their business set up, but I'm sure they'll start arguing again pretty soon. ....
5 The Prime Minister responded that it was the previous administration which had **patched** the film industry down. ....
6 Luckily, the weather **brightened** up in the afternoon so we were able to hold the reception outside after all. ....
7 As kids, we always **ran** ourselves up when our grandparents came to visit. ....
8 The holiday at the health farm was awful. They only gave us a few vegetables every evening – I almost **smartened** away! ....

Phrases, patterns and collocations

G Circle the correct word.

1 I want this mess cleared up right now. Did I **make / do** myself clear?
2 It's **nice / good** and warm in here.
3 Off the top of my **brain / head**, I'd say this diamond's worth at least a million euros.
4 You're cutting it **fine / well**. The meeting starts in about two minutes.
5 To the **top / best** of my knowledge, there aren't any Picassos on the market at the moment.
6 That Ferrari Craig's just bought is **brand / model** new. It must have cost him a fortune!
7 Lee's his own worst **friend / enemy**. He complains he hasn't sold any of his paintings, but he won't show them to anyone.

8 There's been bad **blood / mood** between them ever since Trevor accused Charlton of sabotaging his opening night.

9 That's the last time I lie to a client for Mrs Richards. I'm not going to do her dirty **job / work** for her any more.

10 My mum's got organising her Christmas card list **round / down** to a fine art.

H **For each question, write one word which can be used in all three sentences.**

1 The caterers didn't turn up and the guest of honour was late so we had to make the .... of a rather disastrous situation.

I know you're not very keen on art, but just do your .... in the exam.

I didn't get the job in the end, but it's probably for the ....

2 I'm afraid we're .... out of that CD.

As soon as I get out of prison, I'm determined to make a .... start.

And now, ... from their blockbuster tour of the USA, here's ... *The Goldsmiths*!

3 She wants to make a .... break and leave the publishing industry completely.

The doctors have given me a completely .... bill of health.

This term, you all start again with a .... sheet, so I won't hold anything you did wrong last term against you.

4 Is long hair back in .... ?

I actually don't know much about that .... of architecture.

If I was a rock star, I'd make sure I was treated with .... wherever I went.

5 I bumped into an .... flame of mine in Woolworth's this morning.

Dave's an .... hand when it comes to doing the carnival disco – he's been doing it for years.

I'm afraid we're going to have to consider putting Mum in an .... people's home.

6 They think I'm stupid but I'm not going to let them get the .... of me.

We could stay at a hotel near the festival or, ... yet, camp in the grounds.

Yes, I'm certainly all the .... for two weeks in the sun.

I **Write one word in each gap.**

Contemporary Art

There is a widely held view that artistic standards have got (**1**) .... over the last 100 years or so and that contemporary art is (**2**) .... a bad way, the clichéd response being 'my three-year-old child could have done better than that'. Yet many pieces sell for millions of dollars within the art world. How can we get to the (**3**) .... of this seeming contradiction?

Those new (**4**) .... contemporary art should be forgiven for this kind of response, but it is largely a matter of their ignorance rather than the reality. What needs to be (**5**) .... clear is that contemporary art is at the cutting edge; painting a lifelike picture of a racehorse is no longer an option for an artist attempting to break new ground. Were contemporary artists to produce pictures like this, we would actually have the (**6**) .... of all worlds – a stagnant and backward-looking artistic tradition.

Having said that, some contemporary art is of poor (**7**) .... , but that's true of every art (**8**) .... at any point in history. We can only decide that novels are great, for example, by having mediocre or bad novels to compare them to.

However, those (**9**) .... the top of the contemporary art world are producing innovative and challenging pieces. At (**10**) .... best, contemporary art is as exciting and productive as it's possible for art to be.

There is, of course, a (**11**) .... line between quality contemporary art and pseudo-art. Abstract pictures produced by cats, for example, have no real place in the contemporary art world. They merely relieve the gullible and the ignorant of their money.

Idioms

J **Complete using the words in the box.**

edge • fuel • heel • line • par • pride • show • sight • top • whistle • word • world

1 *Soccer Maestro* is undoubtedly the last .... in online football simulation games at the moment.
2 The picture that takes .... of place on our mantelpiece, though, is the one of our granddaughter graduating.
3 You're a .... for sore eyes, Claire! Thank goodness you're here – we desperately need your input.
4 Jean Paul is clearly a very talented designer. His one Achilles' .... , however, may be his lack of business sense.
5 The buffet at the party was out of this .... ! I've never tasted such exquisite strawberries.
6 Amis' new novel is slightly below .... for a writer of his stature; I was a little disappointed.
7 All the bands were fantastic, but *The Editors* and *Franz Ferdinand* really stole the ....
8 I'm happy to simplify things for the readers, but I draw the .... at telling them blatant untruths.
9 I think the media's response has been a little over the .... – it's only a TV programme, after all.
10 Recent allegations in the press about price-fixing at the auction house have only added .... to the fire regarding speculation about Dotheby's future.
11 I've spent the whole morning vacuuming the inside of the car. It's now clean as a ....
12 The Gordon Gallery clearly has the .... over other modern art galleries; they have the largest collection, and the largest budget to spend on acquiring new pieces.

Word formation

K **Use the word given in capitals to form a word that fits in the space.**

1 Well, she did study .... at Oxford, so it's hardly surprising she knows Latin and Ancient Greek. **CLASS**
2 *The Pet Shop Boys'* sound is .... and unique. **IMITATE**
3 What this painting says to me is that we live in a world of .... and despair. **DESTROY**
4 I've got enormous .... for Ben; he's achieved such a lot in such a short space of time. **ADMIRE**
5 The main reason I believe children shouldn't be exposed to violence on TV is that they're so .... at that age. **IMPRESS**
6 I'm a bit of a .... , so I can spend all day agonising over which choice of two words to use. **PERFECT**
7 Maybe I am an .... ; but what's wrong with wanting every human being to have access to clean drinking water? **IDEAL**
8 I've read that many performers suffered feelings of .... as children. **ADEQUATE**
9 I don't know how .... it would be to get some of these old postcards valued. **WORTH**
10 We'll find out how much the jewellery's worth at the .... next Thursday. **VALUE**
11 Now the government's .... the papers, we can find out what really happened. **CLASS**
12 Being director of the National Gallery is an .... responsibility but thankfully I have a number of highly experienced experts to help me. **AWE**
13 With her experience as both an actor and a director, Tabitha is a very .... successor to Albert Weeks as Chairperson of the National Theatre. **WORTH**
14 There were some very interesting clay .... dating from the third century BC at the museum. **ART**

15 Stage fright is an understatement! Performing on stage for the first time was the most .... experience I've ever had. **TERROR**
16 Don't throw away consumer packaging. Most of it's .... if you use a little creativity. **USE**
17 There's a .... difference between photography and still-life drawing. **QUALITY**

L **Use the word given in capitals to form a word that fits in the space.**

The working world of: Jacob Lawson

This week we look at the working life of Jacob Lawson, who buys and sells items on Internet auction sites.

In the old days, before the Internet, I had to trawl through hundreds of (**1**) .... (**CLASS**) ads each week and go to car boot sales at the weekend. Auction sites like eBay, though, are extremely (**2**) .... (**IMPRESS**) and a great (**3**) .... (**IMPROVE**). It's just (**4**) .... (**TERROR**) what you can do at the click of a button. I love it!

I generally buy and sell (**5**) .... (**COLLECT**) items. These could be anything – from carriage clocks to knives and forks to plastic (**6**) .... (**ART**) flowers. (**7**) .... (**COLLECT**) are interested in the strangest things – and there's always money to be made. The best money comes from items that are in very good condition – often because they're (**8**) .... (**USE**) and still in their packaging, but there's also a market for things like second-hand pottery or glassware that might have (**9**) .... (**PERFECT**).

I'm quite successful. One of my (**10**) .... (**STRONG**) is that I've got a very good rating on most of these sites – people I've sold to have given me very good reviews, so new customers trust me. I'm also good at spotting what's (**11**) .... (**VALUE**) and what's completely (**12**) .... (**WORTH**). For example, here's a pair of (**13**) .... (**MATCH**) earrings. The description says they're diamond, but if you click on the picture, a trained eye like mine can tell immediately they're (**14**) .... (**IMITATE**). Diamond's basically (**15**) .... (**DESTROY**), you see, and these have got damage marks on them. So I won't be buying them. Ideally, it's better to actually see the (**16**) .... (**GOOD**) you're buying before you purchase them, but these auction sites have pretty good policies if you're not satisfied with your purchase, and I've never had any problems.

M **The prefix *in-* can often mean 'not' or 'no'. However, in words such as *invaluable*, *in-* does not mean 'not' or 'no'. Tick the words where it means 'not' or 'no'. Put a cross next to the words where it doesn't.**

1 The **inbound** flight from Chicago has been delayed due to bad weather. ....
2 I really do value my **independence**. ....
3 The whole family was **infamous** round here for their antisocial behaviour. ....
4 I left the organisation eventually because of all the **infighting**. ....
5 This material is **inflammable**, isn't it? ....
6 What an **ingenious** idea. ....
7 The place will soon be **inhabitable**, won't it? ....
8 The whole area feels very **inhospitable**. ....
9 The situation is **intolerable**. ....
10 She was charged with being disorderly and **intoxicated**. ....

REVIEW 11 Units 21 and 22

A **Write one word in each gap.**

The Librarians – On the bookshelf ★★★

They stole the (**1**) .... at last year's Brit Awards. Their last album was described by *New Music Today* as '(**2**) .... of this world'. Then, after acrimonious and bitter infighting, they announced they'd split up. But fans of *The Librarians* will be cheered to know the band have now patched things (**3**) .... and have recorded a brand (**4**) .... album. The two ballads on the album, *Carefree* and *Tomorrow I'm leaving* don't particularly (**5**) .... out as anything special, but (**6**) .... its best, *On the bookshelf* contains some of the finest songs *The Librarians* have ever written. There's no doubt they've got alternative electro-rock (**7**) .... to a fine art, and when they get it right, they get it right (**8**) .... style.

★ don't bother
★★ only for die-hard fans
★★★ check it (**9**) ....
★★★★ takes (**10**) .... of place in anyone's CD collection

(1 mark per answer)

B **Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.**

11 There's not that much difference between irony and sarcasm. **line**
There's .... between irony and sarcasm.

12 I sincerely promise you that I'm telling you the truth. **bottom**
I promise you .... that I'm telling you the truth.

13 As far as I know, no one's talking about you behind your back. **best**
To .... , no one's talking about you behind your back.

14 Maybe I didn't explain exactly what I mean – our relationship is over! **clear**
Maybe I didn't .... – our relationship is over!

15 I'm finding it difficult to cope with all the work I have to do. **top**
All the work I have to do .... me.

16 I don't feel guilty at all, Mary. **clear**
I .... , Mary.

17 Our detectives are determined to find out exactly what happened in this case. **bottom**
Our detectives are determined to .... this case.

18 I'm afraid your grandmother got worse during the night. **turn**
I'm afraid your grandmother .... during the night.

(2 marks per answer)

C Complete using the words in the box in the correct form. You will not need one of the words.

brighten • liven • pick • run • scrape • smarten • touch • waste • write

19 Sales should .... up in the third quarter of the year.
20 The car was so badly damaged they had to .... it off.
21 If the government .... this area down any more, it'll become a wasteland.
22 There's a slight mark in the corner of this photo, but we can .... that up electronically.
23 Most students end up .... up their appearance when they enter the world of work.
24 The meal was a bit dull at first but everyone .... up when Tricia got there.
25 I'm either going to fail the exam or just .... through.
26 There'll be a lot of cloud cover in the morning, but it should .... up a little in the afternoon.

(1 mark per answer)

D Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals.

27 Are those flowers real or are they .... ? **ART**
28 I'm looking for a flatmate so I'm going to put an ad in the .... **CLASS**
29 I suppose my biggest fault is that I'm a .... **PERFECT**
30 The hurricane has caused widespread .... along the whole coastal region. **DESTROY**
31 My teacher saying that I'd never amount to anything really .... my resolve to prove him wrong. And I did! **STRONG**
32 It's not a real Rolex, unfortunately – just a cheap .... **IMITATE**
33 Please contact reception regarding the storing of .... in the hotel safe. **VALUE**
34 The positive relationship between a business and a customer, often referred to as '..................................', is difficult to quantify financially. **GOOD**

(1 mark per answer)

E Choose the correct answer.

35 I always clean the flat before my mum comes round, but she always finds at least one .... of dust and says it's filthy!
A scrap C speck
B gust D blade

36 There seem to be a/an .... of people in the street. What's happening?
A amount C number
B deal D plenty

37 .... of birds over a city usually predict cold weather.
A Herds C Packs
B Flocks D Groups

38 Only .... people have joined the website so far, but we're hoping membership will increase over the next couple of months.
A few C little
B a few D a little

39 It's one of the worst books I've ever read. Its only redeeming .... is that it's quite short!
A aspect C element
B feature D factor

40 With over 500 hits from the 60s, 70s and 80s, this is the .... hits collection.
A exquisite C optimum
B satisfactory D ultimate

41 The concrete is .... by putting metal bars in it; this makes it stronger and more durable.
A reinforced C renovated
B refurbished D streamlined

42 This plate's a collector's .... and is actually worth quite a lot of money.
A bit C object
B article D item

(1 mark per answer)

Total mark: ..../50

UNIT 23

Grammar

Verbal complements

Verb + -ing form

*Sue admitted **feeling** rather upset.*

- admit
- adore
- advocate
- appreciate
- avoid
- can't help
- carry on
- compare
- consider
- contemplate
- delay
- deny
- detest
- discuss
- dislike
- end up
- endure
- enjoy
- escape
- face
- fancy
- feel like
- finish
- foresee
- give up
- include
- involve
- justify
- keep (on)
- mention
- mind
- miss
- postpone
- practise
- put off
- recommend
- resent
- resist
- risk
- suggest
- take up

Watch out!

- Many verbs are followed by a preposition + *-ing* form.
  ✓ *Damien insisted **on going** to the party.* ✓ *I'm looking forward **to meeting** your brother.*
- The verbs feel, hear, see, notice, overhear and watch can also be followed by an object + the bare infinitive (without *to*).
  ✓ *I saw Martha **cross** the road. (= I saw all of it.)* ✓ *I saw Martha **crossing** the road. (= I saw part of it.)*
- When the verb and the gerund refer to different subjects, we can use an object pronoun or a possessive pronoun to make it clear.
  ✓ *Do you mind **me/my** going out with your sister?*

Verb + object + -ing form

*They caught **him taking** money from the till.*

- catch
- feel
- find
- glimpse
- hear
- notice
- observe
- overhear
- see
- smell
- watch

Verb + full infinitive

*Can you afford **to buy** that car?*

- afford
- agree
- aim
- appear
- apply
- arrange
- aspire
- attempt
- beg
- cease
- choose
- claim
- come
- dare
- decide
- demand
- deserve
- desire
- expect
- fail
- happen
- help
- hesitate
- hope
- learn
- manage
- need
- neglect
- offer
- opt
- plan
- prepare
- pretend
- promise
- refuse
- resolve
- rush
- seem
- strive
- tend
- undertake
- volunteer
- vote
- wait
- want
- work
- yearn

Verb + object + full infinitive

*My sister advised **me to tell** Jim the truth.*

- advise
- allow
- ask
- assign
- assist
- authorise
- beg
- cause
- challenge
- choose
- command
- compel
- convince
- dare
- decide
- defy
- desire
- employ
- empower
- enable
- encourage
- expect
- force
- free
- help
- hire
- inspire
- instruct
- intend
- invite
- lead
- motivate
- move
- need
- nominate
- order
- permit
- persuade
- pick
- prepare
- prompt
- qualify
- raise
- recommend
- recruit
- remind
- request
- select
- send
- signal
- teach
- tell
- tempt
- trust
- want
- warn

Verb + object + bare infinitive

*The teacher let **the class leave** early.*

- help
- let
- make
- feel
- hear
- notice
- overhear
- see
- watch

Watch out!

- In passive forms, *make* is followed by the full infinitive.
  ✓ *Mum **made me apologise** to my sister.* ✓ *I **was made to apologise** to my sister.*
- The verbs *dare* and *need* can be used as modals, in which case they are followed by the bare infinitive.
  ✓ *I don't **dare tell** Simone what happened.* ✓ *You **needn't invite** Ralph if you'd rather not.*

Verb (+ object) + infinitive or -ing form with little or no change in meaning

begin	*can't bear/stand*	*hate*	*love*	*start*
bother	*continue*	*intend*	*prefer*	

Verb (+ object) + infinitive or -ing form with a change in meaning

	verb (+ object) + infinitive	**verb (+ object) + *-ing***
consider/ imagine	believe; think something is/was *I've always **considered him to be** a friend.*	think about *We**'re considering getting** engaged.*
forget	not do something you were planning to do *I **forgot to ask** Brian about the wedding.*	not be able to remember a past event *I**'ll** never **forget asking** Helen to marry me.*
go on	stop one action or subject of discussion and start another *We chatted about the football for a while and then he **went on to tell** me about his divorce.*	continue *How can you **go on living** with Michael?*
like	be in the habit of doing; think it right to do *I **like to** eat with my family once a week.*	enjoy *I **don't like being spoken** to in such a rude manner.*
mean	intend *I'm sure Rania didn't **mean to upset** you.*	involve *Being in love **means** never **having** to say you're sorry.*
regret	be sorry about giving someone bad news (used with verbs such as *say, tell, inform, etc*) *We **regret to inform** you that the hotel is full.*	be sorry about what (has) happened ***Do** you **regret splitting up** with Alec?*
remember	do something you are/were planning to do ***Did** you **remember to order** the flowers?*	think of a past event *I **don't remember asking** for your opinion.*
stop	interrupt an action to do something else *Why **didn't** you **stop to think** before you acted?*	stop an action ***Will** you please just **stop telling me** what to do?*
try	make an effort to achieve something ***Try not to forget** her birthday.*	do something as an experiment to solve a problem *You could **try buying** her some flowers.*

Preparatory it

With some verbs, such as *find, think* or *consider*, it is often possible to use *it* as a preparatory object.

✓ *I consider **it** incredible that James and Alice are still together.*

Subjunctive

The subjunctive is a verb form which does not take -s in the third person singular.
It is possible to use the subjunctive in *that* clauses after words suggesting that something is necessary or preferable.

✓ *The doctor suggested that Sam **take** some time off work.* ✓ *It is very important that Greg **not know** about this.*

The subjunctive forms for *be* are *I be, you be*, etc.

✓ *It's absolutely essential that **I be** informed as soon as the President arrives.*

We can also use *should*.

✓ *The doctor suggested that Sam (**should**) take some time off work.*

A Circle the correct word or phrase.

1 I don't know how you could even contemplate **to allow / allowing** Vicky to go on holiday with her friends.
2 The interviewer somehow managed **to get / getting** the politician to admit his mistake.
3 Did you mention **to have / having** to book the restaurant when you saw Angie?
4 We missed our flight so we ended up **to sleep / sleeping** on the floor in the airport.
5 The woman demanded **to know / knowing** who was in charge.
6 I can't help **to feel / feeling** that I've forgotten something.
7 The board of directors opted **to apply / applying** to the bank for a loan.
8 What happened when Sandra applied **to join / joining** the army?
9 We don't foresee **to need / needing** to employ anyone to replace Amy when she's on maternity leave.
10 I really wasn't expecting **to bump / bumping** into Ken in Birmingham.
11 I'm beginning to wish I hadn't volunteered **to help / helping** Sandra move house.
12 Please don't hesitate **to contact / contacting** me if you require further information.

B Circle the correct verb form.

Kathy: Erm … hello. You must be Preston.

Preston: Yes, yes, I am. Kathy, is it? I have to admit (**1**) **to be / to being** a bit nervous. This is the first blind date I've been on.

Kathy: Me too. I almost didn't come (**2**) **to see / seeing** you, actually. But then you just have to risk (**3**) **to meet / meeting** someone you don't like, don't you?

Preston: Er… yeah. Do you mind (**4**) **to sit / sitting** by the window?

Kathy: No, that's fine. It was my sister, Jane, who suggested (**5**) **to meet / meeting** you.

Preston: Right. Did she happen (**6**) **to tell / telling** you anything about me?

Kathy: She said you work together, but she refused (**7**) **to say / saying** anything else.

Preston: Oh. Well, I've been looking forward (**8**) **to meet / to meeting** you. Erm … do you feel like (**9**) **to order / ordering**? I'm starving.

Kathy: Okay. I think I fancy (**10**) **to have / having** seafood. What about you?

Preston: Seafood sounds good. Can you see our waiter?

C Complete using the verbs in the box in the correct form. You may need to add a preposition.

allow • ask • buy • commit • promote • prove • put • recycle • rob • wait

1 How can you justify .... so many lives at risk like that?
2 Everyone voted .... Mr Greenwood to join the golf club.
3 The government have undertaken .... more than a dozen helicopters from the US military.
4 People who have been accused .... serious crimes are usually sent to prison to await their trial.
5 The man claimed .... by two young men, but something about him made me suspicious.
6 We can't afford .... for everyone to agree or we'll miss this opportunity.
7 We are trying to encourage all local people .... more of their rubbish.
8 Why do you keep .... me about what Susan said?
9 I challenge you .... those accusations!
10 The assistant manager hoped .... before too long.

D One verb in each sentence is in the wrong form. Underline the incorrect form and rewrite it correctly.

1 You deserve to be given a medal for all the work you did when you volunteered to help Alan finish to clear out the attic. ....

2 The company has resolved to improve performance in the coming months and plans resisting being forced to close any offices. ....

3 Being married involves to make a lot of compromises and being prepared to learn to live with other people's faults. ....

4 Alec often appears to want to join in discussions but he needs to avoid to be so shy or he'll never manage to get his opinion across. ....

5 Health experts recommend taking up a sport, so consider joining a team or, if you can't face to exercise in front of so many people, plan to go running with a friend. ....

6 I detest being kept waiting, and it tends happening at this hotel more than any other, so stop giving me excuses. ....

7 What prompted me applying to join the police force was that my parents expected me to find a job which promised to offer security and good prospects. ....

8 Many young people yearn to get involved in making films, but few are prepared to endure to work for years to perfect their acting skills. ....

9 I dislike having to pretend getting on with someone when they don't attempt to get to know me. ....

10 If you are considering applying to become a student at Central University, we recommend you to contact the secretary, who needs knowing which course you are planning to follow. ....

E Complete each sentence with a pair of verbs from the box in the correct form.

catch / wish • feel / follow • find / hide • glimpse / walk • hear / say
notice / try • observe / interact • see / come • smell / burn • watch / climb

1 I couldn't see clearly, but I thought I .... Lily .... past the window.

2 Did you .... Nigel .... that he was thinking of moving to France?

3 During the experiment, we .... the animals .... with each other.

4 Did you turn the oven off? I can .... something ....

5 I looked everywhere for Johnnie and I finally .... him .... under the stairs.

6 We .... the burglar .... out of the window and then called the police.

7 I couldn't help .... Simon .... to get his car started, so I went to help him.

8 I thought I .... somebody .... me, but when I turned round there was no one there.

9 Patrick .... himself .... he had never accepted the job in the first place.

10 I .... Vanessa .... towards me, so I quickly dived into the nearest shop to avoid her.

F Underline twelve verbs in the wrong form and rewrite them correctly.

Divorce

Legal and social changes in Britain have led to many more people choosing getting divorced over the last three decades. The Divorce Reform Act (1969) let people to get divorced far more easily and, despite promising staying together for life, over 160,000 couples ended up to get divorced each year during the late 80s and early 90s, compared to just over 27,000 in 1961. Towards the end of the twentieth century, divorce rates tended falling, then started to rise again over the first years of the twenty-first century.

When asked what motivated them getting divorced, people usually mention things like not to feel that the relationship was developing, or their partner making them to feel inadequate. Whatever causes people separating, it is often the children who have to learn living in a different family setting. They often resent to have to change their lives because the adults involved can't manage resolving their difficulties. Divorce has got easier legally, but it hasn't got any easier emotionally.

1 ....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....
9 ....
10 ....
11 ....
12 ....

G Complete by writing the verb in bold in the correct form in each pair of sentences.

1 I wish you'd stop .... us you're going to get an A because it's not certain, you know.
2 Miss Edwards was explaining some grammar to us but she had to stop .... a couple of the girls to be quiet. **tell**

3 When you're in town, remember .... some snacks for this evening.
4 I remember .... out of the car and I think I saw the motorbike, but everything after that is a blank. **get**

5 We regret .... that flight RA 721 has been cancelled.
6 I regret .... that I was going to resign because I changed my mind soon after. **announce**

7 The lecturer ignored the interruption and went on .... as if nothing had happened.
8 The lecturer described the social conditions in the 1930s and went on .... about the effect of the war. **talk**

9 You're going to be angry, but I forgot .... to the bank to pay that cheque in.
10 Don't tell me you've forgotten .... to the Blue Mountains! It was only last summer. **go**

11 The air conditioner wasn't working so I tried .... the batteries in the remote control, but it didn't make any difference.
12 There must be something wrong with the remote control because every time I try .... channels, nothing happens. **change**

13 We like .... the car serviced at least once a year, just to be on the safe side.
14 No, don't! I really don't like .... my feet tickled like that! **have**

H Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

1 After working for six hours, I finally managed to finish the report. **in**
I finally .... the report after working for six hours.

2 Oscar is qualified to teach Russian because he has a degree in it. **to**
Oscar's Russian degree .... the language.

3 I couldn't believe it when they suggested that I should speak to the head teacher about the problem. **nominated**
I couldn't believe it when they .... to the head teacher about the problem.

4 I shared a bedroom with my brothers when I was young and I quite liked it. **like**
I used .... a bedroom with my brothers when I was young.

5 Tim resolved that he would stay out of trouble when he left prison. **to**
On being released from prison, Tim resolved .... trouble again.

6 Are you sorry that you invited Liam to join us on the trip? **regret**
Do .... Liam to join us on the trip?

7 The arrangement is that you are staying with Mr and Mrs Andrews. **for**
We .... with Mr and Mrs Andrews.

8 What was your inspiration for creating such a fantastic character in your new novel? **to**
What .... such a fantastic character in your new novel?

I Choose the correct answer.

1 When she suggested .... over the weekend, I was so angry that I threatened to quit.
A me to working C me work
B me to work D me working

2 The manager requested that all staff .... present at the meeting.
A have been C are being
B be D being

3 Didn't you .... that Martha wasn't with Ashley?
A think it strange C think strangely
B think strange D think it strangely

4 It's very important that we .... as soon as there's any change in the patient's condition.
A be it notified C were notified
B being notified D be notified

5 I feel .... to inform the committee that a number of members are very unhappy with the decision.
A my duty C it my duty
B this my duty D that my duty

6 After what the manager said this morning, I didn't .... him about the problems I've been having.
A dare telling C dare tell
B dare it telling D dare to telling

7 Don't you .... that Veronica and George are still together?
A incredibly find C find incredibly
B find incredible D find it incredible

8 You shouldn't have let Kerry .... without apologising for what you said to her.
A leave C leaving
B to leave D to leaving

9 It was a bit embarrassing when the teacher caught us .... during the test.
A to cheat C cheat
B cheating D to cheating

10 It's not fair to make the dog .... in the car on such a hot day.
A to wait C wait
B waiting D for waiting

J Write one word in each gap.

Speed Dating

'You've been trying (**1**) .... find that certain someone for far too long, Debbie,' they said. 'Can't you feel (**2**) .... getting older? Don't you (**3**) .... it strange to be 25 and not married yet?' they asked. They recommended (**4**) .... to check out something called 'speed dating'. Two days later I found (**5**) .... sitting in a club in central London with 100 other people with name badges on.

The idea with speed dating is that you have three minutes to chat, then a bell rings and you change partners. You keep (**6**) .... going like that all night, making a note of anybody you like. So, I sat there as 50 young men passed before my eyes. I didn't (**7**) .... tell them that I worked for a young women's magazine, so I pretended to be a hairdresser. Everyone obviously found (**8**) .... hard to know what to say – well, what *do* you say to sell yourself in three minutes? The Kevins, Jonathans and Michaels came and went, and I (**9**) .... to feel like I couldn't (**10**) .... to hear another potted biography. Speed dating might work for some, but I think I'll stick to traditional methods to find Mr Right.

UNIT 24 Vocabulary

Relationships and people

Topic vocabulary: Relationships

see page 241 for definitions

adjacent (adj)
attach (v)
bond (v, n)
coexist (v)
coherent (adj)
compatible (adj)
comprise (v)
compromise (v, n)
conflict (v, n)
confront (v)
consistent (adj)
contradict (v)
contrasting (adj)
cooperate (v)
correspond (v)
dispute (v, n)
distinguish (v)
diverse (adj)
divorce (v, n)
equivalent (n, adj)
exclude (v)
external (adj)
identify (v)
integral (adj)
integrate (v)
interfere (v)
intermediate (adj)
internal (adj)
intervene (v)
intimate (adj)
involve (v)
joint (adj)
liken (v)
link (v, n)
merge (v)
mutual (adj)
negotiate (v)
related (adj)
relative (adj)
resemblance (n)

Topic vocabulary: People

see page 242 for definitions

acquaintance (n)
adopt (v)
ancestor (n)
citizen (n)
companion (n)
dependant (n)
descendant (n)
empathise (v)
extrovert (n)
foster (v)
guardian (n)
introvert (n)
partner (n)
peer (n)
predecessor (n)
sibling (n)
spouse (n)
stepmother/son/etc (n)
successor (n)
sympathise (v)

Phrasal verbs

answer back	reply rudely to someone who has more authority than you
ask out	invite someone to go with you to a cinema, restaurant, etc because you want to start a romantic or sexual relationship with them
break up	if two people break up, they end their relationship; break something to make smaller pieces; if a meeting or other event breaks up, or if you break it up, it ends and people leave
bring out	make someone or something show a quality that they have; produce a new product and start to sell it
bring together	create a situation in which people meet and do something together, especially when they would not usually do so
bump into	meet someone unexpectedly; accidentally hit against something
cancel out	stop something from having any effect
come between	cause a disagreement or argument between people
crowd around	move to a particular place at the same time as a lot of other people
go together	if two or more things go together, they frequently exist together; if two things go together, they seem good, natural or attractive in combination with each other
meet up	come together with someone, either unexpectedly or as planned
open up	talk more about your personal feelings and experiences; open a locked door, container or building; make it easier to travel or do business in a country
pick on	keep treating someone badly or unfairly, especially by criticising them
sound out	try to find out someone's opinions, ideas, feelings, etc by talking to them
take after	look or behave like an older relative
take to	begin to like someone or something; start doing something as a habit

Phrases, patterns and collocations

born born to do, born on/in, born of, born into, born and bred, born-again, newborn

child as a child, only child, a child of, child abuse, childcare, child's play, child support

common have sth in common (with sb), common for sb/sth to do, common to, common language, the common people, common practice

equal of equal size/quality/value, equal in size/quality/value, equal to, roughly equal (to), equal rights

family have/start a family, nuclear family, extended family, single-parent family, a family of, in the family, one of the family, family tree, family name, family values

Phrases, patterns and collocations

feature feature sb/sth in, a feature of, distinguishing feature, safety features, feature film, feature writer

friend make friends (with), close/good/great friend, old friend, friend of the family, family friend, circle of friends, friends with

generation the older/younger generation, generation gap, Generation X, future generations

human human behaviour, human being, human error, human nature, human race, human rights

love love to do, love doing, give/send your love to, (fall) in love (with sb), love for, true love, love at first sight, love affair, loved ones

marriage (related) by marriage, marriage guidance, marriage vows, marriage of convenience

mother the mother of, mother country, mother-in-law, motherland, Mother Nature, Mother's Day, mother-to-be, mother tongue

national in the national interest, national anthem, national costume/dress, national debt, national holiday

native go native, native to, a native of, native speaker, non-native speaker, native land, native species

near near to (doing sth), the near future, from near and far, a near thing, the nearest thing to, your nearest and dearest

person do sth in person, meet sb in person

relative it's (all) relative, relative to, close/near relative, distant relative, a relative of yours, relative clause/pronoun

respect respect sb for, respect sb as, gain/lose sb's respect, command/deserve/earn/win respect, treat sb with respect, with respect to, in this/that respect

support support doing sth, support sb (financially), support an idea, support a team, offer support, in support of

wedding wedding anniversary, wedding cake, wedding ceremony, wedding dress, wedding invitation, wedding ring, wedding present

Idioms

be born with a silver spoon in your mouth	have advantages because you come from a rich family
be on the same wavelength	understand the way another person thinks because you often have the same ideas and opinions they do
get on like a house on fire	become good friends very quickly and have a lot to talk to each other about
in sb's bad/good books	used for saying that someone is annoyed/pleased with you
like two peas in a pod	used for saying that two people look, behave or think exactly the same
on good terms (with)	have a good relationship with someone
put sth in perspective	provide a sensible way of judging how good, bad, important, etc something is in comparison with other things
sb is only human	used for saying someone has been weak in the ways most people are weak and should not be blamed for their behaviour
see eye to eye (with sb)	agree with someone or have the same opinion as them
your flesh and blood	your relative

Word formation

appear	disappear, reappear, (dis/re)appearance, apparition, apparent(ly)
appreciate	appreciation, appreciable, appreciably, (un)appreciative(ly)
associate	dissociate, association, associate, associated
attach	reattach, attachment, (un)attached
character	characterise, characterisation, (un)characteristic, characterless
connect	disconnect, reconnect, interconnect, (dis/re)connection, (inter)connecting, (un/dis/inter)connected, connector
familiar	familiarise, (un)familiarity, unfamiliar, familiarly
human	humanise, humanity, humanism, humanist, humanities, humanitarian, humane, humanly
individual	individualise, individualisation, individuality, individualist, individually
inherit	inheritance, heritage, heredity, hereditary
intimate	intimacy, intimately
loyal	(dis)loyalty, disloyal, (dis)loyally
observe	observation, observance, observer, observatory, observable, observant, observably
parent	parenting, parentage, parenthood, parental(ly)
perceive	perception, perceptiveness, (im)perceptible, (im)perceptibly, perceptive(ly)
person	personalise, impersonate, personality, personnel, interpersonal, personalised, (im)personal(ly)
race	racism, racist, interracial, racial(ly)
relate	relation, relationship, (un)related, relative(ly)
self	(un)selfishness, selflessness, (un)selfish(ly), selfless(ly)
separate	separation, (in)separable, separated, separately
sympathy	sympathise, sympathiser, (un)sympathetic, (un)sympathetically
young	youngster, youth, youthful

Topic vocabulary: Relationships

A Complete using the correct form of the words in the box.

attach • comprise • confront • contradict • correspond • dispute • distinguish
exclude • identify • integrate • involve • liken • merge • negotiate

1 It's not easy to .... between Nick and Rick because they're identical twins.
2 Why do you always .... me and say that what I'm saying isn't true?
3 I love mountaineering, and I suppose I would .... it to the excitement of winning the lottery.
4 One of the reasons we grow to love characters in films is that we .... with them.
5 You need to .... the handle to the drawer using these screws.
6 I wouldn't .... the possibility that you could be completely wrong on this.
7 Your answer to the maths problem should be the same as mine, but they don't ....
8 I'm going to .... Roy about his behaviour because I think it's unacceptable.
9 Don't you think that people who come to live in this country should .... into our culture?
10 In some countries, children under 16 .... the majority of the population.
11 They say the price for the house is two hundred thousand, but I'm sure they'll ....
12 I'm not .... the facts – I just don't agree with your interpretation of them.
13 Our office is going to .... with the one in the next town so some people will lose their jobs.
14 Having a successful marriage .... learning how to keep quiet at the right time.

B Choose the correct answer.

1 I couldn't believe it when Marcy accused me of .... in her relationship with Joe.
A intervening B interacting C interfering D intercepting

2 Do you think there might be a .... between Angie's behaviour and the accident she had?
A link B tie C bond D junction

3 Suddenly, I overheard Melissa and Alex talking about me in the .... room.
A attached B beside C near D adjacent

4 It's difficult to translate because there's no .... for that word in English.
A twin B clone C copy D equivalent

5 Andrea and Theresa are so different! You couldn't have two more .... sisters.
A dislike B contrasting C conflicting D distinguished

6 Keeping a relationship going is hard enough, without any .... pressure from parents.
A external B incoming C outward D outdoor

7 Having your heart broken is an .... part of growing up.
A inward B inset C integral D internal

8 Getting divorced was a .... decision, so I don't blame my ex-wife.
A relative B related C cooperative D joint

9 But what you're saying now isn't .... with what you said last week.
A coherent B consistent C confirmed D continuous

10 You have to go through a number of .... stages before you become an expert.
A medium B average C moderate D intermediate

11 There's no .... between Gary and Mark, even though they are brothers.
A resemblance B appearance C correspondence D reflection

12 There's no reason why people of different races can't .... quite peacefully together.
A endure B be C inhabit D coexist

C **Complete using the correct form of the words in the box.**

bond • compatible • compromise • conflict • cooperate • diverse • divorce
intimate • mutual • relative

Relate

When people are in (**1**) .... , it can often help to talk to someone outside the relationship. When the (**2**) .... that holds people together weakens and arguments break out, the (**3**) .... calm of a counsellor's office can make a big difference. Relate is a registered charity in the UK that exists to give advice to couples. It started life as the Marriage Guidance Council in 1943 and was founded by Dr Herbert Gray, who was concerned at the increase in (**4**) .... They have dealt with a (**5**) .... range of problems over the years, from couples who feel that their personalities aren't (**6**) .... to couples who have problems being (**7**) .... with each other. Getting people to (**8**) .... with each other on rebuilding the relationship and encouraging (**9**) .... respect often helps. Often, people need to learn that they can't have exactly what they want and that (**10**) .... is necessary.

Topic vocabulary: People

D **Complete using the words in the box.**

acquaintance • citizen • companion • extrovert • guardian • introvert • spouse • stepmother

1 I don't know Tony that well. We see each other on the way to work, and we always say hello. I wouldn't call him a friend, more of a/an .... , really.
2 I don't get on that well with my .... Since my parents got divorced and Dad married her, things haven't exactly been peaceful in our house.
3 Everyone who wants to go on the school trip needs to bring their form into class tomorrow. And remember that you have to get your legal .... to sign it, giving you permission to go.
4 I suppose I'm something of a/an .... I wouldn't exactly describe myself as sociable. I'm quite shy, really, and don't like meeting new people.
5 You need to write your full name at the top of the form. If you're married, write the name of your .... in the space provided.
6 As I waited at the airport, I saw a rather strange-looking woman who didn't seem to have any luggage. Then I noticed her travelling .... , a small woman of a similar age with four suitcases.
7 Guy's a real .... He'll chat to anybody. He always seems to get into conversation wherever we go and everyone seems to find him charming.
8 When my grandfather arrived in the States, he wanted to become an American .... as soon as he could. It was very important to him to feel that he belonged here.

E **Circle the correct word.**

1 I do **empathise / sympathise** with Kim, but I can't say I really understand what she's going through.
2 I understand you're trying to be kind, but I don't think you can really **empathise / sympathise** with me when you haven't experienced anything similar.
3 My parents often **adopted / fostered** children for a few months when I was young and they must have looked after about 50 youngsters altogether.
4 I was **adopted / fostered** by Frank and Mavis when I was just six weeks old, so they're the only parents I've ever known.

5 To some people, it's very important not to be different from their **partners / peers** and to fit in with the group.
6 I thought it strange that the invitation didn't say that **partners / peers** were invited.
7 It was a real blow when Jim lost his job because he's got a large number of **dependants / siblings**, including three children and a mother-in-law.
8 I never really got on with any of my **dependants / siblings** as I was growing up.
9 My **ancestor / predecessor** in the job left things in a real mess.
10 The family home was built by a/an **ancestor / predecessor** of mine and six generations of Barretts have lived in it since then.
11 I have decided to leave the company, but I'm sure my **descendant / successor** will carry on the good work.
12 You won't believe me, but I'm a **descendant / successor** of Isaac Newton, although I don't share the same name.

Phrasal verbs

F Write one word in each gap.

1 I haven't seen much of Cameron since he and Nicola broke ....
2 She really loves him and is determined not to let anything come .... them.
3 Why don't we meet .... here again on the 12th, when I get back from Germany?
4 I didn't take .... my stepbrother at first, but after a while we grew closer.
5 We should bring everyone .... and discuss what we're going to do for Grandpa's 80th birthday.
6 Being given some responsibility really brought .... a side of Lindsay's character I hadn't seen before.
7 I'd like to ask Melanie .... on a date, but I'm afraid of being rejected.
8 I had a row with Elizabeth and it just cancelled .... all the effort I'd put into getting her to like me.

G Complete using a phrasal verb with a word from box A in the right form and a word from box B.

A answer • bump • crowd • go • open • pick • sound • take

B after • around • back • into • on • out • together • up

1 Guess who I .... in town. Our old physics teacher, Mr Watson.
2 After I got to know Ben a bit better, he started to .... about his feelings.
3 The jeans and the top are both fine on their own, but they don't really ....
4 Don't .... the other children in your class just because you're bigger than them.
5 I wish you would just do as you're told and not .... every time I ask you to do something.
6 You should .... your parents .... and see what they think of your plan.
7 When the woman fainted in the street, everyone .... her but no one seemed to know what to do.
8 Michael really .... his grandfather, doesn't he? They've both got the same red hair.

H **Some phrasal verbs with *back*, such as *answer back*, have meanings connected to 'responding to other people'. Complete the sentences using the words in the box in the correct form.**

call • fight • fire • get • hit • pay • talk • write

1 I'm not aggressive, but if someone attacks me, then I'll .... back.
2 The Prime Minister .... back at his critics and accused them of being biased.
3 Don't be surprised if you get into trouble for .... back to the teacher.
4 The robber shot at the police, who .... back.
5 Nigel rang and he wants you to .... back as soon as you can.
6 Read the e-mail from Carter Brothers and .... back to them, explaining where their order is.
7 Lend me enough money for dinner and I'll .... you back next week.
8 I've got a good plan to .... back at Charlotte for all the trouble she's caused me.

Phrases, patterns and collocations

I **One word in each sentence is incorrect. Underline the incorrect word and write the correct word on the line.**

1 We didn't share the same father tongue, but we managed to communicate in English. ....
2 When my brother got married, my sister-in-law very quickly became one from the family. ....
3 I sometimes find that born speakers of English speak a bit too fast for me. ....
4 We need to get something for Mum and Dad's marriage anniversary next week. ....
5 Since tomorrow's a country holiday, I thought we might drive up into the mountains. ....
6 I got an e-mail yesterday from a far relative who's researching our family tree. ....
7 This maths problem should be kid's play to someone with as much talent as you. ....
8 She's not my biological aunt, but she's my aunt with marriage. ....
9 Following the train crash, people concerned about their liked ones were given a special number to call. ....
10 The problem of child misuse is much bigger than you might think. ....
11 It took me a long time to do friends with Justine, but it was worth it in the end. ....
12 It's only mankind nature to want to settle down, get married and start a family. ....

J **Write one word in each gap.**

Arranged marriages

The usual western idea of marriage is that you meet someone, (**1**) .... in love, and then decide to marry each other. For those born (**2**) .... some cultures, however, marriage may have quite a different meaning. In an arranged marriage, it is the parents who choose the partner and it's possible (**3**) .... the young person getting married not to meet their future bride or groom (**4**) .... person until the day of the wedding. Indeed, a young person might be promised to another (**5**) .... a child, many years before the wedding day.

Amongst communities that practise arranged marriage, it's not unusual for a generation (**6**) .... to open up between parents and children, with many young people refusing to accept an arranged marriage. However, if the partners treat each other (**7**) .... respect and recognise that they are both (**8**) .... equal value, there doesn't seem to be any real barrier to having a happy married life.

K **For each question, write one word which can be used in all three sentences.**

1 Oh, tell Carrie that I send my .... when you see her.
When my mum and dad met, my mum says it was .... at first sight.
My .... for travelling comes from the fact that we moved around a lot when I was young.

2 One of the reasons why Damian and I get on so well is that we have a lot in ....
The architect told us that it was .... practice to start building before getting all the permits.
There are some words which are .... to a number of the languages spoken in the area.

3 I don't really see myself settling down any time in the .... future.
People came from .... and far to attend the celebrity wedding of the year.
We just about managed to get to the airport on time, but it was a .... thing.

4 The two countries are similar with .... to the divorce rates.
Of course we argue, but I don't think we're any different from other couples in that ....
Todd lost a lot of people's .... when they saw how he treats his wife.

5 One of the important .... of the law is that it recognises the rights of unmarried partners.
In order to find the woman's missing husband, the police asked if he had any distinguishing ....
I was quite impressed by the safety .... on Bill's new car.

6 We .... our son while he was at university so he didn't have to work while he was studying.
My father .... Chelsea, and so did his father before him, so it was only natural that I would too.
When I saw the results of the survey, I was quite surprised by the number of people who .... the death penalty.

Idioms

L **Write one word in each gap.**

1 Vivian and I usually agree, but we're not always on the .... wavelength.
2 I don't know Pauline that well, but I'm on good .... with her sister.
3 I know I made a mistake, but I'm only .... , after all.
4 My brother and Jack got on like a .... on fire when they first met.
5 It's a shame to fall out so badly with your own .... and blood.
6 Life's very easy for you. You were born with a .... spoon in your mouth.
7 Jill and Emily are so alike. They're like two .... in a pod.
8 I don't think we're ever going to .... eye to eye on this issue.
9 When something like that happens, it certainly .... your own problems in perspective.
10 I'm avoiding Mr Hunter because I think I'm in his bad ....

Word formation

M **Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals.**

1 Theo and his brother are always together. They're completely .... **SEPARATE**
2 It's very .... of you to notice that Sean's not his usual self. **PERCEIVE**
3 There was a long legal battle over the .... , but in the end I did get quite a bit of money. **INHERIT**
4 I think saying that all black people are lazy is a very .... remark, to be honest. **RACE**
5 Despite his .... lack of concern, I think Gabriel really does care what other people think of him. **APPEAR**
6 Don't feel that you're being .... to Sharon if you tell me what's bothering you about her. **LOYAL**
7 James got into trouble for .... a police officer. **PERSON**

8 If you have any complaints about a neighbour, take them to your residents' .... , where they should be able to advise you further. **ASSOCIATE**
9 Marvin used to be quite wild, but he's .... calm these days. **RELATE**
10 According to Lionel, losing his job and then getting divorced were .... , but I think there's probably a link. **CONNECT**
11 Young animals very quickly form a strong .... to their mothers. **ATTACH**
12 What I don't like about school uniform is that it completely destroys all .... **INDIVIDUAL**

N **Use the word given in capitals to form a word that fits in the space.**

Becoming a parent

Very little in our lives prepares us for (**1**) .... (**PARENT**). Suddenly, your life is turned upside down and all sorts of (**2**) .... (**FAMILIAR**) demands are placed on you. How we ourselves were treated by our parents in our (**3**) .... (**YOUNG**) can have an (**4**) .... (**APPRECIATE**) effect on who we become as parents. Our own (**5**) .... (**OBSERVE**) of how our parents responded to us creates a model of parenting that is (**6**) .... (**INTIMATE**) connected to the kind of parents we become. It's not uncommon for people to show the same child-rearing (**7**) .... (**CHARACTER**) as their own parents. If your father was an (**8**) .... (**SYMPATHY**) figure who always seemed too busy to care about how you felt, then there's a chance you will repeat the same behaviour. If your mother was utterly (**9**) .... (**SELF**) in her devotion to her children, there's a chance that you too will be equally giving and do all that is (**10**) .... (**HUMAN**) possible for your offspring.

O **The prefix *re-*, as in *reappear*, can go before verbs, nouns and adjectives to mean 'again'. Tick the words below which can form words using *re-*.**

1 arrange ....
2 build ....
3 consider ....
4 count ....
5 create ....
6 cycle ....
7 develop ....
8 dial ....
9 do ....
10 fill ....
11 fresh ....
12 heat ....
13 join ....
14 new ....
15 pass ....
16 print ....
17 produce ....
18 say ....
19 think ....
20 train ....
21 trial ....
22 use ....
23 worry ....
24 write ....

P **Complete the sentences using words formed in exercise O in the correct form.**

1 I'm beginning to .... my plans for the future.
2 Why don't you .... the soup in the microwave?
3 Don't forget to .... your passport, or you won't be able to come on holiday!
4 You've spilt coffee on my notebook! Now I'm going to have to .... my whole essay!
5 When my mum lost her job, she decided to .... as an engineer.
6 Empty that bit of Coke down the sink and then you can .... the bottle with water.
7 The election result was so close that they've decided to .... the votes.
8 I left my friends in Paris while I explored the area and then I .... them a few days later.
9 Scientists are hoping to .... the conditions that existed on Earth millions of years ago.
10 You'll easily pass the exam if you can .... the very good performance you put in during the mock exams.

REVIEW 12 Units 23 and 24

A **Use the word given in capitals to form a word that fits in the space.**

Culture clashes

One (**1**) .... (**CHARACTER**) of the modern world is that people increasingly find themselves living side by side with people from other cultures. While in the past people with different cultures were able to live quite (**2**) .... (**SEPARATE**), high mobility and freedom of movement mean that we are more likely today to be confronted with people whose way of life is (**3**) .... (**FAMILIAR**) to us. In such circumstances, (**4**) .... (**RACE**) is a real danger.

People feel a tremendous (**5**) .... (**LOYAL**) to their own culture, and are often unwilling to develop an (**6**) .... (**APPRECIATE**) of the positive aspects of other cultures. They may feel that another culture presents a threat to their own (**7**) .... (**INHERIT**), one that could even lead to the (**8**) .... (**APPEAR**) of certain aspects of their way of life. Often, however, this threat is more a matter of (**9**) .... (**PERCEIVE**) than reality and different groups live in (**10**) .... (**RELATE**) harmony in many parts of the world.

(1 mark per answer)

B **Circle the correct word or phrase.**

11 We've arranged **to meet / meeting** Michael at the restaurant at nine.
12 Would you mind **to move / moving** a little so I can see the TV?
13 I'm sorry, but nothing justifies **to behave / behaving** like that.
14 Mum didn't like the idea of our neighbour giving me such an expensive present and I was made **give / to give** it back.
15 I'll always remember **to see / seeing** Elvis Presley perform live.
16 Please don't hesitate **to contact / contacting** us if you require further information.
17 I hope we don't end up **to miss / missing** the boat because of the traffic.
18 I didn't dare **to ask / asking** Angus about his argument with Kate.

(1 mark per answer)

C **Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.**

19 Austin and his father are very similar, aren't they? **after**
Austin .... , doesn't he?

20 I realised that I was standing outside the house I was looking for. **myself**
I .... outside the house I was looking for.

21 I was surprised Sarah couldn't do the maths problem because it was very easy. **play**
The maths problem .... , and I was surprised Sarah couldn't do it.

22 Chris's interests are completely different from mine. **common**
I don't .... Chris.

23 I can spend more time with my grandchildren when I retire. **free**
Retirement .... more time with my grandchildren.

24 When I met my cousin from America for the first time, we really liked each other straight away. **house**
My cousin and I .... when we first met.

25 Do you want to go to the cinema this evening? **like**
Do you .... to the cinema this evening?

26 I left my last job because I didn't really agree with my manager's approach. **eye**
I left my last job because I .... with my manager.

(2 marks per answer)

D Write one word in each gap.

27 Nathan was lucky enough to be born .... a very wealthy family.
28 The cathedral features .... a documentary about important buildings.
29 I think the state pension should be equal .... half the average salary.
30 The new law is unworkable .... this respect: it doesn't define the offence well enough.
31 The Prime Minister claimed that it wouldn't be .... the national interest to join the new organisation.
32 This rare species of bird is native .... Tasmania and isn't found anywhere else.
33 The Queen wasn't at the event .... person, but she did send someone to represent her.
34 Some say that hang-gliding is the nearest thing .... being able to fly like a bird.

(1 mark per answer)

E Choose the correct answer.

35 What you're saying now .... what you said earlier.
A disputes C comprises
B contradicts D interferes

36 The speaker stopped .... his notes before continuing.
A checking C to check
B check D to checking

37 I read somewhere that the youngest .... in a family is often the funniest.
A sibling C guardian
B spouse D citizen

38 Many people consider Davies .... the finest artist of his generation.
A be C to be
B being D to being

39 After the investigation, the accident was put down to human ....
A mistake C error
B wrong D slip

40 Do you think the generation .... between parents and teenagers is getting wider?
A split C crack
B divide D gap

41 Everyone started to .... around the old woman on the floor, but no one offered her any help.
A crowd C put
B spread D hang

42 Rebecca didn't deserve .... punished quite so severely, if you ask me.
A be C to be
B being D to being

(1 mark per answer)

Total mark: ..../50

UNIT 25

Grammar

Reporting

Reported speech: tense changes

- If the reporting verb is in the past (eg *said*), we usually have to change the tense of what the person actually said. The general rule is go back one tense but there are some exceptions.
- With past perfect simple and continuous, there is no tense change.

Direct speech	Reported speech
present simple: *Sam* ***doesn't play*** *hockey very often.*	past simple: *Fiona said that Sam* ***didn't play*** *hockey very often.*
present continuous: ***I'm winning!***	past continuous: *Carol shouted to us that she* ***was winning****.*
present perfect simple: *I****'ve*** *never* ***been given*** *a trophy before!*	past perfect simple: *Paul said that he****'d*** *never* ***been given*** *a trophy before.*
present perfect continuous: *They****'ve been playing*** *for four hours.*	past perfect continuous: *She told us that they****'d been playing*** *for four hours.*
past simple: *We* ***lost*** *the match.*	past perfect simple: *Finally he told us that they* ***had lost*** *the match.*
past continuous: *We* ***were winning*** *until half-time.*	past perfect continuous: *She said they* ***had been winning*** *until half-time.*

Watch out!

- When something is still true, we can change tense but we don't have to.
  ✓ *The article said that fishing* ***is/was*** *the most popular sport in Britain.*
- When we are reporting a scientific or historical fact, we don't usually change tense.
  ✓ *Alan told me that Queen Victoria* ***hated*** *Gladstone, the Prime Minister.*
- Although we can usually leave out *that* (*Alan told me* ***(that)*** *Queen Victoria* …), we cannot leave out *that* after the verbs *reply* and *shout*.
  ✓ *I replied* ***that*** *going swimming in such cold water was a ridiculous idea.*

Reported speech: modal and semi-modal changes

- If the reporting verb is in the past (eg *said*), we sometimes have to change modals and semi-modals.
- *Could, would, should, ought to, had better* and *need* do not change.
  ✓ *'I* ***could*** *swim when I was three,' said Lizzie.* → *Lizzie said that she* ***could*** *swim when she was three.*

Direct speech	*will/shall*	*can*	*must*	*have to*	*don't/doesn't have to*	*mustn't*	*may*	*am/is/are going to*
Reported speech	*would*	*could*	*must* *had to* *be to* *should*	*had to*	*didn't have to*	*mustn't* *be not to* *shouldn't*	*might*	*was/were going to*

Watch out!

- When we are expressing obligation, *must* in direct speech usually changes to *had to, be to* or *should* in reported speech.
  ✓ *'You* ***must*** *do what the referee tells you,' said the coach.* → *The coach said that we* ***had to / were to / should*** *do what the referee told us.*
- When we are expressing obligation, *mustn't* can become *mustn't, be not to* or *shouldn't.*
  ✓ *'You* ***mustn't*** *cheat under any circumstances!'* → *We were told that we* ***mustn't / were not to / shouldn't*** *cheat under any circumstances.*
- *Must* doesn't usually change to *had to* or *should* when we are expressing probability.
  ✓ *'It* ***must*** *have felt wonderful when they won!' said Dave.* → *Dave said that it* ***must*** *have felt wonderful when*

Reported speech: pronoun and determiner changes

Direct speech	Reported speech
my: It's ***my*** *turn.*	*his/her: Eddie pointed out that it was* ***his*** *turn.*
this/that + noun: *I bought* ***this*** *fishing rod yesterday.*	*the/that: Linda said she'd bought* ***the*** *fishing rod the day before.*
this/that + verb: ***This*** *is a great game!*	*it/that: Tony said* ***it*** *was a great game.*
these/those + noun: *Look at* ***these*** *baseball gloves!*	*the/those: Alison told us to look at* ***the*** *baseball gloves.*
these/those + verb: ***These*** *are the best baseball gloves I've ever seen.*	*they: She said* ***they*** *were the best baseball gloves she'd ever seen.*
verb + *these/those* (without an object): *I've had these for years.*	*them: She said she'd had* ***them*** *for years.*

Watch out!

- We do not need to change time words/phrases when the information is still true at the moment of speaking/writing.
  ✓*'I'll see you at the match next week,' said Dave.* → *Dave told us he'd see us at the match next week.*
- In narratives, writers often use direct speech time words and phrases for dramatic effect.
  ✓*Carlo turned to Fraser and said that,* ***here****,* ***now****, they would decide who the champion was once and for all.*

Reported speech: time and place changes

Direct speech	Reported speech	Direct speech	Reported speech
here	*there*	*now, at the moment*	*then, at that moment*
tomorrow	*the following/next day, the day after*	*next week/year/etc*	*the following/next week, the week after*
tonight	*that night*	*last week/year/etc*	*the week before, the previous week*
yesterday	*the day before, the previous day*	*ago*	*before, previously, earlier*

Reported questions

- With reported questions, we make the same changes regarding tense, pronoun and time and place word/phrases as we do with reported speech.
- In reported questions we don't use the question form or question marks.

Direct speech	Reported speech
Questions beginning with the verbs *have*, *do*, *be* and modals *'****Do*** *you want to play Monopoly?' asked Cheryl.*	*Cheryl asked* ***if/whether we wanted*** *to play Monopoly.*
Questions with *what*, *who*, *which*, *when*, *where*, *why* and *how* *'****What time did the match start?****' asked Jimmy.*	*Jimmy asked Andrea* ***what time the match had started****.*

Watch out!

The structure question word + infinitive is very common with reported questions.
✓ *She asked me* ***how to tune*** *a piano.* ✓ *He asked me* ***what to do****.*

Reported commands and requests

Direct speech	Reported speech
Commands *'****Put*** *the cricket bats away!' said Alex.*	*tell / command / order / instruct* + sb + full infinitive *Alex* ***told me to put*** *the cricket bats away.*
Requests *'****Would you put*** *the cricket bats away?' asked Alex.*	*ask* + sb + full infinitive *Alex* ***asked me to put*** *the cricket bats away.*

Reporting verbs

Different reporting verbs take different grammatical patterns. Some verbs can take more than one pattern, eg *deny doing, deny sth, deny (that) … .*

Common reporting verbs include: *accuse, agree, apologise, ask, beg, claim, command, cry, deny, explain, instruct, order, promise, refuse, reply, respond, say, shout, state, suggest, tell, whisper*

A Complete each second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

1 Jimmy said that he definitely wasn't going to the match on Saturday.
....,' said Jimmy.

2 Alison told Ben that he'd forgotten to do the washing-up.
.... , Ben!' said Alison.

3 Jason admitted that he had been lying when he'd said he had nothing to do with the breakages.
'Actually, I ....,' admitted Jason.

4 Paul told me that Dawn hadn't been particularly hard-working when she was at university.
'..,' said Paul.

5 Sharon shouted that she hadn't finished yet.
'..!' shouted Sharon.

6 Rudy said he'd meet us all at the café in half an hour.
'..,' said Rudy.

7 Belinda's mum told her that she didn't have to eat her sprouts if she didn't want to.
'.. , Belinda,' said her mum.

8 Sebastian announced that he and Tristan were going to set up a website.
'Tristan ....,' announced Sebastian.

9 Karen asked Diana when she had got married.
'.. , Diana?' asked Karen.

10 Freda asked Bjorn if she could borrow his bike for a couple of hours.
'Bjorn, ... ?' asked Freda.

B Circle the correct word or phrase. If both are correct, circle both.

1 When I told Mr Peters that the dog **has / had** eaten my homework, he didn't believe me.

2 Adam told me that his girlfriend **doesn't / didn't** eat meat at all.

3 When I saw Ed yesterday morning, he told me that he **is / was** going to look at a flat in the afternoon.

4 Roger told me about the pop quiz. He said his team **were / had been** doing well in the first few rounds, but that it **all went / had all gone** wrong with the round about dance music.

5 When we watched *Death Watch III*, Paul said he **has / had** never seen a worse movie in his life!

6 Did Galileo say that the Earth **goes / went** round the sun?

7 Phil told me on Friday that he **has / had** just bumped into Wally Deacon!

8 Babs announced to us all last night that she **is / was** finally giving up smoking.

9 Did you say that you **do / did** want sugar in your coffee or not?

10 I told Brian last week that the office **isn't / wasn't** opening on Tuesday so I don't know why he showed up yesterday morning.

C If the word or phrase in bold is correct, put a tick. If it is incorrect, rewrite it correctly.

1 Bob did tell me that he probably **wouldn't** be coming in today. ....

2 Last week he told us that we **don't have to** do that exercise and then yesterday he said **he'd made** a mistake. ....

3 Did you say these bills **had to** be paid before tomorrow? ....

4 Steve said he **could** play guitar when he was two years old. Do you believe that? ....

5 Pauline told my mum that **she'd had better** get a lawyer. I think she's right. ....

6 When we went to the party, Claudia told me that I **must** be on my best behaviour all evening. It was very rude of her, I thought. ....

7 Darren said that Mr Taylor **was to** have forgotten about the meeting, but I'm not so sure. I think he just didn't want to come. ....

8 When I was a teenager, my dad always told me that **I'm not to** stay out later than ten o'clock. ....

9 I was pleased when Jilly told us that she **can** help us paint the flat. If only I'd known then what that meant! ....

10 When I was at school, my English teacher always told us that we **don't have to** pay attention but we **do have to** be quiet. ....

11 The letter they sent six months ago said that they **shall** be in touch again soon. Well, I haven't heard anything since! ....

12 Seven years ago, the Prime Minister stated that his government **will** be corruption-free. It doesn't look that way now, does it? ....

D Write one word in each gap.

1 'Oh no! These shoes don't go with that suit at all!' I actually really liked the shoes but Maureen told me .... didn't go with the suit I was planning to wear.

2 'This play is rubbish!' Susan told us in no uncertain terms that .... play was rubbish.

3 'My sister Chloe's coming to stay for a few days.' Why did Derek say that .... sister's called Chloe? She's called Clarissa, isn't she?

4 'This is *not* what I ordered!' Mike told the waiter – quite rudely in my opinion – that .... wasn't what he'd ordered.

5 'These trainers are far too expensive!' My mum said that .... trainers were too expensive so I didn't get them in the end.

6 'My number's easy. It's 123456.' You don't know Sindy's phone number, do you? She did actually tell me .... number but I stupidly forgot to write it down.

7 'Could you put these on the table?' Mum asked me to put .... on the table.

8 'You won't believe what happened to us last night.' Angus and James told me that .... house was broken into last night.

E Write one word in each gap.

Then ...

Seamus: Hi Marios! It's Seamus. Listen, what are you doing at the moment?
Marios: Right now? Nothing much. Why?
Seamus: Well, do you remember last week I told you about that new gym? I'm just about to check it out and I wondered if you'd like to come too.
Marios: Yeah, great! Umm... to tell you the truth, Seamus, I actually went a couple of days ago. It's really good!
Seamus: Did you?
Marios: Yeah, well, I'm taking part in the London Marathon next month so I'm trying to get fit.
Seamus: Oh, of course you are. Well, you can show me round, then.
Marios: Absolutely! Look, I was going to call you yesterday to ask you if you wanted to come with me next time, but something came up.
Seamus: No, no problem. Don't worry about it.
Marios: Thanks. So, where shall we meet?
Seamus: Well, I'm at the office right now and the gym's only a few minutes walk from here. Do you want to come here and we'll go together?
Marios: Sure. See you in about half an hour.
Seamus: Okay. Bye!
Marios: Bye!

Now ...

1 Seamus asked Marios what he was doing at .... moment.

2 Marios replied that right .... he was not doing anything much.

3 Seamus mentioned a conversation they'd had the .... week.

4 Marios admitted that he'd been to the gym two days ....

5 Marios reminded Seamus that he was taking part in the London Marathon .... month.

6 Marios told Seamus that he had been planning to call him the day ....

7 Seamus said he was at the office and suggested they meet ....

F Complete each second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

1 'Carol and I went to a great museum when we were in Italy last month,' said Shirley.
Shirley told her friends that ....

2 'I only washed these trousers yesterday, Tony!' said his mum.
Tony's mum told ....

3 'You have to get all the letters sent off by tomorrow,' said Jake to his secretary as he was leaving.
As he was leaving, Jake told ....

4 'We shall meet you all back here in exactly half an hour from now.'
Mum told me that ....

5 'Luckily I don't have to go into the office this Saturday,' said Olivia.
Olivia said happily that ....

6 'It can't be very nice having all these cars going by all the time.'
Alan commented to Ros that ....

7 'I'll put these in water right now.'
Daniel's mum said that ....

8 'I told Dan two days ago that this report would have to be rewritten,' said Greg.
Greg told Jeanne that ....

G Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

1 'Will you come with me to the concert next Thursday?' Andrea asked Gareth. **go**
Andrea asked Gareth if .... to the concert the following Thursday.

2 'Does the train get in at four o'clock?' asked Pete. **whether**
Pete asked .... at four o'clock.

3 'Have you been talking on the phone all evening, Tim?' asked his dad. **if**
Tim's dad asked .... on the phone all evening.

4 'Are you all coming tomorrow?' Fiona asked us. **whether**
Fiona asked .... day.

5 'Doesn't Jerry live near you anymore?' asked Dominic. **me**
Dominic asked whether .... any more.

6 'Shall I send you an e-mail about it, Trevor?' asked Kevin. **him**
Kevin asked .... an e-mail about it.

7 'Shall I help you do the dishes, Carlo?' said Robert. **offered**
Robert .... the dishes.

8 'Do we really have to go to bed right now?' Toby asked his parents. **did**
Toby asked his parents .... go to bed right then.

H Circle the correct word or phrase.

1 Kostas didn't dare ask Eleni where **had she / she had** been the previous evening.
2 I was tempted to ask why **did Ranji want / Ranji wanted** to sit next to Li Han so badly.
3 We did ask Carol who **she had / had she** invited but for some reason she wouldn't tell us.
4 Can you believe it? Fred actually asked me how **to / could he** send an e-mail!
5 No one has asked me why **didn't I / I didn't** come to work yesterday.
6 I'm going to ask them what on earth **did they think / they thought** they were doing.
7 Ask that man over there who **should we / to** complain to.
8 Doug and Sally didn't even ask me how **the website was / was the website** going.

I Write a verb from the box in the correct form in each gap.

attack • do • get • like • make • pass • take • talk • turn • use • want • work

1 You'd better ask the security guard how .... into the building at the weekend.
2 That was so nice of them to ask whether I .... to stay the night.
3 I know you asked me .... the washing-up now but it'll only take a minute, I promise.
4 Why did the officer order his men .... when he knew they were outnumbered?
5 I would ask you .... judgement until you know all the facts.
6 I couldn't believe it when Sandy came out and asked me if I .... drugs before.
7 I don't like asking you .... on a Saturday, but I'm afraid there's no alternative.
8 You should have asked your mother which cloth .... She'd know.
9 It was funny when you were asked by the technician how .... the computer on.
10 She very kindly asked me if I .... fruit cake and said there was a fruit salad if I preferred.
11 Go and ask your dad .... us a coffee, would you?
12 I'm sorry, but we've been instructed .... to reporters under any circumstances.

J Choose the correct answer.

1 Do you deny .... this with the defendant on the day in question?
A to discuss
B discussing
C of having discussed
D to have discussed

2 Why did you refuse .... the police officer's questions? It only makes you look guilty!
A to answer
B answering
C that you answer
D for answering

3 It's about time Mrs Richards apologised to me .... me a gossip in front of everybody.
A to have called
B from calling
C that she called
D for having called

4 She may claim .... a PhD but nobody's ever actually seen the certificate.
A having
B for having
C to have
D if she has

5 The kids suggested .... a pizza tonight. What do you think?
A to get
B we'll get
C getting
D for getting

6 I do agree there .... simple solution to this problem.
A is no
B be not
C not to be
D not being

7 Tammy responded .... that at least *she'd* never lied to her parents.
A to say
B that she said
C by saying
D with having said

8 I'm begging ....
A you to stay
B that you stay
C your staying
D you for staying

K Write one word in each gap.

Hobbies

The next time someone asks me (**1**) .... my hobbies are, or, indeed, (**2**) .... I have any hobbies, I'm tempted to refuse (**3**) .... answer. Better still, I'll turn the question round and ask them to (**4**) .... me what *their* hobbies are. Doubtless they'll claim to (**5**) .... an avid collector of rare postage stamps, or an expert builder-of-cathedrals-out-of-matchsticks, but I shan't believe it. I don't think we should deny (**6**) .... any longer: the hobby is dead. I would like to suggest (**7**) .... , from now on, the word 'hobby' is erased from our vocabulary. You may accuse me (**8**) .... being naïve, but I strongly believe the facts support my case. Ask any teenager – or adult, for that matter – how they (**9**) .... their spare time. They'll respond (**10**) .... a list of activities – going to the gym, playing computer games, watching TV, downloading music, hanging out with friends, surfing the Internet, going to the pub, playing football – none of which can sensibly be called a hobby.

UNIT 26 Vocabulary

Preference and leisure activities

Topic vocabulary: Preference

see page 243 for definitions

addiction (n)
adore (v)
anticipation (n)
appeal (v, n)
arbitrary (adj)
aspiration (n)
bear (v)
compulsory (adj)
content (adj)
craving (n)
decline (v)
dedicated (adj)
delight (v)
desire (v, n)
devote (v)
differentiate (v)
envy (v, n)
fancy (v)
fascination (n)
favour (v, n)
greedy (adj)
impulse (n)
inclined (adj)
liking (n)
mediocre (adj)
motive (n)
mundane (adj)
obsessed (adj)
optional (adj)
passion (n)
praise (v, n)
resolve (v)
sacrifice (v, n)
strive (v)
taste (n)
tempting (adj)
urge (v, n)
welcome (v, adj)
worthwhile (adj)
yearn (v)

Topic vocabulary: Leisure activities

see page 244 for definitions

absorbing (adj)
casual (adj)
exhilarating (adj)
fatigue (n)
idle (adj)
indulge (v)
lifestyle (n)
leave (n)
outing (n)
pastime (n)
pursue (v)
recreation (n)
respite (n)
sedentary (adj)
socialise (v)
solitude (n)
tedious (adj)
trivial (adj)
unwind (v)
venue (n)

Phrasal verbs

centre around	if something centres around someone or something, or you centre something around them, they are its main subject of attention or interest
get into	start enjoying something or become enthusiastic about it; if a train, plane, etc gets into a place, it arrives there; become involved in a bad situation
go in for	enjoy a particular thing or activity; choose something as a subject of study or as your career
go off	stop liking someone or something; explode or be fired; leave a place, especially for a particular purpose; if food or drink goes off, it is no longer fresh
grow on	if something or someone grows on you, you start to like them more
hang out	spend time in a particular place or with particular people; lean out of a window so that the top part of your body is outside *hang-out (n)*
keep up	continue to do something; move at the same speed as someone or something
laze around	relax and enjoy yourself, doing no work
mess about/ around	spend time doing things in a relaxed way; behave in a silly way
pick up	learn a new skill or start a habit without intending to; go and meet someone or something that you have arranged to take somewhere in a vehicle
put in	spend a particular amount of time doing something, or make a particular amount of effort in order to do something *input (n)*
seek out	find someone or something by looking for them in a determined way
take in	include something
take off	have a particular amount of time away from work; become successful or popular very fast *take-off (n)*
take out	take someone to a place like a cinema or a restaurant and usually pay for them
warm up	prepare for a sport or activity by doing gentle exercises or practising just before it starts *warm-up (n)*

Phrases, patterns and collocations

choice make a choice, exercise choice, have no choice, choice between, choice of, personal/parental/consumer choice, informed choice, wide choice, obvious choice

choose choose from, choose between, choose sb/sth as, choose sb/sth out of, choose to do, pick and choose, nothing/little to choose between

decide decide to do, decide against/in favour of, decide that, decide between, decide for yourself, decide on

delight delight in doing, take (great) delight in doing, to sb's delight, with/in delight

Phrases, patterns and collocations

eager	eager to do, eager for, only too eager to do
free	set sb free, let sb go free, free sb from, walk free, free to do, free from, free and easy, free time
impulse	act on impulse, do sth on impulse, control/resist an impulse, an impulse to do
keen	keen (for sb) to do, keen on, keen interest in
leisure	have the leisure to do, at your leisure, leisure centre, leisure pursuits, leisure time
like	like (sb) to do, like doing, like it when, just like, anything/nothing like, it's not like sb to do, like crazy/mad, like so, something like
need	need (sb) to do, need do, need doing, meet a need, have no need of, in need (of)
off	have / take / be given the day off, have / take / be given time off, off work/college, off sick
opt	opt for, opt to do
option	have no option (but to do), consider your options, the option of doing, the option to do, keep/leave your options open
play	play against/for, play at, play by yourself, play for time, play the fool, play sth by ear, at play
praise	praise sb for doing, win/earn/deserve praise, full of praise for, in praise of
prefer	prefer sth to, prefer (sb) to do, prefer doing, would prefer (that), would prefer it if
rest	rest sth on/against, rest assured that, take/have a rest (from), get some rest, come to rest, at rest
taste	develop/have a taste for, in good/bad taste, sense of taste, acquired taste
want	want (sb) to do, want sth done, for want of

Idioms

at a loose end	with nothing in particular to do
couch potato	someone who spends a lot of time sitting at home watching television
do sth on a whim	do because of a sudden feeling that you must have or do something
have time on your hands	have more time available than you need
let your hair down	relax and enjoy yourself because you are in a comfortable environment
life and soul of the party	someone who is very lively at social events
put your feet up	sit down and relax, especially with your feet raised off the ground
recharge your batteries	rest after being very busy, so that you will be ready to start working again
set your heart on	decide that you want something very much
variety is the spice of life	used for saying that different experiences and situations make life enjoyable or interesting

Word formation

available	(un)availability, unavailable
choose	chose, chosen, choice, choosy
desire	(un)desirable, desirous, desired, (un)desirably
do	overdo, outdo, redo, undo, (over/out/re/un)did, (over/out/re/un)done, doing, doings
envy	(un)enviable, (un)enviably, envious(ly)
leisure	leisured, leisurely
motive	(de)motivated, (de)motivator, (de)motivation, (de)motivating, motivational
obsess	obsession, obsessed, obsessive(ly)
play	replay, overplay, downplay, player, playful(ly)
prefer	preference, preferable, preferred, preferential, preferably
pursue	pursuit, pursuer
relax	relaxation, relaxing, relaxed
rest	restlessness, unrest, restive, restful(ly), restless(ly)
rhythm	rhythmic(al), rhythmically
satisfy	dissatisfy, (un)satisfactory, (dis)satisfied, (un)satisfying(ly), satisfactorily
select	deselect, selection, selective(ly)
sport	sportsman/woman/person, sportsmanship, sports, sporting, sporty
stimulate	stimulation, stimulant, stimulus, stimuli, stimulating, stimulated
tend	tendency
zeal	zealot, zealous(ly)

Topic vocabulary: Preference

A Choose the correct answer.

1 Although she would have preferred to carry on working, my mum .... her career in order to have children.
A devoted B repealed C sacrificed D abolished

2 I find the offer quite .... , but I think I'd rather study at Oxford.
A tempting B desirous C inclined D envious

3 I don't normally like noisy clubs, but I had a sudden .... to see what the Blue Parrot was like.
A force B motive C pressure D impulse

4 Jerry loves snowboarding so much that it's almost like a drug ....
A passion B obsession C addiction D requirement

5 I don't want to do the course in applied statistics, but it's ....
A compulsory B inevitable C bound D indecisive

6 Don't worry about me – I'm quite .... to sit here and wait for you to come back.
A ecstatic B delighted C joyful D content

7 When I was pregnant, I often got a sudden .... for tinned sardines.
A preference B craving C envy D greed

8 Thank you for thinking of us, but I'm afraid we're going to have to .... your kind invitation.
A decline B deny C condemn D reject

9 I've never seen anyone so .... to their job as Philip is.
A eager B keen C dedicated D interested

10 Why do you have such a .... with model railways?
A desire B fascination C love D preference

11 I wish you would stop wasting so much time on computer games and do something a little more ....
A welcome B enviable C feasible D worthwhile

12 Olivia has always .... to return to the country she was born in.
A favoured B yearned C urged D inclined

B Complete using the correct form of the words in the box.

adore • appeal • bear • delight • differentiate • fancy • favour • praise
resolve • strive • urge • welcome

1 Trisha suggested going to Indonesia, but the idea didn't really .... to me.
2 Young children seem to .... in showing things they've made at school to their parents.
3 Francis obviously .... his three children and will do anything for them.
4 I think I just .... getting a DVD and staying in tonight.
5 The firefighters .... Mrs Collins for her quick thinking when the fire broke out.
6 We would .... anyone who values personal freedom to vote against this proposal.
7 The Prime Minister .... the suggestion from the leader of the opposition and said that the government would consider it carefully.
8 I don't know how Liz can .... to work at that place.
9 It's important to have clear goals to .... towards.
10 Parents should try to treat all their children equally and not .... one over another.
11 It's quite easy to .... between margarine and butter because butter has a creamier taste.
12 The Board of Directors has .... to increase sales by at least 20% over the coming year.

C **Circle the correct word.**

1 Share your chocolate with your brother and don't be so **greedy / obsessed**.
2 Claudia's completely **greedy / obsessed** with Jack and doesn't talk about anything else these days.
3 I smiled in **anticipation / aspiration** as the waiter brought the desserts to our table.
4 Joining the Air Force has always been an **anticipation / aspiration** of mine.
5 These two day trips are included in the price of the tour, while the third is **arbitrary / optional** and costs 50 euros extra.
6 We don't have any information about the hotels, so we'll just have to make an **arbitrary / optional** decision.
7 If you look at Madeleine's house, it's obvious she has a lot of **liking / taste**.
8 I've always had a **liking / taste** for Naomi, ever since she moved in next door.
9 Life in this small town is really quite **mediocre / mundane** and I can't wait to move to the big city.
10 I thought her latest book was **mediocre / mundane** compared to the others, which I really enjoyed.
11 Eva got everything she had ever **envied / desired** when she married a rich businessman.
12 I **envy / desire** people who can just walk into a room full of strangers and feel at home.

Topic vocabulary: Leisure activities

D **If the word in bold is correct, put a tick. If it is incorrect, replace it with one of the words in bold from the other sentences.**

1 It should be quite a **sedentary** event, so don't dress up too much. ....
2 Without enough leisure time, people begin to suffer from stress and **solitude**. ....
3 I get 25 days a year **venue**, which is probably about average. ....
4 The new Arts Centre should be a great **outing** for concerts. ....
5 Last time I had a day off, we went on a family **lifestyle** to the beach. ....
6 Kids just wouldn't fit in with my **fatigue**, so I don't plan to have any at the moment. ....
7 I like to be quite active when I've got time off because my job is quite **absorbing**. ....
8 I find nothing so relaxing as reading a really **casual** book. ....
9 Work's so **tedious** that I can't wait to meet my friends in the evening. ....
10 The most relaxing things about getting away to the mountains are the peace and **leave**. ....

E **Complete using the correct form of the words in the box.**

exhilarating • idle • indulge • pastime • pursue • recreation • respite • socialise • trivial • unwind

The beginnings of modern leisure

During the first half of the nineteenth century, more and more people were employed in factories, working 14- or 15-hour days that left them little time for hobbies, sport or any other form of (**1**) .... and meant they weren't able to (**2**) .... with friends. A key breakthrough in Britain came with the Ten Hour Act (1847), which limited the working day and ensured that workers got some (**3**) .... from their jobs. People now had at least some time to (**4**) .... from work at the end of the day and (**5**) .... themselves.

Not everyone approved. Many members of the middle class hated the idea of the workers being (**6**) .... and believed that they would waste their time on (**7**) .... matters instead of (**8**) .... productive activities, such as education or going to church. The workers, however, found the new freedom (**9**) .... and threw themselves into new (**10**) .... with enthusiasm.

Phrasal verbs

F **Match to make sentences.**

1 I suppose I spend a lot of time just hanging ....
2 The best thing about camping is just messing ....
3 Since I'm self-employed, I'm able to take ....
4 Drew spends a lot of time seeking ....
5 Most of my leisure time seems to centre ....
6 The tour we're going on next week takes ....
7 I'm not one of those people who go in ....
8 With a bit of practice, I picked ....

A in some fantastic areas of natural beauty.
B for active pastimes; I much prefer reading.
C about with all the equipment all day.
D a whole month off and just travel.
E out with friends in the town centre.
F out good spots to go windsurfing.
G around fishing or my other main hobby, water polo.
H up a few songs after just a couple of lessons on the guitar.

G **Complete using a phrasal verb with a word from box A in the right form and a word from box B. You need to use one word from box B more than once.**

A get • go • grow • keep • laze • put • take • warm

B around • in • into • off • on • out • up

1 I don't have much money these days, so it's hard to .... my music collection.
2 If you're .... Amanda .... this weekend, why don't you go to the Popwave festival?
3 I didn't like this CD at first, but now I'm really .... it.
4 Carl and I just spent the whole day .... listening to music.
5 I'm still not sure about this track, but I think it's starting to .... me.
6 Before the concert started, we could hear the band .... off stage.
7 I used to love this band, but I've .... them since the lead singer left.
8 You can tell they've .... a lot of hard work when you listen to their latest album.

H **The phrasal verb *get into* has a meaning connected to the idea of becoming involved in an activity or situation. Tick the sentences where the phrasal verb has a meaning connected to a similar idea.**

1 I love watching TV, but it does **bite into** my free time. ....
2 Jordan was relieved when she finally **broke into** the music business. ....
3 When you're flying a model aeroplane, the important thing is not to **crash into** anything! ....
4 The council have **entered into** discussions on building a new sports centre in town. ....
5 To access the online games network, **key** your username and password **into** the box below. ....
6 Think carefully before you **rush into** such a long-term agreement. ....
7 Kelly **launched into** a detailed account of her plans for the summer. ....
8 Pete is always taking up new hobbies and he really **throws** himself **into** them. ....

Phrases, patterns and collocations

I **One word in each sentence is incorrect. Underline the incorrect word and write the correct word.**

1 It's the boss's birthday next Wednesday, and there's a rumour we might be taken the day off. ....
2 I know you'd rather I took up a sport, but it's not your choice to do. ....
3 Some of the courses are compulsory, so we can't just pick and select whatever we like. ....

4 If you won't give me a pay rise, then I shall have to think my options. ....
5 The council said they had no option apart to close the sports centre. ....
6 Angela travels a lot and is only very eager to experience new places. ....
7 Jake's been practising as mad to impress the others in the band. ....
8 I can't believe the judge just let the accused be free like that. ....
9 I've decided in favour for joining the local swimming team. ....
10 You should plan things more carefully and not just act with impulse all the time. ....

J **Circle the correct word.**

The future of leisure

There is no doubt technology and shorter working hours have (**1**) **got / let / set** people free to enjoy their leisure time more than ever before. Many people (**2**) **do / have / make** the leisure to pursue hobbies and other activities they (**3**) **like / prefer / want** to the work routine. What leisure activities will people (**4**) **choose / decide / opt** for in the future?

We can expect to see increased personal (**5**) **choice / decision / option**. The range of leisure (**6**) **actions / hobbies / pursuits** will expand and people will have the (**7**) **decision / option / preference** of following up an interest in almost any activity. Whether at home or at (**8**) **enjoyment / leisure / relaxation** centres, there will be an ever-increasing need to provide for people at (**9**) **play / recreation / rest**. If the future is not one of increased leisure, then it won't be for (**10**) **need / desire / want** of demand.

K **For each question, write one word which can be used in all three sentences.**

1 To our .... , the boss said that we could have an extra day off work.
Martin always takes great .... in talking to anyone about fishing.
When Erin finally started to move downhill on the skis for the first time, she laughed in ....

2 It's important that people feel they can exercise .... over their leisure activities.
Your fee is so late that I'm afraid we have no .... but to cancel your membership.
The college offers a wide .... of evening and weekend classes.

3 The local council should start a building programme to meet the .... for leisure facilities.
The Mayor said he had no .... of advice from people who didn't understand the situation.
This area is badly in .... of financial investment.

4 I had dried frog when I was in Korea, and I would describe the .... as unforgettable.
I thought that what you said to Erica was in very bad ....
You might not like sushi the first time you try it – it's a bit of an acquired ....

5 We're quite .... for our son to go to Cambridge University when he finishes school.
I enjoy team sports, like basketball and volleyball, and I'm especially .... on football.
My parents have always taken a .... interest in my hobbies.

6 I was a bit of a loner when I was younger and I spent a lot of time .... by myself.
The government has been accused of .... for time because it doesn't know what to do.
Liam never learnt to read music, but he's capable of .... practically anything by ear.

7 The headmaster was full of .... for the school cricket team, who had won six matches in a row.
The police officers involved deserve .... for their bravery in such a difficult situation.
If I read one more newspaper editorial in .... of the Prime Minister I shall scream.

8 When we finally made it out of the forest, we decided to .... before moving on.
Just .... your bike against the gate and come inside.
You can .... assured that I will not stop until I find the person who damaged the school gym.

Idioms

L **Complete using the words in the box.**

batteries • end • feet • hair • heart • party • potato • spice • time • whim

1 'Oh! I'm exhausted! I've been doing housework all day.'
'Come and put your .... up for five minutes and I'll make a cup of tea.'

2 'Do you fancy going to that new jazz club in town?'
'Yes, let's go and let our .... down a bit, shall we?'

3 'Jamie is so much fun!'
'Yes, he really is the life and soul of the ....'

4 'You're not changing jobs again already, are you?'
'Well, they do say that variety is the .... of life.'

5 'Roger wasn't pleased to get rejected by the team, was he?'
'No. He really had his .... set on playing for them.'

6 'You look a bit bored.'
'Well, I've been at a loose .... since I finished the book I was reading.'

7 'You weren't planning to go to Singapore on holiday, were you?'
'No. I got to the travel agent's and just decided to go there on a ....'

8 'I can't believe you built the Eiffel Tower out of matchsticks!'
'I guess I must have had a lot of .... on my hands.'

9 'Does Jenny ever move from in front of the TV?'
'I think she's in danger of becoming a bit of a couch ....'

10 'You've got a great suntan!'
'I went away for a few days to recharge my ....'

Word formation

M **Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals.**

1 The cricket ground and the theatre make this a very .... area to live in. **DESIRE**

2 My family have always gone in for traditional country .... , such as hunting, shooting and fishing. **PURSUE**

3 What I like about Stravinsky's music is the .... complexity, which has a powerful effect on the listener. **RHYTHM**

4 After ten matches, we had the .... record of played ten, won none, lost ten. **ENVY**

5 I know you'd rather take your holiday in August, but when the boss is offering you extra days off, I don't think you can afford to be so .... **CHOOSE**

6 You don't need to be quite so .... in your work, and you might find you enjoy it more if you take a little time off. **ZEAL**

7 You don't have time to do all the sports you'd like to, so you're going to have to be a bit .... **SELECT**

8 After dinner, we went for a .... stroll along the seafront. **LEISURE**

9 We're only two weeks into the school holidays and already my children are .... **REST**

10 I don't mind Annabel spending time on her computer, but playing this latest game has become almost an .... **OBSESS**

N **Write a word formed from the words in the box in each gap.**

available • do • motive • play • prefer • relax • satisfy • sport • stimulate • tend

Get Active with Marlston Council

As a local resident, you may already be aware of Marlston Council's '*Get Active*' campaign. We'd like to take this opportunity to remind you of the campaign and to give you some simple tips to help you and your family get active.

- ∗ It's impossible to (**1**) .... the importance of getting active as a family. We all have a (**2**) .... to start off with good intentions and then lose our (**3**) .... Playing and exercising together as a family can help you through those moments when you are (**4**) .... with your progress.
- ∗ Don't (**5**) .... it. Start with gentle exercise and work up to something more strenuous. Whatever your (**6**) .... activity, make sure that you're all comfortable doing it at that level. If necessary, switch to a more (**7**) .... activity until you're all in better shape.
- ∗ Children these days get a lot of (**8**) .... from the fast-moving worlds of television, the Internet and computer games. Make sure you find an activity that they'll find fun. Contact Marlston Council to find out about the (**9**) .... of facilities where you live.
- ∗ Playing a sport together will teach your children about fair play, (**10**) .... and working with others. But remember that it has to be fun or they'll soon lose interest.

• •

For further information, contact Marlston Council and ask to speak to someone from the '*Get Active*' campaign.

O **Some verbs form nouns using -*ence*, as in *preference*. Some form nouns using -*ance*. Put nouns formed from the following words in the correct category.**

accept
allow
annoy
appear
assist
attend
avoid
clear
correspond
depend
differ
disturb
endure
exist
guide
ignore
inherit
insist
insure
interfere
occur
perform
persist
reassure
refer
rely
resemble
resist
tolerate
utter

-ance	*-ence*

P **Complete the sentences using words formed in exercise O.**

1 Do you think you could help me? I'm having real problems with this and I think I need some ....
2 There's such a close .... between Mikey and his father, don't you think?
3 I use the Internet quite a bit now for looking up information and I don't really use the .... books on my shelves.
4 The head teacher was walking past the classroom door when she heard a loud .... coming from inside.
5 You need to be really fit to be able to complete an .... race like the marathon.
6 You might feel like giving up, but keep practising and you'll be amazed at what a little .... can achieve.
7 This football team has a proud tradition and has been in .... since 1890.
8 There was a lot of .... from local people to the government's plans to knock down the stadium.

REVIEW 13 Units 25 and 26

A Write one word in each gap.

Teenagers and television

Until very recently, teenagers have been hooked on television. Parents have worried that their children are becoming fat, lazy (**1**) .... potatoes, and teenagers seem to have preferred watching TV (**2**) .... almost any other activity in the home. Except perhaps sleeping. But no more! According to the latest statistics, teenagers have (**3**) .... off TV and are turning off in droves. Given the choice (**4**) .... TV and the internet, it's clear what most teens prefer. The internet (**5**) .... an interactive, social need that TV doesn't. Teenagers at a loose (**6**) .... in their bedrooms can hang (**7**) .... with their mates in cyberspace. As websites such as MySpace have (**8**) .... off, teenagers have been only (**9**) .... eager to join in their millions and spend hours a day – and night – online. We're witnessing the birth of the generation of the 'keyboard potato', for (**10**) .... of a better expression.

(1 mark per answer)

B Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

11 'I've decided I really want to go on a cruise round the Med this summer,' said Molly. **heart**
Molly says .... on a cruise round the Med this summer.

12 He told us that getting a later plane was our only option. **but**
'You .... a later plane,' he said.

13 'Does Tony follow current affairs closely?' asked Susie. **interest**
Susie asked me .... current affairs.

14 'I'm going to enjoy myself now the exams are over,' said Heidi. **hair**
Heidi said she .... now the exams were over.

15 As the plane finally stopped on the runway, it was immediately surrounded by fire engines. **rest**
As the plane finally .... on the runway, it was immediately surrounded by fire engines.

16 Pete said that Josh doesn't usually tell lies. **like**
'It .... lies,' said Pete.

17 'Let's not make any plans and just see what happens,' said Dawn. **ear**
Dawn suggested .... and just seeing what happened.

18 I decided right there and then to buy it and now I really regret it! **whim**
I .... and now I really regret it!

(2 marks per answer)

C Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals.

19 Alfie does have a .... to get upset if he loses. **TEND**

20 I don't see why someone should be given .... treatment at an airport just because they're famous. **PREFER**

21 I was given the .... task of telling the team that funding had been withdrawn from the project. **ENVY**

22 The Minister attempted to .... the dispute, saying it was just a minor disagreement. **PLAY**

23 I hate going clothes shopping with Carlo – he's so .... that he takes hours to find anything he likes. **CHOICE**

24 I'm afraid I left the chicken in the oven a bit long so it's a little .... **DO**

25 I wouldn't describe myself as a .... person, but I do enjoy the occasional game of golf. **SPORT**

26 A .... learner is less likely to retain the content of the lesson than one who is enthusiastic about his or her learning. **MOTIVE**

(1 mark per answer)

D Complete using the words in the box in the correct form. You will not need one of the words.

centre • get • go • grow • mess • pick • seek • take • warm

27 We've never really .... in for camping holidays, have we Susan?

28 The plot .... around a group of pensioners in a retirement home.

29 See you later! Don't .... into any trouble, will you?

30 I didn't like this song at first but it's really .... on me recently.

31 Could you .... me up from school at half past five today?

32 The first volume of her autobiography .... in her childhood and her arrival in Hollywood.

33 We'll need ten minutes or so to .... up before the game.

34 Stop .... about!

(1 mark per answer)

E Choose the correct answer.

35 I get so stressed at work it's hard sometimes to .... in the evenings.
A unwind
B undo
C undergo
D untie

36 How dare you accuse me .... !
A to cheat
B cheating
C that I cheat
D of cheating

37 You know what they .... : variety is the spice of life!
A say
B tell
C speak
D state

38 The interviewer asked .... the question.
A for him answering 12 times
B that he answer 12 times
C him 12 times to answer
D 12 times his answering

39 Was it always an .... of yours to play for France?
A urge
B adoration
C anticipation
D aspiration

40 Jon asked Todd if .... arrested!
A he was ever
B was he ever
C he had ever been
D had he ever been

41 The play wasn't very good but it wasn't very bad either. .... , I'd say.
A Medium
B Mediocre
C Metric
D Mellow

42 Going down white-water rapids in a canoe must be extremely .... ! Does your heart start beating really fast?
A trivial
B mundane
C sedentary
D exhilarating

(1 mark per answer)

Total mark: ..../50

Progress Test 2: Units 13-26

A Use the word given in capitals to form a word that fits in the space.

The RNLI

The RNLI (Royal National Lifeboat Institution) is an organisation (**1**) .... (**DEPEND**) of government control, dedicated to saving lives at sea. The RNLI has an active fleet of several hundred lifeboats around the length and (**2**) .... (**BROAD**) of Britain's coastline.

Since it was founded in 1824, the RNLI has had an extremely (**3**) .... (**SIGNIFY**) impact on maritime safety, saving over 130,000 lives.

Because the RNLI is not funded by the government, it relies on the (**4**) .... (**GOOD**) of the public to cover its costs, its income coming from membership fees and (**5**) .... (**CHARITY**) donations. Some people have raised (**6**) .... (**OBJECT**) to this, saying that such an (**7**) .... (**VALUE**) service should be government-funded.

The lifeboat crews are almost all volunteers. They are generally (**8**) .... (**KNOW**) by the British people as being (**9**) .... (**EXAMPLE**) in their (**10**) .... (**SELF**), frequently putting their lives at risk to save others.

(1 mark per answer)

B Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

11 'I haven't made any firm decisions yet,' said Laurence. **open**
Laurence said he .... at that time.

12 Paul and Pete share so many similar interests. **common**
Paul .... Pete.

13 It would be in your interest to take an earlier train on Sunday. **off**
You would .... an earlier train on Sunday.

14 I've become extremely good at missing the rush hour over the last few weeks. **fine**
I've got missing the rush hour .... over the last few weeks.

15 Although Rudy really didn't want to play cricket on Sunday, he agreed in the end. **dead**
Despite .... cricket on Sunday, Rudy agreed in the end.

16 Karen should be made responsible for dealing with customer complaints. **charge**
It's high time Karen .... dealing with customer complaints.

17 My parents are furious with me for getting a tattoo and so have grounded me. **arms**
My parents, ... getting a tattoo, have grounded me.

18 'I don't think we're going to survive, David,' I said, but of course we did. **tale**
I told David I thought we .... , but of course we did.

19 I'd prefer to come out on top in the end, though! **laugh**
I'd rather .... in the end, though!

20 I wish coffee didn't affect me. **effect**
If .... me.

(2 marks per answer)

C Write one word in each gap.

Krakatoa

Volcanic eruption has been a constant threat to our natural environment for millions of years, but seldom in recent times (**21**) .... a volcano erupted with the ferocity of Krakatoa.

Krakatoa, (**22**) .... is a volcanic island group in Indonesia, erupted on 27th August 1883. (**23**) .... only was the explosion (**24**) .... loud that it was heard as far away (more than 3,000 km) as Perth in Australia, but it is also recognised as (**25**) .... the loudest sound (**26**) .... recorded.

Tens of thousands of people in the region were killed, many (**27**) .... in the enormous tsunamis which the eruption produced – tsunamis which eventually reached South Africa and the English Channel.

The explosion also had a major effect on the (**28**) .... world's weather system. The volcanic dust in the atmosphere reduced the (**29**) .... of sunlight reaching the earth's surface, reducing global temperatures by more than one degree centigrade. Only after five years had passed (**30**) .... global temperatures begin to return to normal.

(1 mark per answer)

D For each question, write one word which can be used in all three sentences.

31 He's actually quite a .... name in the world of bathroom fittings.
It was very .... of you to admit you were wrong.
There's no need to make such a .... thing out of this; it's not that important.

32 Ted's got a bit of a .... temper so don't say anything to upset him.
Why do I always seem to draw the .... straw?
We're running .... of sugar again.

33 I'll be with you in a .... of days.
That's not a fact, it's a .... of opinion.
No .... how much you try, you'll never get me to change my mind.

34 You'd better get your .... together and start learning your lines.
They were caught in the .... of handing over the drugs.
Angie was just putting on an .... – she wasn't really upset.

35 We're going to be in .... trouble if anyone catches us.
There was .... silence for a second, then everyone started laughing.
Turn left at the corner, and the cathedral's .... ahead.

36 The suffering of those poor innocent people just makes me .... at heart.
I'm .... and tired of her constant criticisms.
Where have you been? We've been worried .... !

37 I hope the judge makes an .... of him and throws him in jail.
Could you give me a more specific .... ?
As a teacher, you have to set an .... to the children.

38 Am I .... in thinking you've just moved to Basingstoke?
You've got no .... to answer me back like that.
Do animals have the concept of .... and wrong?

39 Simon, this is Angela, my .... half.
Let's play draughts or, ... yet, chess.
Don't you think you had .... think about this a bit more carefully?

40 You're cutting it .... , aren't you? The meeting's just about to start.
Make sure you read the .... print before you sign.
There's a .... line between good business practice and corruption.

(1 mark per answer)

E Choose the correct answer.

41 My jeans .... in the wash and they're too small for me now.
A reduced C shrank
B deteriorated D diminished

42 Would you like to arrange to pay by direct .... ?
A debt C deposit
B debit D dividend

43 I threw some biscuit .... on the ground and a whole load of pigeons swooped down and started eating them.
A grains C flakes
B specks D crumbs

44 The insects looked and tasted so horrible, I .... with disgust as I tried to force them down.
A gloated C grimaced
B grinned D chuckled

45 Have you been .... against tetanus in the last ten years?
A prescribed C injected
B diagnosed D inoculated

46 There's no way the police will be able to .... this law.
A enforce C dominate
B administer D reign

47 The union is seriously considering taking industrial ....
A activity C contract
B action D reactor

48 Has Britain's influence in the world .... since the Second World War?
A decayed C declined
B worsened D devastated

49 Da Vinci's *Mona Lisa* is .... ; if it was destroyed no amount of money could ever replace it.
A priceless C valueless
B worthless D invaluable

50 I wouldn't call her a close friend. She's more of a/an .... really.
A ancestor C acquaintance
B successor D peer

(1 mark per answer)

F Complete using the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

51 It's high time .... (**we / get**) the house painted.
52 .... (**I / listen**) to you from the start, I wouldn't be in this mess now.
53 I do wish .... (**you / tell**) Jim, but you have so it's too late now, isn't it?
54 .... (**study**) English and American literature at university for three years, she went on to a highly successful career in journalism.
55 Frank told me .... (**he / go**) to the aquarium several times that year already, so didn't really want to go again.
56 If .... (**I / drive**) any faster, I'd be breaking the speed limit!
57 It's time for .... (**you / do**) your homework, young man.
58 Would you sooner .... (**I / invite**) Bill and Trisha round, or don't you mind if they come?
59 .... (**you / be**) to hear tomorrow that you've been offered the job, how would you react?
60 .... (**make**) to wait for over an hour to see a customer services officer put me in an extremely bad mood.

(1 mark per answer)

G Write one word in each gap.

61 I hear Lizzie's taken .... asking people to call her Elizabeth from now on.
62 He may have just lost the leadership election, but I wouldn't write .... his political career just yet.
63 We need to spread .... in a long line and search the whole field thoroughly.
64 The initial proposals were watered .... by the supervising committee to make them more acceptable to the board of directors.
65 I heard about your father's illness. He is going to pull .... , isn't he?
66 You mustn't let the bigger kids push you .... !
67 I don't think Doug's eating properly. He looks like he's wasting ....
68 It didn't take me long to cotton .... to the fact that Gareth was rather unpunctual.
69 How do you intend to drum .... support for this?
70 I give .... ! Tell me the answer.

(1 mark per answer)

H Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals.

71 Why do they put so many .... in processed food? **ADD**
72 If we .... the photo, you'll see his face in much more detail. **LARGE**
73 Don't you think it's a bit early to .... blame? **PORTION**
74 Your comments may well have done .... damage to management-union relations. **REPAIR**
75 This flat's a lot more .... than the others we've seen. **SPACE**
76 The rumours are completely .... and I would urge everyone not to believe them. **SUBSTANCE**
77 Your credit card bill provides a record of all financial .... carried out in the previous month. **ACT**
78 Although we feel that the earth is stationary, in fact this is .... We're moving through space, and spinning, all the time. **ILLUSION**
79 Too many families in this country still suffer from financial .... **HARD**
80 Being the hardest natural substance, diamond is practically .... **DESTROY**

(1 mark per answer)

I Each of the words in bold is in the wrong sentence. Rewrite them correctly.

81 I don't mind whether we go out or stay in. It's six of one and half a **blot** of the other, really. ....
82 That new office block really is a **face** on the landscape, isn't it? ....
83 What's it like living right in the middle of the commuter **strings**? ....
84 I hope Dad doesn't fly off the **pride** when I tell him I crashed the car. ....
85 I found it hard to keep a straight **tape** when Mr Taylor was telling us off. ....
86 If I pull a few **dozen**, I don't think you'll have any problems getting planning permission. ....
87 We were hoping to open next Thursday, but we've been delayed by all the red **wavelength**. ....
88 This hotel really is the last **handle** in luxury. ....
89 This trophy here definitely takes **word** of place in my collection. ....
90 I'm glad we're on the same **belt** over this; it would be awful if we disagreed. ....

(1 mark per answer)

J Complete using the words in the box in the correct form. There is one word you will not need.

board • break • check • club • crack • hit • paper • put • single • summon • wear

91 .... down on illegal immigration is this government's number one priority.

92 The report completely .... over the problem of the shortage of nurses; it just doesn't deal with it at all.

93 Shopkeepers in the town centre have .... up windows in anticipation of rioting during the demonstration.

94 We're having a solar-panelled water-heating system .... in next week.

95 The Prime Minister .... back at critics accusing her of being soft on crime.

96 Three firefighters have been .... out for bravery above and beyond the call of duty.

97 I'm thinking of .... out that new jazz club tonight. Do you want to come along?

98 Dad was completely against me getting my ears pierced but I .... him down in the end.

99 Mrs Thompson's leaving at the end of term. Shall we .... together and get her a leaving present?

100 I don't know how I'm going to .... up the courage to tell George he can't stay here after all.

(1 mark per answer)

K Write one word in each gap.

Jenny: Hi Penny! Long time no (**101**) .... !

Penny: Hi Jen! Yeah, it has been a long time, hasn't it? I haven't had much free time recently. I've got such a lot (**102**) .... at work at the moment.

Jenny: Getting on (**103**) .... of you, is it?

Penny: That's about the (**104**) .... of it, yes. The truth is I'm my own (**105**) .... enemy. I take on far too many projects for my own good. I'm going to have to cut back in the very (**106**) .... future, otherwise I'll go mad!

Jenny: Well, as a (**107**) .... of fact, I'm glad I ran into you. Sharon and I are having a little get-together on Friday night. Do feel (**108**) .... to come along. We'd love to see you.

Penny: Thanks! I'll certainly (**109**) .... my best.

Jenny: You're in for a (**110**) .... if you do make it. Sharon's doing her wonderful lamb curry!

Penny: Lovely!

(1 mark per answer)

L Match a word from the box with each phrase. You will not need one of the words.

bully • consultant • curator • dependant • descendant • extrovert • minister
monarch • predecessor • sibling • spouse

111 a specialising doctor ....
112 someone who is cruel to people smaller or weaker than they are ....
113 someone who relies on you for financial support ....
114 a husband or wife ....
115 someone who did your job before you ....
116 someone who looks after objects in a museum ....
117 a relative of someone from a previous generation ....
118 someone who is lively in social situations ....
119 a brother or sister ....
120 a king or queen ....

(1 mark per answer)

M Circle the correct word.

121 I want you to give this the **tallest / highest** priority.
122 At long **last / end**, a washing powder that really does clean whiter than white.
123 Good hairdressers are a bit thin on the **land / ground** round here.
124 Why don't you **table / chair** a proposal at the next meeting?
125 Cleaner air would really improve our **quality / standard** of life.
126 It's just a **stomach / gut** reaction but I'd say he's lying.
127 The King in his graciousness will deign to **consent / grant** your request, Bolitho.
128 Teenagers who start smoking often do so as a result of peer **pressure / force**.
129 That's a **model / brand** new Rolls Royce!
130 The typical **nuclear / atomic** family consists of two parents and two children.

(1 mark per answer)

N Write one word in each gap.

131 Tony doesn't really fancy going out tonight and .... do I, to be honest.
132 If you haven't got .... money to buy ice creams as well as chocolate, just get the chocolate.
133 If .... the flight got in at a reasonable time.
134 .... as we wanted to take the flat, we just couldn't arrange a mortgage in time.
135 Even .... you do feel better tomorrow, it's probably better if you don't go to school.
136 The Prime Minister said that we should all carry on as normal .... the increased risk of attack.
137 The film is .... near as good as the book.
138 I do find .... hard to believe that it will be possible one day to travel through time.
139 You're talking as .... you understood what Sean's going through. You don't, you know!
140 .... did we realise that we were next on the list.

(1 mark per answer)

Total mark: ..../150

Topic vocabulary database

Unit 2

Thinking

assess (v) to carefully consider a situation, person or problem in order to make a judgment: *We tried to assess his suitability for the job.*

assess (v) to calculate what something costs or is worth: *Our agent will assess the value of your property.*

assume (v) to believe that something is true, even though no one has told you or even though you have no proof: *Everyone accepted she was telling the truth, although in fact this was quite a lot to assume.*

baffle (v) if a problem, someone's behaviour, etc baffles you, you cannot understand it or solve it: *Detectives remain baffled by these murders.*

biased (adj) preferring one person, thing or idea to another in a way that is unfair: *It was a biased report.*

concentrate (v) to give all your attention to the thing you are doing: *I was sleeping badly and finding it hard to concentrate.*

consider (v) to think about something carefully before making a decision or developing an opinion: *She paused and considered for a moment.*

consider (v) to have a particular opinion about someone or something: *They consider it inevitable that some jobs will be lost.*

contemplate (v) to consider doing something in the future: *I'm contemplating retirement next year.*

contemplate (v) to think very carefully about something for a long time: *I haven't got time to sit around contemplating the meaning of life.*

cynical (adj) someone who is cynical believes that people care only about themselves and are not sincere or honest, or expects things not to be successful or useful: *I know that some of you are very cynical about the proposals.*

deduce (v) to know something as a result of considering the information or evidence that you have: *Finding fossils far inland, he deduced that the area had once been covered by water.*

deliberate (v) to think about or discuss something very carefully, especially before you make an important decision: *The judges deliberated for an hour before choosing the winner.*

dilemma (n) a situation in which you have to make a difficult decision: *I'm in a dilemma over whether to tell him or not.*

discriminate (v) to treat someone unfairly because of their religion, race or other personal features: *Employers are not allowed to discriminate on the basis of gender.*

discriminate (v) to recognise the difference between things: *Long-range missile attacks simply cannot discriminate between military and civilian targets.*

dubious (adj) not completely good, safe or honest: *The story seemed a bit dubious to me.*

dubious (adj) not sure about the truth or quality of something, or whether you should do something: *I'm very dubious about his ability to do the job.*

estimate (n) an amount that you guess or calculate using the information available: *According to official estimates, over 25% of carbon emissions come from the United States.*

estimate (n) a statement telling a customer how much money you will charge if they employ you to do a particular piece of work: *The committee are currently getting estimates for repairs to the stonework.*

estimate (v) to say what you think an amount or value will be, either by guessing or by using available information to calculate it: *It's difficult to estimate the cost of making your house safe.*

faith (n) strong belief in or trust of someone or something: *I'm delighted to know you have such faith in me.*

gather (v) to believe that something is true, although no one has directly told you about it: *You're new here, I gather.*

genius (n) someone who is much more intelligent or skilful than other people: *She was a mathematical genius.*

genius (n) a very high level of skill or ability: *Baking allows you to show your creative genius.*

grasp (v) to understand something: *He was finding it difficult to grasp the rules of the game.*

guesswork (n) the process of trying to find the answer to something by guessing, or the answer found by using this method: *It was a theory based on pure guesswork.*

hunch (n) a feeling that something is true or will happen, although you do not know any definite facts about it: *I've got a hunch there'll be an election soon.*

ideology (n) a system of ideas and principles on which a political or economic theory is based: *State control is a fundamental aspect of Marxist ideology.*

ingenious (adj) an ingenious plan, piece of equipment, etc uses new and clever ideas: *This is an ingenious device for opening bottles.*

inspiration (n) a sudden feeling of enthusiasm or a new idea that helps you to do or create something: *Dreams are a rich source of inspiration for some writers.*

intuition (n) an ability to know or understand something through your feelings, rather than by considering facts or evidence: *Archaeologists often use their intuition to decide where to dig.*

justify (v) to show that there is a good reason for something, especially something that other people think is wrong: *You'll be expected to justify your actions.*

naïve (adj) a naïve person lacks experience of life and tends to trust other people and believe things too easily: *I was a naïve 17-year-old at the time.*

notion (n) an idea or understanding of something: *I haven't the faintest notion what you're talking about.*

optimistic (adj) someone who is optimistic is hopeful about the future and tends to expect that good things will happen: *She said that she was optimistic about the future of the company.*

optimistic (adj) based on beliefs that are too confident: *That's a very optimistic assessment of the overall situation.*

paradox (n) a person, thing or situation that is strange because they have features or qualities that do not normally exist together: *We get this apparent paradox of people migrating to an area that has very high unemployment.*

pessimistic (adj) someone who is pessimistic is not hopeful about the future and tends to expect that bad things will happen: *She said that she was pessimistic about the future of the company.*

pessimistic (adj) thinking that the worst thing will happen in every situation: *That's a very pessimistic assessment of the overall situation.*

plausible (adj) likely to be true, honest or suitable: *A bomb was the only plausible explanation for the crash.*

ponder (v) to think carefully about something for a long time before reaching a decision: *I'm still pondering whether to tell Janine or not.*

prejudiced (adj) someone who is prejudiced has an unreasonable opinion or feeling about someone or something, especially hatred or fear of a particular group of people: *Rafferty's reporting was clearly biased and prejudiced against the homeless.*

presume (v) to think something is true because it is likely, although you cannot be certain: *I presume you've already ordered lunch.*

query (n) a question that you ask because you want information or because you are not certain about something: *We have a number of queries regarding delivery.*

query (v) to ask a question about something because you have doubts about it: *It is not for us to query his decisions.*

query (v) to ask something: *'Who would do such a thing?' he queried.*

reckon (v) to believe that something is true: *I reckon there's something wrong with him.*

reflect (v) to think about something carefully and seriously: *Josie reflected on how easily she could have been killed.*

sceptical/skeptical (adj) having doubts about something that other people think is true or right: *Harrison approved the plan, but Riley remained sceptical.*

speculate (v) to consider or discuss why something has happened: *We can only speculate on the reasons for his sudden resignation.*

suppose (v) to believe that something is probably true, based on your experience, your knowledge and any other information that you have: *She was about 35, Dexter supposed.*

Learning

academic (adj) relating to education, especially education in colleges and universities: *The book brings together several academic subjects.*

academic (adj) good at learning things by studying: *She's certainly bright, but she's not very academic.*

academic (adj) not relating to a real situation, and therefore not relevant: *Given the lack of funding, any discussion of future plans was somewhat academic.*

academic (n) someone who teaches or does research at a college or university: *The meeting was chaired by a leading Japanese academic.*

conscientious (adj) working hard and being careful to do things well: *Simon is a very conscientious worker.*

cram (v) to study hard in order to learn a lot in a short time, especially for an examination: *My exams are in two weeks, so I'm cramming at the moment.*

curriculum (n) the subjects that students study at a particular school or college: *Our mathematics curriculum is much broader now.*

distance learning (n phr) a system in which students work at home with the help of television and radio broadcasts and send work to their teachers by post or e-mail: *Are you doing the course by distance learning?*

graduate (n) someone who has a degree from a university: *There aren't many careers for history graduates.*

graduate (v) to complete your studies at a university or college, usually by getting a degree: *He graduated from Yale University in 1936.*

ignorant (adj) not knowing something that you should know or need to know: *I was ignorant of the terms used in business.*

inattentive (adj) not giving much attention to someone or something: *I hate speaking in front of an inattentive audience.*

intellectual (adj) relating to the ability to think in an intelligent way and to understand things, especially difficult or complicated ideas and subjects: *Students were asked which task represented the greatest intellectual challenge.*

intellectual (adj) well educated and interested in art, science, literature, etc at an advanced level: *Though not intellectual, my mother was highly intelligent.*

intellectual (n) someone who is well educated and interested in art, science, literature, etc at an advanced level: *Though not an intellectual, my mother was highly intelligent.*

intelligent (adj) good at thinking clearly and quickly, at understanding difficult ideas and subjects, and at gaining and using knowledge: *Surely an intelligent person like you can deal with this?*

intensive (adj) involving a lot of teaching or training in a short time: *It's an intensive language course for beginners.*

knowledgeable (adj) knowing a lot about many different subjects or about one particular subject: *He's extremely knowledgeable about business and finance.*

lecture (n) a talk to a group of people about a particular subject, especially at a college or university: *The course will be taught through a series of lectures and seminars.*

lecture (v) to give a lecture or a series of lectures: *She lectures on Greek Literature at the Sorbonne.*

mock exam (n phr) an examination you take for practice before an important examination: *We've got our mock GCSE exams next month.*

plagiarise (v) to take someone else's work, ideas or words, and use them as if they were your own: *They accused her of plagiarising her speech.*

self-study (n) work that you do without the help of a teacher: *I have to do a lot of self-study on this course.*

seminar (n) a class at a college or university in which a small group of students discusses a subject with a teacher: *We had a very interesting seminar on climate change.*

special needs (n phr) the particular needs of people who are physically or mentally disabled: *If a student has special needs, he or she will be offered additional classes.*

tuition (n) the work that a teacher does when they teach a particular subject, especially to one person or a small group: *He's been getting private tuition in French.*

tutorial (n) a lesson in which a small group of students discuss a subject with a tutor, especially at a university or college: *We had a very interesting tutorial on climate change.*

Unit 4

Change

adapt (v) to change your ideas or behaviour so that you can deal with a new situation: *A successful business is one that adapts to changing situations.*

adjust (v) to change something slightly in order to make it better, more accurate or more effective: *You can adjust the volume using this control here.*

alternate (v) if one thing alternates with another, it happens after it and keeps being repeated: *You go first this game, and then we'll alternate.*

alternate (adj) happening on one day, week, etc, but not on the day, week, etc that immediately follows: *We usually go to visit my grandma on alternate Sundays.*

alternative (n) something that you can choose instead of something else: *Can you suggest an alternative?*

alternative (adj) different from something else and able to be used instead of it: *We're going to have to find an alternative route.*

amend (v) to make changes to a document, law, agreement, etc, especially in order to improve it: *Could you amend the report before you send it?*

conservative (adj) not willing to accept much change, especially in the traditional values of society: *I grew up in a village where most of the people were quite conservative.*

convert (v) to change from one system, use or method to another, or to make something do this: *We're converting to a new computer system at work, so it's chaos at the moment.*

convert (v) to change your beliefs, especially your religious beliefs, or to persuade someone to do this: *I was rather shocked when my dad converted to Islam.*

convert (n) someone who has changed their beliefs in an important way: *I didn't use to like Fiat cars, but now I've become a convert.*

decay (v) to be gradually destroyed as a result of a natural process of change, or to destroy something in this way: *When leaves decay, chemicals are returned to the soil.*

decay (n) the gradual destruction of something as a result of a natural process of change: *Too much sugar in our diets is a major cause of tooth decay.*

deteriorate (v) to become worse: *The situation in the country has deteriorated and tourists are advised not to go there.*

distort (v) to change something such as information so that it is no longer true or accurate: *Journalists often distort statistics in order to tell a good story.*

dynamic (adj) continuously changing, growing or developing: *The world of electronics is a very dynamic area.*

endure (v) to suffer something unpleasant or difficult in a patient way over a long period: *I don't know how people endure the conditions in prison.*

endure (v) to last for a long time: *Shakespeare's works have endured for over 400 years.*

evolve (v) when a type of plant or animal evolves, its physical form changes over a long period of time: *Do you think people will eventually evolve into some kind of superhuman?*

evolve (v) to gradually change and develop over a period of time: *As the computer industry has evolved, everything has got faster and cheaper.*

influence (v) to affect the way someone thinks or behaves or affect the way something happens: *Don't let yourself be influenced by what she says.*

influence (n) the effect that a person or thing has on someone's decisions, opinions or behaviour or on the way something happens: *Picasso has had an enormous influence on many painters.*

innovation (n) a new idea, method, piece of equipment, etc: *This innovation will mean cheap energy for everyone.*

innovative (adj) new, original and advanced: *His first album was innovative, but I've been disappointed by the others.*

last (v) to continue existing or happening for or until a particular time: *The flight lasts five hours.*

maintain (v) to make something stay the same: *I find it hard to maintain my weight.*

mature (v) to start behaving like an adult and become more sensible as you get older: *As you mature, you'll see that things are much more complicated.*

mature (adj) behaving in the sensible way that you would expect an adult to behave: *Why can't you be a bit more mature and stop being so childish?*

modify (v) to change something slightly, especially in order to improve it or to make it less extreme: *We've modified the design to solve the problem.*

novel (adj) new or unusual: *A TV that receives text messages is quite a novel idea.*

persist (v) to continue to do or say something in a determined way: *You'll get yourself into trouble if you persist in behaving in this way.*

potential (n) the possibility to develop or achieve something in the future: *Ed's got a lot of potential as an athlete.*

potential (adj) possible or likely in the future: *I think the book's a potential bestseller.*

progress (v) to continue to develop or move forward: *Your English has really progressed this term.*

progress (n) the process of developing or improving: *I'm not sure that all this technological progress is necessarily a good thing.*

radical (adj) a radical change or way of doing something is new and very different from the usual way: *That's quite a radical suggestion.*

refine (v) to make some changes to something in order to improve it: *You need to refine your argument to make it clearer.*

reform (v) to improve a situation by correcting things that are wrong or unfair, or make a system work more effectively: *The government is planning to reform the health system.*

reform (n) a change intended to correct a situation that is wrong or unfair or make a system work more effectively: *These reforms don't go far enough, in my opinion.*

remain (v) to continue to be in a particular situation or condition: *The interest rate is going to remain at 4%.*

revise (v) to change your opinion or judgment of someone or something: *I think I'm beginning to revise my opinion of Tim.*

revise (v) to change, improve or make additions to something such as a book, law or piece of writing: *Revise your essay and I'll have a look at the changes when you've finished.*

revolution (n) a sudden or major change, especially in ideas or methods: *This invention will lead to a revolution in housework.*

revolution (n) a situation in which people completely change their government or political system, usually by force: *Life was quite difficult in the country following the revolution.*

shift (v) if an idea, attitude or plan shifts or someone shifts it, it changes: *The plan has shifted so we'll need to have another meeting.*

shift (n) a change in something, for example in someone's ideas or opinions: *There has been a real shift in attitudes on this issue.*

spoil (v) to affect something in a way that makes it worse, less attractive or less enjoyable: *Your argument with Bill really spoiled the party.*

status quo (n phr) the present situation or the way things usually are: *Let's just keep the status quo until we know what's happening.*

steady (v) to hold something firmly without shaking or moving it: *Could you just steady the ladder?*

steady (adj) firmly held in a particular position without moving or shaking: *Imogen gave me a steady look.*

steady (adj) staying at the same level, speed, value, etc: *Prices should remain steady over the next few months.*

substitute (v) to remove one thing and put something else in its place: *You can substitute cream with milk, if you have any.*

substitute (n) something that is used instead of something else: *Margarine is a good substitute for butter.*

sustain (v) to provide the conditions in which something can happen or exist: *The atmosphere on Mars won't sustain life.*

switch (v) to replace one object with another: *Someone switched their briefcase for mine when I wasn't looking.*

switch (n) a change from one thing to another: *I knew the magician had changed the cards over but I didn't spot the switch.*

switch (n) something such as a button or key that controls the electrical supply to a light, piece of equipment, machine, etc: *This switch controls the volume.*

transform (v) to make someone or something completely different, usually in a way that makes them more attractive, easier to use, etc: *Jill was completely transformed by her time at university.*

trend (n) a gradual change or development that produces a particular result: *There's a trend towards smaller cars these days.*

uniform (adj) the same everywhere: *You should find that every Hilton hotel offers a uniform standard of service.*

Technology

breakthrough (n) a discovery or achievement that comes after a lot of hard work: *Scientists have finally made the breakthrough they were hoping for.*

broadband (adj) able to send different types of communication signals at the same time: *You need a broadband connection to watch the video.*

broadband (n) a high-speed Internet connection: *Have you got broadband at home yet?*

click (v) to make a computer do something by pressing a button on the mouse: *Click here for more results.*

complex (adj) with a lot of details or small parts, which makes something difficult to understand or deal with: *The issue is too complex for simple solutions.*

consumer electronics (n phr) electrical equipment, such as digital cameras, etc, which is available for the public to buy: *There's just so much choice in the world of consumer electronics these days.*

craft (v) to make or produce something skilfully: *You can see that this basket was crafted by a real expert.*

craft (n) a traditional skill of making things by hand, for example furniture or jewellery: *It's a shame that traditional crafts are fast disappearing.*

data (n) information in a form that a computer can use: *Imagine how much data passes over the Internet each day.*

download (v) to move information to your computer from a computer system or the Internet: *Listen to this song I downloaded from the Internet.*

download (n) a downloaded computer file: *When your download has finished, close this window.*

file (n) a set of information on a computer: *Make sure you save the file somewhere.*

(**games**) **console** (n phr) a small piece of electronic equipment that you connect to a screen, used for playing video games: *There's a lot of competition between manufacturers of games consoles.*

manual (adj) operated by people rather than automatically or using computers: *The pilot switched to manual control as the plane approached the runway.*

manual (n) a book containing instructions for doing something, especially for operating a machine: *See what it says about this problem in the manual.*

network (v) to connect computers together so that each computer can send and receive information to and from the other computers: *We've networked all the computers in the office so that we can send files to each other more easily.*

network (n) a set of computers that are connected to each other so that each computer can send and receive information to and from the other computers: *There seems to be a virus on the network.*

nuclear (adj) relating to energy produced by changing the structure of the central part of an atom: *Nuclear power is the only way we can meet our energy needs.*

offline (adj) working on a computer but not connected to the Internet: *Download it now and you can read it when you are offline.*

offline (adv) working on a computer but not connected to the Internet: *You need to go offline to stop the virus spreading.*

online (adj) connected to or available through a computer or a computer network, especially the Internet: *I've started an online library of songs.*

online (adv) on the Internet: *You can find what you need online.*

primitive (adj) at a very simple stage of development, before modern technology: *Da Vinci drew pictures of what we might see as a primitive helicopter.*

programmer (n) someone whose job is to create computer programs: *I'd like to be a programmer and work on computer games.*

resource (n) something you can use to help you to achieve something, especially in your work or study: *The main resource for my research was the library.*

technique (n) a method of doing something using a special skill that you have developed: *I've worked out a new technique to get the computer to do what I want.*

upload (v) to send documents or programs from your computer to a larger system using the Internet: *I'm just uploading something to my website.*

Unit 6

Time

abrupt (adj) sudden and unexpected, often in an unpleasant way: *Our friendship came to an abrupt end.*

anachronism (n) something that is no longer suitable for or relevant to modern times: *She regards the marriage ceremony as a quaint anachronism.*

annual (adj) happening once a year: *We've got our annual conference next month.*

annual (adj) calculated or considered over a period of one year: *You'll receive an annual salary of €100,000.*

antique (adj) old and valuable: *We offer a wide range of antique furniture.*

antique (n) an old object such as a piece of furniture or jewellery that is valuable because it is rare, beautiful or well made: *The desk is an antique.*

century (n) a period of 100 years, usually counted from a year ending in -00. For example, the 20th century is the period from 1900 to 1999: *His family has ruled Morocco since the 17th century.*

chronological (adj) arranged or described in the order in which events happened: *The paintings are presented in chronological order.*

contemporary (adj) modern or relating to the present time: *I'm not very keen on contemporary art.*

contemporary (adj) alive or existing at the same time as a particular event or person: *Contemporary sources offer a very different interpretation.*

contemporary (n) someone alive at the same time as a particular event or person: *Most of his contemporaries regarded him as a mere eccentric.*

decade (n) a period of ten years, especially one beginning with a year that ends in a 0, for example 1990 to 1999: *Prices have risen sharply in the last decade.*

duration (n) the period of time during which something continues to happen or exist: *The duration of the film is 110 minutes.*

elapse (v) if time elapses, it passes: *Another hour elapsed and still the wind continued to howl.*

era (n) a period of time that has a particular quality or character: *We are living in an era in which technology is developing very rapidly.*

eternal (adj) continuing for ever or for a very long time: *She has earned our eternal gratitude.*

expire (v) if an agreement, offer or official document expires, the period of time during which it exists or can be used comes to an end: *The loan offer is due to expire this week.*

frequency (n) the number of times that something happens during a period of time: *Changes in sea temperature will increase the frequency of hurricanes.*

instantaneous (adj) immediate: *Recently developed medical tests can give instantaneous results.*

interim (adj) intended to last or perform an activity only until someone or something permanent or final is available: *This is only an interim report.*

interim (n) the time between one thing happening and another, or while waiting for something permanent or final to become available: *In the interim between John Smith dying and Tony Blair becoming leader, Margaret Beckett acted as leader of the Labour Party.*

interval (n) a period of time between two events: *The normal interval between our meetings is six weeks.*

interval (n) a short break between the parts of something such as a play or concert: *How long is the interval?*

lapse (n) a short or temporary period when you fail or forget to do things in the right way: *The man admitted driving over the speed limit and apologised for the lapse.*

lapse (n) a period of time between two events: *There was a lapse of ten years between his visits.*

lapse (v) to stop gradually or for a short time: *At this point the waiter came up with Maggie's drink and conversation lapsed.*

lapse (v) if an official document, decision or right lapses, it is no longer effective: *The permit was extended for another year before being left to lapse.*

lifetime (n) the period of time when someone is alive: *He achieved a lot in his short lifetime.*

lifetime (n) the length of time that something exists or works: *There are plans to extend the lifetime of the power station.*

long-standing (adj) having existed for a long time: *There's a long-standing tradition in our family of giving presents on Christmas Eve.*

millennium (n) a period of 1,000 years or the beginning of a period of 1,000 years: *People celebrating the millennium filled the streets.*

obsolete (adj) no longer used because of being replaced by something newer and more effective: *Most computer hardware rapidly becomes obsolete.*

overdue (adj) if something is overdue, it should have arrived / been done / been paid / etc before now: *This change in attitude is long overdue.*

period (n) an amount of time during which something happens: *The long dry period ended with torrential rain.*

permanent (adj) happening or existing for a long time or for all time in the future: *She suffered permanent brain damage as a result of the accident.*

phase (n) a particular period of time during the development of something: *The war was about to enter its final phase.*

postpone (v) to decide that something will not be done at the time when it was planned for, but at a later time: *Our exam has been postponed until next Monday.*

prior (adj) happening, existing or done before a particular time: *Illegally parked cars may be removed at any time without prior notice.*

prompt (adj) immediate or quick: *Prompt action is required.*

prompt (adj) happening or arriving at exactly a particular time: *The meeting got off to a prompt start at ten o'clock.*

provisional (adj) intended to be temporary, and likely to be changed when other arrangements are made: *The provisional government lasted three months.*

provisional (adj) if an arrangement is provisional, the people involved have not yet said that they definitely want to do it: *We've made a provisional reservation for next week.*

punctual (adj) arriving or happening at the time agreed on: *Mrs Marsh liked her guests to be punctual.*

seasonal (adj) available only during a particular time of year: *The work was well paid but seasonal.*

seasonal (adj) suitable or typical of the time of year it is now: *We needed to find some seasonal music.*

simultaneous (adj) happening or done at the same time: *In simultaneous announcements, the two men resigned from their jobs.*

span (n) the amount of time that something lasts: *Nearly 100 witnesses testified over a span of 20 days.*

span (v) to last for a particular period of time, especially a long period: *His career spanned half a century.*

spell (n) a period of time, usually a short one: *I had a two-week spell in hospital.*

stint (n) a period of time spent doing something: *He came to California after a brief stint as a waiter in New York.*

subsequent (adj) happening or coming after something else: *In subsequent interviews, Steele has contradicted his original story.*

temporary (adj) existing, done or used for only a limited period of time: *These measures are only temporary.*

timely (adj) happening at the most suitable time: *Thanks to the UN's timely intervention, a crisis was avoided.*

vintage (adj) vintage wine is excellent in quality and was made several years ago: *Let's get some vintage champagne!*

vintage (adj) a vintage object or vehicle is old, but kept in good condition because it is interesting or attractive: *My father has a number of vintage motorcycles.*

vintage (adj) showing the best or most typical qualities of someone: *She turned in a vintage display of tennis to win the title.*

vintage (n) all of the wine produced in a particular year, or the year it was produced: *This year's vintage will be the best in many years.*

vintage (n) the time when something was produced: *He's got a collection of guns of all types and vintages.*

Work

civil service (n phr) a country's government departments and the people who work in them: *How long have you worked for the civil service?*

client (n) someone who pays for or uses the services of a professional person such as a doctor or lawyer: *She advises clients on their investments.*

colleague (n) someone who works in the same organisation or department as you: *Friends and colleagues will remember him with affection.*

consultant (n) an expert or a professional person whose job is to give help and advice on a particular subject: *She's a design consultant.*

consultant (n) a senior doctor in a hospital who is an expert in a particular medical subject: *She's a consultant cardiologist.*

effective (adj) someone or something that is effective works well and produces the result that was intended: *Humour is often far more effective than shouting.*

efficient (adj) someone or something that is efficient works well and produces good results by using the available time, money, supplies, etc in the most effective way: *The new machine is far more efficient than the old one.*

executive (n) a senior manager in a business or other organisation: *We've arranged a meeting with some of the company's top executives.*

fire (v) to make someone leave their job, sometimes as a punishment: *She was fired for refusing to comply with safety regulations.*

headhunt (v) to try to persuade someone to leave their job and go to work for another company: *He was headhunted by a large electronics company.*

leave (n) a period of time away from your job or the armed forces: *Tony, who had been granted leave, was home for several weeks.*

marketing (n) the ways in which a company encourages people to buy its products by deciding on price, type of customer and advertising policy: *Jim, come and meet the firm's new director of marketing.*

multinational (n) a large company that has offices, shops or factories in several countries: *My uncle works for a large multinational.*

multinational (adj) a multinational company or business has offices, shops or factories in several countries: *My uncle works for a large multinational corporation.*

private sector (n phr) all the businesses, industries and services that are not owned or managed by the government: *There is less job security in the private sector.*

promotion (n) a move to a higher level in a company, institution or sport: *We try to fill our executive positions by promotion from within.*

promotion (n) the activity of encouraging or supporting something: *The campaign is concerned with the promotion of health.*

promotion (n) the process of attracting people's attention to a product or event, for example by advertising: *The government's planning to introduce a ban on the promotion of tobacco products.*

prospects (n pl) the possibility that something will happen, especially something good: *The prospects for employment in the technology sector are especially good right now.*

public sector (n phr) the industries and services, for example schools and hospitals, that are supported by tax money and controlled by the government of a country: *The typical member of Parliament has worked elsewhere in the public sector.*

recruit (n) a new member of a military force or an organisation, especially someone who has recently joined: *She's responsible for training new recruits.*

recruit (v) to get someone to work in a company or join an organisation: *We won't be recruiting again until next year.*

recruit (v) to get someone to help you do something: *The club has recruited volunteers to help.*

redundant (adj) if someone is redundant, they have been told they must leave their job because they are no longer needed: *Five thousand miners were made redundant when the tin market collapsed.*

sack (v) to tell someone they can no longer work at their job: *He was sacked after repeatedly arriving late at work.*

strike (n) a period of time during which people refuse to work, as a protest about pay or conditions of work: *A strike by transport workers was held on 12th August.*

strike (v) to refuse to work for a period of time as a protest about your pay or conditions of work: *Pilots were striking for a 6% salary increase.*

union (n) an organisation that represents the workers in a particular industry and tries to improve pay, conditions, etc: *We encourage all employees to join a union.*

Unit 8

Movement

accelerate (v) to happen or make something happen at a faster rate: *I started to feel nervous as the car accelerated.*

approach (v) to move closer to someone or something: *As we approached the airport, we put our seat belts on.*

approach (v) to speak to someone about something for the first time, especially in order to ask for help or make an offer: *I decided to approach Dr Wilson for advice.*

approach (n) a particular way of thinking about or dealing with something: *She has an interesting approach to teaching.*

approach (n) the fact of coming closer in time or in distance: *With the approach of the holidays, we all begin to dream of sunnier places.*

ascend (v) to climb a mountain, stairs, etc: *As we began to ascend the mountain, the weather got worse.*

bounce (v) if a ball or other object bounces, or if you bounce it, it hits a surface then immediately moves away from it: *Stop bouncing that ball against the wall.*

bounce (n) the movement of a ball or other object when it hits a surface and moves away again: *You are allowed one bounce and then you have to catch the ball again.*

clamber (v) to climb something with difficulty, using your hands and feet: *We quickly clambered up the rocks.*

clench (v) if you clench a part of your body such as your hand or your mouth, or if it clenches, you close it tightly, especially because you are angry or upset: *Matt clenched his teeth but didn't say anything.*

clutch (v) to hold someone or something firmly, for example because you are afraid or in pain, or do not want to lose them: *I clutched my passport as we made our way through the busy airport.*

crawl (v) to move along the ground on your hands and knees or with your body close to the ground: *Most babies begin to crawl when they are a few months old.*

creep (v) if someone creeps somewhere, they move there quietly and slowly: *The burglar crept along the corridor.*

dash (v) to run or go somewhere very quickly because you are in a hurry: *I must just dash to the post office.*

descend (v) to go down a mountain or slope, or to go downstairs: *We descended the mountain slowly.*

drift (v) to be pushed along very slowly by the movement of air or water: *The boat must have been drifting for a long time.*

drift (n) a slow and gradual change from one situation or opinion to another: *There's been a drift in public opinion away from supporting the policy.*

drift (n) the meaning that someone is trying to express: *I don't speak French very well, but I got his drift.*

emigrate (v) to leave your country in order to live in another country, on a permanent basis: *My brother is thinking of emigrating to Australia.*

float (v) to rest or move slowly on the surface of a liquid and not sink: *I was floating in the sea when a wave came over my head.*

flow (v) if a liquid flows, it moves smoothly and continuously in one direction: *The River Thames flows from west to east.*

flow (n) the continuous movement of a liquid in one direction: *The flow of water was so powerful that it knocked me off my feet.*

fumble (v) to try to hold, move or find something using your hands in a way that is not skilful or graceful: *She fumbled in her bag and finally found a pen.*

gesture (v) to make a movement with your hands or head in order to show or tell someone something: *Alec gestured towards the photograph on the wall.*

gesture (n) a movement that communicates a feeling or instruction: *Gestures differ from culture to culture.*

glide (v) to move in a smooth and easy way with no noise: *The dancer seemed to glide across the floor.*

grab (v) to take hold of something in a rough or rude way: *It's very rude to grab things out of other people's hands.*

grasp (v) to take and hold something or someone very tightly: *Vicky grasped my hand as we crossed the busy road.*

hop (v) to move forward by jumping on one foot: *Can you hop on one leg?*

hop (n) a quick jump on one foot: *The little girl jumped over the cat with a hop.*

immigrant (n) someone who comes to live in a country from another country: *I don't think it's right that all these immigrants should be allowed to come here.*

jog (v) to run at a slow steady speed, usually for exercise or pleasure: *I jog about five miles every morning.*

jog (n) a run for exercise or pleasure at a slow steady speed: *Do you want to go for a jog?*

leap (v) to jump over something: *He leapt over the table and punched me in the face!*

leap (n) a jump, especially a long or high one: *It'll take a big leap to get over the stream.*

march (v) if soldiers march, they walk in a group with each person matching the speed and movements of the others: *They marched for days to get to the border.*

march (n) a walk by a group of soldiers in which each person matches the speed and movements of the others: *The soldiers were tired after a long march.*

migrate (v) if a bird or animal migrates, it travels to another part of the world for warmer weather at a particular time of the year: *You often see large flocks of birds as they migrate south.*

point (v) to show something by holding out your finger or a long thin object: *I looked where she was pointing.*

punch (v) to hit someone or something with your fist, usually as hard as you can: *Tony punched the wall in anger.*

refugee (n) someone who leaves their country, especially during a war or other threatening event: *More than a million refugees are trying to escape the fighting.*

roam (v) to move or travel with no particular purpose: *We spent the afternoon just roaming the hills.*

roll (v) to move forward while turning over and over: *I spotted a ball rolling towards me and picked it up.*

rotate (v) to move in a circle around a fixed central point, or to move something in this way: *This part rotates, spraying water on all the dirty dishes.*

route (n) the roads or paths that you use when you go from one place to another: *I'm just planning our route for tomorrow.*

sink (v) to disappear below the surface of the water: *The ship sank when it hit an iceberg.*

skid (v) to slide across the ground in an uncontrolled way: *The car skidded on the wet road.*

skid (n) a sudden uncontrolled slide across the ground, especially by a vehicle: *We went into a skid because there was ice on the road.*

skip (v) to move forwards by jumping first on one foot and then the other: *I loved school when I was young and I used to skip all the way there.*

slide (v) to move smoothly and quickly across a surface: *Jason slid a pen to me across the table.*

slide (n) a structure that children play on by climbing up steps and sliding down a slope on the other side: *Let Tammy have a go on the slide now.*

slip (v) if you slip, your feet slide accidentally and you lose your balance or fall over: *I slipped on the stairs.*

step (v) to move by putting one foot down in front of the other: *Would you just step this way, sir?*

step (n) a short movement made by putting one foot in front of the other: *You can get a device that counts how many steps you take in a day.*

step (n) one of a series of actions you do in order to achieve a particular aim: *What's the next step?*

stride (v) to walk with energy and confidence: *The head teacher strode into the room and looked at us.*

stride (n) a long confident step: *In a couple of strides, the speaker had crossed the stage and was ready to start.*

trip (v) to hit your foot on something and fall down: *I tripped as I was going into the bedroom.*

velocity (n) the speed that something moves at in one direction: *Bullets travel at very high velocities.*

wander (v) to travel from place to place, especially on foot, without a particular direction or purpose: *I wandered around the art gallery for an hour.*

wave (v) to move your hand to say hello or goodbye or as a signal: *We waved to Valerie as the train pulled away.*

wave (n) a movement of your hand used for saying hello or goodbye to someone or for giving a signal: *The Queen gave the crowd a quick wave.*

Transport

airline (n) a company that owns aircraft and takes people or goods by plane from one place to another: *I've applied for a job with another airline.*

cargo (n) things that are being sent by ship, plane, train or truck: *It took them all morning to load the cargo.*

carriage (n) one of the vehicles that are joined together to make a train: *The carriage was practically empty when we got on the train.*

charter (v) to hire a boat, plane or bus, especially for use by a group of people: *We decided to charter a plane to take us deeper into the Amazon.*

commute (v) to travel regularly to and from work: *I'm getting fed up with commuting every day.*

destination (n) the place where someone or something is going: *We were all exhausted when we finally reached our destination.*

hiker (n) someone who walks for long distances in the countryside for pleasure: *A group of hikers came over the hill.*

hitchhiker (n) someone who travels by asking other people to take them in their car, by standing at the side of a road and holding out their thumb or a sign: *We picked up a hitchhiker outside Oxford.*

jet lag (n) the feeling of being very tired and sometimes confused because you have travelled quickly on a plane across parts of the world where the time is different: *Polly was suffering from jet lag for a few days.*

legroom (n) the amount of space in front of your seat in which you can stretch your legs: *Let's go business class because you get more legroom.*

load (v) to put a load onto or into something such as a vehicle or container: *Load up the van, and then you can get going.*

load (n) the goods that a vehicle carries: *Try to spread the load evenly inside the lorry.*

passerby (n) someone who is walking past a place, especially when an accident or violent event happens: *The accident was reported to police by a passerby.*

pedestrian (n) someone who is walking, especially in a town or city, instead of driving or riding: *Pedestrians need to be particularly careful at this crossing.*

pier (n) a structure built out from the land over water and used for getting on and off boats: *We walked along the pier and jumped into the boat.*

pilot (v) to fly an aircraft: *I wonder what it's like to pilot a jet.*

pilot (n) someone who flies an aircraft: *The pilot announced that we were about to hit bad weather.*

quay (n) a hard surface next to a sea or river, where boats can stop: *There were fishing boats all along the quay.*

return fare (n phr) the money you pay for a journey to and from a place: *The return fare into town is about a pound.*

round trip (n phr) an occasion when you go somewhere and come back to your starting point again: *The round trip took me about four days.*

steer (v) to control the direction in which a vehicle moves: *You steer the hang-glider by moving your weight from side to side.*

steward (n) a man whose job is to look after the passengers on a plane, train or ship, especially serving them with food and drink: *The steward brought me a blanket.*

Unit 10

Communication

allege (v) to say that something is true or that someone has done something wrong or illegal even though this has not been proved: *The defence alleges that Jones was beaten up while in police custody.*

ambiguous (adj) not clear or definite, capable of being understood in more than one way: *The wording of the law is highly ambiguous.*

assert (v) to state firmly that something is true: *He asserted his innocence.*

blunt (adj) saying what is true or what you think, even if this offends or upsets people: *It was a frank answer to a blunt question.*

boast (n) a statement in which you proudly tell other people what you or someone connected with you has done or can do, or about something you own, especially in order to make them admire you: *For years, their boast was that they were the best club in Europe.*

boast (v) to proudly tell other people about what you or someone connected with you has done or can do, or about something you own, especially in order to make them admire you: *He's always boasting of his great sporting achievements.*

clarification (n) an explanation that makes something clearer and easier to understand: *Please contact us if you require clarification of any of these matters.*

colloquial (adj) used in informal conversation rather than in writing or formal language: *It's a colloquial expression.*

comprehend (v) to understand something: *How could you possibly comprehend the difficulties of my situation?*

confide (v) to tell someone a secret or discuss your private feelings with them: *I hope you know that you can always confide in me.*

confirm (v) to prove that something is true: *The study confirms the findings of earlier research.*

confirm (v) to tell someone, usually by writing or telephoning, that something will definitely happen at the time or in the way that has been arranged: *The date of the meeting is still to be confirmed.*

context (n) the general situation in which something happens, which helps explain it: *These events are meaningless outside their historical context.*

context (n) the words surrounding a particular word that help to give it its meaning: *In this context, 'development' means economic growth.*

contradict (v) to say that the opposite of what someone has said is true: *He didn't dare contradict his parents.*

contradict (v) if one statement, piece of evidence, story, etc contradicts another, they disagree and cannot both be true: *Her account of the accident contradicts that of the other driver.*

convey (v) to communicate ideas or feelings indirectly: *A good photograph can often convey far more than words.*

convey (v) to give official information or a formal message to someone: *Please convey my appreciation to your President.*

declare (v) to announce officially that something is true or happening: *Australia declared its support for the agreement.*

denounce (v) to criticise someone or something severely in public: *American trade policies have been denounced by some European governments.*

disclose (v) to give information to people, especially information that was secret: *Most of the people interviewed requested that their identity should not be disclosed.*

exaggerate (v) to describe something in a way that makes it seem better, worse, larger, more important, etc than it really is: *Don't exaggerate! It wasn't that bad!*

flatter (v) to praise someone in order to get something you want, especially in a way that is not sincere: *You're trying to flatter me, and it won't work.*

gist (n) the main idea or most important point of something that someone has written or said: *I only got the gist of what he was saying.*

hint (n) something that you say to show what you are thinking or feeling, without saying it directly: *He seemed so relaxed and gave no hint that anything was wrong.*

hint (n) a useful suggestion or piece of advice: *This leaflet is full of handy hints about safety in the home.*

hint (v) to say what you are thinking or feeling in an indirect way: *The Prime Minister hinted that the crisis could continue throughout the summer.*

illegible (adj) difficult or impossible to read: *Clare's handwriting is completely illegible!*

inkling (n) a slight idea or small piece of information that tells you that something might exist or be happening: *The first inkling that something was wrong came on Wednesday.*

insist (v) to say very firmly that something must happen or be done: *You must see a doctor immediately; I insist.*

insist (v) to keep saying very firmly that something is true, even when other people will not believe you: *The school insists that it is doing everything it can to cooperate.*

jargon (n) special words and phrases that are only understood by people who do the same kind of work. This word usually shows that you dislike this type of language: *Why do doctors use so much medical jargon in front of patients?*

literal (adj) the literal meaning of a word is its most basic meaning: *He is clearly not using the word 'dead' in its literal sense.*

mumble (n) the saying of something in a way that is not loud or clear enough so that your words are difficult to understand: *He started to say something, but all I could hear was a quiet mumble.*

mumble (v) to say something in a way that is not loud or clear enough so that your words are difficult to understand: *He mumbled something about not wanting to go to work.*

murmur (n) something that is said in a very quiet voice: *'Let's go,' he said in a low murmur.*

murmur (n) a quiet continuous sound: *There was a low murmur of voices coming from the back of the room.*

murmur (v) to say something in a very quiet voice: *Frances murmured an apology as she left.*

petition (n) a document signed by many people that asks someone in authority to do something: *More than 300 villagers have signed a petition against the building project.*

placard (n) a large notice in a public place, used for advertising something or carried in order to protest against or support something: *The Minister was surrounded by placard-waving demonstrators.*

quibble (v) to argue or complain about things that are not important: *There's no point quibbling about the bill.*

rant (n) a long, loud and angry complaint about something: *Dom was on a rant about the cost of eating out.*

rant (v) to complain or talk loudly and angrily for a long time, sometimes saying unreasonable things: *Ned paced back and forth, ranting about some imagined injustice.*

rave (v) to talk in an angry and uncontrolled way: *The boss was raving about nobody doing any work.*

rave (v) to speak or write in a very enthusiastic way about something or someone: *The critics are raving about her performance.*

relevant (adj) important and directly connected to what is being discussed or considered: *Once we have all the relevant information, we can make a decision.*

scribble (n) untidy writing or something written in an untidy way: *The address was written in a scribble so I found it hard to read.*

scribble (v) to write something quickly and carelessly: *Tony scribbled the address on the back of an envelope.*

scribble (v) to make marks or drawings with no meaning: *A child had scribbled on the book.*

slang (adj) slang words or expressions are very informal and are not considered suitable for more formal situations: *In some areas 'scran' is a slang word for food.*

slang (n) words or expressions that are very informal and are not considered suitable for more formal situations: *I picked up a lot of army slang while I was doing my military service.*

stumble (n) a mistake while speaking: *He read well, with only a few small stumbles.*

stumble (v) to make a mistake when you are speaking: *Children often stumble when reading aloud.*

stutter (n) a problem in speaking that causes you to repeat some particular sounds more than you should: *When I was small I spoke with a stutter.*

stutter (v) to repeat the sounds of words in an uncontrolled way when you speak because you are nervous or have a speech problem: *Richard stuttered a reply and sat down, his face red.*

tip (n) a useful suggestion: *The booklet gives a lot of useful tips on flower arranging.*

utter (v) to say something: *As soon as he'd uttered the words he regretted them.*

utter (v) to make a sound: *She uttered a sound somewhere between joy and pain.*

vague (adj) not clear or complete: *Some aspects of the law were somewhat vague and ill-defined.*

The media

anchor (n) someone who presents the news on a television or radio news programme: *Diane Sawyer is co-anchor of ABC's Prime Time Live.*

anchor (v) to present a television or radio programme, especially the news: *The programme has been anchored by McDonald since 2005.*

broadcast (n) a programme that is broadcast: *Channel 5's main news broadcast is at 9 pm.*

broadcast (v) to send out messages or programmes to be received by radios or televisions: broadcast (something) on something: *The President's speech will be broadcast on all channels at 6.00 this evening.*

broadcast (v) to tell people something, especially something that you wanted to be a secret: *You don't have to broadcast my news to the whole world!*

caption (n) words printed near or on a picture that explain something about the picture: *What does the caption beneath the photo say?*

columnist (n) a journalist who writes a regular series of articles for a particular newspaper or magazine: *She's a columnist for a Sunday newspaper.*

correspondent (n) a newspaper or television reporter, especially one who deals with a particular subject or area: *And now, a special report from our political correspondent John Sergeant.*

coverage (n) news about something on television or radio or in the newspapers, sometimes used about the amount of attention that television, radio and newspapers give to something, or the way in which something is reported: *Their coverage of the riot was criticised for ignoring its causes.*

coverage (n) information about a range of things, for example in a book or course of education: *The course offers good coverage of the subject.*

critic (n) someone who does not like something and states their opinion about it: *Critics say the plan is short-sighted and dangerous.*

critic (n) someone whose job is to write or broadcast their opinions about things such as books, films or plays: *Michael is the paper's literary critic.*

footnote (n) a note at the bottom of a page that gives more detailed information about something on the page: *There's more information on this in the footnote at the bottom.*

ghostwriter (n) someone who writes something for someone else whose name will appear on it as the writer: *He didn't really write his autobiography himself – a ghostwriter did it.*

handbook (n) a small book that gives information about a subject or instructions about how to use something: *It's a very good handbook for those new to windsurfing.*

manifesto (n) a formal statement expressing the aims and plans of a group or organisation, especially a political party: *The Liberal Party has just published its latest manifesto.*

novelist (n) someone who writes novels: *Several politicians are also successful novelists.*

pamphlet (n) a very thin book with a paper cover, usually given free to people: *The nurse gave me a pamphlet about injections you need before going abroad.*

prerecorded (adj) prerecorded messages, music, television or radio programmes have been recorded so that they can be used later: *The Prime Minister's announcement wasn't live – it was prerecorded.*

reviewer (n) someone whose job is to write articles in a newspaper or magazine giving their opinion about a new play, book, art exhibition, etc: *Most of the reviewers loved the exhibition.*

spine (n) the edge of a book where all the pages are fixed together: *Don't bend the book back – you'll damage the spine.*

subtitles (n) a translation of what people are saying in a foreign language film or television programme that appears at the bottom of the screen: *Foreign films in Britain aren't usually dubbed; they have subtitles.*

supplement (n) a separate part of a newspaper or magazine: *I love reading the colour supplement that comes with the paper on a Sunday.*

tabloid (adj) relating to newspapers with fairly small pages mostly containing stories about famous people and not much serious news: *I'd hate to be a tabloid journalist.*

tabloid (n) a newspaper with fairly small pages mostly containing stories about famous people and not much serious news: *Never believe anything you read in a tabloid!*

trailer (n) an advertisement for a film or television programme that shows a short part of that film or programme: *Did you see the trailer for the new Samuel L. Jackson movie?*

Unit 12

Chance

approximate (v) to calculate something in a way that is not exact: *The journey was approximated to take about seven hours.*

approximate (adj) not exact, but close to an exact amount, number, time, etc: *The approximate time of the incident was 7:30.*

ascribe (v) to believe something is the cause of something else: *The failure of the business was ascribed to events beyond anyone's control.*

assign (v) to send someone to a particular place, especially in order for them to work there: *I've been assigned to the office in Manchester.*

attribute (v) to believe that something is the result of a particular situation, event or person's actions: *Police attributed the accident to the bad weather.*

blow (n) an event that causes you to feel very sad, disappointed or shocked: *Failing to get into university was a real blow.*

cause (v) to make something happen, usually something bad: *What caused the building to collapse?*

cause (n) an event, thing or person that makes something happen: *The cause of the fire still hasn't been found.*

coincidence (n) a situation in which separate things happen by chance at the same time or in the same way: *It's just a coincidence that Sandra and I were both in New York at the same time.*

curse (v) to use magic powers to make bad things happen to someone: *I have such bad luck that sometimes I think I've been cursed.*

curse (n) a bad situation or event caused by someone's deliberate use of their magic powers: *They say that there's a curse on whoever steals anything from the pyramids.*

deliberate (adj) intended, not done by chance or by accident: *I'm sure what she did wasn't deliberate.*

determine (v) to calculate something or discover it by examining evidence: *Investigators have determined that the crash was the result of human error.*

fate (n) a power that some people believe controls everything that happens in their lives: *I like to just leave things to fate.*

fluctuate (v) to change frequently: *The price of gold has fluctuated quite a lot in recent months.*

foresee (v) to see or know something that will happen in the future: *We don't foresee any problems.*

freak (n) something with very unusual features that make it very different from other things of its type: *People think I'm a bit of a freak because I like silent films.*

freak (adj) extremely unusual and unexpected: *Some people were injured in a freak storm.*

gamble (v) to risk money or something valuable in the hope of winning more if you are lucky or if you guess something correctly: *I never gamble what I can't afford to lose.*

haphazard (adj) done in a way that does not seem to be carefully planned or organised: *The town seems to have grown in quite a haphazard way.*

hazard (n) something that could be dangerous or cause damage or accidents: *Dad suddenly braked because he saw a hazard in the road.*

inadvertent (adj) not deliberate: *Not inviting William was entirely inadvertent, I assure you.*

instrumental (adj) involved in an important way in making something happen: *He was instrumental in saving the company.*

jinxed (adj) someone or something that is jinxed has a lot of bad luck: *You must be jinxed if you've been hit by lightning three times.*

likelihood (n) how certain it is that something will happen: *The likelihood of success is quite low.*

lucky charm (n phr) something that people believe brings them luck: *I always take my lucky charm into the exam with me.*

meander (v) to move slowly without a particular direction or purpose in mind: *We meandered around the park.*

mishap (n) a minor mistake or accident: *We had a few mishaps on the way, but at least we're here now.*

mutate (v) to become physically different from other plants or animals of the same type as a result of a genetic change: *Radiation has caused plants in the area to mutate.*

odds (n) the chances of something happening: *What are the odds on winning the lottery?*

pick (v) to choose someone or something from a group: *Mrs Kay picked me to help her give out the books.*

pick (n) choice: *We've got lots of different bikes for sale, so take your pick.*

pot luck (n phr) a situation in which you do not know what to expect, but you hope that it will be good: *You can't predict the weather in Britain in the summer, so it's just pot luck what it'll be like for our holiday.*

random (adj) chosen or happening without any particular method, pattern or purpose: *Think of a random number.*

sign (n) a piece of evidence that something is happening or that something exists: *There were signs that someone had been there before us.*

speculate (v) to consider or discuss why something has happened: *He refused to speculate on what might happen.*

spontaneous (adj) happening in a natural way without being planned or thought about: *Leaving my job was a spontaneous thing.*

startle (v) to make a person or animal feel suddenly frightened or surprised by doing something they do not expect: *Liam startled me when he suddenly appeared next to me.*

statistics (n) a group of numbers that represent facts or describe a situation: *But the statistics simply don't support that view.*

stray (v) to move away from the correct place or path: *Little Red Riding Hood's grandmother warned her not to stray from the path.*

stray (adj) lost or without a home: *The number of stray dogs is becoming a real problem.*

stray (n) a pet that is lost or has left its home: *There are too many strays around here.*

superstition (n) a belief that things such as magic or luck have the power to affect your life: *You don't believe that old superstition about the number 13, do you?*

superstitious (adj) believing in the power of magic or luck: *I'm quite superstitious, so I never walk under ladders.*

transpire (v) to happen: *Perhaps we will never know what transpired that night.*

uncertainty (n) the fact that something is not known or has not been decided: *The passengers began to get angry because of the uncertainty.*

wobble (v) to rock slightly from side to side, or to make something do this: *The statue wobbled and then fell over.*

Nature

agriculture (n) the work, business or study of farming: *I'm thinking of studying agriculture.*

appreciate (v) to understand the true nature of a situation, and realise why it is important or serious: *I'm not sure you appreciate how important this is.*

appreciate (v) to be grateful for something: *I really appreciate your help.*

catastrophe (n) an event that causes a lot of damage or makes a lot of people suffer: *Many people lost their lives in the catastrophe.*

crop (n) a plant grown for food, usually on a farm: *Coffee is an important crop in Brazil.*

drought (n) a long period of time when there is little or no rain and crops die: *The drought means that there's an increased risk of fire.*

evacuate (v) to leave a building or other place because it is not safe: *When the alarm went off, everyone evacuated the building.*

exploit (v) to use natural resources such as trees, water or oil so that you gain as much as possible: *We could make a lot of money if we exploit our natural resources in the right way.*

exploit (v) to treat someone unfairly in order to get some benefit for yourself: *In some countries, children are exploited in factories.*

famine (n) a serious lack of food that continues for a long time and causes many people in a country to become ill or die: *We're raising money to help victims of the famine.*

flood (v) if water floods a place, it covers it: *The river flooded the whole city.*

flood (n) a large amount of water that covers an area that was dry before: *The flood caused millions of euros of damage.*

fossil fuels (n phr) fuels such as coal or oil, made from decayed material from animals or plants that lived many thousands of years ago: *Burning fossil fuels gives off carbon dioxide.*

global warming (n phr) an increase in the average temperature of the Earth: *It's difficult to deny that global warming is really happening.*

greenery (n) green plants that are growing somewhere or used as decoration: *I like living here because there's quite a lot of greenery.*

habitat (n) the type of place that an animal normally lives in or a plant normally grows in: *The panda is threatened by the disappearance of its habitat.*

harvest (v) to collect a crop from the fields: *They were harvesting the grapes when we were in France.*

harvest (n) the time when a crop is collected: *Everyone helps during the harvest.*

hurricane (n) a violent storm with extremely strong winds and heavy rain: *A hurricane is expected to hit the coast this evening.*

instinct (n) a natural tendency to behave in a particular way that people and animals are born with and that they obey without knowing why: *Birds build nests by instinct.*

natural disaster (n phr) something very bad that happens and causes a lot of damage or kills a lot of people: *It's not possible to prevent most natural disasters.*

resource (n) things such as coal, trees and oil that exist in nature and can be used by people: *The country's main resource is the vast oil fields.*

scarce (adj) if something is scarce, there is not very much of it: *Badgers are becoming increasingly scarce in Britain.*

species (n) a plant or animal group whose members all have similar general features and are able to produce young plants or animals together: *Scientists have discovered a new species of monkey.*

Unit 14

Quantity

abundant (adj) existing or available in large quantities: *The country has an abundant supply of fossil fuels.*

ample (adj) enough, and often more than you need: *There is ample evidence to prove his guilt.*

area (n) a place on the surface of something such as a part of your body: *Be sure to apply sunblock to sensitive areas of your skin.*

area (n) the amount of space that the surface of a place or shape covers: *The surface area of the screen should be at least one square metre.*

average (adj) around a usual or ordinary level or standard: *He's about average height.*

average (adj) not very good: *It was a decidedly average performance.*

average (adj) calculated by adding a group of numbers together and dividing the total by the amount of numbers: *The winds had an average speed of 15 miles per hour.*

average (n) the amount, level, standard, etc that is typical of a group of people or things: *Incomes here are nowhere near the national average.*

average (n) an amount that is calculated by adding several numbers together and dividing the total by the original number of things you added together: *Add 20, 10 and 30 and find the average.*

batch (n) a number of things or people that arrive or are dealt with at the same time: *This new batch of students seems very nice.*

batch (v) to group things together: *Let's batch these envelopes into piles of 100.*

bulk (n) something that is very large, wide and solid: *We looked up at the great dark bulk of the cathedral.*

bulk (n) the majority or largest part of something: *Women still undertake the bulk of domestic work in the home.*

bulk (n) if something is bought or sold in bulk, it is bought or sold in large quantities: *Supermarkets only buy produce in bulk.*

considerable (adj) large in size, amount or degree: *She made a considerable amount of money.*

countless (adj) very many, especially more than you think is reasonable: *She's made countless television appearances.*

dimension (n) a part of a situation, especially when it influences the way you think about the situation: *Doing voluntary work has added a whole new dimension to my life.*

dimension (n) length, height or width: *A hologram represents an object in three dimensions.*

diminish (v) to become less: *The intensity of the sound diminished gradually.*

diminish (v) to make something become less: *The delay may well have diminished the impact of their campaign.*

equation (n) a statement in mathematics that two sets of numbers or expressions are equal: *Solve the equation 5x - 3 = 27.*

equation (n) all the different aspects that you have to consider in a situation: *In a choice between the use of rail and car, the question of cost will come into the equation.*

equidistant (adj) at the same distance from two places: *The port is conveniently equidistant from the two major manufacturing centres.*

expand (v) to become or make larger in size and fill more space: *The water froze inside the pipe, causing it to expand and burst.*

extent (n) the importance of a problem or situation: *We were shocked by the extent of the damage.*

extent (n) the degree to which something happens or is likely to happen: *The extent to which your diet is successful depends on your willpower.*

extent (n) the size or area of something: *Open the table to its fullest extent.*

finite (adj) existing only in limited numbers or amounts or continuing only for a limited time or distance: *The world's finite resources must be used wisely.*

force (n) physical strength or violence: *They accused the police of using excessive force during the arrest.*

force (n) the influence or powerful effect that someone has: *We have convinced people by the force of our argument.*

force (n) a power that makes an object move or changes the way it moves: *It fell because of the force of gravity.*

force (v) to make someone do something that they do not want to do, for example by using or threatening to use violence: *He claims that police officers forced him to sign a confession.*

force (v) to use physical force to move something in a particular direction: *She forced the package through the slot.*

fraction (n) a small part or amount of something: *His shares are now worth a fraction of their former value.*

fraction (n) a division or part of a whole number, for example 1/2 or 3/4: *0.5 can also be written as a fraction: 1/2.*

heap (n) a large pile of something, especially an untidy pile: *His clothes were in a crumpled heap on the floor.*

heap (v) to make a big untidy pile of things: *Bundles of clothing were heaped on the floor.*

imbalance (n) a situation in which the balance between two things is not equal or fair: *There's an increasing social imbalance in recruitment to higher education.*

immense (adj) extremely large: *An immense amount of money has already been spent on the project.*

intensity (n) strength: *The cross-examination increased in intensity.*

magnitude (n) great size, importance or effect: *We hadn't grasped the magnitude of the task we were facing.*

major (adj) important, serious, large or great: *Age is a major factor affecting chances of employment.*

mass (n) a large quantity or number: *There's a mass of competing antivirus programs you can choose from.*

mass (n) the amount of physical matter an object contains: *This rock has a mass of 1 kg.*

meagre (adj) smaller or less than you want or need: *There was only a meagre food supply.*

minor (adj) not very important in comparison with people or things of the same type: *Some minor changes may be necessary.*

minute (adj) very small: *The soil contained minute quantities of uranium.*

multiple (adj) involving or consisting of many people, things or parts: *Words can have multiple meanings.*

multiple (n) a number that you can divide by a smaller number an exact number of times: *12 is a multiple of four.*

proportion (n) a quantity of something that is a part or share of the whole: *Only a small proportion of graduates fail to find employment.*

quantify (v) to measure or describe something as a quantity: *The benefits are difficult to quantify.*

rate (n) the number of times something happens, or the number of examples of something within a particular period of time: *There's been a dramatic fall in the city's crime rate.*

rate (n) the speed at which something happens within a particular period of time: *The population was growing at an alarming rate.*

rate (v) to consider that someone or something has a particular quality or has achieved a particular standard or level: *In a recent poll, the environment is rated as the number one issue by 30% of the voters.*

ratio (n) a relationship between two things expressed as two numbers or amounts: *The ratio of expenditure to revenue was an alarming 4:1.*

ration (n) a limited amount of something, especially food, that you are allowed to have, for example when there is not much available or when someone else is controlling it: *There's a ration of two eggs per person.*

ration (v) to control the supply of something such as food so that people are allowed only a fixed amount: *During the strike, petrol had to be rationed.*

shrink (v) to become or make something smaller in size: *Do you think this dress will shrink if I handwash it?*

sufficient (adj) as much as is needed: *Bedside lighting alone is not sufficient for most bedrooms.*

sum (n) an amount of money: *He was fined a sum of £1,000.*

sum (n) a simple calculation: *John's just starting to do sums at school.*

uneven (adj) not regular in terms of size, length, quality or quantity: *The economy has prospered, but growth has been uneven.*

vast (adj) extremely large: *We found ourselves on a vast empty plain.*

volume (n) an amount of something: *The total volume of trade has reached £800 million.*

volume (n) the amount of space something takes or can be filled with: *The petrol tank has a volume of over 20 gallons.*

widespread (adj) happening or existing in many places, or affecting many people: *The project has received widespread public support.*

Money

benefit (n) money or other help that the government gives people who need financial help, for example because they do not have a job: *There has been an increase in the number of people claiming benefit.*

benefit (n) an advantage you get from a situation: *The new sports centre will bring lasting benefit to the community.*

benefit (v) to get help or an advantage from something: *Thousands of households could benefit under the scheme.*

compensation (n) money that someone receives because something bad has happened to them: *Victims of the world's largest industrial accident were paid $470 million compensation.*

damages (n) money that a court orders you to pay someone because you have harmed them or their property: *The jury awarded damages of over $9 million to the victims.*

debt (n) an amount of money that you owe: *By this time we had debts of over £15,000.*

deduct (v) to take an amount or number from a total: *Nothing will be deducted from your pay without your consent.*

deposit (n) a first payment that you make when you agree to buy or rent something expensive such as a car or house: *She paid a £500 deposit, and agreed to pay the balance within six months.*

deposit (n) an amount of money that you pay into a bank account: *He made a £2,000 cash deposit on 5th April.*

deposit (v) to pay money into a bank account: *Billions of dollars are deposited in banks every day.*

direct debit (n phr) an order to a bank to regularly pay money from your account to a person or organisation: *I pay all my bills by direct debit.*

dividend (n) a share of the profits of a company, paid once or twice a year to the people who own the company's shares: *The company will not be paying shareholders a dividend this year.*

down payment (n phr) a first payment that you make when you are buying something and are going to pay the rest later: *She made a £500 down payment, and agreed to pay the balance within six months.*

finance (n) decisions on how money is spent or invested: *He's now studying international banking and finance.*

finance (n) money that is used to pay for something such as a large project: *The college has had to close due to lack of finance.*

finance (v) to pay for something such as a large project: *The scheme is being financed by the Arts Council.*

insurance (n) an arrangement in which you regularly pay an insurance company or other organisation an amount of money so that they will give you money if something you own is damaged, lost or stolen, or if you die or are ill or injured: *You have to take out building and contents insurance as a condition of the mortgage.*

interest (n) money that a person or institution such as a bank charges you for lending you money: *You will repay the money with interest, as agreed in the contract.*

investment (n) money used in a way that may earn you more money, for example money used for buying property or shares in a company: *Her investments were mainly in technology stocks.*

investment (n) the process of spending money in order to improve something or make it more successful: *Lack of investment had led to a decline in public services.*

lump sum (n phr) money in a single large payment rather than small separate payments: *Are you going to pay the whole amount in one lump sum?*

mortgage (n) a legal agreement in which you borrow money from a bank in order to buy a house. You pay back your mortgage by making monthly payments: *On my present salary I can't get a mortgage.*

overdraft (n) an agreement with your bank that allows you to spend money when you have no money left in your account: *Hefty fines are payable for those who exceed their overdraft limit.*

pension (n) an amount of money that someone who no longer works because of their age or an illness, etc is paid regularly, either by a company they once worked for or by the government: *He started drawing his pension last year.*

share (n) one of the equal parts of a company that you can buy as a way of investing money: *The scheme allows employees to buy shares in the company.*

speculate (v) to take the risk of investing your money in a company in the hope that you can make a big profit later by selling the shares you buy: *Have you been speculating on the stock market?*

withdraw (v) to take money from a bank account: *You can withdraw cash at any of our branches.*

Unit 16

Materials

block (v) to stop something from moving through or along something else: *A large rock blocked our way.*

block (n) a solid piece of wood, stone, ice, etc with straight sides: *Have you ever seen someone make a swan out of a block of ice?*

brittle (adj) a brittle substance or object is hard and can easily break into pieces: *The plastic had gone brittle from sitting in the sun.*

chip (v) if something hard chips, or you chip it, a small piece of it breaks off: *I've chipped a tooth.*

chip (n) a small piece of something such as wood or glass, especially when it has broken off something: *Be careful because there might be chips of glass on the floor.*

compact (v) to make something smaller or firmer by pressing it, or to become smaller or firmer like this: *Some places compact rubbish so it doesn't take up so much space.*

compact (adj) smaller than most things of the same kind: *Our flat is quite compact.*

concentrate (v) make a solution of something in water stronger: *You can concentrate the solution by heating it.*

crack (v) to damage something so that a line or long narrow hole appears on its surface, but it does not break into pieces: *Who cracked the window?*

crack (n) a line on a surface where something is beginning to break apart: *How long has that crack in the ceiling been there?*

crumb (n) a very small piece that falls off a dry food such as bread or cake: *Don't get crumbs on the carpet.*

crush (v) to hit or press something so hard that you damage it severely or destroy it, especially by making its shape flatter: *Crush the can and put it in the recycling bin.*

crush (n) a crowd of people all extremely close together in an area that is too small for them: *There was quite a crush in the club last night.*

dense (adj) a dense substance is very heavy in relation to its size: *Lead is a very dense metal.*

dilute (v) to make a liquid less strong by adding water or another liquid: *I find orange juice a bit strong, so I usually dilute it.*

dilute (adj) a dilute liquid has been mixed with another liquid to make it less strong: *Use dilute bleach to clean the table.*

dissolve (v) if a solid substance dissolves in a liquid, it is mixed into the liquid so that it becomes included in it: *Salt dissolves quite easily in water.*

fabric (n) cloth, especially when it is used for making things such as clothes or curtains: *We need to choose the fabric we want for the curtains.*

firm (adj) solid but not hard: *When the cake feels firm, remove it from the oven.*

flake (v) to come off a surface in small flat pieces: *The paint on the door is beginning to flake.*

flake (n) a small flat piece of something: *The floor was covered in flakes of paint from the old walls.*

fragile (adj) easy to break or damage: *Be careful with that ornament because it's very fragile.*

friction (n) the physical force that makes it difficult for one surface to move over another: *If you rub your hands together, friction makes them get warm.*

grain (n) a very small individual piece of a substance such as sand, salt or sugar: *Each grain of salt is really a tiny cube.*

gravity (n) the force that makes something fall to the ground: *How do they measure gravity?*

grind (v) to break something into very small pieces or powder, by using a machine or by crushing it between two hard surfaces: *I often grind my own spices.*

hollow (adj) empty inside: *I was surprised to find that the tree was hollow.*

liquid (n) a substance that can flow, has no fixed shape, and is not a solid or gas: *Did you know that glass is actually a liquid?*

liquid (adj) in the form of a liquid: *You have to be careful when you're handling liquid explosive.*

lump (v) to put people or things into the same group, although they do not really belong together: *You can't just lump all disabled people together like that.*

lump (n) a solid piece of something that does not have a regular shape: *I tripped over a lump of concrete.*

mineral (n) a natural substance in the earth, for example coal, salt, gold or diamonds: *This area is very rich in minerals.*

mould (v) to give something a particular shape or form: *Mould the clay into the shape of a person.*

mould (n) a shaped container into which you pour a liquid that then becomes solid in the shape of the container: *Pour the jelly into the mould and then put it in the fridge.*

opaque (adj) opaque glass, liquid, etc is difficult to see through: *We've had opaque glass put into the bathroom.*

pat (v) to touch someone gently several times with a flat hand to show that you care about them or want to make them feel better: *He patted me on the shoulder and told me not to worry.*

pat (n) the action of gently touching someone or something several times with a flat hand: *I felt a pat on my back and turned round.*

pile (v) to put a large number of things on top of each other: *Don't just pile your clothes on the bed.*

pile (n) a number of things put on top of each other: *Could you help me carry this pile of books?*

polish (v) to rub the surface of something in order to make it shine: *The maid polished the table and then cleaned the floor.*

polish (n) a chemical substance that you rub onto an object to make it shine: *Put some polish on your cloth and then rub, like this.*

scratch (v) to pull your nails along your skin, especially because you have an itch that makes you want to do this: *You'll only make it worse if you scratch.*

scratch (v) to damage a surface by marking it with something sharp or rough: *How did you scratch your violin?*

scratch (n) a thin mark on a surface: *There's a scratch on my new CD!*

scrub (v) to wash or clean something by rubbing it hard, especially with a brush: *I've been scrubbing the floor all day.*

scrub (n) a thorough wash or clean: *What your fingernails need is a good scrub.*

smash (v) to break something noisily into many pieces by dropping or hitting it with a lot of force: *You've smashed the glass on my favourite picture!*

solid (n) a substance that is not a liquid or a gas: *Water is a liquid, but ice is a solid.*

solid (adj) a solid substance is firm and hard and is not a liquid or a gas: *The concrete should be solid by now.*

speck (n) a very small spot or mark: *There isn't a speck of dust in the house.*

squash (v) to damage something by pressing or crushing it and making it lose its normal shape: *She sat on my glasses and squashed them!*

squash (n) a situation in which there are too many people in a small space: *It'll be a bit of a squash, but we can get five in the car.*

squeeze (v) to press something firmly, especially with your hands: *Squeeze the sponge to get all the water out.*

squeeze (n) the action of squeezing something: *She gave my hand a quick squeeze.*

stack (v) to arrange things so that they stand one on top of another: *The assistant was stacking boxes when I walked into the shop.*

stack (n) a pile of things placed one on top of another: *I can't believe you knocked over that stack of tins!*

stiff (adj) firm and difficult to bend: *Take a stiff piece of card and cut a hole in it.*

stroke (v) to gently move your hand over skin, hair or fur: *I was only trying to stroke the dog!*

stroke (n) a gentle movement of your hand across skin, hair or fur: *I fell asleep while my mum was stroking my hair.*

stuff (v) to push something soft into a space or container: *I stuffed a few things into a suitcase and set off.*

stuff (n) a variety of objects or things: *What's all this stuff on your desk?*

substance (n) a particular type of liquid, solid or gas: *You're not allowed to take certain substances on a plane.*

synthetic (adj) made from artificial materials or substances, not from natural ones: *Nylon is a synthetic material.*

tear (v) to pull something so that it separates into pieces or gets a hole in it, or to become damaged in this way: *I've torn my T-shirt on the door handle.*

tear (n) a hole in a piece of paper, cloth, etc where it has been torn: *There's a big tear in my dress.*

texture (n) the way something feels when you touch it: *I love the texture of silk.*

transparent (adj) a transparent object or substance is clear or thin enough for you to see things through: *Glass is transparent.*

The built environment

built-up (adj) a built-up area has a lot of buildings in it: *This area has become really quite built-up over the last few years.*

bypass (v) to avoid the centre of a town or city by using a road that goes round it: *If we take the other road, we can bypass Reading altogether.*

bypass (n) a road that goes round a town or city so that you can avoid going through its centre: *I don't think they'll ever finish the new bypass.*

construct (v) to build something large or complicated, such as a bridge or road: *We plan to construct a new bridge across the river.*

demolish (v) to deliberately destroy a building: *They've demolished my old school.*

district (n) an area of a town or country: *It's quite a nice district to live in.*

dwell (v) to live somewhere: *The little old man dwelt in a run-down cottage.*

estate (n) an area where there are many houses, usually built at the same time by the same company: *There's a lot of crime on this estate.*

evict (v) to legally force someone to leave the house they are living in, usually because they have not paid their rent: *The letter says they're going to evict us.*

high-rise (adj) a high-rise building is very tall with many floors or levels: *I couldn't live in a high-rise block.*

housing (n) buildings for people to live in: *The government needs to build more housing for the poor.*

infrastructure (n) the set of systems within a place or organisation that affect how well it operates, for example the telephone and transport systems in a country: *During the war, a lot of the infrastructure of the country was destroyed.*

inner city (n phr) an area near the centre of a large city where a lot of poverty and other social problems exist: *There's some very interesting music coming out of the inner city these days.*

occupy (v) if someone occupies a room, building, area of land, seat, bed or other place during a period of time, they use it: *Patients with minor illnesses are occupying beds that are needed for more serious cases.*

populated (adj) a populated area has people living there: *Luckily, the fire didn't spread to populated areas.*

skyline (n) the shapes made by buildings or mountains when you see them against the sky: *I love the London skyline.*

skyscraper (n) a very tall building containing offices or flats: *Skyscrapers started to appear in the 1930s.*

structure (n) something large such as a building or a bridge that is built from different parts: *The large structure outside town is going to be the new stadium.*

suburban (adj) relating to an area or town near a large city but away from its centre, where there are many houses, especially for middle-class people: *Many people would love to live in suburban areas but can't afford it.*

surroundings (n pl) all the things that are present in a place and that form the experience of being there: *I wish I lived in more pleasant surroundings.*

urban (adj) relating to towns and cities, or happening there: *There needs to be more investment in urban areas.*

Unit 18

Reactions

acknowledge (v) to accept or admit that something exists, is true or is real: *He never acknowledges his mistakes.*

acknowledge (v) to thank someone for something they have done or given you, especially in writing or by saying it publicly: *We gratefully acknowledge the contributions of everyone who helped us.*

acknowledge (v) to show that you have seen someone or that you recognise them, for example by smiling or speaking to them: *They barely acknowledge each other in public.*

agonise (v) to spend a long time worrying and being upset about something: *For years I agonised over whether I could have helped my daughter.*

apathy (n) a feeling of having no interest in or enthusiasm about anything, or of not being willing to make any effort to change things: *Few people voted in the election, presumably just because of apathy.*

avoid (v) to try to prevent something from happening: *Try to avoid confrontation.*

avoid (v) to try not to go near someone or something: *We went early to avoid the crowds.*

avoid (v) to choose not to do something in order to achieve a better result: *When taking this medication it is advisable to avoid alcohol.*

behaviour (n) the way that someone or something behaves: *Anna was sick of her brother's behaviour.*

chuckle (n) a quiet laugh: *There were a couple of chuckles from one member of the audience.*

chuckle (v) to laugh quietly, especially in a private or secret way: *As she read her book, she chuckled softly.*

comfort (n) a physically relaxed state, without any pain or other unpleasant feelings: *The airline is keen to improve passenger comfort.*

comfort (n) a feeling of being less sad or worried about something than you were previously: *My mother was always there to offer comfort.*

comfort (n) a pleasant way of life in which you have everything you need: *Now he can live in comfort for the rest of his life.*

comfort (v) to make someone feel less sad, worried or disappointed: *He went upstairs to comfort the baby.*

conduct (n) the way someone behaves, especially in relation to particular rules or accepted ways of behaving: *Two players were sent off for violent conduct.*

conduct (v) to do something in an organised way: *The agreement doesn't allow you to conduct business from your home.*

consequence (n) a result or effect of something: *She said exactly what she felt, without fear of the consequences.*

contentment (n) the happiness you feel when you have everything you want and you enjoy your life: *He has found contentment and satisfaction in his work.*

cross (adj) angry: *The neighbours got cross every time we put our music on.*

dignity (n) the impressive behaviour of someone who controls their emotions in a difficult situation: *She faced all her problems with dignity.*

disgust (n) a very strong feeling of not liking something: *The idea of eating meat fills me with disgust.*

disgust (v) if something disgusts you, it is so bad or immoral that it makes you angry and upset: *Your whole attitude disgusts me.*

disillusioned (adj) disappointed because you have discovered that someone or something is not as good as you had believed: *Voters are very disillusioned with the democratic process.*

fed up (adj) annoyed or bored with something that you feel you have accepted for too long: *I'm fed up with this job.*

giggle (n) a high laugh, especially a nervous or silly one: *The sound of giggles came from the girls' room.*

giggle (v) to laugh in a nervous, excited or silly way that is difficult to control: *The children whispered and giggled all the way through the film.*

glance (n) a quick look at someone or something: *She had a quick glance at the newspaper as she gulped down her coffee.*

glance (v) to look somewhere quickly and then look away: *He glanced over his shoulder nervously.*

glimpse (n) an occasion when you see someone or something for a moment only: *The crowd were anxious for a glimpse of the President.*

glimpse (v) to see someone or something for a moment or not completely: *He glimpsed a short white-haired figure heading for the back gate.*

gloat (v) to show that you are happy and proud at your own success or at someone else's failure: *He was there to gloat over their defeat.*

glum (adj) looking sad, as if you expect something bad to happen: *You look a bit glum. Has something happened?*

grimace (n) an ugly expression that you make by twisting your face, for example because you are in pain or do not like something: *His tortured grimace showed he was in pain.*

grimace (v) to make an ugly expression by twisting your face, for example because you are in pain or do not like something: *She grimaced as she swallowed the medicine.*

grin (n) a big smile that shows your teeth: *'A great win,' Mike said with a broad grin.*

grin (v) to smile showing your teeth: *Ruth grinned at him as she waved goodbye.*

handle (v) to take action to deal with a difficult situation: *The government was criticised for the way it handled the crisis.*

impatient (adj) annoyed because something is not happening as quickly as you want or in the way you want: *'Come on!' said Maggie, becoming impatient.*

inertia (n) a situation in which something does not change for a long time: *There's so much inertia on the committee that nothing ever gets done.*

manners (n) traditionally accepted ways of behaving that show a polite respect for other people: *Children learn manners by observing their parents.*

manoeuvre (n) an action or movement that you need care or skill to do: *Dexter tried every manoeuvre he could to overtake the truck.*

manoeuvre (v) to move someone or something in a situation that needs care or skill: *Katherine's good at manoeuvring her car through heavy traffic.*

moan (n) an annoying complaint, especially about something that is not important: *I haven't got time to listen to your moans and groans.*

moan (n) a long low sound you make because of pain, sadness or pleasure: *She let out a low moan of anguish.*

moan (v) to complain about something in an annoying way: *Ben was moaning about his job again.*

moan (v) if someone moans, they make a long low sound because of pain, sadness or pleasure: *James continued to moan loudly as the pain intensified.*

mock (v) to make someone or something look stupid by laughing at them, copying them, or saying something that is not kind: *Are you trying to mock me?*

neglect (n) the failure to give someone or something the care or attention they need: *There's an important need to protect children from abuse and neglect.*

neglect (v) to fail to look after someone when you are responsible for them: *What should we do about parents who neglect their children?*

neglect (v) to fail to do something that you should do: *He couldn't neglect his duties as an officer.*

peep (n) a quick look at something: *I'll just take a peep inside.*

peep (v) to look at something quickly and secretly, usually from a place where you think you cannot be seen: *She tried to peep through the gates to see the garden.*

peer (v) to look very carefully, especially because something is difficult to see: *She was peering through the window.*

prevent (v) to stop something from happening or stop someone from doing something: *Regular cleaning may help prevent infection.*

rejoice (v) to feel very happy about something, or to celebrate something in a happy way: *Montaigne seemed to rejoice in the humiliation of others.*

resent (v) to experience angry, unhappy feelings because you think you have been treated unfairly or without enough respect: *The girls in the family resented all the attention that Peter was getting.*

resolute (adj) extremely determined: *We're resolute in our determination to oppose these measures.*

smirk (n) an unpleasant smile: *Wipe that smirk off your face!*

smirk (v) to smile in an unpleasant way because something bad has happened to someone else, or because you think you have achieved an advantage over them: *I know you've won, but there's no need to smirk.*

snap (v) to suddenly lose control and become extremely angry or upset because a situation has become too annoying or difficult: *She was bound to snap under all that pressure.*

snap (v) to speak to someone in a sudden, angry way: *'What do you want now?' he snapped angrily.*

tactic (n) a particular method or plan for achieving something: *The governor's tactics involved accusing his opponent of being too liberal.*

terror (n) a strong feeling of fear: *Thousands of islanders fled in terror yesterday as the volcano erupted.*

terror (n) violence used for making people very frightened in order to achieve political aims: *This is a deliberate campaign of terror.*

Health

administer (v) to give someone a drug or medical treatment: *The drugs are administered intravenously.*

admit (v) to take someone into hospital for medical treatment: *After collapsing, she was rushed to hospital, where she was admitted.*

agony (n) great pain: *William fell to the ground, writhing in agony.*

agony (n) a strong and unpleasant feeling, especially great worry or sadness: *Waiting for the results was agony.*

antidote (n) a substance that prevents a poison from having bad effects: *It's a snake bite. Quick – get the antidote!*

consultant (n) a senior doctor in a hospital who is an expert in a particular medical subject: *She's a consultant cardiologist.*

diagnosis (n) a statement about what disease someone has, based on examining them: *Her doctor made a diagnosis of appendicitis.*

inoculate (v) to protect someone against a particular disease by injecting a medicine containing a small amount of the disease into them, so that their body becomes immune to it: *None of the family had been inoculated against diphtheria.*

irritation (n) a painful feeling in a part of the body, often with red skin or swelling: *Some drugs can cause stomach irritation.*

numb (adj) a part of your body that is numb has no feeling: *After hours of sitting on the floor, her legs had gone numb.*

numb (adj) not able to react or to show your emotions, often because of an extreme shock: *I was numb with fear.*

nursing home (n phr) an institution where old people live when they are too old or ill to look after themselves without help: *My grandmother's moving into a nursing home next week.*

paralysis (n) the loss of the ability to move your body or a part of it, usually because of an injury or illness: *The syndrome can lead to sudden paralysis.*

plaster (n) a thin piece of cloth or plastic that is sticky on one side, and that you put on your skin to cover a cut: *I've cut my finger. Have you got a plaster?*

plaster (n) if a part of someone's body is in plaster, it has a hard cover around it to protect a broken bone: *One man had his leg in plaster, having broken it in an accident.*

prescribe (v) if a doctor prescribes a drug or treatment, they say you should have it: *The drug should not be taken unless prescribed by a doctor.*

prevent(at)ive medicine (n phr) medical examinations, treatments, advice, etc intended to prevent illness or discover it before it becomes serious: *The government should invest more in preventive medicine.*

prognosis (n) a doctor's opinion about the way in which a disease or illness is likely to develop: *What's the prognosis, doctor?*

sick leave (n phr) a period of time during which you do not work because you are ill: *Mr Jenkins is away on sick leave today.*

side effect (n phr) an effect of a medicine that is not intended and could be unpleasant: *The treatment has no significant side effects.*

syringe (n) a needle fitted to a plastic tube, used for taking blood from your body or for putting medicine or drugs into it: *Take the syringe and inject the patient.*

vaccine (n) a substance put into the body, usually by injection, in order to provide protection against a disease: *Is there an effective vaccine for meningitis?*

ward (n) a large room in a hospital with beds for people to stay in: *Jo is a staff nurse working on the maternity ward.*

Unit 20

Power

aggression (n) an angry feeling that makes you want to attack or defeat someone else: *You're going to have to learn to control your aggression.*

authority (n) the power to make decisions or tell people what to do: *You don't have the authority to do that.*

benign (adj) kind and nice: *He might seem benign, but keep an eye on him.*

bully (v) to frighten or hurt someone who is smaller or weaker than you: *The boss just tries to bully everyone in the office.*

bully (n) someone who frightens or hurts someone who is smaller or weaker than they are: *I was a bit of a bully when I was at school.*

command (v) to officially order someone to do something: *The general commanded the army to attack.*

command (n) an official order: *The dog understands my every command.*

conquer (v) to take control of land or people using soldiers: *The Spanish conquered South America in the sixteenth century.*

conquer (v) to gain control of a situation or emotion by making a great physical or mental effort: *I tried hard to conquer my fear.*

consent (v) to give approval for something: *You can't go on the school trip unless your parents consent to it.*

consent (n) permission to do something: *The police shouldn't be allowed to enter your house without your consent.*

controversy (n) a disagreement, especially about a public policy or a moral issue that a lot of people have strong feelings about: *There's a lot of controversy surrounding the new law.*

dictator (n) someone who uses force to take and keep power in a country: *How did the dictator come to power?*

dominate (v) to control something or someone, often in a negative way, because you have more power or influence: *Don't allow him to dominate the conversation all the time.*

eliminate (v) to get rid of something that is not wanted or needed: *Will we ever eliminate the threat from pollution?*

enforce (v) to make sure that a law or rule is obeyed by people: *It'll be impossible to enforce the new law.*

entitled (adj) having the right to do something: *Students are entitled to a special discount on books.*

exempt (adj) allowed to ignore something such as a rule, obligation or payment: *At the moment, women are exempt from national service.*

former (adj) used for describing someone or something that had a particular job, title, status, etc in the past, but not now: *The former Prime Minister of India is visiting the UK.*

impose (v) to introduce something such as a new law or new system, and force people to accept it: *These rules are being imposed without anyone's opinion being asked.*

inferior (adj) not as good as something else: *Street markets often sell inferior quality electrical goods.*

intimidate (v) to deliberately make someone feel frightened especially so that they will do what you want: *Richard often tries to intimidate people.*

label (v) to use a word or phrase to describe someone or something, especially one that is not completely fair or true: *Don't label all young people in the same way.*

label (n) a word or phrase that is used to describe someone or something, especially one that is not completely fair or true: *I wish people wouldn't try to put a label on me.*

label (n) a piece of paper or material fastened to an object that gives information about it: *I don't know what's in this tin because the label has come off.*

liberate (v) to give someone the freedom to do what they want, for example by taking them out of a situation in which their behaviour is controlled: *Leaving school and getting a job really liberated me.*

mainstream (n) ideas, methods or people that are considered ordinary or normal and accepted by most people: *Life can be more difficult if you're not part of the mainstream.*

mainstream (adj) considered ordinary or normal and accepted or used by most people: *Most mainstream politicians have dismissed the suggestion.*

master (v) to learn something thoroughly so that you know it or can do it very well: *It took me over ten years to master the piano.*

master (n) a man who has control over servants or other people who work for him: *Servants should show respect to their master at all times.*

minister (n) an official in charge of a government department in the UK and other countries: *The Minister responsible for this decision should resign.*

monarch (n) a king or queen: *The monarch represents the country abroad.*

prohibit (v) to officially stop something from being done, especially by making it illegal: *The sale of lottery tickets to children is prohibited.*

reign (v) if a king or queen reigns, they officially rule a country: *Queen Victoria reigned during a time of great change.*

reign (n) the period of time when a king or queen rules a country: *What's the longest reign of any king or queen?*

reinforce (v) to make an idea, belief or feeling stronger: *Stories like this in the media reinforce the idea that all young black men are criminals.*

reluctant (adj) not willing to do something: *I'm reluctant to invite Tracy to the wedding.*

resist (v) to oppose or fight against someone or something: *The Prime Minister resisted a lot of pressure to change his mind.*

resist (v) to stop yourself from doing something that you would very much like to do: *I can't resist chocolate!*

restrict (v) to keep something within strict limits: *Many parents restrict the number of hours their children watch TV.*

society (n) people in general living together in organised communities, with laws and traditions controlling the way they behave towards one another: *People have much more freedom in today's society.*

subject (v) to make someone experience something unpleasant: *They subjected the poor prisoner to torture.*

subject (n) an idea, problem, situation, etc that you discuss or write about: *What subject have you chosen for your essay?*

subject (n) someone who lives in a country that is controlled by a king or queen: *I'm proud to be a British subject.*

subjective (adj) based on your own feelings and ideas and not on facts: *That's just your subjective opinion.*

submit (v) to accept that someone has defeated you or has power over you: *The boy only stopped hitting me when I submitted.*

summon (v) to officially order someone to come to a place, especially a court of law: *She was summoned to appear before the court.*

superior (adj) better than someone or something else in quality or skill: *His early work is vastly superior to the later pieces.*

undermine (v) to make something or someone become gradually less effective, confident or successful: *This unfortunate incident undermines all the hard work we've put in.*

unrest (n) angry or violent behaviour by people who are protesting against something: *Politicians held a special meeting to discuss the unrest in the country.*

victimise (v) to treat someone in a deliberately unfair way: *It's not right to victimise someone in that way.*

vulnerable (adj) someone who is vulnerable is weak or easy to hurt physically or mentally: *I felt quite vulnerable walking home late at night.*

Social issues

abolish (v) to officially get rid of a law, system, practice, etc: *The law was abolished in 1963.*

advocate (v) to publicly support a particular policy or way of doing things: *Do you advocate corporal punishment in schools?*

alleviate (v) to make something less painful, severe or serious: *These measures are designed to alleviate suffering among the elderly.*

bureaucracy (n) a complicated and annoying system of rules and processes: *I started to set up my own business but there was too much bureaucracy.*

charity (n) an organisation to which you give money so that it can give money and help to people who are poor or ill, or who need advice and support: *There are one or two charities that I make regular donations to.*

class (n) one of the groups into which people in a society are divided according to their family background, education, job or income: *My family are very middle class in a lot of ways.*

community (n) the people who live in an area: *Politics should begin in the local community.*

convict (v) to prove in a court of law that someone is guilty of a crime: *He was convicted of murder.*

convict (n) someone who is in prison because they have committed a crime: *Two convicts have escaped from the local prison.*

corruption (n) dishonest or illegal behaviour by officials or people in positions of power, especially when they accept money in exchange for doing things for someone: *They've started an investigation into corruption.*

deterrent (n) something that makes people decide not to do something by making them realise that something unpleasant could happen to them: *I think capital punishment serves as a deterrent.*

heritage (n) the art, buildings, traditions and beliefs that a society considers important to its history and culture: *It's important that we preserve our national heritage.*

immigration (n) the process in which people enter a country in order to live there permanently: *Is the level of immigration actually rising, or is it falling?*

industrial action (n phr) a protest in which workers show that they disagree with a policy of their employer, for example by striking: *Unless something changes, we'll be taking industrial action.*

institution (n) a large organisation such as a bank, hospital, university or prison: *It's hard spending all your life inside an institution like a children's home.*

legislation (n) a law or set of laws: *There is already legislation to prevent that.*

prejudice (n) an unreasonable opinion or feeling, especially the feeling of not liking a particular group of people: *Many women have had to deal with prejudice in the workplace.*

prison reform (n phr) changes intended to make the prison system fairer or more effective: *I'm a great believer in prison reform.*

privileged (adj) having advantages and opportunities that other people do not have, because you have a lot of money or high social status: *I suppose I come from quite a privileged background.*

prosecute (v) to officially accuse someone of a crime and ask a court of law to judge them: *The police decided not to prosecute and let him off with a warning.*

state (n) the government of a country: *The health system is the state's responsibility.*

Unit 22

Quality

aggravate (v) to make something bad become worse, especially a situation or a medical condition: *His headache was aggravated by all the noise.*

better (v) to achieve a better result than someone or something: *Bradman's average score of 96 has never been bettered.*

better (v) to improve something: *It's an important step towards bettering relations between the two countries.*

blemish (n) a mark or spot that spoils the appearance of something: *The painting was spoiled for me by a blemish on the frame.*

chaos (n) a situation in which everything is confused and in a mess: *There have been severe floods, bringing chaos to the region.*

cheapen (v) to make someone or something seem less valuable or respected: *This type of advertising cheapens the image of the brand.*

contaminate (v) to make something dirty, polluted or poisonous by adding a chemical, waste or infection: *Industrial sewage continues to contaminate our beaches.*

decay (v) to make or become gradually worse in quality, or weaker in power or influence: *Too much sugar will decay your teeth.*

decline (v) to become less or worse: *The number of people buying their own homes has declined.*

defective (adj) not made correctly or not working correctly: *The car was found to have defective brakes.*

detrimental (adj) harmful or damaging: *Overexposure to sunlight can have a detrimental effect on the skin.*

devastate (v) to seriously damage or completely destroy something: *Western India was devastated by a huge earthquake.*

devastate (v) to make someone feel very shocked and upset: *Mary's sisters were devastated by her disappearance.*

enhance (v) to improve something, or make it more attractive or more valuable: *The measures taken should considerably enhance the residents' quality of life.*

evaluate (v) to think carefully about something before making a judgment about its value, importance or quality: *The performance of each employee is evaluated once a year.*

exacerbate (v) to make a problem become worse: *Complaining will only exacerbate an already difficult situation.*

exquisite (adj) extremely beautiful and delicate: *It was an exquisite hand-painted vase from China.*

first-rate (adj) of the highest quality: *The service is first-rate.*

flaw (n) a mistake or fault in something that makes it useless, less effective or less beautiful: *There are serious flaws in the way we train our teachers.*

ideal (adj) of the best or most suitable type: *The fair provides an ideal opportunity for job seekers and employers to meet.*

ideal (adj) as good as you can imagine, and probably too good to be real: *In an ideal world there would be no poverty.*

inadequate (adj) not enough or not good enough for a particular purpose: *We are trying to provide basic education with inadequate resources.*

invaluable (adj) extremely useful: *The Internet is an invaluable resource for students.*

optimum (adj) best or most suitable within a range of possibilities: *The warm water provides the optimum conditions for breeding.*

optimum (n) the best or most suitable situation, level or amount: *The optimum we should be producing is 100 units per hour.*

outclass (v) to be much better than someone or something else: *The team was completely outclassed by the opposition.*

prime (adj) most important, most suitable or of the highest quality: *Our prime concern was the safety of our customers.*

redeeming feature (n phr) a positive quality which improves something that is not very good by including something that is good: *Smith's only redeeming feature is that he knows his job.*

refurbish (v) to improve a room or a building by cleaning and painting it, adding new furniture or equipment, etc: *They're planning to refurbish the teachers' room.*

reinforce (v) to make an idea, belief or feeling stronger: *The latest figures reinforce the view that economic growth is slowing.*

reinforce (v) to make a building, structure or object stronger: *Crews started work today to reinforce the seriously damaged bridge.*

renovate (v) to make something old look new again by repairing and improving it, especially a building: *The council's planning to renovate the old fire station.*

rotten (adj) something that is rotten has decayed: *There was a horrible smell of rotten eggs.*

rotten (adj) of a low quality, standard or ability: *She's a rotten singer.*

rusty (adj) a rusty metal object is covered in rust: *I don't know why you bought that rusty old car.*

satisfactory (adj) good enough to be accepted in a particular situation: *I have still not received a satisfactory answer to my question.*

satisfactory (adj) enjoyable and pleasing: *This new arrangement proved highly satisfactory to us all.*

shambles (n) something that is very badly organised and does not operate effectively: *Government corruption has left the economy in a shambles.*

shoddy (adj) shoddy work, services or products are of a very low standard: *The work they did on the new road was very shoddy in places.*

sound (adj) involving the use of good judgment, and therefore likely to be effective: *Administrators should make sure the programmes are legally sound.*

sound (adj) thorough: *You'll need a sound understanding of basic teaching skills before you enter the classroom.*

stale (adj) stale food such as bread is old and no longer fresh: *Wrap the bread up well or it'll go stale.*

streamline (v) to improve a business, organisation, process, etc by making it more modern or simple: *We need to streamline the whole process.*

strengthen (v) to make something stronger: *The bridge will need to be strengthened.*

surpass (v) to be better or greater than something else, or better than what was expected or hoped for: *Winning the gold medal surpassed my wildest dreams.*

ultimate (adj) happening at the end of a process or activity: *The incident affected the ultimate outcome of the war.*

ultimate (adj) as good or as bad as possible: *The house provides the ultimate luxury retreat.*

worsen (v) to become worse, or to make something worse: *The weather worsened, and temperatures fell.*

wreck (n) something that has been badly damaged: *The car was a wreck after the accident.*

wreck (v) to severely damage: *The town has been wrecked by the bombing.*

The arts

abstract (adj) abstract art expresses the artist's ideas or feelings rather than showing the exact appearance of people or things: *I'm not very keen on abstract paintings.*

abstract (n) an abstract painting or design: *You're not supposed to understand what it is; it's an abstract!*

auction (n) a public occasion when things are sold to the people who offer the most money for them: *They bought the paintings at auction in 1989.*

audition (n) a short performance in which you sing, dance or act so that someone can decide if you are good enough to perform in a particular play, concert, etc: *I've got an audition for the school play tomorrow.*

bestseller (n) a book that many people buy: *His first novel was a bestseller.*

collector's item (n phr) a rare or valuable object that collectors want to own: *Do you think this watch is a collector's item?*

curator (n) someone whose job is to look after the objects in a museum: *Ask the curator – he'll be able to tell you more about it.*

fine art (n phr) objects such as paintings that are created to be looked at because they are beautiful or interesting (note: the fine arts = activities in which people create beautiful or interesting objects, for example painting and sculpture): *I'm thinking of studying fine art at university.*

installation (n) a piece of art that consists of several different objects or pictures arranged to produce a particular effect: *There's an interesting installation at the Tate Gallery at the moment.*

lines (n pl) the words that an actor says in a performance: *He forgot his lines.*

lyrics (n pl) the words of a song: *I've written the music but haven't written any lyrics yet.*

masterpiece (n) an excellent painting, book, piece of music, etc, or the best work of art that a particular artist, writer, musician, etc has ever produced: Vertigo *is the film widely regarded as Hitchcock's masterpiece.*

paperback (n) a book with a cover made of thick paper: *His collection of poetry is now out in paperback.*

period (adj) typical of a particular historical time: *Will you be wearing period costumes in the play?*

period (n) a particular time in history: *Their collection is confined solely to the Roman period.*

priceless (adj) very valuable and impossible to replace: *These are priceless jewels.*

recital (n) a performance of music or poetry: *Are you coming to the piano recital tonight?*

retrospective (adj) relating to or considering things that happened in the past: *The show takes a retrospective look at the 1970s.*

retrospective (n) an exhibition that includes examples of a particular artist's work from their whole career: *I really want to go to the Norman Rockwell retrospective.*

score (n) the music written for a film, play, etc: *Who wrote the musical score for* Star Wars*?*

sketch (n) a drawing made quickly that does not have many details: *Draw a rough sketch of the dog.*

sketch (n) a short funny scene performed within a longer show: *She toured Europe with a programme of songs and sketches.*

sketch (v) to draw a picture quickly and with few details: *I'll just sketch a rough outline of the house.*

work of art (n phr) something such as a painting or sculpture that is of very high quality: *There are many priceless works of art in the Louvre.*

work of art (n phr) something that is made or done in a skilful or attractive way: *Her house is a real work of art.*

worthless (adj) not having any value or good qualities, or not useful: *The country's currency is nearly worthless.*

Unit 24

Relationships

adjacent (adj) next to or near something else: *The theatre is adjacent to the library.*

attach (v) to fasten or join one thing to another: *You need to attach these two parts.*

bond (v) to fix two things firmly together, usually with glue, or to become fixed in this way: *It's not easy to bond plastic and metal together.*

bond (n) the way that two surfaces are stuck together, usually with glue: *The bond should be strong enough to support quite a lot of weight.*

bond (n) something that gives people or groups a reason to love one another or feel they have a duty to one another: *We were at school together, so there's quite a strong bond between us.*

coexist (v) to live or exist at the same time or in the same place: *Two different species of bear coexist in this area.*

coherent (adj) a coherent statement is reasonable and sensible: *You need to rewrite your essay so that your argument is more coherent.*

compatible (adj) likely to have a good relationship because of being similar: *I suppose Lisa and I just weren't compatible.*

comprise (v) to consist of two or more things: *The country comprises a number of independent areas.*

compromise (v) to solve a problem or end an argument by accepting that you cannot have everything that you want: *Young children have to learn how to compromise.*

compromise (n) a way of solving a problem or ending an argument in which both people or groups accept that they cannot have everything they want: *You'll just have to find a compromise.*

conflict (v) if different ideas or opinions conflict, they cannot all be right or cannot all happen: *This statement conflicts with what the Prime Minister said earlier.*

conflict (n) angry disagreement between people or groups: *Many people have died in the conflict.*

confront (v) to go close to someone in a threatening way: *A man in a suit confronted me as I tried to enter the building.*

confront (v) to deal with a difficult situation: *It's best to just confront the problem head on.*

consistent (adj) not changing in behaviour, attitudes or qualities: *He might be strict, but at least he's consistent.*

contradict (v) to say that the opposite of what someone has said is true: *I wish you wouldn't contradict me all the time.*

contradict (v) if one statement, piece of evidence, story, etc contradicts another, they disagree and cannot both be true: *What the witness said contradicted the accused man's story.*

contrasting (adj) different from each other in a noticeable or interesting way: *They write in contrasting styles.*

cooperate (v) to work with other people to achieve a result that is good for everyone involved: *We can achieve more if we cooperate.*

correspond (v) to be the same as something else or very much like it: *The two accounts of the incident correspond with each other.*

dispute (v) to say that something such as a fact is not true or correct: *I'm not disputing the facts, just your interpretation of them.*

dispute (n) a serious disagreement, especially one between groups of people that lasts for a long time: *The dispute seems likely to continue.*

distinguish (v) to recognise the differences between things: *I couldn't distinguish between the expensive coffee and the cheap brand.*

diverse (adj) very different from each other: *Our English teacher knows a lot about quite a diverse range of subjects.*

divorce (v) to take legal action to end your marriage: *She divorced her husband about ten years ago.*

divorce (n) a legal way of ending a marriage: *I've been meaning to tell you for some time now that I'd like a divorce.*

equivalent (n) someone or something that has the same size, value, importance or meaning as someone or something else: *There's no equivalent for that word in English.*

equivalent (adj) of the same size, value, importance or meaning as something else: *We can either give you a refund or you can exchange the item for one of equivalent value.*

exclude (v) to deliberately not include something: *Excluding ourselves, we're inviting 18 people to the party.*

external (adj) coming from outside a place or organisation: *You'll be interviewed by an external examiner.*

external (adj) on or from the outside of something such as a building or someone's body: *This cream is for external use only.*

identify (v) to recognise someone and be able to say who they are: *The witness wasn't able to identify the man.*

identify with (v) feel that you can understand and share someone else's feelings: *I could really identify with the character of Melissa in the film.*

integral (adj) forming an essential part of something and needed to make it complete: *Learning to forgive is an integral part of growing up.*

integrate (v) to make someone become a full member of a group or society and be involved completely in its activities: *I think that people who come to this country should make an effort to integrate.*

interfere (v) to deliberately become involved in a situation and try to influence the way that it develops, although you have no right to do this: *Stop interfering in my relationship with Jane!*

intermediate (adj) in between two stages, places, levels, times, etc: *You can't become a pilot without going through a lot of intermediate steps along the way.*

intermediate (adj) at an academic level below advanced: *This course is aimed at intermediate learners.*

internal (adj) existing or happening inside an object, a building or your body: *We've decided to knock down one of the internal walls.*

intervene (v) to become involved in a situation in order to try to stop or change it: *The fight could have got ugly if the teacher hadn't intervened.*

intimate (adj) an intimate relationship is a very close personal relationship, especially a sexual one: *Martin seems to have problems being intimate with people.*

intimate (adj) relating to very private or personal things: *I record all my most intimate thoughts in my diary.*

involve (v) to include something as a necessary part of an activity, event or situation: *Getting your degree is going to involve quite a lot of hard work, you know.*

joint (adj) involving two or more people or done by them together: *We decided to open a joint bank account.*

liken (v) to say that someone or something is similar to someone or something else: *Mary likened herself to Bill Gates, and I suppose they have got one or two things in common.*

link (v) if people, things or events are linked, they are related to each other in some way: *Do you think this robbery is linked to the one that happened last week?*

link (v) to say or show that two things are related, or that one of the things causes the other: *The psychiatrist linked how I felt to the problems I'd had as a child.*

link (n) a connection between two or more people, places, facts or events, especially when one is affected or caused by the other: *There's a strong link between the power of the USA and the spread of English.*

merge (v) if two organisations merge, or you merge them, they combine to form one bigger organisation: *I might lose my job when the two businesses merge.*

mutual (adj) felt or done in the same way by each of two or more people: *John doesn't like me, and the feeling is mutual.*

negotiate (v) to try to reach an agreement by discussing something in a formal way, especially in a business or political situation: *We've managed to negotiate a discount of 20%.*

related (adj) if two or more things are related, there is a connection between them: *Your illness is related to the stress you are under at work.*

relative (adj) having a particular quality when compared to something else: *After the failure of his first film, the last one was a relative success.*

resemblance (n) if there is a resemblance between two people or things, they are similar, especially in their appearance: *Can you see the resemblance between me and my father?*

People

acquaintance (n) someone you know a little, who is not a close friend: *He's not really a friend, more of an acquaintance.*

adopt (v) to decide to start using a particular idea, plan or method: *I adopted the method the coach showed me and I played far better.*

adopt (v) to take someone else's child into your family and legally make him or her your own child: *After two years in a children's home, Adam was adopted by a very nice young couple.*

ancestor (n) someone who is related to you who lived a long time ago: *My ancestors all came from the same part of China.*

citizen (n) someone who has the right to live permanently in a particular country and has the right to the legal and social benefits of that country as well as legal obligations towards it: *The man took out his passport to prove he was an American citizen.*

companion (n) someone who is with you: *The prize is a holiday for you and a companion.*

dependant (n) a child or other relative to whom you give food, money and a home: *I couldn't believe it when I heard how many dependants he's got.*

descendant (n) a relative of a person who lived in the past: *Did I tell you that I'm a descendant of Lord Byron?*

empathise (v) to understand how someone feels because you can imagine what it is like to be them: *I've had a similar experience, so I can empathise.*

extrovert (n) someone who is very confident, lively and likes social situations: *Michelle is such an extrovert and loves meeting new people.*

foster (v) to look after a child as part of your family for a period of time because the child's parents cannot look after them: *My parents have fostered lots of children over the years.*

guardian (n) someone who is legally responsible for another person such as a child, whose parents have died: *You need to get the form signed by a parent or guardian.*

introvert (n) someone who tends to concentrate on their own thoughts and feelings rather than communicating with other people: *I'm more of an introvert and prefer to spend time on my own.*

partner (n) someone that you do a particular activity with: *Nadine and I are partners at tennis sometimes.*

partner (n) someone that you live with and have a sexual relationship with: *The invitation is for me and my partner.*

peer (n) someone who is of the same age as another person: *What your peers think of you can be very important.*

predecessor (n) the person who had a job or official position before someone else: *I hope to avoid making my predecessor's mistakes.*

sibling (n) your siblings are your brothers and sisters: *The elder sibling in a family is often more successful in his or her career.*

spouse (n) a husband or wife: *Each spouse is responsible for paying their own income tax.*

stepmother/son/etc (n) someone's stepmother/son/etc is their mother/son/etc because of a second marriage, not because of a biological connection: *When my dad remarried, I didn't really get on with my stepmother.*

successor (n) someone who has a position after someone else: *I hope my successor enjoys the job as much as I have.*

sympathise (v) to behave in a kind way and show that you understand someone's problems: *Why can't you sympathise with people, instead of blaming them for their problems?*

Unit 26

Preference

addiction (n) a strong need that someone feels to regularly take an illegal or harmful drug: *I developed an addiction to the medicine my doctor had prescribed for me.*

adore (v) to love someone/something very much: *I absolutely adore Indian food!*

anticipation (n) a feeling of excitement about something enjoyable that is going to happen soon: *I waited in anticipation for the show to begin.*

appeal (v) to ask people to do something or to behave in a particular way, especially in a difficult situation: *The Minister has appealed for people not to panic.*

appeal (v) if something appeals to you, you like it or want it: *A holiday in Ireland doesn't really appeal to me.*

appeal (n) a quality that something has that makes people like it or want it: *It's difficult to explain the appeal of this book.*

appeal (n) a request for people to do something or to behave in a particular way: *Police have made an appeal for witnesses to come forward.*

arbitrary (adj) not based on any particular plan or done for any particular reason: *The choice of date for the wedding was just arbitrary.*

aspiration (n) something that you want to achieve, or the wish to achieve something: *One of my aspirations is to travel the world.*

bear (v) if you cannot bear something, you cannot accept or do it because it makes you very unhappy: *I can't bear waiting in queues.*

compulsory (adj) something that is compulsory must be done because of a rule or law: *This course is compulsory for all students.*

content (adj) happy and satisfied with your life: *I'm quite content working here.*

craving (n) a very strong feeling of wanting something: *I had a sudden craving for chocolate ice cream.*

decline (v) to say politely that you will not accept something or do something: *The Prime Minister declined to answer questions.*

decline (v) to become less or worse: *The service in this hotel has really declined over the last couple of years.*

dedicated (adj) spending all your time and effort on something: *Kelly's very dedicated to her job and should go far.*

delight (v) to give someone a lot of enjoyment or pleasure: *I was delighted by the decision.*

desire (v) to want something: *It's quite common for people to desire what they can't have.*

desire (n) a strong feeling of wanting to have or do something: *She had a strong desire to work in the media.*

devote (v) to spend a lot of time or effort doing something: *Gordon's absolutely devoted to his kids.*

devote (v) to use something such as money for a particular purpose: *The government has devoted £10 million to the project.*

differentiate (v) to see or show a difference between things: *I'm colour blind so I have problems differentiating between red and green.*

envy (v) to have the unhappy feeling of wanting to be like someone else or have what they have: *Carla's brother envied her success and wealth.*

envy (n) the unhappy feeling you have when you want very much to do something that someone else does or have something that they have: *Envy can destroy a relationship.*

fancy (v) to want to have or do something: *Where do you fancy going tonight?*

fascination (n) the state of being very interested in something or attracted by something: *Carol's always had a fascination with insects.*

favour (v) to support an idea and believe that it is better than other ideas that have been suggested: *I favour the first suggestion.*

favour (v) to help someone and give them an advantage in an unfair way: *It's not fair to favour one student over another.*

favour (n) something that you do for someone in order to help them: *I don't suppose you could do me a favour, could you?*

greedy (adj) wanting more money, things or power than you need: *Maybe being sick will teach you not to be so greedy next time.*

impulse (n) a sudden strong feeling that you must do something: *I couldn't resist the impulse to kiss her.*

inclined (adj) feeling that you want to do something: *I am inclined to agree with you.*

liking (n) a feeling of enjoying or liking something: *I developed a liking for Chinese food when I lived there.*

mediocre (adj) average or below average in quality: *The restaurant was quite expensive, and the food was only mediocre.*

motive (n) the reason you do something: *What was the murderer's motive?*

mundane (adj) ordinary and not interesting or exciting, especially because it happens too regularly: *I'm thinking of changing jobs because working in the office has become quite mundane.*

obsessed (adj) considering someone or something as so important that you are always thinking about them, in a way that seems extreme to other people: *Oliver is totally obsessed with football.*

optional (adj) something that is optional is available or possible if you want it, but you do not have to have it or do it: *The sunroof is optional on this car, so you have to pay extra.*

passion (n) a strong enthusiasm or interest: *Alice had a passion for cooking.*

praise (v) to express strong approval or admiration for someone or something, especially in public: *I felt proud when the teacher praised my work.*

praise (n) an expression of strong approval or admiration: *Praise usually works far better than criticism.*

resolve (v) to make a formal decision, usually after a discussion and a vote at a meeting: *The company resolved to appoint a new managing director.*

sacrifice (v) to give up something important or valuable so that you or other people can do or have something else: *We've had to sacrifice a lot to put our children through private school.*

sacrifice (n) the act of giving up something important or valuable so that you or other people can do or have something else: *We all have to make sacrifices now that both your mother and I are out of work.*

strive (v) to make a lot of effort to achieve something: *You won't achieve your goals unless you strive towards them.*

taste (n) the ability to judge if something is good or bad in things like art, fashion and social behaviour: *Michael really has no taste in clothes.*

tempting (adj) used for describing something that makes you feel you would like to have it or do it: *It's very tempting to blame the government for everything that goes wrong.*

urge (v) to advise someone very strongly about what action or attitude they should take: *I would urge you to speak to a lawyer.*

urge (n) a strong feeling of wanting or needing to do something: *I suddenly felt an urge to run from the room.*

welcome (v) to say that you are pleased to accept or consider something such as an opportunity or a question: *We welcome the government's proposals.*

welcome (adj) if you are welcome or a welcome visitor at a place, people are pleased that you are there: *We were made to feel very welcome.*

worthwhile (adj) if something is worthwhile, it is worth the time, money or effort that you spend on it: *Why don't you watch less TV and do something more worthwhile with your time?*

yearn (v) to want something a lot, especially something that you know you may not be able to have: *Many people yearn to retire to the country, but not everyone manages it.*

Leisure activities

absorbing (adj) something absorbing is so entertaining that you give it all your attention: *The film was so absorbing that time simply flew by.*

casual (adj) relaxed and informal: *The party is quite casual, so don't dress too formally.*

exhilarating (adj) making you feel extremely happy, excited and full of energy: *The funfair was really exhilarating.*

fatigue (n) a feeling of being extremely tired, either physically or mentally: *Fatigue can lead to mistakes.*

idle (adj) not doing anything, when there are things that you should do: *Don't just sit there being idle – there's housework to be done.*

idle (adj) workers who are idle have no work: *The company is losing money all the time the workers are idle.*

indulge (v) to allow yourself to have or do something that you enjoy: *I decided to indulge myself and had a holiday in the Bahamas.*

lifestyle (n) the type of life you have, for example the type of job or house you have or the type of activity you like doing: *This product is ideal for today's busy lifestyles.*

leave (n) a period of time away from your job or the armed forces: *My brother comes out of the army on leave next week.*

outing (n) a short journey that you take for enjoyment: *Let's have an outing to the beach this weekend.*

pastime (n) something that you do regularly for fun in your free time: *I need to find a pastime that doesn't demand a lot of money.*

pursue (v) to follow a course of activity: *I'm thinking of pursuing a career in medicine.*

recreation (n) things that you do to enjoy yourself: *Sport can be a very social form of recreation.*

respite (n) a short period of rest from having to deal with a difficult or unpleasant situation: *We had a few days of respite from the hot weather, but it soon got warmer again.*

sedentary (adj) involving a lot of sitting and not much exercise: *I've got quite a sedentary job, so I like to go to the gym once a week.*

socialise (v) to spend time with other people socially, for example at a party: *We seem to have done a lot of socialising this month.*

solitude (n) the state of being completely alone, especially when this is pleasant or relaxing: *There's nothing like the peace and solitude you get when you're fishing.*

tedious (adj) boring and continuing for too long: *I couldn't believe how tedious that meeting was!*

trivial (adj) not very interesting, serious or valuable: *Fran always seems to think that her problems are important, while yours are quite trivial.*

unwind (v) to begin to relax after you have been working hard or feeling nervous: *I like to unwind with a good book in the evenings.*

venue (n) the place where an activity or event happens: *Have they chosen a venue for the wedding yet?*

Phrasal verbs database

add up to combine to produce a particular result or effect: *These new measures do not add up to genuine reform.*

add up to if separate amounts add up to a total amount, together they form that total: *His business expenses add up to around £4,000 a year.*

answer back reply rudely to someone who has more authority than you: *I got into trouble for answering the teacher back.*

ask out invite someone to go with you to a cinema, restaurant, etc because you want to start a romantic or sexual relationship with them: *Fred asked Vanessa to go out with him but she said no.*

back down stop asking for something or stop saying that you will do something, because a lot of people oppose you: *I'm not going to back down just because a few people disagree with me.*

back up give support to someone by telling other people that you agree with them *backup (n)*: *I didn't believe Simon's story until Janice backed him up.*

back up make a copy of information on your computer *backup (n)*: *Make sure you back all your data up, just in case you get a virus.*

black out make a place dark by turning off all the lights, for example so that the enemy cannot see a place at night *blackout (n)*: *The whole city was blacked out for nights on end during the war.*

black out suddenly become unconscious: *He had blacked out as his car hit the tree.*

blend in if someone or something blends in, they are similar to the other people, objects, buildings, etc around them, and so they seem appropriate or you do not notice them: *The building doesn't really blend in very well with the others around it.*

blurt out say something suddenly and without thinking about the effect it will have, usually because you are nervous or excited: *She blurted out his name, then gasped as she realised what she'd done.*

board up cover a window or door with wooden boards: *We boarded the house up because we knew a bad storm was coming.*

break down divide something such as a total amount into separate parts *breakdown (n)*: *The amount doesn't seem quite so bad when you break it down into monthly payments.*

break up break something to make smaller pieces: *Break that old wardrobe up; then I can put it on the fire.*

break up if a meeting or other event breaks up, or if you break it up, it ends and people leave: *The meeting finally broke up after three hours.*

break up if two people break up, they end their relationship: *When did Diana and James break up?*

brighten up if the weather brightens up, it becomes sunnier: *It's brightening up, at last.*

brighten up start looking or feeling happier: *Sarah brightened up considerably as she thought of Emily's words.*

brighten up start to have more colour or light, give something more colour or light: *You could brighten up that skirt with a red blouse.*

bring about make something happen, especially to cause changes in a situation: *It's not something we can bring about overnight.*

bring out make someone or something show a quality that they have: *That dress really brings out the green in your eyes.*

bring out produce a new product and start to sell it: *They've brought out a new 3D video camera.*

bring together create a situation in which people meet and do something together, especially when they would not usually do so: *The attack on the city really brought people together.*

brush up (on) practise and improve your skills or knowledge of something: *I took a class to brush up (on) my German before the trip.*

build up gradually develop: *Many popular writers built up their reputations during the war.*

build up increase or make something increase: *The food industry needs to build up consumer confidence again.*

build up make someone bigger, healthier and stronger, especially by making them eat more *build-up (n)*: *You need lots of fresh fruit to help build you up.*

build up talk about someone or something in a very positive way so that people are impressed with them: *They've built him up to be something that he isn't.*

bump into accidentally hit against something: *It was dark and I bumped into the table.*

bump into meet someone unexpectedly: *Guess who I bumped into in town?*

buy off give someone money so that they do not act against you: *Efforts to buy her off have failed.*

buy out pay money to your business partner so that you can control all of a business you previously owned together *buyout (n)*: *The other directors have offered to buy me out.*

buy up buy large amounts of something or all of it that is available: *Developers have been buying up old theatres and converting them into cinemas.*

cancel out stop something from having any effect: *These headphones cancel out any other noise so all you can hear is the music.*

carry over take something that you earn or are given in one year or period of time into the next one *carry-over (n)*: *You are not allowed to carry over holiday entitlement from one year into the next.*

catch on become popular or fashionable: *Sports drinks have caught on as consumers have become more health-conscious.*

catch on understand: *He didn't catch on at first.*

centre around if something centres around someone or something, or you centre something around them, they are its main subject of attention or interest: *The book centres around a woman who becomes an astronaut.*

chance upon find or see someone or something when you did not expect to: *We chanced upon a charming little restaurant.*

change around move things so that they are in different places or positions: *My friends had changed all the furniture in my room around as a joke.*

change into stop being in one state, condition or form and start being in another, or make something do this: *The film was about a man who changes into a werewolf during the full moon.*

change into take off the clothes or a piece of clothing you are wearing and put on different ones: *Let me just change into something a bit more comfortable.*

change out of take off the clothes or a piece of clothing you are wearing and put on different ones: *Come inside and change out of those wet things.*

check out examine someone or something in order to be certain that everything is correct, true or satisfactory: *I've been taking loads of photographs, just to check out the camera.*

check out if information checks out, you feel that it is true after examining it: *Their story just didn't check out.*

clock up reach a particular number or amount: *Dawson has clocked up 34 years as a police officer.*

close up lock the doors of a building or business: *The newsagent was closing up for the evening.*

club together if people club together, each of them gives some money so all the money collected can be used to buy something: *Let's all club together and get her a nice present.*

come across meet someone or find something by chance: *I came across a reference to my grandfather in an old book.*

come (a)round (to) change your opinion or decision because someone has persuaded you to agree with them: *I didn't agree at first but I've come (a)round to the idea now.*

come between cause a disagreement or argument between people: *I would never let anything come between us.*

come out be removed from something such as clothing or cloth by washing or rubbing: *The stain finally came out, but I had to wash the T-shirt three times.*

come out be spoken, heard or understood in a particular way: *That came out wrong. Let me rephrase it.*

come out become available to buy or see: *The magazine comes out every Thursday.*

come out become easy to notice: *These differences don't come out until you put the two groups in a room together.*

come out become known: *He said it'll all come out in court.*

come out have a particular result or end in a particular way: *Everything came out all right in the end.*

come out in become covered in spots because you are ill or your body reacts to a food or medicine: *She can't eat shellfish without coming out in spots.*

come out with say something suddenly, usually something that surprises or shocks people: *You never know what the children are going to come out with.*

come round become conscious again after being unconscious: *I felt sick when I came round after the operation.*

come round change your opinion or decision because someone has persuaded you to agree with them: *We were sure she'd come round in the end.*

come round go to a place where someone is, especially their house, in order to visit them: *Why don't you come round after work?*

come round if a regular event comes round, it happens again: *Jean's annual garden party must be coming round again soon.*

come up with think of something such as an idea or a plan: *Is that the best you can come up with?*

cool down become cooler, or make something cooler: *It's cooled down a lot in the last couple of days.*

cordon off stop people from entering an area by putting something such as a rope around it: *Why have they cordoned off the city centre?*

cotton on begin to realise or understand something: *Suddenly I cottoned on. She'd been lying from the start.*

crack down (on) start dealing with someone or something much more strictly *crackdown (n)*: *It's about time they cracked down on people who drop litter.*

crease up laugh a lot, or make someone laugh a lot: *You really crease me up!*

creep up on move towards someone quietly and slowly, especially because you want to surprise them: *I watched a cat as it crept up on a bird.*

crop up appear or happen suddenly or unexpectedly: *Ben had to go back to work – something's cropped up there.*

crowd around move to a particular place at the same time as a lot of other people: *Everyone crowded around the actor as he signed autographs.*

cut back (on) reduce the amount of something, especially money that you spend: *I'm trying to cut back on groceries.*

cut out remove something from a larger piece by cutting: *Cut out the material you need and make sure it's the right size.*

cut out stop eating something or doing something, especially because it is bad for your health: *I'm going to have to cut coffee out because it gives me indigestion.*

die out become weaker or less common and then disappear completely: *There used to be wolves here but they've died out.*

dig up dig holes in an area of land: *Police have dug the garden up looking for evidence.*

dig up find information by searching carefully: *See what you can dig up on the Internet on Mr Anderson.*

dig up remove something from under the ground by digging: *Archaeologists have dug up a bag of coins from Roman times.*

dive in start doing something in a very enthusiastic way: *Sometimes you've just got to take a chance and dive in.*

do away with get rid of: *Did you hear that they're going to do away with private universities altogether?*

do up fasten (an item of clothing): *Do your coat up or you'll catch cold.*

do up repair, paint and improve an old building, car, boat, etc: *We bought an old farmhouse in France, intending to do it up.*

drum up try to make people support you or buy something from you: *Advertisements should help to drum up some business.*

dry up if something dries up or is dried up, all the water comes out of it: *The river has completely dried up.*

dry up stop being available: *I'm a TV repairman, but work seems to have dried up lately.*

dry up stop talking because you have forgotten what you were going to say: *I hope I don't dry up in the middle of my speech.*

end up be in a particular place or state after doing something or because of doing it: *Keep on doing that and you'll end up in serious trouble.*

face up to accept something and try to deal with it: *He was the only one who faced up to the problem.*

fade away disappear slowly: *To my amazement, the letters on the page slowly faded away.*

fall behind make less progress or be less successful than other people who are doing a similar job or activity: *I was off school for two months with my illness and I fell behind the others.*

fall behind move more slowly than other people so that you are behind them: *I got tired on the walk and gradually fell behind the rest.*

figure out be able to understand something or solve a problem or understand what someone is like and why they behave in the way they do: *We had to figure out the connection between the two events.*

fix up clean, repair or decorate something: *Why don't we try to fix up that old bike of yours?*

follow up check the health of someone who has received medical treatment in order to be certain that it was effective: *The study followed up over 200 heart patients.*

follow up try to find out more about something or do something more to deal with it *follow-up (n)*: *The police are now following up some new leads.*

get across make people understand something: *We've got to get the message across more clearly.*

get (a)round if news gets (a)round, a lot of people hear it: *The rumours got around town very quickly, didn't they?*

get down make someone feel sad or lose hope, start feeling sad or losing hope: *Doing the same thing every day can get you down.*

get in be elected for a political job: *If I get in, there'll be a few changes around here.*

get into become involved in a bad situation: *Craig started to get into crime while he was still at school.*

get into if a train, plane, etc gets into a place, it arrives there: *What time do we get into Norwich?*

get into start enjoying something or become enthusiastic about it: *It took me a while to get into this CD, but now I listen to it all the time.*

get off have a particular period of time as a holiday: *Will you get Easter off?*

get off not be punished severely or at all for something you have been accused of in court: *I can't believe he got off when there was so much evidence against him.*

get off send something, for example in the post: *I'll get those invitations off tomorrow.*

get over find a way to solve or deal with a difficult problem: *There are many hurdles still to get over before the new restaurant can open.*

get over start to feel happy or well again after something bad has happened to you, start to forget someone and feel happy again after a relationship has ended: *It can take weeks to get over an illness like that.*

get through finish dealing with some work, a subject, etc: *I've got a lot of work to get through.*

get through manage to deal with a difficult situation or stay alive until it is over: *How we got through it I'll never know.*

get through use or finish something: *We get through a litre of milk a day.*

get through (to) be connected to a place by telephone: *I tried calling him but I couldn't get through for some reason.*

get through (to) make someone understand what you are trying to say: *The teacher feels he is not getting through to some of the kids in his class.*

give in if you give in to something, you can no longer control the feeling of wanting it: *I finally gave in and had a cream cake.*

give in stop competing or arguing and accept that you cannot win: *In the end, I gave in and accepted that she was right.*

go astray become lost or go to the wrong place: *We went astray but soon found our way again.*

go down (well/badly) (with sb) produce a particular reaction: *The plan to put rents up has not gone down well with tenants.*

go in for choose something as a subject of study or as your career: *I'm going to go in for dentistry.*

go in for enjoy a particular thing or activity: *My dad doesn't really go in for parties.*

go off explode or be fired: *A bomb has gone off in the shopping mall.*

go off if food or drink goes off, it is no longer fresh: *Does this milk smell like it's gone off to you?*

go off leave a place, especially for a particular purpose: *Pete's just gone off to get some chewing gum.*

go off stop liking someone or something: *I've gone off peanuts, for some reason.*

go together if two or more things go together, they frequently exist together: *Why do poverty and crime seem to go together so often?*

go together if two things go together, they seem good, natural or attractive in combination with each other: *Do this skirt and this top go together?*

grow on if something or someone grows on you, you start to like them more: *I didn't like that painting at first, but it's growing on me.*

hang out lean out of a window so that the top part of your body is outside: *Don't hang out of the window or you'll fall!*

hang out spend time in a particular place or with particular people *hang-out (n)*: *We often just hang out at each other's houses.*

head off prevent someone from going somewhere by getting in front of them: *One police officer chased the robber while the other went to head him off.*

head off prevent something from taking place: *The UN has sent emergency aid into the area to head off a catastrophe.*

heat up make something hot; become hot: *Heat up the baby's milk, would you?*

hit back criticise someone who has criticised you: *The Minister hit back at his critics.*

hit back deliberately hurt someone who has hurt you: *If someone hits you, think before you hit back next time.*

hit upon discover something by chance: *She was scared he might hit upon the truth.*

hit upon suddenly have an idea: *They hit upon the idea of celebrating the occasion with a concert.*

hold back stop someone or something from moving forwards: *The police held back the crowd.*

keep up continue to do something: *I don't think I can afford to keep up my piano lessons.*

keep up move at the same speed as someone or something: *Dan walks so fast that it's not easy to keep up with him.*

key in put information into a computer or other electronic machine using keys or a keyboard: *All you have to do is key your details in and the computer does the rest.*

kick off (with) begin (with): *I'd like to kick off with a quick look at last month's sales figures.*

kill off destroy living things so that most or all of them are dead: *The pollution killed off all the fish in the lake.*

knock off stop working: *Do you want to knock off early tonight?*

knock/pull/tear down destroy a building or wall: *I see they've finally knocked the old factory down.*

knuckle down start working hard, especially when you should have done this earlier: *It's time for me to knuckle down and get this finished.*

lash out speak angrily to or against someone: *They lashed out at the council's move to stop free parking.*

lash out try to hit or attack someone suddenly and violently: *Occasionally the patients will lash out at the nurses.*

lay off end someone's employment, especially temporarily, because there is not enough work for them: *They've had to cut back production and lay off workers.*

lay off stop doing or using something, especially for a short period of time: *Lay off teasing your brother, Julie!*

laze around relax and enjoy yourself, doing no work: *I'm just planning to laze around this weekend.*

let on talk about something that is intended to be a secret: *He knows more than he lets on.*

lie ahead if something lies ahead, it is going to happen to you in the future: *A bright future lies ahead of him.*

liven up give something a more interesting appearance, taste or other quality: *You can liven up a plain shirt with a colourful scarf.*

liven up make something more interesting or exciting, or become more interesting or exciting: *What we needed was some music to liven things up.*

lock up lock all the doors and windows of a building so that no one can get in: *I must have forgotten to lock up when I left this morning.*

lock up put someone in a prison: *They should lock him up for a very long time, if you ask me.*

make into change someone or something so that they become something else: *It's as if my parents are trying to make me into the ideal student, so I'm under a lot of pressure.*

make out see, hear or understand someone or something with difficulty: *Can you make out a face here in the photograph?*

make out suggest, imply: *It's not as simple as some people make out.*

make over change or improve the appearance of someone or something *makeover (n)*: *They made over three contestants on the show. When they'd finished, they looked completely different.*

make up work at different times from usual because you have not worked enough at the normal times: *Sorry I'm late; I'll make up the time this evening.*

meet up come together with someone, either unexpectedly or as planned: *Why don't we meet up when I'm in Berlin, since it's not far from you?*

mess about/around behave in a silly way: *Mrs Evans asked the children to stop messing around.*

mess about/around spend time doing things in a relaxed way: *There's nothing I like better than messing about in the garden.*

mess up be the cause of someone's physical, emotional or mental problems: *Drugs really messed her up.*

mess up make a mistake or do something badly: *She says she completely messed up the interview.*

mess up make something dirty or untidy: *The wind had messed her hair up.*

mix up put things together without any order: *If you put different colas into different glasses and mixed them up, could you tell which was which?*

mix up think that one person or thing is another person or thing *mix-up (n)*: *I've only ever mixed the Hampson twins up once, but it was really embarrassing!*

mount up get much larger: *The costs are beginning to mount up.*

move in (with) start living in a different house or flat (with): *When he got divorced, John moved in with me.*

move on leave one place and travel to another: *My job means that I tend to stay in one city for a year or two and then move on.*

move on stop discussing or doing something and begin discussing or doing something different: *I think we should move on, or we'll never finish the meeting on time.*

move out permanently leave the house or flat where you live or the place where you have your business: *I hear you've finally moved out of your parents' place.*

move over change your position in order to make space for someone or something: *The woman moved over so that I could sit on the bench.*

mull over think carefully about something over a period of time: *They'll need time to mull over the proposals.*

open up make it easier to travel or do business in a country: *You'd be amazed at how much China has opened up since you were there.*

open up open a locked door, container or building: *When we opened the box up, we found a puppy inside.*

open up talk more about your personal feelings and experiences: *Henry doesn't find it easy to open up.*

opt out (of) decide not to take part in something or stop taking part in it: *Quite a few of the students have opted out of the school trip.*

paper over hide a problem or disagreement rather than finding a satisfactory solution to it: *Fundamental problems were papered over, not resolved.*

pass away/on die (used to avoid saying 'die' when you think this might upset someone): *He passed away in his sleep at the age of 84.*

pass on give someone something, for example a message, that someone else has given you: *When you've read this message, please pass it on.*

patch up become friends with someone again after a disagreement: *The meeting was intended to patch up relations between the two sides.*

patch up give basic medical treatment to someone who is injured: *The nurses managed to patch her up temporarily.*

patch up repair something, often quickly and not very well: *The road needs resurfacing, not just patching up.*

pay back give someone the same amount of money that you borrowed from them: *I'll be able to pay you back next week.*

pay out provide money from an amount invested over a period of time: *It'll be a few years before our investments start paying out.*

pay out spend or pay money, especially a lot of money: *We've paid out thousands of pounds in health insurance over the years.*

phase out gradually stop using something: *They're phasing out the old style driving licence.*

pick on keep treating someone badly or unfairly, especially by criticising them: *Why don't you pick on someone your own size?*

pick up go and meet someone or something that you have arranged to take somewhere in a vehicle: *I'll pick you up at twelve.*

pick up improve: *They won't let him out of hospital until his health has picked up quite a lot.*

pick up learn a new skill or start a habit without intending to: *I picked Chinese up when I was living there.*

piece together learn the truth about something by considering all the separate bits of information you have: *Detectives are still piecing together the circumstances surrounding the incident.*

pile up if something piles up or someone piles it up, the amount of it increases a lot: *The washing-up is beginning to pile up, so let's do it together.*

play up cause difficulties or pain for someone: *The printer's playing up again.*

play up if children play up or play someone up, they behave badly: *I'm exhausted! The children have been really playing up this afternoon.*

press ahead/on (with) continue doing something in a determined way, despite difficulties, opposition or interruptions: *They pressed ahead regardless of objections.*

prop up help a government, system, organisation, etc continue to exist, especially by providing financial or military support: *The US has been propping the government up in that country for years.*

prop up stop something from falling by putting something under it or against it: *I had to use some books to prop my desk up.*

pull over stop by the side of the road in a car or other vehicle: *Could you just pull over for a second?*

pull through manage to stay alive after you have been very ill or very badly injured: *Don't worry, your dad's going to pull through.*

pull through succeed in a very difficult situation, or help someone do this: *He said the support of his fans pulled him through.*

push around keep telling someone what to do in an unfair or unpleasant way: *You really shouldn't let her push you around like that.*

put across/over explain an idea, belief, etc in a way that is easy to understand: *Television can be a useful way of putting across health messages.*

put down to if you put something down to a particular reason, you think it has happened for that reason: *What do you put your success down to?*

put in fix something such as equipment in the place where it will be used and make it ready to use: *We're having air conditioning put in tomorrow.*

put in make an official request, claim, offer, etc: *Don't forget to sign the form when you put in your application.*

put in spend a particular amount of time doing something, or make a particular amount of effort in order to do something *input (n)*: *Bob's put in a lot of hard work on this project.*

put together choose people or things to form a team or group: *I'm putting together an expedition to the Andes.*

put together make something by joining all its parts: *How long did it take you to put that jigsaw together?*

put together produce or organise something using many different things: *I really enjoyed putting the exhibition together.*

put up build something such as a wall, fence or house: *Dad's putting a fence up around the garden.*

put up let someone stay in your house: *Yes, I can put you up for a few days.*

puzzle out solve a confusing or complicated problem by thinking carefully about it: *She seemed to be trying to puzzle out who the caller might be.*

read up (on/about) get information on a particular subject by reading a lot about it: *I need to read up on my British history.*

run down if an organisation or area is run down, its size, importance and activity is reduced *run-down (adj)*: *They've been running the factory down for the last five years.*

scrape through succeed in doing something, but not in a very impressive way: *He just managed to scrape through the entrance exam.*

seek out find someone or something by looking for them in a determined way: *The dogs are trained to seek out drugs.*

set down state officially how something should be done: *These conditions were set down by the United Nations.*

set down write something on a piece of paper so that it will not be forgotten and can be looked at later: *She set all these events down in her diary.*

set out start doing or working on something in order to achieve an aim *outset (n)*: *Did you set out to become a millionaire?*

set up build a structure or put it in a particular place: *Let's set the tent up over there.*

set up make a piece of equipment ready for use: *How do you set the pieces up at the start of a game of chess?*

shout down make it difficult to hear what someone says by shouting while they are speaking: *The Minister was shouted down as he tried to justify the government's decision.*

shrivel up become smaller and thinner than usual and not look fresh and healthy: *The leaves had shrivelled up in the summer heat.*

shrivel up become weaker or smaller in amount: *Funding for the project eventually shrivelled up.*

single out choose one person from a group for special attention: *The actor thanked everyone who had helped him and singled out his manager for special thanks.*

size up think carefully and form an opinion about a person or a situation: *He sized up the situation and then decided what to do.*

slip away leave secretly: *After an hour at the party, I managed to slip away without anyone noticing.*

slip up make a careless mistake *slip-up (n)*: *We can't afford to slip up this time.*

smarten up if you smarten up or smarten yourself up, you make yourself look tidy and clean: *I'm going to smarten myself up a bit before the meeting.*

smarten up improve the appearance of something, for example by cleaning or painting it: *This room needs smartening up.*

snow under if you are snowed under, you have too much of sth to deal with: *I'm snowed under with work at the moment.*

sound out try to find out someone's opinions, ideas, feelings, etc by talking to them: *The council decided to sound out local opinion.*

speak out state your opinion firmly and publicly about something, especially in order to protest against or defend something: *He had always spoken out in favour of women's rights.*

spread out if people in a group spread out, they move away from one another so that they cover a large area: *We've got more chance of finding him if we spread out.*

spring up appear or be produced suddenly and quickly: *A lot of cafés have sprung up around here lately.*

stand out be easy to see or notice because of being different: *His turquoise tie stood out against his black suit.*

stand out be much more impressive or important than others *outstanding (adj)*: *Germany stands out as the leader in environmental reporting.*

stand up to not allow yourself to be treated badly, especially by someone in authority: *Why don't you stand up to your boss a bit more?*

step aside leave a job so that sb else can take over: *The chairman stepped aside to allow a younger person to take over.*

step aside move so that sb can pass you: *We stepped aside to let someone in a wheelchair through.*

stop off visit somewhere before continuing to another place: *We can stop off at the bakery on the way to school.*

store up do something that will cause problems in the future: *If you ignore it, you're just storing up problems for the future.*

store up keep a lot of something so that you can use it later: *Squirrels store up nuts for the winter.*

summon up manage to produce a quality or a reaction that helps you deal with a difficult situation: *He couldn't summon up the strength to carry on fighting.*

switch on/off start/stop a machine/light/etc working: *It's boiling in here – switch the air conditioning on.*

swot up (on) study something very hard, especially for an examination: *I've got to swot up the French Revolution for tomorrow's test.*

take after look or behave like an older relative: *Doesn't she take after her mother?*

take apart separate an object into pieces: *I took my computer apart completely, but I still didn't find the problem.*

take away remove one number or quantity from another number or quantity: *If you take three away from five, you're left with two.*

take down separate a large structure into pieces: *After the play, we had to take down all the scenery.*

take down write down information or a statement: *The police took down my details.*

take in accept something as real or true: *He still hasn't really taken in his father's death.*

take in include something: *The tour takes in some incredible scenery.*

take in trick someone into believing something that is not true: *Don't be taken in by their promises.*

take in understand and remember something that you hear or read: *I'm not sure how much of his explanation she took in.*

take off become successful or popular very fast *take-off (n): The new design took off immediately.*

take off have a particular amount of time away from work: *Can I take next Friday off?*

take on accept some work or responsibility: *I can't take on any more work at the moment.*

take on start to employ someone: *We're not taking on any new staff at the moment.*

take out take someone to a place like a cinema or a restaurant and usually pay for them: *On my birthday, I took everyone out bowling.*

take over begin to do something that someone else was doing: *When Ivy got tired, I took over the driving.*

take over take control of something: *Whenever we start organising something, you always want to take over.*

take to begin to like someone or something: *I didn't take to living here straight away.*

take to start doing something as a habit: *I've taken to getting up much earlier.*

talk down to talk to someone as if you think they are not as clever or important as you are: *I hate the way Belinda talks down to people.*

talk over discuss a problem or a plan: *I know you're still angry; let's talk it over tonight.*

talk round discuss something in a general way and without dealing with the most important issues: *We're just talking round the problem at the moment; let's try to come up with some concrete solutions.*

talk round succeed in persuading someone to agree to something: *I'm sure I can talk her round.*

test out try using something such as a machine or product to find out whether it works correctly or is satisfactory: *I'm taking my new model aeroplane to the park to test it out.*

think over consider a problem or decision carefully: *Let's think over his proposal before we see him again.*

think through consider the facts about something in an organised and thorough way: *Have you had time to think things through?*

think up invent or imagine something, especially an excuse: *She'd have to think up a good reason for being late.*

throw out force someone to leave a place or group: *Charlie was thrown out of the Scouts.*

throw out get rid of something that you no longer want, for example by putting it in a dustbin: *Are you throwing these things out?*

throw out if someone in authority throws out a plan, proposal, etc they refuse to accept it: *The Minister threw out the proposed changes.*

throw up cause something such as dust or water to rise into the air: *As the helicopter landed, it threw up a lot of dust.*

throw up produce something new or unexpected: *The new rules have thrown up a few problems.*

tide over help someone to get to the end of a difficult period of time, especially by giving them money until they can get some more: *Could you lend me £50 to tide me over until pay day?*

tip up (of an object) have one end move upwards, especially because something heavy has been put at the other end: *The bench began to tip up when I sat on it.*

tip up turn a container upside down so that the things inside it come out: *I tipped the box up and emptied everything onto the table.*

touch up make a surface look better with small improvements: *Touch up the paintwork before you try and sell the house.*

turn into change or develop into something different: *The sofa turns into a bed, so you can stay with us, if you like.*

turn into make someone or something change or develop into something different: *Stop trying to turn me into someone I'm not!*

use up use all of a supply of something: *Did you use the butter up when you were making cakes?*

walk out leave a meeting, performance, etc before the end, usually because you are angry or bored: *I walked out halfway through the film.*

walk out suddenly leave a relationship, your family, your job, etc: *You can't just walk out like this!*

ward off do something to prevent someone or something from harming you: *Sheila carried a knife to ward off attacks.*

warm up prepare for a sport or activity by doing gentle exercises or practising just before it starts *warm-up (n): It's very important to warm up before you exercise.*

waste away gradually become thinner and weaker over a period of time, usually because of an illness: *He hadn't eaten properly for weeks and was starting to waste away.*

water down add water to a drink or liquid in order to make it less strong, dilute: *If it's too strong, water it down.*

water down make something such as a statement or newspaper article less offensive, powerful or detailed: *The editor watered my article down.*

wear down make someone gradually lose their energy or confidence: *This constant criticism at work is really wearing me down.*

wear down make something gradually disappear or become thinner by using or rubbing it: *These shoes are uncomfortable because the heel has worn down.*

wear out use something a lot so that it no longer works, or can no longer be used: *On my walking holiday, I wore out three pairs of boots.*

weigh down cause problems for someone or something or make someone worried: *The entire industry has been weighed down by economic uncertainty.*

weigh down make someone heavy and unable to move easily: *The waiters were weighed down by huge trays of food.*

while away spend time in a relaxed way when you have nothing else to do: *We whiled away the Saturday afternoon sitting by the lake.*

wind down end or finish something gradually: *The party started to wind down around two am.*

wind down gradually reduce work before stopping completely: *The factory will wind down production before closing next year.*

wind down relax after a period of excitement or worry: *It's hard to wind down after doing such a stressful job all day.*

write off damage a vehicle so badly that it is not worth repairing: *My uncle wrote his car off in an accident last weekend.*

write off decide that someone or something will not succeed and stop giving them your attention and energy *write-off (n): He felt hopeless; his teachers had written him off.*

Phrases, patterns and collocations database

about partly/mainly/all about, do sth about, about time, about to do

access (have/gain/provide) access to, Internet access, wheelchair access

account account for, (give) an account of, take into account, take account of, on account of, by all accounts, on sb's account

act act in good/bad faith, act out of desperation/ necessity, act the part/role of, act on sb's advice/ orders/behalf, put on an act, get your act together, in the act (of doing)

age act your age, (at/by/from) the age of, under age, school/working/etc age, with age, age limit, age bracket/group, (in the) Stone/Bronze/Iron Age

ages take/spend ages (doing), ages ago, seems/feels like ages (since)

answer answer to sb, give sb an answer, answer charges/criticisms, answer a need, answer sb's prayers, answer the description of, (have a lot to) answer for, in answer to

argument have / get into an argument (with sb), win/lose an argument, argument about/over, argument for/against, without (an) argument

arm arm sb with, arm yourself against, take up arms (against), lay down (your) arms, up in arms (about), arms control, arms race

art have/get sth down to a fine art, art of doing, art to doing, art deco, art form, art gallery, art house

ask ask yourself sth, ask sb a favour, ask a lot / too much (of sb), ask sb over/round, ask sb in, for the asking, asking for trouble/it/etc, if you ask me

associate associate sth with

authority have the authority to do, grant sb the authority to do, have authority over, have sth on good authority, in authority, with authority, the authorities, local authority

back back into sth, back onto sth, back sb (to do)

bad go bad, go from bad to worse, feel bad (about), bad for, bad at (doing), in a bad way, (in) bad faith, bad apple, bad blood

balance (hang) in the balance, strike a balance, upset/ alter/redress the balance, balance between/of, on balance, off balance

basis basis for, on a daily/temporary/etc basis, on the basis of/that

behaviour behaviour towards, pattern of behaviour, on your best behaviour, aggressive/antisocial/violent/ bad/ good/exemplary behaviour

belief express belief(s), belief in/that, contrary to popular belief, beyond belief, in the belief that, popular/widely held/widespread/firm/strong/growing belief

bend bend sth into (shape/a circle/etc), (go) round the bend, sharp/tight bend

best make the best of, do your best, (all) for the best, at best, at your best, to the best of my knowledge, to the best of sb's ability, the best of both worlds, best friend

bet bet (sth) on, make a bet (with sb), safe bet

better get better, get the better of, had better, (all) the better for, better than nothing, better luck next time, better off, better yet, for better or (for) worse, better half

big make a big thing out of, make it big, big on, big of sb (to do), great big, big business, big-headed, big-hearted, Big Bang, big name, big money, big game

block block sb's way, block of flats, apartment block, high-rise block, mental/writer's block

book read sb like a book, (do sth) by the book, book about/on, a closed book, an open book, in my book, in sb's good/bad books

born born to do, born on/in, born of, born into, born and bred, born-again, newborn

bottom come bottom, get to the bottom of, the bottom drops/falls out of, at the bottom (of), from the bottom of my heart, bottom line

brain pick sb's brain(s), rack your brain(s), the brains behind, brainless, brainchild (of), brainstorm, brainwash, brainwave

break break a habit, break with tradition, make the break (from), take/have/need a break, a welcome break from, lunch/tea/coffee break

brick bricks and mortar, brick wall, bricklayer

certain know/say for certain, certain to do, make certain, certain of/about, a certain (amount of sth)

chance take a chance (on), leave to chance, by chance, by any chance, the/sb's chances of (doing), the chance to do, second chance, last chance, pure/sheer chance, there's every/no chance that

change change from sth to, change sth into, change sth for, change for the better/worse, change your mind, change the subject, make a change, undergo a change

charge charge sb with, charge sb for, take charge, (put) in charge (of), overall charge

child as a child, only child, a child of, child abuse, childcare, child's play, child support

choice make a choice, exercise choice, have no choice, choice between, choice of, personal/parental/consumer choice, informed choice, wide choice, obvious choice

choose choose from, choose between, choose sb/sth as, choose sb/sth out of, choose to do, pick and choose, nothing/little to choose between

class class sb/sth as, social class, working/middle/upper class, ruling class, class system, class differences, class war

clean give sth a (good) clean, make a clean break, make a clean breast of, clean and tidy, a clean bill of health, a clean slate/sheet, clean sweep

clear make/get sth clear, make yourself clear, (have) a clear conscience, clear in your mind (about), clear as a bell, clear as mud, clear case (of), clear evidence/ indication

clock set a clock, watch the clock, against the clock, around the clock, clockwise, clockwork

come come to a conclusion/decision/etc, come to power, come into view, come as a shock/etc, come to do sth, come true

common have sth in common (with sb), common for sb/sth to do, common to, common language, the common people, common practice

conclusion bring sth to a conclusion, come to / arrive at / reach a conclusion, jump/leap to conclusions, in conclusion, conclusion of, logical conclusion, foregone conclusion

consequence accept/face the consequences, consequence of, serious/disastrous/dire consequences, as a consequence, in consequence, of no/little consequence

consideration take into consideration, give consideration to, show consideration for, under consideration, for sb's consideration, out of consideration for

course run its course, in/during the course of, in due course, on a course, course of action/events

crime commit/report/witness/solve a crime, fight/combat crime, the scene of a crime, organised crime, crime prevention, crime rate, crime wave

cry cry with pain/happiness/relief, cry over/about, cry for help, cry yourself to sleep, cry your eyes/heart out, cry on sb's shoulder, have a (good) cry, cry of, a far cry from

date date from, date back to, keep (sth) up to date, set/fix a date, go on / make a date (with sb), at a later/future date, to date

day make sb's day, day by day, from day to day, any day now, in this day and age, day off, day out, day trip

dead go dead, drop dead, dead (set) against (doing), in dead trouble, dead and buried, dead silence, dead centre, dead and gone, dead tired, dead ahead

deal deal in, deal with, deal a blow to, make a big deal (out) of, cut/make/reach/strike a deal (with), get/have a good deal (on), big deal, a good/great deal of

decide decide to do, decide against / in favour of, decide that, decide between, decide for yourself, decide on

delight delight in doing, take (great) delight in doing, to sb's delight, with/in delight

demand demand sth from sb, meet/satisfy a demand, make a demand, the demand for, in demand, on demand

deny deny sb sth, deny a request, deny that, deny doing, deny having done, deny (all) responsibility for

depth in depth, to/at a depth of, hidden depths, the depths of, out of your depth

dint by dint of

dirty do the dirty on, do sb's dirty work, get your hands dirty, give sb a dirty look, dirty word, dirty tricks

discussion (have a) discussion about/on, (have a) discussion with, discussion of, in discussion with, under discussion, heated discussion, discussion group

disposal waste disposal, at sb's disposal, at the disposal of

doubt doubt that, have your doubts about, cast doubt on, raise doubts, in doubt, doubt as to / about, beyond (any) doubt, (a) reasonable doubt, without a doubt, open to doubt

dream dream of/about/that, have a dream, a dream to, beyond your wildest dreams, a dream come true, in your dreams, like a dream

drive drive (your point) home, drive sb crazy/mad, drive sb to do sth, drive at sth

drop drop sth off sth, drop sth into/onto sth, drop sb at, drop a hint, drop sb (from a team)

eager eager to do, eager for, only too eager to do

effect have an/no/little/some effect (on), come into effect, put/bring sth into effect, adverse/beneficial effect, for effect, in effect, with effect from

end come to an end, bring sth to an end, put an end to, at/by the (very) end (of), no end in sight (to), at an end, (for) hours/weeks/etc on end, in the end

energy have/lack the energy to do, put/throw your energy into, nuclear energy, source of energy, energy needs, energy crisis

equal of equal size/quality/value, equal in size/quality/value, equal to, roughly equal (to), equal rights

erect erect (a statue/monument/etc) to sb, stand erect, erect posture

ever hardly ever, if ever, first/only/etc sth ever (to), bigger/better/etc than ever, as ever, ever since, forever/for ever

example make an example of, set an example, follow an example, give an example, an example of, classic/prime example

fall fall ill, fall into (a category), fall in love, fall into place, fall short, fall to pieces

family have/start a family, nuclear family, extended family, single-parent family, a family of, in the family, one of the family, family tree, family name, family values

fat get/grow fat (on), fat chance, a fat lot of good/help/use

feature feature sb/sth in, a feature of, distinguishing feature, safety features, feature film, feature writer

feel get/have a feel for, feel free, feel like (doing), feel as if/as though, feel strongly about, feel the effects/benefits of, feel guilty, feel your way, feel at home

find find yourself (doing), find sb doing, find sth difficult/interesting/etc, find your way

fine cut it fine, fine by sb, fine details/points, fine line between, with a fine-tooth(ed) comb, fine print

floor take/have the floor, ground/first/etc floor, floor show, floor plan, floorboard

fly fly a flag/kite, fly by, fly open, fly at

focus focus on, the focus of/for, in focus, out of focus, focus group, main/primary/major focus

fold fold sth in half/two, fold sth neatly/carefully, fold flat, fold your arms

follow follow sb's argument/etc, follow suit, follow sb's lead, follow sb's advice, as follows

force force sb to do, force sth on sb, force your way into/through, force a smile, with force, police force, armed forces

form form an impression of, take/assume the form of, fill in/out a form, in the form of, in good/bad form, application form

foundation lay the foundations of, have no foundation, without foundation, foundation course, foundation stone

free set sb free, let sb go free, free sb from, walk free, free to do, free from, free and easy, free time

fresh fresh from, fresh out of, fresh-faced, freshwater, fresh start, fresh air

friend make friends (with), close/good/great friend, old friend, friend of the family, family friend, circle of friends, friends with

generation the older/younger generation, generation gap, Generation X, future generations

get get going, get somewhere, get ill/angry/upset/etc, get sth wet/dirty/etc, get to do sth, get sb sth, get sth done, get sth doing

go go and do sth, go deaf/grey/crazy/bad/etc, go for days/weeks/etc (without sth), go hungry, go without, go to do sth

good good (for sb) to do, a good deal, a good many/few, good of sb to do, for sb's own good, no good, it's no good doing

grant grant sth to, grant sb permission/authority, grant a request, grant sb's wish

green green politics, green belt, (give sb) the green light, greenhouse, the greenhouse effect

guess guess at, guess that, guess right, take/make/hazard a guess (at), rough guess, lucky guess, wild guess, educated guess, at a guess

happen happen to do, it so happens that, as it happens

head head towards/for (a place), head a ball, head a committee/etc, head a list

health good/bad for your health, in good/poor health, ill health, health and safety, health hazard/risk, health centre, health club, health food, health service

high look/search high and low, high risk of, high priority, in high spirits, high finance, high time, on a high, a new/all-time/record high, high tech, high street

hours keep regular/late hours, work long hours, for hours (on end), (during) school/working/etc hours, at/until all hours, after hours, out of hours

house move house, on the house, housework, housekeeping, housekeeper, housewife, houseproud

human human behaviour, human being, human error, human nature, human race, human rights

ill fall / be taken ill (with), critically/seriously/terminally ill

impression have/give the (false) impression that, do an impression (of), create/make an impression (on sb), under the impression that, first impressions

impulse act on impulse, do sth on impulse, control/resist an impulse, an impulse to do

job get/find/take/do a job, a good job, leave/lose your job, make/do a good/bad job of, make the best of a bad job, have a job to do / doing, sb's job to do, out of a job, on the job, job losses

jump jump at the chance (to do), jump the queue, jump to conclusions, jump the gun

keen keen (for sb) to do, keen on, keen interest in

kind kind of sb to do, respond in kind, kind(s) of, of some/any kind, of a/the kind, kind regards

know know (sth) about, know sb/sth to be/do, know better, get/come to know, let sb know, in the know, know-how

large (as) large as life, at large, in large measure/part, larger than life, large-scale

laugh laugh at/about, laugh in sb's face, make sb laugh, have a good laugh, have the last laugh, don't make me laugh, for a laugh, a laugh a minute

law become law, break/follow/uphold the law, pass/amend/repeal a law, lay down the law, practise law, against the law, above the law, by/under law, law and order

lead lead sb into, lead the way, lead the world, lead sb to do, lead to/down/through, take/hold the lead, follow sb's lead, in the lead

leisure have the leisure to do, at your leisure, leisure centre, leisure pursuits, leisure time

length go to great/any/etc lengths, run the length (and breadth) of, of (un)equal length, in length, (for any) length of time, at (some/great) length

letter (get/receive) a letter from, send/write sb a letter, letter of, follow/obey sth to the letter, the letter of the law, letter bomb, letterbox

life put sb's life at risk, lose a life, bring sth to life, come to life, not on your life, save sb's life, take your own life, that's life, this is the life, quality of life

lightning thunder and lightning, a bolt/flash of lightning, struck by lightning, at lightning speed

like like (sb) to do, like doing, like it when, just like, anything/nothing like, it's not like sb to do, like crazy/mad, like so, something like

link link to, link sth/sb to/with, click on / follow a link, (find/prove/establish) a link between

live live a life of crime/luxury, live to the age of, can live with, live and let live, live and learn, live beyond/within your means, live in hope, live a lie, live to tell the tale

load load sth with/into, take a load off (your feet), a (whole) load of, loads of, a heavy load to bear/carry

lock lock sth in, lock horns with, under lock and key, locksmith

long take a long hard look at, at long last, long way, in the long run/term, long time no see, as/so long as, long-distance, all day/week/etc long

lot that's your lot, have a lot on, lots of, a lot of, an awful lot, a lot on your mind, the lot, sb's lot (in life)

love love to do, love doing, give/send your love to, (fall) in love (with sb), love for, true love, love at first sight, love affair, loved ones

luck push your luck, wish sb luck, trust to luck, bring you luck, the luck of the draw, a stroke/piece of luck, as luck would have it, in luck, with any luck

mark mark sth with/on, leave a mark on, burn/scratch/etc mark, the halfway mark, be quick/slow off the mark, hit/miss the mark

marriage (related) by marriage, marriage guidance, marriage vows, marriage of convenience

material material goods/possessions, material rewards, material resources, raw material(s)

matter a matter of, in a matter of (days, etc), no matter how, no matter what, to make matters worse, as a matter of fact/course/urgency, a matter of opinion, subject matter

medicine take medicine, alternative/complementary/herbal medicine, medicine cabinet

mental make a mental note (of/about), mental arithmetic, mental illness, mental age, mental health

metal precious metal, metal detector

mind make up your mind, cross/slip your mind, have/bear in mind, have a one-track mind, take your mind off, bring to mind, in two minds about, on your mind, state of mind, narrow/broad/open/absent-minded

misapprehension under the misapprehension that

moment take/be a moment, just/wait a moment, any moment (now), at the moment, at this/that moment in time, in a moment, the right moment (to/for), the moment of truth

money make/earn/spend/cost/etc money, get your money's worth, put your money where your mouth is, pay good money for, made of money, for my money

mother the mother of, mother country, mother-in-law, motherland, Mother Nature, Mother's Day, mother-to-be, mother tongue

move move it, get a move on, follow sb's every move, make a move, on the move

national in the national interest, national anthem, national costume/dress, national debt, national holiday

native go native, native to, a native of, native speaker, non-native speaker, native land, native species

natural completely/totally natural, natural causes, natural ability, natural resources, natural selection

nature the nature of, by nature, in nature, Mother Nature, human nature, second nature

near near to (doing sth), the near future, from near and far, a near thing, the nearest thing to, your nearest and dearest

need need (sb) to do, need do, need doing, meet a need, have no need of, in need (of)

never you never know, never again, never mind, never mind if/whether/etc, never ever, never-ending

new new to, brand new, whole new, good as new, new-look, new age

nice nice of sb (to do), nice for sb (to do), nice to sb, nice to meet/see sb, nice and warm/comfortable/clean, nice as pie, nice one

notice bring sth to sb's notice, come to sb's notice (that), escape sb's notice, take notice (of), at short / a moment's / a few hours' notice, until further notice

now now is the time to, from now on, for now, up to now, right now, now that, any day/moment/etc now, just now, every now and then/again, nowadays

odds the odds of doing, the odds are (that), the odds are in favour of/against, long odds, against all the odds

off have / take / be given the day off, have / take / be given time off, off work/college, off sick

office take office, run for office, public office, head office, office holder, office block, office hours, office party

old get/grow old, poor old, old age, old flame, old folk(s), old hand, old hat, old people's home, the Old Testament

on on time, on and on, on end, from now / that moment / then on, You're on!

opt opt for, opt to do

option have no option (but to do), consider your options, the option of doing, the option to do, keep/leave your options open

paper piece/sheet of paper, (present/write/etc) a paper on, (put sth) on paper, paper over (the cracks), not worth the paper it's written/printed on, paper round, paper qualifications, paperwork

pay pay dearly for, pay sb a compliment, pay your way, pay your (last) respects to, pay the penalty/price for, it pays to, pay rise, pay and display, pay freeze, take-home pay

peer peer group, peer pressure

pen put pen to paper, the pen is mightier than the sword, pen-pusher, pen friend/pal

person do sth in person, meet sb in person

perspective put into perspective, from another / a different / sb's / etc perspective, from the perspective of, in perspective, out of perspective, a sense of perspective

place change/swap places with, take the place of, take sb's place, put sth in(to) place, in place of, out of place, place of work, no place for

play play against/for, play at, play by yourself, play for time, play the fool, play sth by ear, at play

point point at/to/towards sth, get to the point, make a point of doing sth, make your point, miss the point, at some point, beside the point, up to a point, a sore point

polite polite to, polite of, just/only being polite, polite conversation, polite company, polite society

poor (come a) poor second, poor loser, poor girl/boy/etc, poor relation, a poor man's sth

power take/seize/hold/exercise/exert/wield/abuse power, in power, beyond sb's power, power to do, power struggle, power structure, power base

praise praise sb for doing, win/earn/deserve praise, full of praise for, in praise of

prefer prefer sth to, prefer (sb) to do, prefer doing, would prefer (that), would prefer it if

principle have principles, stand by / stick to your principles, principle of sth, principle that, in principle, a matter / an issue of principle, against sb's principles, set of principles

print print on, print in, in print, out of print

prison go to prison, send sb to prison, in prison, prison term, prison sentence, prison reform, prison officer, open prison

process the process of, in the process of doing, peace process, a process of elimination

provoke provoke sb into doing, provoke a reaction/ protest/response, provoke outrage

purpose serve a purpose, the purpose of doing, sb's purpose in doing, a sense of purpose, on purpose

quality high/good/top quality, poor/bad/low quality, personal qualities, leadership qualities, quality control, quality of life, quality time

question beg the question, raise the question (of), a/no question of, in question, out of the question, without question, beyond question, some question over / as to / about, awkward question

rain rain hard/heavily, pour with rain, heavy/light rain, rainbow, rainwater, caught in the rain

raise raise your hand, raise sth with sb, raise a child / family, raise doubts, raise sb's hopes/ expectations, raise a smile, raise your voice, raise an army

react react to, react by doing, react accordingly/appropriately, react with, react against

reaction cause/produce/provoke/trigger a reaction (to), reaction against, adverse/gut/immediate reaction, chain reaction

read read sb's mind, read sb like a book, read between the lines, read sb's lips, take sth as read, a good/depressing/etc read

reality escape from reality, face (up to) reality, become a reality, in reality, virtual reality, reality TV

record keep/maintain/compile a record (of), set/put the record straight, on record, on the record, off the record

relative it's (all) relative, relative to, close/near relative, distant relative, a relative of yours, relative clause/pronoun

respect respect sb for, respect sb as, gain/lose sb's respect, command/deserve/earn/win respect, treat sb with respect, with respect to, in this/that respect

response response to, in response to, response from, no response, response time

rest rest sth on/against, rest assured that, take/have a rest (from), get some rest, come to rest, at rest

rich rich in, filthy/stinking rich, rich and famous, (the) rich and (the) poor

right have a/the/no/every right to do, give sb the right to do, right and wrong, right in saying/thinking/believing, right (of sb) to do, equal rights, human rights, animal rights

risk risk sth on, risk doing, risk one's life, take a risk, run the risk of, put sth at risk, pose a risk to, the risk of, at the risk of doing

rule break/bend/follow the rules, against the rules, as a rule, rule of law, rule of thumb, rules and regulations

run run a business/campaign/etc, run riot, run on petrol/electricity/etc, run sb a bath, run through sth, run the risk of doing, run into problems

rush rush to conclusions, do sth in a rush, in a rush (to do sth), mad rush, rush hour, the Christmas/etc rush

say have your say, (have) the final say, go without saying (that), say the word, can't say fairer than that, say your piece, a horrible/stupid/strange/etc thing to say

second give/take sb a second to do, in a second, within seconds, seconds later, a split second

sense sense that, see sense, make sense (of), have the sense to, come to your senses, a sense of, in a/one sense, common sense

sentence sentence sb to, pass sentence, serve a sentence (of five years, etc), prison sentence, death sentence

shape shape sth into, take the shape of, take shape, in / out of shape, all shapes and sizes

share share with/between/among, share and share alike, share in/of, shareholder, share index, share option, share-out

sharp keep a sharp eye on, sharp rise/increase/drop/fall, sharp criticism, have a sharp tongue

short (run) short of, (have a) short temper/fuse, draw/get the short straw, make short work of, a short while/period/spell, at short notice, short and sweet, shortlist

sick call in sick, feel sick, make sb sick, sick as a parrot, worried sick, sick and tired (of), sick with fear/worry/etc, sick at heart, sick bag

side side with sb, take sides, see both sides (of an argument), look on the bright side, on the plus/minus side, by sb's side, on sb's side, on either side (of)

size that's about the size of it, cut sth to size, in size, full size, size of, downsize

small feel/look small, (it's a) small world, in a/some/no small way, with a small 'c'/etc, small change, small hours, small screen, small talk

smooth smooth the way for, smooth-talking, smooth sailing, smooth operator

social social conditions, social contact, social security, social services, social call, social worker, social club, social life

speak speak well/highly/badly/ill of, speak for yourself, speak your mind, speak out of turn, no sth to speak of, so to speak

speaking broadly/generally speaking, on speaking terms, speaking of, speaking as

start have/make a good/fine/bad/etc start, get off to a good/flying/head/bad/etc start, make a start (on/at), (right) from the start, for a start, (at/from the) start of, get (sth) started

steady steady yourself, steady your nerves, hold sth steady, steady relationship, steady growth, steady look, steady pace

straight set/put sb straight about, set/put the record straight, get/come straight to the point, get sth straight, think/see straight, straight talking, straight answer

style style sth/yourself as, style of, in style, out of style, with style

subject subject sb to, bring up / get onto a subject, drop/change the subject, subject to, the subject of, British subject

sun sun yourself, in the sun, sunbathe, sunlight, sunrise, sunset, sunshine

support support doing sth, support sb (financially), support an idea, support a team, offer support, in support of

surface on the surface, beneath/under the surface, surface area, kitchen surface

table set/clear/lay the table, table a proposal, etc, on the table, table manners, timetable

talk talk sb into / out of (doing), talk your way into / out of (doing), talk sense into, talk the same language as, have a talk (with), be all/just talk, the talk of, talk is cheap

taste develop/have a taste for, in good/bad taste, sense of taste, acquired taste

tell tell the truth / a lie, tell yourself (that), tell the difference (between), tell the time, tell it like it is, there's no telling, you're telling me, that would be telling

term in the long/short term, end of term, term of/in office, term time, prison/jail term, fixed term, long-/short- term

thin have a thin skin, skating on thin ice, out of / from / into thin air, thin on the ground, thin on top

threat pose a threat (to), face a threat, under threat, threat of, idle threat, bomb threat, death threat

time pass the time, spend time, make time, find the time, take time, in/on time, by the time, time after time, part-time, full-time, time frame, time limit

tool a tool for (doing), a tool of, toolbar, tool kit, tool box

top come out on top, sth gets on top of you, at the top of, on top (of), off the top of your head, on top of the world, top prize, top priority, top secret

tough get tough with, tough on, tough luck, tough love, tough guy

town town planning, the town of, the outskirts/edge of town, town centre

track keep track of, lose track of time/etc, on the wrong track, on track (to do)

treat treat cruelly/badly/fairly/unjustly, treat sb with, treat sb for, treat sb like, treat sb to, treat a/an illness/ disease/ patient/etc, in for a treat

turn turn to do sth, turn a gun/etc on sb, turn to sb, turn cold/nasty/etc, turn 40/etc

understanding come to / reach an understanding, have an understanding (with sb), an understanding of, on the understanding (that)

use use sth for (doing), use sth to do, use sth as, use sth properly, have many uses, in use, of (no) use, it's/ there's no use doing, what's the use of doing?

view view sth as, take the view that, take a dim/poor view of, come into view, in view of, with a view to, view on/ about/that, in sb's view, viewpoint, point of view

want want (sb) to do, want sth done, for want of

way get in sb's way, know the way, lose your way, get sth out of the way, make way for, in the way, on the way, in this way, a way of doing, by the way

weak weak at the knees, weak on, on weak ground, weak argument, weak point/spot, weak-willed

weather good/bad/etc weather, freak weather, in all weathers, under the weather, weather forecast, weatherproof

web surf the Web, on the Web, website, web page, webcam, World Wide Web, webmaster, weblog (blog)

wedding wedding anniversary, wedding cake, wedding ceremony, wedding dress, wedding invitation, wedding ring, wedding present

wheel take the wheel, at/behind the wheel, on wheels, wheel of fortune

wind light/strong wind, gust of wind, in the wind, winds of change

window window-shopping, window dressing, out (of) the window, a window on/onto/into

word put in a (good) word for sb, (have) a word with sb (about), spread the word, put words in sb's mouth, give/say the word, from the word go, word of mouth, in other words

work work on/in/with/as/at/for, work like magic, work both ways, work a treat, work wonders, work your way (through/around), at work, out of / in work, piece of work

worse get worse, make matters/things worse, (take a turn) for the worse, worse for wear

worst do your worst, fear the worst, be your own worst enemy, if (the) worst comes to (the) worst, at worst, the worst of all/both worlds

write write for a magazine/etc, have sth / be written all over your face, nothing to write home about, writer's block

year years of age, years old, year on year, for years, not/never in a million years, leap year

Idioms database

a drop in the ocean a very small amount that will not have much effect: *The cost of a hotel for one night is a drop in the ocean for a big company like that.*

a home from home a place where you feel as relaxed as you do in your own home: *Everyone knows me at this hotel so it's a real home from home.*

a leopard can't change its spots used for saying that someone will never change their behaviour or character: *Jimmy says he's changed, but a leopard can't change its spots, you know.*

a sight for sore eyes someone or something that you are very pleased to see: *You're a sight for sore eyes! Thank goodness you're here!*

a stitch in time (saves nine) used for saying that it is better to solve a problem now, rather than leave it until later when it may be more difficult to deal with: *If there's a problem with your car, it's better to get it looked at now. You know what they say: 'a stitch in time ...'*.

a stone's throw (away/from) very close (to): *Where we live is only a stone's throw from the park.*

Achilles' heel a weak feature of someone or something that could cause failure or be attacked: *She's an extremely talented politician, but her Achilles' heel may be her inability to prioritise.*

add fuel to the fire make a bad situation worse: *Your refusing to discuss this with Colin is just adding fuel to the fire, in my opinion.*

all in good time used for telling someone to wait for something and not try to make you hurry: *You'll get the report when it's finished. All in good time!*

all mod cons all modern conveniences, the machines and pieces of equipment in your house that make life easy and comfortable: *I'd quite like to move to a place that has all mod cons.*

an act of God an event such as a flood, lightning or an earthquake that is produced by natural forces, and that people have no control over: *The insurance doesn't cover acts of God.*

as the crow flies in a straight line (used for measuring distance): *It's about 200 miles as the crow flies.*

at a loose end with nothing in particular to do: *If you're at a loose end this weekend, why don't we get together?*

at the drop of a hat immediately or in a way that shows that you have no doubts about doing something: *Let me know if you need help and I'll be there at the drop of a hat!*

be born with a silver spoon in your mouth have advantages because you come from a rich family: *I've always had to work hard because I wasn't born with a silver spoon in my mouth.*

be on the same wavelength understand the way another person thinks because you often have the same ideas and opinions they do: *It was a difficult meeting because David and I didn't seem to be on the same wavelength.*

before your time used for saying that something happened or existed before you were born or before you lived or worked somewhere: *When I was a girl, we didn't have mobile phones. That was before your time, of course.*

below/under par below the usual or expected standard: *Your essays have been a bit below par recently. Is anything wrong?*

big mouth used as a criticism of someone when they say things they should not: *Don't tell Jamie anything you want to remain secret – he's got a big mouth!*

blot on the landscape something that makes a place look less attractive, for example an ugly building: *Many people in the town think that the old factory is a blot on the landscape.*

break even if a person or business breaks even, they neither make a profit nor lose money: *We didn't make a profit last year, but we did break even.*

break the mould change a situation by doing something that is very different from what most people usually do or have done in the past: *I thought her last movie really broke the mould.*

bury your head in the sand ignore a problem or an unpleasant situation and hope that it will disappear: *We shouldn't just bury our heads in the sand and hope that this problem goes away.*

change your tune change your opinion or attitude: *Tom often criticised Nadia until he met her, but now he's changed his tune.*

clean as a whistle completely honest or legal: *I'm not worried about the tax inspection. This company's accounts are clean as a whistle.*

clean as a whistle extremely clean: *My mum's coming to visit tomorrow so I want the house to be as clean as a whistle when she gets here.*

come clean (about sth) tell the truth about something that you have kept secret: *You'd better come clean and tell Mum it was you who broke the flowerpot.*

come rain or shine used for saying that something always happens or someone always does something despite bad weather or difficult conditions: *I'm determined to finish building the house by the end of the month, come rain or shine.*

commuter belt area surrounding a large city where many people who work in that city live: *Towns in the commuter belt often seem to lack character.*

concrete jungle unpleasant part of a city where there are a lot of ugly buildings close together: *Where we used to live was a bit of a concrete jungle.*

couch potato someone who spends a lot of time sitting at home watching television: *I've become a bit of a couch potato since I stopped playing football.*

cry over spilt milk waste time feeling upset about something bad that has happened and cannot be changed: *I know your CD player's broken, but there's no point crying over spilt milk, is there?*

do sth on a whim do because of a sudden feeling that you must have or do something: *Wendy decided on a whim to redecorate the whole house.*

down on your luck having a long period of difficulty finding work and earning money: *The man was obviously down on his luck, so I gave him a little money.*

draw the line (at) say that you will definitely not allow or accept something: *I don't mind you asking if you can borrow some money, but I draw the line at you taking it out of my purse without asking first.*

draw the short straw be chosen to do something unpleasant: *Somebody has to stay home to look after the dog, and I'm afraid you've drawn the short straw.*

fall short not reach a particular level or to fail to achieve something you were trying to do: *We tried to raise 1,000 euros for charity, but we fell short by about 50 euros.*

fifty-fifty equal, or into two equal parts: *We split the cost of the meal fifty-fifty.*

fly off the handle suddenly become extremely angry without a good reason: *Whatever she says, don't fly off the handle. Stay calm!*

follow your nose do what you feel is right in a particular situation, although you are not certain: *The detective had learned to follow his nose in situations like this.*

follow your nose go straight forward, without turning: *Once you go past the traffic lights, just follow your nose.*

for good permanently, without the possibility of change in the future: *Have Don and Jenny split up for good, do you think, or is it only temporary?*

for the time being for now: *I'm staying in rented accommodation for the time being, but hope to buy a place early next year.*

from time to time sometimes, but not often: *We see Brian from time to time, but not regularly.*

gain/get/have/take the upper hand gain/get/have/take control or advantage over a person or situation: *It looked like Ivor was going to win the game, but I soon got the upper hand.*

get on like a house on fire become good friends very quickly and have a lot to talk to each other about: *George and Isabelle seem to be getting on like a house on fire, don't they?*

get sth off your chest talk to someone about something that has been worrying you, so that you feel better about it: *It feels such a relief to have got this off my chest.*

get the wrong end of the stick understand something completely wrongly: *Don said he was going to France and I got the wrong end of the stick and thought he was moving there for ever.*

get/catch sb's drift understand the basic meaning: *Doreen and I have been having some problems recently, if you catch my drift.*

get/have your way be allowed to have or do what you want: *If I had my way, I would stay at home this summer.*

give sb a taste/dose of their own medicine treat someone in the same bad way they treat other people: *He got me into trouble, so I'm going to give him a taste of his own medicine!*

give sb your word promise to do something: *I give you my word I won't tell anyone.*

give sth a miss decide not to do something that you usually do: *I think I'll give the office party a miss this year.*

go halves share the cost of something with someone so that you each pay 50%: *Let's go halves on the meal, shall we?*

go to your head if success goes to your head, it makes you think that you are better or more important than you really are: *I hope getting that scholarship doesn't go to Carol's head.*

grin and bear it accept a difficult situation without complaining or showing how you feel: *An author just has to grin and bear it when a book gets a bad review.*

have a change of heart change your opinion about something or decide not to do something you were planning to do: *William's had a change of heart and decided not to go to university after all.*

have green fingers be good at growing plants: *My wife's always had green fingers, whereas I don't know anything about growing plants.*

have time on your hands have more time available than you need: *Julie has a lot more time on her hands now that her children have all left home.*

have your wits about you be able to think quickly and make sensible decisions: *You've got to have your wits about you when dealing with pushy salespeople.*

(hear sth) on/through the grapevine the way in which information spreads quickly from one person to another through conversation: *I heard through the grapevine you might be getting married soon.*

home sweet home used for saying that you are happy to be back in your own home: *It was a good trip, but there's nothing like home sweet home.*

in/for donkey's years an extremely long time: *I haven't been swimming in donkey's years.*

in sb's bad/good books used for saying that someone is annoyed/pleased with you: *I don't think I'm in Mrs Patterson's good books at the moment.*

in the dark (about) not knowing very much about something, because other people are keeping it secret from you: *The Prime Minister kept even his closest colleagues in the dark about when he would call a general election.*

in the middle of nowhere a long way from any town or city: *The car broke down and we realised we were in the middle of nowhere.*

in the nick of time just in time to prevent something bad happening: *The swimmers were rescued in the nick of time.*

in the sticks in an area far from the town or city: *I don't think I could live so far out in the sticks.*

it's as broad as it's long used for saying that you cannot choose between two things or actions because they are equal: *It's as broad as it's long whether we get there on Saturday night or on Sunday morning.*

keep a straight face remain serious and not laugh: *I couldn't keep a straight face when I saw Mike's new haircut.*

keep sb posted regularly give someone information about something they are interested in, for example how a situation is changing or developing: *Do please keep me posted about any developments.*

keep sth under your hat keep something secret: *Keep it under your hat, but we're thinking of buying a new house.*

keep up with the Joneses try to be as rich, successful, etc as your neighbours: *I don't need a new car, and I'm really not interested in keeping up with the Joneses.*

keep your hair on used for telling someone not to get angry or upset: *Keep your hair on! There's no need to get annoyed!*

kick yourself be very annoyed because you have made a mistake, missed an opportunity, etc: *I could have kicked myself when I realised I'd left my wallet in the restaurant.*

knee-high to a grasshopper very small, because you were very young: *When I was knee-high to a grasshopper, I used to believe that a monster lived under my bed.*

know sth inside out be very familiar with: *Maria's been in the business for years and she knows advertising inside out.*

know what's what know the important facts about a situation: *Ask Tony about the proposed changes. He knows what's what.*

last word in the newest and best type of something: *The ZD-2000 is the last word in mobile phones.*

lay/put your cards on the table tell people exactly what you are thinking or what you are intending to do: *I'm going to lay my cards on the table and offer you an extra £1,000. But that's my final offer!*

let nature take its course allow something to develop without trying to influence it: *I'm sure sales will improve if we just let nature take its course.*

let off steam shout or do something that allows you to get rid of anger: *I was so annoyed I had to go for a long walk to let off steam.*

let sleeping dogs lie leave a person or situation alone if they might cause you trouble: *I know you think your parents are being unfair, but it's probably best to let sleeping dogs lie and not make it worse by arguing.*

let your hair down relax and enjoy yourself because you are in a comfortable environment: *It's good to let your hair down after a hard week at work.*

life and soul of the party someone who is very lively at social events: *Harry's so much fun and everyone says he's the life and soul of the party.*

like two peas in a pod used for saying that two people look, behave or think exactly the same: *Irene and her sister are like two peas in a pod.*

line your pocket(s) obtain money, especially by acting dishonestly: *He'd been lining his pockets for years before he was finally caught.*

live and let live used for saying that you should accept other people's beliefs and way of life, even if they are very different from your own: *I don't agree with what he's doing, but live and let live, I say.*

lock, stock and barrel including every part of a particular thing, situation, place, etc: *They've sold all their possessions, lock, stock and barrel.*

lose your bearings become confused about where you are and where other things are: *I lost my bearings for a moment, but then realised where I was.*

make a beeline for go towards someone or something in the quickest and most direct way: *As soon as we arrived at the hotel, Molly made a beeline for the manager to complain.*

make yourself at home feel relaxed and behave in the same way as you do in your own home: *Charles will be down in a moment, so please make yourselves at home.*

never/don't look a gift horse in the mouth if you are given something good, you should not complain about it or try to find things that are wrong with it: *The flat wasn't in very good condition, but we were staying there rent-free, and you should never look a gift horse in the mouth, should you?*

no rhyme or reason used for emphasising that there is no reason or explanation for something: *There seems to be no rhyme or reason for the decision.*

not have a leg to stand on not have any way of proving that you are right about something: *George tried to argue that the world was flat, but of course he didn't have a leg to stand on.*

not see the wood for the trees used for saying that someone cannot understand what is important in a situation because they are thinking too much about small details: *Many people can't see the wood for the trees when talking about joining the eurozone; they just think about what's on the notes and coins and don't think about the economic benefits.*

off the beaten track away from populated areas or areas popular with tourists: *We like to get off the beaten track when we go on holiday.*

on good terms (with) have a good relationship with someone: *When I left the job, I was still on good terms with everyone in the office.*

on the spur of the moment if you do something on the spur of the moment, you do it suddenly and do not take time to plan it or think carefully about it: *We booked the holiday on the spur of the moment. We hadn't been planning to take a break at all this summer.*

on the street with no place to live: *Life is hard on the street.*

on the town spending the evening enjoying yourself in bars, clubs, theatres, etc: *Did you go out on the town on your birthday?*

once in a blue moon very rarely: *To be honest, I only go to museums once in a blue moon. I just don't have time usually.*

out of the blue happening in a way that is sudden and unexpected, and does not seem connected with anything that happened before: *Then, suddenly, out of the blue, she said she wanted a divorce.*

out of this world extremely good or impressive: *The food at that restaurant is out of this world!*

over the top more than what is considered normal or suitable: *Don't you think spending 500 euros on a pair of shoes was a bit over the top?*

pride of place in the place that is most central or important: *This stamp's extremely rare, and takes pride of place in my stamp collection.*

pull (a few) strings use your influence in order to get something you want or to help someone, especially when this is unfair: *I don't think it's fair to pull strings in order to get a job.*

put sth in perspective provide a sensible way of judging how good, bad, important, etc something is in comparison with other things: *My illness has certainly put everything else in perspective.*

put two and two together guess what is happening or what something means based on what you have seen or heard: *He didn't tell us he was retiring, but we could all put two and two together.*

put your feet up sit down and relax, especially with your feet raised off the ground: *Put your feet up and I'll make dinner.*

quick/slow on the uptake taking a very short/long time to understand or realise something: *I'm sure Chad understood what you were suggesting; he's very quick on the uptake.*

recharge your batteries rest after being very busy, so that you will be ready to start working again: *Why don't you take a week off work to recharge your batteries?*

red tape documents, rules or processes that cause delays: *Is there a lot of red tape involved in getting a passport?*

reinvent the wheel waste time and effort trying to do something that someone else has already done well: *Just use the same document you used last time, because there's no point reinventing the wheel.*

ring a bell something that rings a bell sounds familiar to you, although you cannot remember the exact details: *The name rings a bell but I'm not sure if I've ever met her.*

round the bend crazy: *That noise is driving me round the bend!*

satellite town town or city that is close to and depends on a larger city: *Brentwood is a satellite town just outside London.*

sb is only human used for saying someone has been weak in the ways most people are weak and should not be blamed for their behaviour: *I'm sorry I made a mistake, but I'm only human.*

see eye to eye (with sb) agree with someone or have the same opinion as them: *Imogen and I have never really seen eye to eye.*

set your heart on decide that you want something very much: *I had set my heart on getting married on the beach, but the bad weather meant we couldn't.*

six of one (and) half a dozen of the other used for saying that two things are equally good or bad: *We could get there on Saturday night or Sunday morning; it's six of one and half a dozen of the other, really.*

speak volumes provide a lot of information, especially in an indirect way: *What he said to Mandy speaks volumes about the way he treats his staff.*

split hairs argue or worry about very small details or differences that are not important: *Whether you call them 'terrorists' or 'freedom fighters' is just splitting hairs – the point is that they're killing people!*

steal the show receive a lot of attention because you give the best performance in a show or other event: *There was one comedian who really stole the show. She was fantastic!*

stick to your guns refuse to change what you are saying or doing despite the opposition or criticism of other people: *I admire Kelly for the way she always sticks to her guns.*

stop dead in your tracks suddenly stop, for example because you are surprised: *When I heard the gunshot, I stopped dead in my tracks.*

take a short cut to follow a path that is quicker and shorter than the usual way: *I walked to school and I used to take a short cut along the canal.*

take stock (of) spend some time thinking about the situation you are in before you decide what to do next: *Let's take a couple of days to take stock of the situation and then we'll make a decision.*

take the law into your own hands punish someone in your own way without involving the police or the courts, often by doing something illegal yourself: *I know you're angry, but that's no reason to take the law into your own hands.*

take the scenic route follow a longer path than the usual one because it is more attractive: *We're not lost – we're just taking the scenic route.*

tell tales tell someone in authority about bad things that someone else has done, because you want them to be punished: *Toby, stop telling tales about your classmates.*

the edge over an advantage that makes someone or something more successful than other people or things: *Our product's got the edge over the competition because it's so lightweight.*

the luck of the draw used for saying people have limited control over what life brings them: *I never wanted to become a butcher, but I guess that's the luck of the draw.*

the other day recently: *There was an interesting item on the news the other day.*

the powers that be the people who control a situation: *I don't know if the powers that be will agree to that.*

the tools of the trade the skills and equipment that you need in order to do your job: *A good bedside manner is one of the tools of the trade for a doctor.*

throw the book at sb punish someone very severely: *They'll really throw the book at him this time.*

tidy sum/amount large sum/amount: *I've managed to put away a tidy sum this year.*

touch wood used when you have said that you have had good luck in order to prevent bad luck from happening to you: *I'll find a new job before too long, touch wood.*

turn over a new leaf change your life by starting to be a better person or stopping a bad habit: *Ralph seems to have turned over a new leaf this term.*

under sb's thumb completely controlled by someone else: *I became self-employed because I was sick of being under someone's thumb.*

up in arms about angry and complaining about something: *Everyone in the office is up in arms about having to work next weekend.*

variety is the spice of life used for saying that different experiences and situations make life enjoyable or interesting: *I do a million different things at work, but I suppose variety is the spice of life.*

your flesh and blood your relative: *My family is very important to me because, after all, they're my flesh and blood.*

Word formation database

access accessibility, (in)accessible

act enact, react, counteract, interact, transact, overact, overreact, (de/re)activate, acting, actor, actress, action, (in)activity, radioactivity, transaction, activist, activism, interaction, (over)reaction, overacting, reactionary, reactor, transactional, active, hyperactive, radioactive, overactive, (in)active(ly)

adapt adaptation, adaptor, adaptable

add addition, addendum, addenda, additive, additional(ly)

adequate (in)adequacy, inadequate, (in)adequately

adjust readjust, adjustment, adjustable

admire admiration, admirer, admirable, admirably, admiring(ly)

aggression aggressiveness, aggressor, aggressive(ly)

alter alteration, unalterable, unaltered, alternate, alternative

analyse analysis, analyst, analytic(al), analytically

antique antiquity, antiquated

appear disappear, reappear, (dis/re)appearance, apparition, apparent(ly)

apply reapply, misapply, applicant, application, (in)applicability, (in)applicable, (mis)applied

appreciate appreciation, appreciable, appreciably, (un)appreciative(ly)

approve disapprove, (dis)approval, (dis)approved, (dis)approving(ly)

architect architecture, architectural(ly)

argue argument, argumentative(ly), (un)arguable, arguably

arrange rearrange, (re)arrangement, arranged

art arts, artfulness, artificiality, artist, artiste, artistry, artlessness, artwork, artifact/artefact, artifice, arty, artistic(ally), artificial(ly), artful(ly), artless(ly)

assess reassess, (re)assessment, assessor, assessed

associate dissociate, association, associate, associated

assume assumption, assuming, unassuming, assumed

attach reattach, attachment, (un)attached

available (un)availability, unavailable

avoid avoidance, (un)avoidable, unavoidably

awe awfulness, awesomeness, awestruck, awful(ly), awesome(ly)

believe disbelieve, belief, disbelief, (un)believer, (un)believable, disbelieving, unbelievably

benefit beneficiary, beneficial(ly)

brief debrief, (de)briefing, brevity, briefs, briefly

brilliant brilliance, brilliantly

broad broaden, breadth, broadly

capable capability, incapable, capably

cause causation, causal, causative

change exchange, changeover, (un)changing, (un)changeable, interchangeable

character characterise, characterisation, (un)characteristic, characterless

charity charitableness, (un)charitable, (un)charitably

choose chose, chosen, choice, choosy

class outclass, (de)classify, classics, classifieds, classification, classlessness, classmate, classroom, classwork, classic, classy, classless, (de)classified, classical(ly)

collect collector, collection, collectable, collected, collective(ly)

come overcome, comeback, newcomer, outcome, income, coming, oncoming, incoming

compete competition, competitor, competitiveness, (un)competitive(ly)

conceive conceptualise, concept, conception, conceptual, (in)conceivable, (in)conceivably

confuse confusion, confused, confusing(ly)

connect disconnect, reconnect, interconnect, connector, (dis/re)connection, (inter)connecting, (un/dis/inter) connected

conserve conservation, conservationist, conservatism, conservative(ly)

consider consideration, considered, considering, (in)considerable, considerably

content (dis)contentment, discontent, (dis)contented

continue discontinue, continuity, continuation, continual(ly), continuous(ly)

convert conversion, convertible

convince conviction, (un)convinced, (un)convincing(ly)

crime (de)criminalise, criminal, criminality, criminally

decide decision, decider, decisiveness, deciding, (in)decisive(ly)

declare declaration, (un)declared

deep deepen, depth, deeply

define definition, defined, definitive(ly), (in)definite(ly)

dense density, densely

depend (in)dependence, dependant, dependency, depending, dependable, (in)dependent(ly)

derive derivation, derivative

desire (un)desirable, desirous, desired, (un)desirably

destroy destroyer, destruction, indestructible, destructive(ly)

distant (equi)distance, equidistant, (equi)distantly

do overdo, outdo, redo, undo, (over/out/re/un)did, (over/out/re/un)done, doing, doings

dominate domineer, domination, (pre)dominance, dominant, domineering, dominating, predominant(ly)

doubt doubter, doubtful(ly), undoubted(ly), doubtless

draw withdraw, withdrew, drew, drawn, withdrawal, drawing, overdraft, overdrawn, withdrawn

duty dutiful(ly)

ecology ecologist, ecological(ly)

edit edition, editor, editorship, (un)edited, editorial(ly)

effect (in)effectiveness, (in)effectual, (in)effective(ly)

electric electrify, electrician, electricity, electrified, electrifying, electrical(ly)

elude elusiveness, elusive(ly)

employ (un)employment, underemployment, employer, employee, (un)employed, underemployed, (un)employable

end ending, unending, endless(ly)

endure endurance, (un)endurable, enduring

envy (un)enviable, (un)enviably, envious(ly)

erode erosion

erupt eruption

event eventuality, (un)eventful, eventual(ly)

evolve evolution, evolutionary, evolving

example exemplify, exemplification, exemplary

exclaim exclamation, exclamatory

expect expectation, expectancy, expectant(ly), (un)expected(ly)

explain explanation, explanatory, unexplained, (in)explicable, inexplicably

express expression, expressiveness, expressionism, expressionist, expressive(ly), expressionless(ly), expressly

extend extent, extension, (un)extended, extensive(ly)

extinct extinction

familiar familiarise, (un)familiarity, unfamiliar, familiarly

favour favouritism, favourite, (un)favourable, (un)favourably

finite infinity, infinitive, infinite(ly), infinitesimal(ly)

flexible (in)flexibility, inflexible

fold enfold, unfold, folder, (un)folding, foldaway

fortune misfortune, (un)fortunate(ly), fortuitous(ly)

fruit fruitfulness, fruitlessness, fruition, fruitful(ly), fruitless(ly)

future futurist, futuristic(ally)

go undergo, underwent, undergone, for(e)go, for(e)went, for(e)gone, ongoing, outgoing

good goods, goodness, goodwill, goody/goodie

govern misgovern, government, governor, governess, governing, governmental, ungovernable

hand handle, handler, handling, handout, handover, handful, handmade, underhand, handy

hard harden, hardship, hardness, hardy, hardly

hear overhear, hearing, hearsay

high heighten, highlight, height, Highness, heightened, highbrow, highly

history historian, historic, historical(ly)

house housing, household(er), houseful

human humanise, humanity, humanism, humanist, humanities, humanitarian, humane, humanly

ideal idealise, idealism, idealisation, idealist, idealistic, idealised, ideally

illusion disillusion, disillusionment, disillusioned, illusory

imagine imagination, imaginings, imaginary, (un)imaginative(ly)

imitate imitation, imitator, imitative, inimitable

imply implicate, implication, implicit(ly)

impress impression, (un)impressiveness, impressionism, impressionist, (un)impressed, impressionable, impressionistic, (un)impressive(ly)

improve improvement, improvable, improved

incident incidence, coincidence, incidental(ly), coincidental(ly)

indicate indication, indicator, indicative

individual individualise, individualisation, individuality, individualist, individually

influence influential

inhabit inhabitant, habitat, habitation, habitable, (un)inhabitable, (un)inhabited

inherit inheritance, heritage, heredity, hereditary

insist insistence, insistent

instinct instinctive(ly)

institute institutionalise, institution, institutional, institutionalised

intend intention, (un)intended, (un)intentional(ly)

intimate intimacy, intimately

job jobbing, jobless

judge judg(e)ment, judiciary, judiciousness, judicious, judicial, judg(e)mental, judiciously

know acknowledge, knowledge, acknowledgement, knowledgeable, acknowledged, (un)known, knowing

land landing, landed, landless

large enlarge, enlargement, largely

last outlast, lasting, everlasting, lastly

leisure leisured, leisurely

logic (il)logical(ly)

long prolong, lengthen, length, longevity, longhand, longing(ly), longwinded, lengthy, prolonged, lengthways, lengthwise

lot allot, allotment

loyal (dis)loyalty, disloyal, (dis)loyally

magnify magnificence, magnification, magnificent(ly), magnifying

major majority, majorette

manage mismanage, manager, manageress, (mis)management, (un)manageable, mismanaged, managerial, managing

manufacture manufacturer, manufacturing

match matchmaker, matchmaking, matchstick, matchwood, matchbook, matchbox, matching, unmatched, matchless

material materialise, materialism, materialistic, immaterial, materially

mature (im)maturity, maturation, immature

mean meaning, meaninglessness, meaningless, meaningful(ly)

metal metallic, metallurgy

might mighty, mightily

minor minority

mobile (im)mobilise, (im)mobility, mobilisation, immobile

modern modernise, modernisation, modernism, modernity, modernist

moment momentous, momentary, momentarily

moral moralise, demoralise, (im/a)morality, moralist, morale, (im/a)moral, (im/a)morally

motion motionless

motive (de)motivate, (de)motivator, (de)motivation, (de)motivating, motivational

mount surmount, mountain, mountaineer(ing), (in)surmountable, mountainous

move mover, movement, (im)movable, moving

mystery mystify, mystification, mysterious(ly)

neglect negligence, negligible, negligibly, negligent(ly), neglectful(ly)

new renew, renewal, newness, renewable, newly, anew

object objective, objection, objectivity, objector, (un)objectionable, objectively

observe observation, observance, observer, observatory, observable, observant, observably

obsess obsession, obsessed, obsessive(ly)
occur recur, occurrence, recurrence, recurring, recurrent
office officiate, official(dom), officer, officious, (un)official(ly)
opinion opinionated
parent parenting, parentage, parenthood, parental(ly)
pass passage, (im)passable, passing
patient patience, impatient, (im)patiently
pay overpay, underpay, repay, overpayment, underpayment, repayment, payback, payee, payer, payload, payoff, payout, payroll, payslip, overpaid, underpaid, payable
perceive perception, perceptiveness, (im)perceptible, (im)perceptibly, perceptive(ly)
perfect (im)perfection, perfectionist, perfectionism, perfectible, perfectly, imperfect(ly)
period periodical, periodic(ally)
permit permission, permissiveness, permissible, permissive
persist persistence, persistent(ly)
person personalise, impersonate, personality, personnel, interpersonal, personalised, (im)personal(ly)
persuade dissuade, persuasion, persuasiveness, persuasive(ly)
phrase rephrase, paraphrase, phrasing, phraseology
place replace, placement, placing, replacement, (ir)replaceable
play replay, overplay, downplay, player, playful(ly)
portion apportion
power empower, overpower, empowerment, powerlessness, powerful(ly), powerless(ly)
prefer preference, preferable, preferred, preferential, preferably
prejudice (un)prejudiced, prejudicial
prevent prevention, preventative, preventive, (un)preventable
print reprint, printing, printer, printout, imprint, printed, (un)printable
probable (im)probability, improbable, (im)probably
process processor, processing, processed
produce producer, product, productivity, production, counterproductive, (un)productive(ly)
progress progression, progressive(ly)
provoke provocation, provocative(ly)
public publicise, publicity, publication, publicist, publicly
pursue pursuit, pursuer
quality qualitative(ly)
race racism, racist, interracial, racial(ly)
rapid rapidity, rapidly
rational rationalise, rationalisation, rationalist, rationalism, (ir)rationality, (ir)rational(ly)
reason reasoning, reasonableness, (un)reasonable, reasoned, (un)reasonably
regret regrettable, regrettably, regretful(ly)
relate relation, relationship, (un)related, relative(ly)
relax relaxation, relaxing, relaxed
repair repairman/men, repairer, reparation, repairable, irreparable, irreparably
reside residence, residency, resident, residing, residential(ly)
resolve (ir)resolution, resoluteness, (un)resolved, (ir)resolute(ly)
respond response, respondent, (un)responsive(ly)
rest restlessness, unrest, restive, restful(ly), restless(ly),
result resultant, resulting
revolt revolutionise, revolution, revolutionary, revolting
rhythm rhythmic(al), rhythmically
rigid rigidity, rigidly
risk risky
round surround, surroundings, roundness, roundabout, surrounding, roundly
sane (in)sanity, insane(ly)
satisfy dissatisfy, (un)satisfactory, (dis)satisfied, (un)satisfying(ly), satisfactorily
say gainsay, saying, unsaid
seem seeming(ly)
select deselect, selection, selective(ly)
self (un)selfishness, selflessness, (un)selfish(ly), selfless(ly)
sense (de)sensitise, sensation, (in)sensitivity, hypersensitivity, sensibility, senseless(ness), sensuality, sensuousness, sensor, hypersensitive, oversensitive, nonsense, sensory, sensible, nonsensical, sensibly, (in)sensitive(ly), (un)sensational(ly), sensual(ly), sensuous(ly)
separate separation, (in)separable, separated, separately
shelf shelve, shelves, shelving
signify (in)significance, (in)significant(ly)
slip slippage, slippery
soft soften, softener, softly
solid solidify, solidity
space spacing, spaciousness, spacious(ly)
speak spoke, speech, speaker, spokesman/men/woman/women/person/people, outspokenness, (un)spoken, speechless, unspeakable, unspeakably, outspoken(ly)
speed sped, speeding, speedy, speedily
sport sportsman/woman/person, sportsmanship, sports, sporting, sporty
stable (de)stabilise, (in)stability, destabilisation, stabiliser, (de)stabilising, unstable
stand withstand, withstood, standing, upstanding, outstanding, notwithstanding
state restate, overstate, understate, statement, understatement, overstatement, understated, overstated
steady unsteady, (un)steadily
stimulate stimulation, stimulant, stimulus, stimuli, stimulating, stimulated
strong strengthen, strength, stronghold, strongly
structure infrastructure, structural(ly), (un)structured
substance substantiate, substantiation, unsubstantiated, (in)substantial(ly)
suggest suggestion, suggestibility, suggested, suggestive(ly), suggestible
sympathy sympathise, sympathiser, (un)sympathetic, (un)sympathetically
talk talker, talkie, talkback, talkative
tend tendency
terror terrorise, terrify, terrorist, terrorism, terrible, terrific, terrifying, terrified, terribly
think thought, thinker, thinking, thoughtfulness, thoughtlessness, (un)thinkable, thoughtful(ly), thoughtless(ly)
threat threaten, threatened, threatening(ly)

time mistime, timer, timing, overtime, timetable, timelessness, (un)timely, timeless(ly)

transit transition, transitory, transitional, transitionally

type typeset, typecast, typify, typist, typewriter, typeface, typesetting, typesetter, typescript, typewritten, typical(ly)

up upper, uppermost, upright, upward(s), upwardly

use abuse, misuse, reuse, overuse, (ab)user, usefulness, usage, uselessness, (un)used, (un)usable, reusable, abused, abusive(ly), useful(ly), useless(ly)

value revalue, overvalue, evaluate, (re)valuation, evaluation, overvaluation, valuer, valuables, (in)valuable, valueless

weigh weight, weightlifter, weightlifting, weighting, overweight, underweight, weighted, weightless, weighty

wild wilderness, wildlife, wildness, wildly

wise wisdom, (un)wise(ly)

word reword, (re)wording, wordplay, wordy, (re)worded, wordless(ly)

work rework, overwork, worker, works, reworking, workplace, overworked, working, (un)workable

worth worthlessness, worthy, worthless, worthwhile

write rewrite, (re)wrote, (re)written, writing(s), writer, unwritten

young youngster, youth, youthful

zeal zealot, zealous(ly)

Photocopiable Revision Test 1

Units 1–4

A Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals.

1 Say anything with enough .... and people will believe you. **CONVINCE**
2 Good eyesight has proved to be a major .... advantage. **EVOLVE**
3 Dominic's decided to get a tattoo for some .... reason. **EXPLAIN**
4 Many of the car parts are virtually .... now as the factory has closed. **PLACE**
5 I'm going to quit my job, move abroad and start completely .... **NEW**
6 .... comes through experience. **WISE**
7 Lucy has to work every .... Saturday. **ALTER**
8 The 'soul' is a fascinating .... **CONCEIVE**

B Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

9 We would always take great care when flying at night. **wits**
We always used .... when flying at night.

10 There's no way you're getting a new computer for your birthday, Michael. **question**
Your getting a new computer for your birthday .... , Michael.

11 I couldn't stop thinking about the exam despite playing backgammon with Paul. **mind**
Playing backgammon with Paul .... the exam.

12 Elaine's very bright so she won't have been taken in, whatever they said. **uptake**
Elaine's very .... so she won't have been taken in, whatever they said.

13 Don't let her give in however hard they try to persuade her. **guns**
Make sure she .... however hard they try to persuade her.

14 I used to believe in capital punishment but I don't anymore. **mind**
I used to believe in capital punishment but I .... now.

15 Bill changed his ways when he came out of prison. **leaf**
Bill .... since he came out of prison.

16 Hardip has been to Edinburgh lots of times so he'll tell you where you should go. **inside**
Hardip .... so he'll tell you where you should go.

C For each question, write one word which can be used in all three sentences.

17 Katie was in good .... last night at the dinner party, wasn't she?
The character reappears later in the play in the .... of a ghost.
Could you just fill out this .... for me, please?

18 Please don't get up on my ....
I haven't heard a detailed .... of the court proceedings yet.
The council will take the views of residents into .... before making a final decision.

19 The hostage-takers have only made one .... so far.
Bicycles are always more in .... in the summer months.
We only order specialist books like that on ....

20 It is, without a .... , one of the best films I've ever seen.
Whether the government will fulfil its manifesto commitments is open to ....
The jury felt there was reasonable .... as to his guilt, and so he was acquitted.

21 Ronald does a very good .... of Charlie Chaplin.
You really made an .... on Sheryl last night.
I was under the .... that coach tickets were more expensive than train tickets.

22 I feel a .... deal better now I've eaten something!
It's no .... complaining to me – I'm nothing to do with this.
There were a .... many people we knew at the ceremony.

23 There's no .... for believing the Queen's going to abdicate.
She's only working here on a temporary ....
We chose Turkey on the .... that it's much cheaper than Greece.

24 The attitude of some teenagers today is beyond ....
I told him in the .... that he would treat it confidentially.
That UFOs exist is a very widely held ....

25 A majority in the south-east commute by train to their .... of work.
I can't go with Ellie to the concert so do you want to take my .... ?
That red sofa looks completely out of .... amongst all that period furniture.

26 What's the .... of putting milk in tea and coffee?
I hope you don't think I broke your glasses on .... !
National service would give many youngsters a sense of .... in life.

D Write one word in each gap.

27 Let's mull this .... tonight and make a final decision in the morning.
28 We're thinking of doing .... the spare bedroom to make it a bit nicer.
29 Mark's hit .... a brilliant idea for a website.
30 Don't use .... all the bacon now – we'll need some in the morning too.
31 I can't come up .... a single reason why I should believe you!
32 Have you changed the living room .... ? It looks different.
33 We've been trying to puzzle .... which TV series she used to be in.
34 The soles of these shoes have worn .... so I'm not sure I can wear them.

E Choose the correct answer.

35 Aid agencies are still .... the situation.
A estimating C assessing
B deducing D assuming

36 We still .... to the idea.
A don't use C don't get used
B didn't use D haven't got used

37 Not voting in elections preserves the .... quo.
A status C statue
B state D statute

38 Jake's completely round the .... , isn't he?
A edge C corner
B side D bend

39 That's the last time .... here.
A I've ever come C I ever came
B I'm ever coming D I'd ever come

40 How many flats .... at so far?
A do you look C have you looked
B are you looking D have you been looking

41 Relations between the two islands have .... further recently.
A decayed C spoiled
B deteriorated D distorted

42 When we landed, ... on the plane for 18 hours!
A we are C we've been
B we were D we'd been

Total mark: ..../50

Photocopiable Revision Test 2

■ Units 5–8

A Write one word in each gap.

1 The new house is almost finished, so we should be able to move .... before too long.
2 It wasn't too difficult to find our way through the forest and we only .... astray once or twice.
3 My eyes were bothering me so I had .... checked by an optician.
4 I'm working today, but I knock .... at six, so why don't we meet for a coffee then?
5 Being told I'd got into the university I wanted to go to really .... my day.
6 There was nobody to ask for directions because we were in the .... of nowhere.
7 Sorry I'm late – I was reading and I just lost .... of time.
8 People in the 16-24 .... bracket are usually more comfortable with technology than many older people.
9 There was still another hour of the flight left, so I whiled the time .... by doing a crossword.
10 The fact that he lost to a six-year-old in the first round of the chess tournament is rather a .... point with Craig.

B For each question, write one word which can be used in all three sentences.

11 We will be writing to you in due .... regarding the matter.
My doctor has put me on a .... of tablets to help with the pain in my knees.
During the .... of the day, I gradually got more and more short-tempered.

12 We were aiming to raise one million euros for charity, but we .... short by quite a long way.
I did a survey online and it said that I .... into the category of people who should consider a career change.
Jane seemed confident going into the interview, but then she .... to pieces and made a complete mess of it.

13 It's important that parents take .... out of their schedules to sit down and talk to their children.
It's not going to be easy to finish the work within the .... frame we've been given.
By the .... you've finished getting ready, it'll be too late to go!

14 You'll have a .... persuading your dad to lend you the car.
It's a good .... it's stopped raining or the picnic would be ruined.
The situation isn't really ideal, but we'll just have to make the best of a bad ....

15 We're going to have to get a .... on or we won't get to the campsite before nightfall.
The police followed the suspected drug dealer's every .... for months.
Jake's got loads of energy and he seems to be constantly on the ....

16 Thanks for the lift home, and if you could just .... me at the corner, that would be great.
Gail wouldn't tell me what she'd got me for my birthday, but she did .... a hint that it had something to do with music.
I can't believe that the coach decided to .... me from the team after just one bad match.

C Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals.

17 Women should be treated just the same as men in the .... **WORK**
18 The snow has made the road completely .... **PASS**
19 What was .... in my mind was the question of whether Dave knew about the incident or not. **UP**
20 Everyone played well, but the performance of the star striker was absolutely .... **STAND**

21 The police were expecting trouble at the football match, but in the end it was fairly .... **EVENT**

22 The company is going through something of a .... period at the moment. **TRANSIT**

23 The accident was caused by a .... lack of concentration on the part of the driver. **MOMENT**

24 Everyone in the office hopes you have a .... recovery from your operation. **SPEED**

25 Cheap rates are only .... during the low season. **APPLY**

26 The boss was accused of .... the company funds. **MANAGE**

D Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

27 We know that most people prefer buying a car from someone they trust. **known**
Most people .... buying a car from someone they trust.

28 I have got such a lot of work at the moment that I can't afford to take the day off. **snowed**
I .... at the moment so I can't afford to take the day off.

29 We expect the President will start speaking at eleven. **due**
The President .... at eleven.

30 At the start of the meeting, Ashley summarised what had been discussed last time. **kicked**
Ashley .... a summary of what had been discussed last time.

31 A test was planned for the following Monday so I spent the weekend revising. **going**
I spent the weekend revising because .... the following Monday.

32 Karen was about to leave the house when the phone rang. **point**
Karen was .... the house when the phone rang.

33 You have to work here for two years before they consider you for promotion. **been**
They will consider you for promotion .... for two years.

34 They have been considering widening the road for some time now. **under**
Widening the road .... for some time now.

E Choose the correct answer.

35 They are unlikely to find any new evidence because so much time has .... since the crime.
A spanned C lapsed
B postponed D elapsed

36 Three Mexican fishermen were rescued today after .... at sea for nine months.
A wandering C drifting
B roaming D sinking

37 By the time we .... out on a Sunday, the bathroom was full of water.
A have a plumber come C got a plumber to come
B got a plumber coming D had a plumber to come

38 These days, I only see Morgan once in a .... moon.
A green C blue
B grey D white

39 Nobody at the time knew that Patrick .... one day end up running the company.
A would C will
B can D may

40 The accused .... out to prove his innocence.
A put C set
B had D took

41 My only ambition, really, is to settle down and .... a family.
A grow C bring
B raise D make

42 Experts say that there were a number of reasons for the fall of the Roman Empire.
There .... a number of reasons for the fall of the Roman Empire.
A are said to have been C are said being
B said to be D was said being

Total mark: ..../50

Photocopiable Revision Test 3

■ Units 9–12

A Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals.

1 Your article's a little .... Maybe you could make this paragraph a bit shorter. **WORD**
2 It's going to be a difficult challenge but the problems aren't .... **MOUNT**
3 The film is .... boring! **SPEAK**
4 We've got a serious problem with soil .... in one of the fields. **ERODE**
5 The newspaper article gave us tremendous free .... **PUBLIC**
6 Do you think you've got that .... quality that makes someone a star? **ELUDE**
7 I .... dialled Bob's number instead of Ken's, so was surprised when Bob answered. **INTEND**
8 When was the latest .... of the dictionary published? **EDIT**

B Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

9 I think you misunderstood, Kevin. **stick**
I think you must .... , Kevin.

10 Please don't tell anyone but I'm handing in my resignation this afternoon. **hat**
You'd .... , but I'm handing in my resignation this afternoon.

11 There are going to be a few changes round here; do you see what I mean, Tim? **drift**
There are going to be a few changes round here, if .... , Tim.

12 I didn't get home late so Dad wasn't upset with me. **books**
I .... if I'd got home late.

13 It was a bad idea to turn up unexpectedly without calling first. **blue**
You should .... without calling first.

14 Actually I wanted to be a politician when I was younger, but then I changed my mind. **happens**
I wanted to be a politician when I was younger .... , but then I changed my mind.

15 Do you happen to know what's on at the cinema tonight? **chance**
Do you .... know what's on at the cinema tonight?

16 It's highly likely I'll be late if the situation doesn't change. **every**
There's .... the situation changes.

C For each question, write one word which can be used in all three sentences.

17 Somebody had better .... some sense into Adam.
Let's .... this over in the meeting on Thursday.
Mum won't let me go to the rock festival but I'm trying to .... her round.

18 Feel free to .... your mind, won't you?
It's time to .... out against this attack on all our civil liberties.
The boss has given Rupert a yellow card, so to ....

19 Just do it by the .... and you won't go wrong.
They should lock him up and throw away the key in my ....
I always know what Freda's thinking – I can read her like a ....

20 Why don't you ever take any .... of what we think?
They only gave us two hours' .... before they started digging up the lawn.
No one's allowed to enter the building until further ....

21 Johnson was in the lead from the .... go.
Could I have a quick .... with you?
The website caught on mainly through .... of mouth.

22 Everyone deserves a second ....
I bumped into Julie quite by .... in the chemist's.
Not enough people get the .... to live in a foreign country.

23 Who we play in the first round depends on the .... of the draw.
Finding such a cheap flat was a stroke of .... , wasn't it?
You're in .... – we've got one left.

24 You want to borrow the car tonight and some money? You're pushing your .... !
Right, I'm off to my exam. Wish me .... !
As .... would have it, Lee's going to be in town at the same time.

25 I'm not an aggressive person by ....
Using a computer is second .... to me now.
You never know where you'll be tomorrow, but that's just the .... of the job.

26 At the .... of sounding stupid, what do chartered accountants actually do?
You know you're putting your health at .... , don't you?
I'm going to take a .... and say the answer's 'C'.

D Write one word in each gap.

27 Don't let .... to anyone yet, but I've just won the lottery!
28 As soon as Dad came home, Billy blurted .... that I'd had a fight at school.
29 It took me a while to catch .... to the fact that Ed was kidding.
30 The opposition are trying to get the point .... that the government have failed to reduce crime.
31 What do you put your success .... to?
32 We're really going to have to cut .... on expenses from now on.
33 Where did you chance .... such a rare stamp?
34 I've really slipped .... I sent that private memo to the managing director of Laster's by mistake.

E Choose the correct answer.

35 Do please .... me posted on this, won't you?
A get C make
B have D keep

36 As it's not out on DVD yet, we might .... get it on video, I suppose.
A also C too
B as well D and

37 .... for you, I'd never have had the courage to enter the talent show.
A Except C But
B Had it not D Apart

38 Had the electrician not come in time, we would .... last night's party by candlelight.
A have to have C have had to have had
B have to be having D have had to have been having

39 There's so much technical .... in this manual that I can't really understand it.
A jargon C tongue
B slang D speech

40 That .... the day we went to Margate because it was raining that day, not sunny.
A mustn't have been C shouldn't have been
B couldn't have been D needn't have been

41 Water is a very .... resource in the desert.
A odd C random
B stray D scarce

42 Why do I always .... the short straw?
A draw C drag
B pull D pluck

Total mark: ..../50

Photocopiable Revision Test 4

Units 13–16

A Write one word in each gap.

1 Don't spill your drink on my new tablecloth because it'll never come ....
2 The accusation that we have wasted public money on this project is entirely .... foundation.
3 Mrs Gallagher looked .... if she'd had some really bad news.
4 After being unemployed for over a year, Jordan found a job at .... last.
5 Our new car is .... near as economical as our last one.
6 I think we should set the tent .... over there, in the shade.
7 Don't worry – we'll be there on the fifth, no .... what.
8 I didn't make any money on my investment, but at least I just about .... even.
9 It was very satisfying to watch our house being built and see it .... shape.
10 This area is rich .... minerals and oil.

B For each question, write one word which can be used in all three sentences.

11 If you're going to roll pastry, you need a flat .... to do it on.
The formula for finding the .... area of a cube is $6<^2$, where $<$ is the length of one side.
Kelly seems calm on the .... , but I think she's actually quite upset.

12 I don't like parties because I've never been very good at .... talk.
I wish you wouldn't try to make me look .... in front of other people.
We sat up chatting into the .... hours.

13 The sofa we ordered is too .... to get into the living room.
The escaped prisoner is still at .... and the public are advised not to approach him.
The company's success is due, in .... part, to providing a high-quality service.

14 Something has left a .... on the car.
You'll have to be quick off the .... in the sales if you want the real bargains.
At the halfway .... , Richardson was in the lead.

15 I've got quite a .... on at work at the moment.
Getting married obviously just wasn't my .... in life.
I paid £10 for the .... at that boot sale last Sunday.

16 I'm planning to go to the funeral, just to .... my last respects.
I was surprised when Caleb said I looked nice because he doesn't usually .... me compliments.
I might not have a lot of money, but I always make sure I .... my way.

C Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals.

17 The form should be completed by the head of the .... **HOUSE**
18 This incident could have done .... damage to relations between the two countries. **REPAIR**
19 Get the juice I like that doesn't have any artificial .... **ADD**
20 I always seem to be .... at the bank at the end of the month. **DRAW**
21 It's important that journalists try to remain .... when reporting a story. **OBJECT**
22 The .... of Professor Ogden's knowledge impresses everyone who meets him. **BROAD**

23 I don't know if people today are more .... than people were in the past. **MATERIAL**
24 The interviewer asked the 107-year-old man what the secret of his .... was. **LONG**
25 The next step is to soak the leather in water to .... it. **SOFT**
26 It's a shame when a .... of football hooligans spoil the game for the rest of us. **MINOR**

D Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

27 You should have told me you were having problems with the homework. **rather**
I .... you were having problems with the homework.

28 Dickens is a much better writer than Trollope. **like**
Trollope is .... Dickens.

29 I have tried very hard to learn how to play chess but I can't. **matter**
It seems that .... I still can't learn how to play chess.

30 Please don't tell anyone about this for the time being. **sooner**
I .... let anyone know about this for the time being.

31 The amount we've saved is very small compared to how much we owe. **ocean**
The amount we've saved is .... compared to how much we owe.

32 It's a shame we can't get more people to support our campaign. **drum**
I wish .... support for our campaign.

33 The number of violent crimes around here has risen dramatically recently. **sharp**
There .... the number of violent crimes around here recently.

34 My new job is much more satisfying than any job I've ever had. **away**
My new job is .... one I've ever had.

E Choose the correct answer.

35 Let's go to the beach – it's .... a day to sit indoors.
A nice enough C so nice
B too nice D such nice

36 Old Mrs Duckworth was coming down the road, weighed .... with bags of shopping.
A down C on
B out D off

37 Everyone in our street seems to think that it's very important to .... up with the Joneses.
A get C keep
B set D stay

38 When we were in Athens, I bought a .... statuette.
A white, beautiful, marble, little
B marble, beautiful, little, white
C beautiful, little, marble, white
D beautiful, little, white, marble

39 Can you get those aspirin that .... in water, because I can't take the others?
A dilute C diminish
B dissolve D dispense

40 The house I was born in was .... some time ago.
A evicted C ground
B smashed D demolished

41 I wish I .... there to see Gabriel's face when you told him!
A can be C would be
B would have been D could have been

42 I'll just .... some ice to go in our drinks.
A crush C squash
B squeeze D compact

Total mark: ..../50

Photocopiable Revision Test 5

Units 17–20

A Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals.

1 The author thanks his editor in the .... section at the front of the book. **KNOW**
2 The rise in crime is extremely small – almost .... , in fact. **NEGLECT**
3 Only a .... of people offered to help set things up for the event. **HAND**
4 Some analysts worry that violence on TV might .... children to violence in real life. **SENSE**
5 He was .... the greatest writer of his generation. **ARGUE**
6 The headmistress commended her on her .... behaviour. **EXAMPLE**
7 The newspaper report before the trial may have had a .... effect on the verdict. **PREJUDICE**
8 They were attacked without any .... at all. **PROVOKE**

B Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

9 That man over there lost his temper in the public meeting. **handle**
That's .... in the public meeting.

10 We honestly all found it almost impossible not to laugh when we saw Josh's new haircut. **face**
Honestly, ... almost impossible when we saw Josh's new haircut.

11 The phone bill was so expensive that Dave was furious. **arms**
Dave was .... an expensive phone bill.

12 She vividly described the expedition and that made it seem exciting. **life**
The thing .... was her vivid description.

13 You'd better talk to those in charge about that. **powers**
You'd better talk to .... about that.

14 You know you're not allowed to cheat, Lucy. **against**
You know .... , Lucy.

15 My supervisor had just said I couldn't have the day off when her boss said I could. **denied**
No sooner .... a day off than her boss said I could have one.

16 Severely punishing people like that hardly ever has any effect. **book**
Hardly ever .... people like that have any effect.

C For each question, write one word which can be used in all three sentences.

17 What .... is he going to specialise in at university?
I'm a British .... , which means I have the right to live and work in Britain.
He's always getting off the .... in his lessons so we have to study the coursebook ourselves.

18 The arrow hit the target .... centre.
Why are you so .... set against having a flatmate?
You're in .... trouble!

19 The band certainly use the stage to full .... on their latest tour.
She's just saying that for .... ; she doesn't mean it.
When will the new regulations come into .... ?

20 They invited us to dinner so it's only right that we respond in ....
I didn't say anything of the .... !
What .... of laptop are you thinking of getting?

21 They're unlikely to stick to the truce, but you .... in hope, don't you?
I have to work one Saturday a month, but I can .... with that.
I didn't think we'd .... to tell the tale, to be honest.

22 It's time to lay down the .... to the twins about bedtimes.
The Conservative Party are the natural party of .... and order.
Vigilantes are people who take the .... into their own hands.

23 Could I speak to someone in .... , please?
I have it on good .... that the factory's going to be closed down.
Most of these services will be provided by your local ....

24 We tend not to go out on Saturday evenings any more, as a ....
Divide by eight and multiply by five is a good .... of thumb.
The .... of law has completely broken down in some quarters of the city.

25 You should be setting an .... to your younger sister.
The judge said she was going to make an .... of Watkins to deter other burglars.
Let me give you another .... of what I'm talking about.

26 To have access to clean drinking water should be a basic human .... in my opinion.
You've got no .... to take my things without asking me first.
Humans have to be taught the difference between .... and wrong.

D Write one word in each gap.

27 I've got to summon .... the courage to tell my parents I'm not going to university after all.
28 People began to cotton .... that Doug was leaving when he started emptying his desk.
29 I've come .... in spots all over my back.
30 The police are planning to crack .... on drink-driving over the holiday period.
31 You were lucky to get .... with just a warning.
32 I would single this poem .... for its wonderful use of imagery.
33 Carl's speech went .... very well at the reception, didn't it?
34 The Prime Minister had to back .... in the face of fierce opposition to the scheme.

E Choose the correct answer.

35 .... rare artefacts were they that the museum decided to insure them.
A So C Too
B Such D Very

36 Even .... I work all night I won't finish.
A although C so
B if D when

37 Little .... that it was actually all a joke.
A my realising C I realised
B for me to realise D did I realise

38 Do you think you could pull a few .... for me and get someone at the office to look at my drawings?
A strings C ropes
B chords D wires

39 I didn't get the job, but I'll just have to .... and bear it, won't I?
A smile C smirk
B grin D beam

40 This drug has no known .... effects.
A fringe C edge
B corner D side

41 .... as I'd love to, I won't be able to come.
A Though C Even
B Despite D Much

42 I hope the government reduces the amount of .... tape required to start a new company.
A green C red
B blue D yellow

Total mark: ..../50

Photocopiable Revision Test 6

Units 21–24

A Write one word in each gap.

1 Did you know that I went to the same school as David Beckham, ... footballer?
2 The team I support has just gone from bad to .... this season.
3 Bradley seemed to take .... skiing the very first time he tried it.
4 There's a .... line between helping someone with a problem and interfering.
5 You have to .... people with respect if you want them to respect you.
6 Things were really getting on .... of me at work so I took a holiday.
7 The meal we had at the restaurant you recommended was .... of this world!
8 To the .... of my knowledge, no one has touched anything on your desk.
9 You should smarten yourself .... if you want to make a good impression.
10 I'm sure you'll do well at university if you're .... in your mind about what you want to achieve.

B For each question, write one word which can be used in all three sentences.

11 Try to keep your room .... and tidy for when your friends come round.
After examining me, the doctor gave me a .... bill of health.
You should make a .... break and tell Joel you don't want to see him again.

12 We hope it won't be too long before we start a ....
My dad thought that the whole thing reflected badly on the .... name.
Our dog's got a great personality and we all treat her like one of the ....

13 I moved to Birmingham, determined to make a .... start.
I'm afraid we're .... out of bananas.
The new manager is .... from university and doesn't have much experience, in my opinion.

14 There's a crack in the .... of my glass.
I had all my money invested in gold when the .... dropped out of the market.
The police officer was determined to get to the .... of things and asked a lot of questions.

15 You rarely see such .... at such a low price.
What's the most important .... you look for in someone applying for a job here?
Ask yourself whether you spend enough .... time with your children.

16 The youth club should be opening in the .... future.
People came from .... and far to attend the festival.
The car didn't hit me, but it was a very .... thing.

C Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals.

17 Astronomers at the .... have announced that they have discovered a new comet. **OBSERVE**
18 The man was later charged with .... a police officer. **PERSON**
19 I think that having a baby is an .... responsibility. **AWE**
20 We were all absolutely .... when we heard the gunshot. **TERROR**
21 The model was wearing a blue dress with .... shoes. **MATCH**
22 Passengers are requested to .... themselves with the safety features of the aircraft. **FAMILIAR**
23 I don't wish to appear .... , but you are at least partly to blame for the situation, you know. **SYMPATHY**
24 Your concern for animals is very .... , but are you sure you aren't accidentally making the problem worse? **ADMIRE**

25 Brendan's .... rudeness is really just insecurity. **APPEAR**

26 Many people are rather .... when they first get involved in politics, but they often change. **IDEAL**

D Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

27 I don't have enough money to spend on luxury items. **afford**
I .... on luxury items.

28 You can see that they made a big effort with the school play. **deal**
You can see that .... went into the school play.

29 I wonder why Grant quit his job. **prompted**
I wonder .... his job.

30 I passed the exam, but only just! **scrape**
I managed .... the exam.

31 There was a burning smell coming from the kitchen so I went to check on dinner. **smelt**
I .... in the kitchen so I went to check on dinner.

32 We need business to improve soon or we won't survive the year. **pick**
If .... , we won't survive the year.

33 My parents made me redo my homework. **made**
I .... my homework by my parents.

34 Bob and Sheila came home in my car in the end. **ended**
I .... home.

E Choose the correct answer.

35 The sky suddenly went dark as a huge .... of birds passed overhead.
A herd C pack
B flock D tribe

36 The salesman neglected .... that the price didn't include delivery.
A in mentioning C mention
B mentioning D to mention

37 .... of the students did well in the test.
A Only a few C Little
B Much D Only a little

38 What kind of world do you want to leave behind for your .... ?
A ancestors C descendants
B predecessors D siblings

39 My relationship with Isaac is one of .... respect.
A mutual C relative
B compatible D integral

40 A sudden .... of wind blew the letter out of my hand.
A speck C flake
B grain D gust

41 My younger sister's in ....
A the year 7 at school C year 7 at school
B a year 7 at the school D the year 7 at the school

42 My old home was a sight for .... eyes after I'd been away for so long.
A injured C painful
B hurting D sore

Total mark: ..../50

Photocopiable Revision Answer Key

Test 1: Units 1–4

A

1 conviction
2 evolutionary
3 inexplicable
4 irreplaceable
5 anew
6 Wisdom
7 alternate
8 concept

B (2 marks per answer)

9 to have/keep our wits about us
10 is out of the question
11 failed to / didn't take my mind off
12 quick on the uptake
13 sticks to her guns
14 have changed my mind
15 has turned over a new leaf
16 knows Edinburgh inside out

C

17 form
18 account
19 demand
20 doubt
21 impression
22 good
23 basis
24 belief
25 place
26 purpose

D

27 over
28 up
29 on / upon
30 up
31 with
32 (a)round
33 out
34 out

E

35C 36D 37A 38D 39B 40C 41B 42D

Test 2: Units 5–8

A

1 in
2 went
3 them
4 off
5 made
6 middle
7 track
8 age
9 away
10 sore

B

11 course
12 fell
13 time
14 job
15 move
16 drop

C

17 workplace
18 impassable
19 uppermost
20 outstanding
21 uneventful
22 transitional / transition
23 momentary
24 speedy
25 applicable
26 mismanaging

D (2 marks per answer)

27 are known to prefer
28 am snowed under with/at work
29 is due to start speaking
30 kicked off the meeting / kicked the meeting off with

31 I was / we were going to have a test
32 (just) on the point of leaving
33 once/when/after you've been working here
34 has been under consideration

E
35D 36C 37C 38C 39A 40C 41B 42A

Test 3: Units 9–12

A
1 wordy
2 insurmountable
3 unspeakably
4 erosion
5 publicity
6 elusive
7 unintentionally
8 edition

B (2 marks per answer)
9 have got the wrong end of the stick
10 better keep it/this under your hat
11 you catch/get my drift
12 would have been in Dad's bad books
13 not have turned up out of the blue
14 as it happens
15 by any chance
16 every chance/likelihood/possibility I'll be late unless

C
17 talk
18 speak
19 book
20 notice
21 word
22 chance
23 luck
24 luck
25 nature
26 risk

D
27 on
28 out
29 on
30 across
31 down
32 back / down
33 upon
34 up

E
35D 36B 37C 38C 39A 40B 41D 42A

Test 4: Units 13–16

A
1 out
2 without
3 as
4 long
5 nowhere
6 up
7 matter
8 broke
9 take
10 in

B
11 surface
12 small
13 large
14 mark
15 lot
16 pay

C
17 household
18 irreparable
19 additives
20 overdrawn
21 objective
22 breadth
23 materialistic
24 longevity
25 soften
26 minority

D (2 marks per answer)
27 would rather you had told me
28 nothing like as good a writer as
29 no matter how hard I try
30 would sooner you didn't
31 a drop in the ocean
32 we were able to / could drum up more
33 has been a sharp rise/increase in
34 (by) far and away the most satisfying

E
35B 36A 37C 38D 39B 40D 41D 42A

Test 5: Units 17–20

A
1 acknowledgement(s)
2 negligible
3 handful
4 desensitise
5 arguably
6 exemplary
7 prejudicial
8 provocation

B (2 marks per answer)
9 the man who/that flew off the handle
10 (our) keeping a straight face was
11 up in arms about such
12 which/that brought the expedition to life
13 the powers that be
14 cheating is against the rules / it's against the rules to cheat
15 had my supervisor denied my request to have / me
16 does throwing the book at

C
17 subject
18 dead
19 effect
20 kind
21 live
22 law
23 authority
24 rule
25 example
26 right

D
27 up
28 on
29 out
30 down
31 off / away
32 out
33 down
34 down

E
35B 36B 37D 38A 39B 40D 41D 42C

Test 6: Units 21 – 24

A
1 the
2 worse
3 to
4 fine
5 treat
6 top
7 out
8 best
9 up
10 clear

B
11 clean
12 family
13 fresh
14 bottom
15 quality
16 near

C

17 observatory
18 impersonating
19 awesome
20 terrified
21 matching
22 familiarise
23 unsympathetic
24 admirable
25 apparent
26 idealistic

D (2 marks per answer)

27 can't afford to spend money
28 a great deal of effort
29 what prompted Grant to quit
30 to scrape through
31 smelt something burning
32 business doesn't pick up soon
33 was made to redo
34 ended up driving Bob and Sheila

E

35B 36D 37A 38C 39A 40D 41C 42D

ANSWER KEY

Unit 1

A

1 is doing   don't see
2 doesn't   get
3 are getting
4 go   turn
5 does   float
6 are getting
7 doesn't eat
8 aren't listening
9 walks
10 are   phoning
11 Do order
12 are walking   spots
13 has
14 GIVES
15 is always telling
16 doesn't wear   does wear/wears

B

1 always
2 present
3 moment
4 being
5 rarely
6 every
7 most/much/some
8 never
9 time
10 right
11 time
12 days
13 whenever/when/if
14 for
15 It/That

C

1 are you doing
2 I'm just doing
3 How's it going
4 it's going well
5 I'm looking
6 I'm contacting
7 mum drives
8 she says
9 it doesn't
10 she doesn't need
11 What's happening
12 Do you have
13 I don't even have
14 I'm not really working
15 I'm trying
16 don't you do
17 I don't like
18 that focuses
19 That sounds
20 Do you think

D

1 means
2 only costs
3 doesn't matter
4 I'm ringing
5 I recognise
6 does the nut cake contain
7 I really don't agree
8 aren't you playing
9 doesn't concern
10 resemble
11 you're not watching
12 does not exist
13 includes
14 We're having
15 involves

E

1 am looking   looks
2 do   feel   doesn't feel/isn't feeling
3 are considering   do consider
4 are having   Do   have
5 appeals   are appealing
6 doesn't smell   are   smelling
7 am depending   depends
8 is   are being/are
9 do   think   is thinking
10 is seeing   see

F

1 has been
2 written
3 haven't
4 I've
5 broken
6 come
7 haven't you told
8 has lived/has been living

G

1 filled
2 been following   caught
3 seen
4 heard
5 been thinking
6 been driving
7 been standing
8 worked/been working

H

1 I've sent off
2 you've ever eaten
3 We've been waiting   have you been
4 Have you just received
5 we haven't got   We've been expecting   they haven't shown up
6 I've been drawing up   I haven't got   Have you had
7 mum's been meaning

I

1 just
2 recently
3 since
4 already
5 so
6 until
7 already/just
8 for
9 already
10 ever
11 yet
12 before
13 since
14 still
15 for
16 just
17 yet

J

1 have
2 Since
3 been
4 meant/involved
5 led
6 not
7 do
8 is
9 appears/seems
10 are
11 There
12 does
13 becoming
14 are
15 has

Unit 2

A

1 pessimistic
2 biased
3 dubious
4 naïve
5 plausible
6 baffle
7 assess
8 justify
9 estimate
10 presume

B

1 grasp
2 deliberating
3 gather
4 concentrate
5 considering/contemplating
6 reckon/suppose
7 suppose
8 pondered/considered/contemplated
9 contemplate/consider

C

1 dilemma
2 faith
3 genius
4 guesswork
5 hunch/intuition
6 ideology
7 inspiration
8 intuition
9 query
10 notion
11 paradox

D

1 C
2 D
3 A
4 B
5 A
6 D
7 C
8 C
9 D
10 B

E

1 D
2 A
3 B
4 G
5 F
6 C
7 E

F

1 think
2 up with
3 up to
4 up on
5 come to
6 up on
7 make
8 out
9 reading

G

1
2
3
5
7
9
10

H

1 under
2 on
3 out
4 on
5 in
6 with
7 in
8 in
9 out
10 into
11 of
12 on
13 On
14 into
15 In

I

1 straight
2 mental
3 impression
4 brains
5 sense
6 dream
7 consideration

J

1 against
2 in
3 have
4 of
5 view
6 mind

K

1 never crossed my mind
2 come to/arrived at/reached the conclusion
3 give an account of
4 gave the false impression
5 strike a balance between
6 out of consideration for

L

1 bell
2 hairs
3 what
4 wits
5 head
6 two
7 bend
8 stock
9 dark
10 wood
11 uptake
12 leg

M

1 confusion
2 irrationally
3 brilliance
4 definitive
5 inexplicable
6 disbelief
7 indecisive
8 imaginary
9 insanity
10 illogical

N

1
3
5
6
7

O

1 concept
2 assumption
3 undoubtedly/doubtless
4 unthinkable
5 nonsense
6 conviction
7 wisdom
8 reasoning
9 judg(e)ment
10 opinionated

Review 1

A

1 explanation
2 definition
3 assumption
4 Logically
5 reasonable
6 thought
7 confusion
8 concept
9 undoubtedly
10 sensible

B

11 forget to take Darren's views into account/forget to take into account Darren's views/forget to take account of Darren's views
12 does she come up with
13 is still under the impression
14 have you made up your mind/ have you made your mind up
15 in the (mistaken) belief
16 is out of the question
17 you've (now) come to your senses
18 you are under the misapprehension

C

19 wits
20 wood
21 bell
22 head
23 dark
24 bend
25 leg
26 uptake

D

27 piece
28 take
29 think
30 over
31 come
32 to
33 figure
34 swot

E

35 A
36 D
37 C
38 B
39 D
40 A
41 C
42 B

Unit 3

A

1 told
2 Did you meet
3 had become
4 got
5 has been
6 had
7 have finished
8 were
9 gave
10 haven't worked
11 were never allowed
12 sent

B

1 were passing
2 stopped
3 was reading
4 had
5 was getting
6 Was thinking
7 did swim
8 attracted
9 was put
10 was working
11 arrived
12 was created

C

1 started
2 were/had been working
3 was getting
4 was raining
5 was travelling
6 went
7 was waiting
8 saw
9 was wearing
10 reminded
11 opened
12 took
13 checked
14 looked
15 made
16 meant
17 pressed
18 appeared
19 have kidnapped
20 have completed
21 disappeared/was disappearing
22 raced

D

1 told
2 is/has been
3 knew
4 had never visited
5 put
6 rang
7 saw
8 passed

E

1 have been exercising
2 was chatting
3 have been practising
4 have been seeing
5 wasn't sleeping
6 was thinking
7 have been digging

F

1 had left got
2 met had seen
3 was had ever been
4 said had had
5 had finished asked
6 had just reached told
7 had done decided
8 didn't want had just cleaned
9 was had forgotten
10 got had read

G

1 √
2 seemed
3 √
4 have become
5 √
6 has spread
7 has been
8 √
9 missed
10 have become
11 √
12 √

H

1 I had been working for
2 would often take us
3 has been learning Russian for about
4 soon got used to being
5 have been having the same dream
6 never used to enjoy

I

1 has
2 have
3 used
4 was
5 had
6 was
7 would
8 had
9 used
10 been

J

1 D
2 A
3 C
4 C
5 B
6 A
7 D
8 B
9 C
10 B
11 A
12 A

Unit 4

A

1 endure
2 shift
3 innovation
4 potential
5 mature
6 switched
7 progress
8 substitute
9 decay
10 modified

B

1 C
2 A
3 B
4 A
5 D
6 B
7 C
8 D
9 A
10 D
11 C
12 A

C

1 reformed
2 revise
3 distorted
4 amended
5 maintain
6 remain
7 adjust
8 adapt
9 alternate
10 alternative
11 persist
12 sustain
13 converted
14 transformed
15 spoil
16 deteriorate

D

1 network
2 broadband
3 primitive
4 nuclear
5 √
6 console
7 technique
8 √
9 data
10 resource

E

1 programmer
2 manual
3 electronics
4 downloading
5 files
6 upload
7 complex
8 online
9 Click
10 offline

F

1 change out of
2 faded away
3 test out
4 back up
5 used up
6 doing away with
7 key
8 do up

G

1 switch on
2 took apart
3 changed around
4 turns into/changes into
5 wore out
6 turns into/changes into/turned into/changed into
7 mixed up
8 made/turned into

H

1 take up
2 cheer up √
3 brush up √
4 make up
5 tidy up √
6 bring up
7 dress up √
8 turn up

I

1 break
2 demand/need
3 know
4 surfing/on
5 link
6 changed
7 at/behind
8 access
9 good
10 energy
11 date
12 tool

J

1 to
2 from
3 good
4 tool
5 in
6 make
7 deal
8 know
9 from
10 place
11 make
12 at

K

1 use
2 reality
3 place
4 purpose
5 clock
6 form
7 process
8 led

L

1 break the mould
2 had a change of heart
3 turned over a new leaf
4 reinventing the wheel
5 stick to your guns
6 a leopard can't change its spots

7 changed your tune/had a change of heart
8 the tools of the trade
9 all mod cons
10 knows inside out

M

1 continual/continuous/continuing
2 evolving
3 revolutionary
4 flexibility
5 adjustments
6 adaptable
7 influential
8 capability
9 unaltered
10 electrifying

N

1 changeable
2 maturity
3 modernised
4 persistently
5 endurance
6 processed
7 rearrange
8 renewable
9 conversion
10 irreplaceable

Review 2

A

1 enduring
2 revolutionised
3 alternative
4 replacement
5 capability/capabilities
6 processor
7 electricity
8 modernise
9 persistently
10 discontinued

B

11 saw
12 had already seen
13 had heard
14 used to
15 was
16 was always getting
17 had been playing
18 were used to cooking

C

19 we did up
20 the use of me/my offering
21 turned over a new leaf since
22 no good complaining to me about
23 working against the clock
24 became a reality
25 mix Sean up with /mix up Sean with
26 change places with/swap places with/trade places with

D

27 in
28 in
29 to
30 for
31 at
32 on
33 on
34 in/on

E

35 B
36 D
37 B
38 D
39 A
40 A
41 C
42 C

Unit 5

A

1 going to fall
2 going to be
3 going/going to go
4 going to get
5 going to realise
6 opening/going to open
7 having/going to have
8 going to fall
9 applying/going to apply
10 discussing/going to discuss
11 being/going to be
12 going to be
13 handing/going to hand
14 going to become
15 going to have

B

1 we're visiting
2 will answer
3 does your plane arrive/is your plane arriving?
4 I'm looking
5 Shall
6 Are you going to
7 leaves/is leaving
8 shall
9 I won't have
10 is she going to

C

1 I'll come
2 will you show
3 it's going to snow/it'll snow
4 We're going to/We'll miss
5 The winner will be/is going to be/is being/is announced
6 I'm going (to go)
7 They won't sack/They're not going to sack/They aren't sacking/won't be sacking
8 Is Jenny going to find/Isn't Jenny going to find/Will Jenny find/Won't Jenny find
9 I won't be/I'm not going to be
10 The new version will be/is going to be/is (being) launched
11 I'll order
12 some people will be made/ some people are going to be made/ some people are being made
13 does the train leave/will the train leave/is the train leaving/ is the train going to leave

D

1 √
2 will have been
3 We'll have become
4 I'll have been taking/I'll have been taken
5 will you already have had
6 You'll have been driving
7 will have been appointed
8 won't have finished
9 won't have been expecting/ won't have been expected
10 √
11 √
12 won't all have been delivered

E

1 Ed will have applied
2 I'll hopefully be running
3 we'll have lived/we'll have been living
4 Will Gemma already have arrived
5 you won't have been travelling/ be travelling you'll have had/ be having
6 We'll be waiting
7 1,000 people will have been jumping/1,000 people will have jumped

8 The boys will be signing/ The boys will have been signing
9 will you be interviewing
10 Terry won't have seen
11 will you be doing
12 We won't be seeing

F

1 the bell rings/has rung
2 Ahmed asks the questions/is asking the questions
3 you've been a trainee for three months
4 Mr Dawkins is recording/ records the interviews
5 (soon as) the sales figures come in
6 you've worked for us for over a year/been working for us for over a year
7 they start selling in much larger quantities
8 am offered a contract (by the publishing company)/have been offered a contract (by the publishing company)

G

1 arrive
2 will be shown
3 have given/give
4 will be taken/ will be shown
5 are waiting/wait
6 are called
7 will last
8 will be recorded/are recorded
9 is
10 will be destroyed/are destroyed
11 will be notified
12 is drawn up/has been drawn up

H

1 is just about to
2 are (just) on the point of deciding
3 am due to give
4 (just) about to go
5 aren't on the verge of (having)
6 are the inspectors due (to arrive)
7 not to tell

I

1 was
2 would
3 was
4 had
5 Were
6 was
7 were would/should/might
8 were
9 to

J

1 will
2 have
3 soon/long
4 happens
5 will
6 still
7 be
8 working
9 be
10 doing
11 while
12 are
13 become
14 been
15 by

K

1 C
2 B
3 D
4 C
5 A
6 D
7 B
8 A

Unit 6

A

1 temporary
2 timely
3 seasonal
4 punctual
5 simultaneous
6 obsolete
7 provisional
8 overdue

B

1 era
2 spell
3 century
4 millennium
5 frequency
6 stint/spell
7 span
8 phase

C

1 B
2 B
3 A
4 A
5 B
6 B
7 B
8 A
9 B
10 B
11 A
12 A
13 B
14 B

D

1 multinational
2 marketing
3 consultant
4 executive
5 effective
6 efficient
7 redundant
8 leave
9 strike
10 fire
11 headhunted
12 sacked

E

1 civil
2 sector
3 prospects
4 promotion
5 colleagues
6 union
7 recruit

F

1 C
2 B
3 A
4 D
5 C
6 B
7 A
8 B

G

1 take on
2 ended up
3 kick off
4 while away
5 lies ahead
6 knuckle down

7 knock off
8 dived in

H

1
5
7
8
9
10

I

1 of/in
2 on
3 as
4 any
5 of
6 out
7 if/whether
8 By

J

1 put an end to/put a stop to
2 is the only person ever to/is the only one ever to
3 made a start (on/at) sorting
4 I just take a second to/you just give me a second to
5 like (it's been) ages since/like it was ages ago when
6 this moment in time
7 made a good job of painting

K

1 now
2 day
3 about
4 moment
5 age
6 office
7 course
8 on

L

1 donkey's
2 time
3 other
4 nick
5 being
6 moon
7 for
8 time
9 spur
10 hat
11 good
12 stitch

M

1 expectations
2 outlast
3 employee
4 competitors
5 applicants
6 periodically
7 endless
8 timeless
9 futuristic
10 eventuality
11 counterproductive/unproductive

N

1 counterintelligence
2 countermeasures
3 counterbalance/counteract
4 counteroffensive/counterattack
5 counterpart
6 counteract
7 counterculture
8 counterattack

O

1 a coincidence/coincidental
2 momentous
3 antiquated
4 competitive
5 productivity
6 management
7 workers
8 unemployment
9 jobless
10 untimely
11 historians

Review 3

A

1 Workers
2 overtime
3 management/managers
4 productivity/production
5 competitive
6 employer
7 employees
8 Periodically
9 antiquated
10 inapplicable

B

11 worked like magic
12 got off to a flying start
13 (every) now and again
14 put an end/bring an end
15 in this day and age
16 (just) on the point of leaving
17 will (only/just) take me a second to
18 at the drop of a hat

C

19 under
20 over
21 up
22 on
23 away
24 off
25 ahead/on
26 off

D

27 I'll be lazing
28 √
29 Shall I/Should I
30 she gets/she's got
31 √
32 I'm going to be
33 we'll decide
34 √

E

35 D
36 C
37 A
38 B
39 C
40 A
41 D
42 D

Unit 7

A

1 was issued
2 √
3 Has … been confirmed
4 had been invited
5 was invented
6 was discussed
7 √
8 was invaded
9 √
10 being treated
11 were shown
12 √

B

1 were found
2 to be shown
3 were asked
4 being given
5 were written

6 is lit/has been lit
7 being allowed
8 to be met
9 was made
10 to be known

C

1 to be caused
2 are estimated
3 has been reported
4 to have used
5 is calculated
6 are understood
7 to eat
8 were meant
9 It
10 to be delivered

D

1 has been called
2 was sold
3 being named/having been named
4 was
5 transported
6 was granted
7 (should/could/ought to) be built

E

1 I will have been in training as/to be an accountant for a/one year
2 has been under consideration (by the council) for some time
3 have been in progress for over two weeks
4 will be on display at the library this weekend
5 seems to have been under construction for a long time

F

1 √
2 it delivered
3 checked
4 √
5 got
6 come
7 work
8 it running
9 to come out
10 √

G

1 get your teacher to explain/have your teacher explain
2 got me feeling/had me feeling
3 get a professional to do/have a professional do
4 Having our car stolen/Getting our car stolen
5 get your parents to help/have your parents help
6 got us all dancing/had us all dancing
7 to get me to do/to have me do
8 having your hair cut
9 got Karen to show/had Karen show
10 getting their essays written/having their essays written

H

1 was kept waiting
2 being considered a star
3 is reported to be making/is said to be making/has been reported to be making
4 staff were/was provided with extra training by
5 this computer program explaining to
6 has been under construction
7 Craig was made to stay/they got Craig to stay
8 have him send

I

1 C
2 D
3 A
4 C
5 C
6 D
7 A
8 D
9 C
10 B

J

1 being
2 are
3 in/under
4 is
5 with
6 be
7 been
8 has
9 have
10 be

Unit 8

A

1 grabbed
2 fumbled
3 clutching
4 pointed
5 waved
6 punched
7 gestured/pointed
8 clenched
9 grasped
10 crept
11 hop
12 jog
13 step
14 dashed
15 crawl
16 marched
17 strode/stepped
18 leapt
19 skipped
20 drifting
21 roam
22 wandered
23 slipped
24 slide
25 tripped
26 skidded

B

1 clambered ascended descend
2 gliding velocity accelerate flow sinking approached
3 migrates float route
4 bounce roll rotates
5 emigrated immigrants refugees

C

1 commute
2 carriage
3 airline
4 charter
5 destinations
6 legroom
7 stewards
8 jet lag

D

1 quay
2 piers
3 pedestrians
4 passersby
5 steer
6 pilot

7 hitchhiker
8 hikers
9 round trip
10 return fare
11 load
12 cargo

E

1 on
2 off
3 over
4 aside
5 off
6 up
7 out
8 behind

F

1 pulled over
2 held back
3 walked out
4 stop off
5 creep up
6 slipped away
7 moving in
8 went astray

G

1
2
4
6
7

H

1 get a move on
2 fell in love
3 did it in a rush/wrote it in a rush
4 jump at the chance
5 backs onto
6 raise your hopes
7 went and told
8 fly at
9 get it out of the way/get that out of the way
10 keep track of
11 drop me at
12 get them wet

I

1 came
2 raise
3 at
4 open
5 rush
6 go
7 raise

8 way
9 on
10 jump

J

1 drove
2 head
3 come
4 steady
5 point
6 turned
7 followed
8 running

K

1 crow
2 middle
3 beeline
4 tracks
5 track
6 nose
7 bearings
8 stone's
9 route
10 take

L

1 upper
2 inaccessible
3 mobility
4 overcome
5 undergone
6 progressively
7 rapidly
8 landing
9 movement
10 withstand

M

1 steadily
2 impassable
3 ongoing
4 speedy
5 outstanding
6 stability
7 transition
8 motionless

N

1
3
4
5
6
8
10

O

1 dehydrate
2 deregulate
3 decaffeinated
4 demotivate
5 desensitise
6 deform
7 devalue

Review 4

A

1 was
2 on
3 is
4 every
5 in
6 itself
7 on
8 can
9 There
10 it

B

11 comeback
12 unsteady
13 moving
14 passage
15 progressive
16 destabilised
17 notwithstanding
18 speeding

C

19 running
20 raise
21 point
22 jumped
23 follow
24 fell
25 turn
26 go

D

27 was given the ball by
28 are reported to have been
29 not to fall behind
30 has been cordoned off by
31 had a friend of ours fix
32 makes a point of welcoming
33 soon had the audience laughing
34 get this work out of the way

E

35 C
36 D
37 C
38 D
39 B
40 C
41 A
42 B

Unit 9

A

1 couldn't could
2 can/could
3 could I'd be able to/I could
4 could
5 can't/won't be able to
6 managed to
7 go/have gone
8 be able to
9 will humans be able to
10 may
11 have caught
12 Can't
13 could/was able to
14 May/Can
15 were allowed to

B

1 do
2 feel
3 to recover
4 invite
5 have
6 to sit/to eat
7 eat/have
8 speak
9 to work
10 have stood
11 be provided
12 have gone

C

1 get
2 have
3 given
4 had
5 should
6 √
7 might/may
8 √
9 better
10 will
11 would
12 might/could/should

D

1 better see
2 would forget wouldn't
3 might have invited/could have invited/ought to have invited/should have invited
4 oughtn't to have bought/shouldn't have bought
5 will/do won't/don't
6 might as well see/may as well see
7 Hadn't you
8 probably ought have asked

E

1 needn't
2 have
3 needn't
4 had
5 doesn't
6 Will
7 have
8 has
9 must
10 got

F

1 don't have to pay/don't need to pay/needn't pay
2 have to be kept/need to be kept/must be kept
3 doesn't have to be picked up/doesn't need to be picked up/needn't be picked up/doesn't need picking up
4 won't have to rely/won't need to rely
5 must be sent off/will have to be sent off/need to be sent off/need sending off
6 had to get/needed to get
7 Did you have to make/Did you need to make
8 mustn't believe
9 didn't have to put/didn't need to put
10 do farmers have to get up/do farmers need to get up/must farmers get up
11 to have to commute
12 needn't have done

G

1 to
2 done
3 ought/claims
4 do
5 to
6 got
7 must/should/dare
8 need/might
9 had/needed/wanted
10 well
11 will
12 be
13 should
14 should/need
15 had

H

1 That'll
2 be
3 can't
4 must
5 can't/couldn't
6 wouldn't
7 may/might
8 might
9 have landed
10 might

I

1 may not have been/gone/might not have been/gone
2 may well have been lying/might well have been lying
3 must have been awarded the medal
4 ought not to have arrived
5 will the winner definitely not have been
6 may well have been
7 couldn't be/can't be

J

1 C
2 D
3 D
4 B
5 D
6 C
7 D
8 A
9 B
10 A

Unit 10

A

1 exaggerating
2 contradicted
3 boast
4 flattering

5 asserted
6 insist
7 alleged
8 utter
9 confide
10 confirm
11 disclosed
12 convey
13 murmuring
14 stumbles
15 stuttering
16 mumble
17 raving
18 scribbling
19 quibbling
20 rants
21 tip
22 clarification
23 gist
24 context

B

1 jargon
2 comprehend
3 vague
4 ambiguous
5 inkling
6 illegible
7 denounce
8 blunt
9 petition

C

1 prerecorded
2 correspondent
3 spine
4 anchor
5 coverage
6 trailer
7 caption
8 footnote
9 broadcast
10 pamphlet

D

1 novelist
2 supplements
3 subtitles
4 manifesto
5 handbook
6 columnist
7 critic
8 reviewer
9 tabloid
10 ghostwriters

E

1 pass on
2 blurted out
3 talk round
4 get across
5 talked over
6 speak out
7 shouted down
8 dry up

F

1 let
2 comes
3 gets
4 came
5 put
6 set
7 caught
8 get

G

1
3
4
5
6
7
9
12

H

1 without
2 between
3 out
4 to
5 for
6 In
7 to
8 on
9 over

I

1 to tell the difference between the articles and
2 take it as read (that)
3 talk the editor out of publishing
4 got into an argument with Terry
5 come to an understanding/ reach an understanding
6 have a discussion with Phil about this

J

1 speak
2 word
3 speaking
4 record
5 notice
6 book
7 answer

K

1 mouth
2 posted
3 tales
4 volumes
5 grapevine
6 chest
7 cards
8 hat
9 clean
10 word
11 drift
12 stick

L

1 expressionless
2 publicity
3 unspeakably
4 wording
5 talkative
6 exclamation
7 typecast
8 suggestible
9 unprintable
10 insistent

M

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
15
16
17
20

N

1 overcooked/overdone
2 overdressed
3 overspent
4 overexcited
5 overstepped
6 overgrown
7 overweight
8 overpriced

O

1 saying
2 outspoken
3 declaration
4 meaningless
5 writings
6 editor
7 rephrase
8 statement
9 implication
10 hearsay

Review 5

A

1 B
2 C
3 D
4 D
5 A
6 C
7 C
8 B
9 A
10 D

B

11 am not in my dad's good books/am in my dad's bad books
12 goes without saying
13 reading between the lines
14 on speaking terms
15 not have talked Adrian into lying
16 must have had a word (with Bob) about/would have had a word (with Bob) about/will have had a word (with Bob) about
17 have got the wrong end of the stick
18 don't need to give me your word/don't have to give me your word

C

19 editorship
20 hearsay
21 implications
22 an understatement
23 talkative
24 an unwritten
25 exclamation
26 expressly

D

27 out
28 round
29 over
30 on
31 out
32 up
33 out
34 down

E

35 A
36 A
37 D
38 C
39 B
40 D
41 A
42 B

Unit 11

A

1 I
2 J
3 D
4 A
5 G
6 B
7 H
8 C
9 F
10 E

B

1 had got me a birthday present, I would have got her one
2 hadn't made a mistake with our order, we would have paid them on time
3 the climate wasn't/weren't undergoing such radical changes, scientists wouldn't be so worried
4 California have become an important area if they hadn't found gold there
5 wasn't/weren't for the sunset, tourists wouldn't be attracted/go to that place
6 hadn't been a traffic jam on the motorway, I wouldn't have been late for my interview
7 you, I would use a sunblock and then you wouldn't go red
8 had been paying attention to the road, the accident wouldn't have happened

C

1 hadn't done
2 would have had
3 asked
4 are booked/have been booked
5 have/will have
6 get/have got
7 have happened
8 had been
9 wander
10 not have been
11 hadn't started
12 have happened

D

1 be
2 Should
3 Had they not
4 had worked
5 have
6 be worrying
7 had he not
8 Were we not
9 had gone
10 should
11 Should you not
12 were

E

1 so
2 long
3 provided
4 unless
5 case
6 suppose
7 otherwise
8 condition

F

1 it
2 been
3 to
4 But
5 if
6 should
7 were
8 for
9 had
10 should/do

G

1 won the contract if it hadn't been for Debbie's fantastic presentation/won the contract had it not been for Debbie's fantastic presentation

2 the eventual arrival of the ferry, a fight would have broken out amongst the passengers
3 for the driver's quick reaction, (some of) the passengers would have been injured
4 Wendy turns up soon, we'll have to cancel the meeting
5 not for his daughter's visits, Mr Jones would be quite lonely
6 you need it, here's my phone number
7 you are back by midnight, you can go/you agree to be back by midnight, you can go
8 not been for Officer Hughes, the robbers would have escaped

H

1 C
2 B
3 D
4 B
5 A
6 D
7 C
8 B
9 A
10 D

I

1 it
2 were
3 would
4 was
5 were
6 would/could
7 if
8 are/get
9 not/never
10 had
11 had
12 for

J

1 it not been for
2 (that) there are no changes to
3 you to apply now
4 I would have offered
5 in case it gets
6 if not for having/I not having
7 people seen this film ten years ago
8 on condition that

Unit 12

A

1 foresee
2 gamble
3 mutated
4 attributed
5 started
6 fluctuate
7 determine
8 wobble
9 pick
10 meander

B

1 A
2 C
3 C
4 D
5 B
6 D
7 A
8 D

C

1 spontaneous
2 haphazard
3 blow
4 mishaps
5 freak
6 inadvertent
7 statistics
8 odds
9 jinxed
10 superstitious
11 assigned
12 ascribed
13 stray
14 random
15 caused
16 transpired

D

1 catastrophe
2 evacuate
3 fossil fuels
4 greenery
5 habitat
6 harvest
7 instinct
8 resource
9 [tick]
10 species

E

1 agriculture
2 crop
3 famine
4 drought
5 appreciate
6 exploit
7 global warming
8 natural disaster
9 floods
10 hurricanes

F

1 down
2 on
3 up
4 down
5 through
6 out
7 up
8 off

G

1 chanced upon/came across
2 slip up
3 throw out
4 store up
5 thrown up
6 chanced upon/came across
7 dug up
8 sprung up

H

1 cross off √
2 wiped off √
3 shave off √
4 gone off
5 chop off √
6 drop off
7 set off
8 peel off √

I

1 by
2 in
3 by
4 of
5 on
6 in
7 in
8 by

J

1 guess
2 every/a
3 to
4 their
5 the
6 of
7 of

8 risk
9 of
10 against

K

1 say
2 natural
3 make
4 green
5 second
6 pushing
7 pose/present
8 pour

L

1 found
2 nature
3 chance
4 weather
5 luck
6 happens
7 certain
8 guess

M

1 down on her luck
2 let nature take its course
3 out of the blue
4 come rain or shine
5 the luck of the draw
6 act of God
7 no rhyme or reason
8 drew the short straw
9 touch wood
10 had green fingers

N

1 conservation
2 intention
3 wildlife
4 ecologists
5 threatened
6 extinction
7 Fortunately
8 probably
9 insurmountable
10 seemingly

O

1 occurrence
2 causal
3 erosion
4 instinctive
5 mysterious
6 risky
7 assessment
8 favourable
9 elusive
10 eruption

P

brainy bumpy curly guilty
hairy hasty juicy lucky
lumpy meaty milky
scary shiny sporty spotty
tasty watery wealthy

Review 6

A

1 insurmountable
2 favourable
3 reassessment
4 seemingly
5 improbable
6 wilderness
7 threatened
8 extinction
9 ecological
10 mysterious

B

11 hadn't
12 should
13 in case
14 have had
15 had been
16 Unless
17 but for
18 providing

C

19 it not been for the cost
20 put the (reason for the) failure down
21 under the weather
22 the council to stop wasting
23 let nature take its course
24 so long as they can
25 if I hadn't slipped up/had I not slipped up
26 chances of being picked

D

27 at
28 by
29 At
30 at
31 in
32 as
33 to
34 on

E

35 B
36 C
37 C
38 C
39 D
40 A
41 A
42 D

Progress Test 1: Units 1-12

A

1 newcomer
2 undergone
3 unfavourable
4 convertible
5 production
6 understatement
7 revolutionary
8 adjustable
9 processors
10 outlasts

B

11 on
12 in
13 at
14 in
15 on
16 on
17 to
18 on

C

19 until we have been working for
20 on the verge of asking
21 were meant to be/were meant to have been
22 have the car looked at/get the car looked at
23 may well not have got/might well not have got
24 oughtn't to have let/shouldn't have let
25 had better not forget
26 had it not been for my dad's advice
27 will fail unless/are going to fail unless
28 is due to start

D

29 ambiguous
30 provisional
31 ingenious
32 colloquial
33 abrupt
34 timely
35 a simultaneous

E

36 take/spend
37 into
38 at
39 in
40 for
41 time
42 in
43 was
44 out
45 as
46 on
47 (a)round
48 difference
49 escaped
50 if

F

51 out/up
52 out
53 down
54 on
55 apart
56 up
57 up
58 over
59 up
60 through

G

61 impression
62 run
63 basis
64 thrown
65 process
66 record

H

67 stuck
68 speaks/spoke
69 come
70 follow
71 made
72 take
73 knows
74 put

I

75 B
76 C
77 A
78 C
79 D
80 A
81 D
82 C

J

83 C
84 C
85 A
86 B
87 C
88 D
89 B
90 C

Unit 13

A

1 had had
2 Were we
3 Had the Romans been
4 had employed
5 did not have
6 hadn't (been) developed
7 were/was
8 did
9 hadn't been/wasn't/weren't
10 hadn't done

B

1 had
2 decided
3 were/had been saying/said
4 didn't have
5 hadn't been invented
6 stopped
7 had just been told
8 could
9 spoke
10 was proved /were proved /had been proved
11 became
12 were given/had been given
13 woke
14 were
15 couldn't

C

1 A
2 A
3 B
4 B
5 A
6 B

D

1 had grown up
2 had been dragged
3 was going/were going
4 had been doing
5 had had
6 wishes
7 was rolling/were rolling
8 wasn't/weren't
9 had happened

E

1 did you want
2 was looking
3 were wondering/wondered
wanted
4 Were you planning/Did you plan
5 Did you wish/Were you wishing
6 Were you looking
7 Did you want
8 was hoping/hoped/had hoped
'd give
9 did you intend/were you intending
10 was wondering/wondered
would be paying/would pay

F

1 stopped
2 looked/were looking
3 bought
4 to do
5 started
6 to get up
7 were given
8 to be made
9 was allowed
10 to go
11 learnt/were learning to
12 to call

G

1 had
2 I came back
3 you didn't tell
4 we got went
5 was living/lived
6 she was sent/were sent
7 we didn't talk/not talk
8 you'd told
9 have
10 they hadn't stayed

H

1 had
2 ran/were running
3 hadn't left
4 didn't
5 would come
6 sang/could sing
7 have gone
8 to speak
9 hope
10 they would give him
11 luck
12 was/had been
13 you'd been
14 wasn't going
15 hadn't been

I

1 A
2 D
3 A
4 A
5 B
6 C
7 C
8 B

J

1 would rather not be given
2 only we had got/we had only got
3 wish they'd stop
4 I could have seen
5 about time they brought
6 if Cynthia hadn't rung

Unit 14

A

1 A
2 A
3 A
4 C
5 B
6 C
7 C
8 D

B

1 average
2 quantity
3 ration
4 expand
5 finite
6 vast
7 equidistant
8 imbalance
9 force
10 uneven
11 mass
12 intensity/force

C

1 damages
2 compensation
3 deduct
4 withdraw
5 down payment
6 lump sum
7 deposit
8 speculating
9 debit
10 finance

D

1 interest
2 overdraft
3 mortgage
4 insurance
5 benefits
6 pension
7 debt
8 shares
9 investment
10 dividend

E

1 up
2 down
3 up
4 down
5 away
6 back
7 up
8 to
9 out

F

1 D
2 G
3 A
4 B
5 E
6 C
7 F

G

1
3
5
6

H

1 long
2 share
3 of
4 thin
5 at
6 in
7 in
8 at
9 poor
10 fat
11 rich
12 for
13 load

I

1 fat
2 high
3 breadth
4 see
5 Bang
6 worth
7 display
8 alike
9 thin
10 ground

J

1 short
2 pays
3 lot
4 high
5 big
6 small

K

1 go to any lengths
2 making (such) a big deal (out) of
3 was (completely/totally) out of his depth
4 in no small way
5 high and low
6 at (great) length

L

1 short
2 fifty-fifty
3 broad
4 grasshopper
5 pockets
6 ocean
7 barrel
8 halves/fifty-fifty
9 dozen
10 tidy
11 even
12 keep

M

1 apportion
2 height
3 withdrawal
4 longevity
5 majority
6 magnification
7 (re)payments
8 equidistant
9 beneficial
10 Brevity
11 lengthened
12 prolong
13 allotted

N

1 broadened
2 considerable
3 extent
4 Additionally
5 largely
6 extension
7 minority
8 depth
9 weighty
10 infinite

O

put in/on (a) ...	make ...	bring into effect
encode endanger enlist enrage enthrone entomb entrap	enable endear enrich enslave	enforce

P

1 enlisting
2 enable
3 enforce
4 encircled
5 endangering
6 enlarge

Review 7

A

1 highlights/highlighted
2 extent
3 apportioned
4 lengths
5 Additionally
6 withdrawn
7 inconsiderable
8 majority
9 (re)payments
10 minority

B

11 skating on thin ice
12 has (got) a short temper/has (got) a short fuse
13 it pays to shop
14 got my money's worth
15 has (got) a lot (of things) on his mind
16 you had searched high and low
17 I wasn't out of my depth in /with/weren't out of my depth in /with
18 hadn't drawn the short straw

C

19 mortgage
20 debit
21 payment
22 sum
23 pension
24 overdraft
25 deposit
26 compensation

D

27 club
28 drum
29 clocked
30 mounting
31 size
32 break
33 pay
34 buying

E

35 C
36 D
37 A
38 B
39 B
40 B
41 D
42 B

Unit 15

A

1 unhappy
2 √
3 calm
4 dreadful
5 √
6 √
7 restless
8 √
9 spicy
10 angry
11 √
12 tired

B

1 hard a day
2 frightening an experience
3 difficult a task
4 moving a performance
5 good a memory
6 tempting an offer
7 successful a career
8 good a pianist

C

1 a gorgeous little African
2 black leather climbing
3 fantastic pink Russian silk ballet
4 beautiful cream cotton wedding
5 ugly blue foreign
6 tiny green Amazonian
7 lovely long white sheepskin
8 funny red plastic
9 horrible wide yellow
10 dreadful short French nylon

D

1 C
2 B
3 B C
4 B C
5 B
6 C
7 C D

E

1 funnier than
2 less reliable than
3 a more demanding
4 the hardest
5 the ugliest
6 longer
7 Less valuable than
8 the least observant
9 the slightest
10 the fewer

F

1 deal
2 far
3 little more
4 by
5 considerably
6 a little

7 quite
8 any
9 no
10 good

G

1 are not quite as expensive as
2 nothing like as committed as Richard (is)
3 more you argue about it, the later
4 half as expensive as
5 is nowhere near as big as
6 isn't nearly as adventurous as/ isn't nearly so adventurous as
7 bigger the city, the higher
8 was nowhere near as successful as

H

1 very
2 fairly
3 absolutely
4 very
5 utterly
6 too
7 a bit
8 very

I

1 hard
2 hardly
3 hard
4 fair
5 fairly
6 fairly
7 free
8 freely
9 free
10 high
11 highly
12 high

J

1 much
2 no
3 deal
4 than
5 the
6 more
7 far
8 most
9 less
10 nothing
11 as
12 than

K

1 C
2 A
3 B
4 D
5 C
6 C
7 B
8 D

Unit 16

A

1 pile
2 lumps
3 flakes
4 blocks
5 speck
6 grains
7 crumbs
8 chips
9 scratch
10 patted
11 polished
12 stroke
13 scrub
14 squeeze
15 crush
16 grind
17 squash
18 Tear
19 cracked
20 smashed
21 fragile
22 transparent
23 stiff
24 opaque
25 brittle
26 dense
27 hollow
28 stuffed
29 stacking
30 mould

B

1 friction solids liquid gravity
2 synthetic fabric texture
3 compacts substance mineral
4 dissolve dilute concentrate

C

1 bypass
2 construct
3 inner city
4 populated
5 suburban
6 district
7 surroundings
8 occupies
9 urban
10 dwell

D

1 built-up
2 high-rise
3 skyscraper
4 skyline
5 housing
6 estate
7 demolish
8 evict
9 structure
10 infrastructure

E

1 up
2 up
3 up
4 up
5 down
6 up
7 down
8 in

F

1 set up/put up
2 Cut out
3 water down
4 propped up
5 come out
6 spread out
7 put together
8 worn down

G

1
2
4
6
7
8
10

H

1 smooth sailing
2 on the house
3 raw materials
4 the town of
5 on the table
6 bricks and mortar
7 out of shape
8 precious metal

I

1 on
2 your/the
3 make
4 on/into/onto
5 matter
6 under(neath)/beneath
7 way
8 into
9 to
10 had

J

1 foundation
2 tough
3 matter
4 floor
5 mark
6 fold

K

1 landscape
2 jungle
3 home
4 town
5 belt
6 sticks
7 town
8 home
9 street
10 home

L

11 manufacturing
12 surrounding
13 solidify
14 householder
15 softly
16 slippery/slippy
17 metallic
18 substantial
19 rigidly
20 structural

M

1 analysts
2 shelved
3 materialised
4 irreparably
5 spacious
6 residents
7 habitable/inhabitable
8 objections
9 densely
10 architectural

N

1 blacken
2 brighten
3 broaden
5 dampen
6 deepen
7 frighten
8 harden
9 lengthen
10 loosen
12 redden
13 shorten
14 strengthen
16 tighten
17 weaken
18 widen

O

1 widen
2 strengthens/strengthened
3 reddened
4 shorten
5 tighten
6 brighten
7 harden
8 weaken

Review 8

A

1 residence
2 surroundings
3 solidity
4 architectural
5 manufacturers
6 spacious
7 shelves/shelving
8 infrastructure
9 (in)habitable
10 residential

B

11 considerably
12 nothing
13 near
14 hard
15 quite
16 the
17 free
18 absolutely

C

19 have no foundation/are without foundation
20 keep a sharp eye on
21 in a matter of
22 a great deal more experience than/a good deal more experience than
23 of watering his statement down/of watering down his statement
24 smooth the way for
25 is so talented a
26 a blot on the landscape

D

27 yourself/yourselves
28 off
29 matter
30 on
31 on
32 window
33 round
34 opinion

E

35 A
36 D
37 C
38 C
39 D
40 B
41 D
42 B

Unit 17

A

1 whose
2 why
3 which
4 whose
5 when who
6 where
7 which
8 when
9 which
10 who
11 which
12 whom
13 What which
14 Who

B

2 why 3 which 5 who 7 which
8 when 9 which 14 who

C

2 why 3 which 5 who 7 which
8 when 14 who

D

1 (which/that) we'd found
2 whose
3 when/that/on which
4 √
5 √
6 (which) I really want to see
7 you were born
8 √
9 which
10 What
11 Whose car you just hit

E

2 The film, which was directed by Mel Gibson, is actually in Hebrew.
4 I bumped into Katherine the other day, which was a strange coincidence.
6 The best man at my wedding, who used to live in Germany, has just moved to China.
8 Warwick University, where I spent three wonderful years, is one of the top ten universities in the country.

F

1 in
2 for
3 of
4 on
5 for
6 of
7 by
8 To/With
9 of
10 at
11 in
12 of

G

1 That tree, which my grandfather planted 60 years ago, is an oak.
2 Tina and Charlie, who are identical twins, are having a party this Saturday.
3 On the Friday, when the ferry was delayed, we spent most of the day sitting in the port.
4 Barbara, who you met at Libby's last Thursday, used to work in the Personnel Department.
5 Let's go to da Vinci's, where they do a great pepper steak.
6 This book, which was given to me by my great aunt, was once owned by Sir Francis Drake.
7 Why did Danny, who's totally unfit, decide to enter the marathon?
8 Guy, whose sister is married to my brother, is now engaged to my sister.

H

1 eating/having eaten
2 having been told
3 Given
4 keeping/who was keeping
5 Having seen
6 injured
7 Not being
8 having made
9 Shown/Having been shown
10 Listening
11 To get/Getting
12 to make

I

1 given
2 getting/having got
3 arrested
4 complainingly/having complained
5 Having seen
6 Swimming
7 Having applied
8 starting
9 Not wanting
10 to wait
11 Shot
12 To make/Making

J

1 B
2 C
3 A
4 D
5 D
6 A
7 B
8 C
9 C
10 B

K

1 though he (had) looked
2 even if they start
3 in spite of the fact (that)
4 spite of (our) not being given/spite of (our) not having been given
5 as he might
6 loudly she might have shouted
7 as I begged (him to)
8 though we were

L

1 C
2 C
3 A
4 D
5 B
6 D

M

1 which
2 whose
3 Having
4 where
5 this
6 who/that
7 in
8 However
9 made
10 Although/Though/Whereas
11 taken
12 which/that
13 Despite
14 to
15 if/when

Unit 18

A

1 manners
2 behaviour
3 prevent
4 avoid
5 giggling
6 chuckled
7 grinning
8 smirking
9 glimpsed
10 glanced
11 peer
12 peep
13 fed up
14 cross
15 manoeuvre
16 tactics

B

1 mock
2 gloat
3 grimace

4 √
5 terror
6 snap
7 contentment
8 neglect
9 handle
10 conduct

C

1 agonising
2 rejoicing
3 acknowledge
4 moaning
5 disgusted
6 resent
7 comfort
8 resolute
9 glum
10 disillusioned
11 consequences
12 dignity
13 inertia
14 apathy

D

1 antidote
2 vaccines
3 inoculated
4 irritation
5 a plaster
6 plaster
7 diagnosis
8 prognosis
9 Preventive
10 home

E

1 agony
2 leave
3 prescribed
4 admitted
5 ward
6 consultant
7 diagnosis
8 administer
9 syringe
10 side
11 numb
12 paralysis

F

1 up
2 down
3 up
4 over
5 up
6 round
7 up
8 out

G

1 pulled through
2 go down
3 cotton on
4 lashing out
5 blacked out
6 ward off
7 followed up
8 passed away

H

1 √ 3 √ 4 √ 5 √ 6 √

I

1 on
2 in
3 by
4 to
5 in
6 of
7 in
8 in
9 as
10 in

J

1 health
2 quality
3 aggressive
4 adverse
5 polite
6 dire
7 alternative

K

1 dead
2 kind
3 life
4 sick
5 laugh
6 effect

L

1 a far cry from
2 feel the benefits of the medicine/see the benefits of the medicine
3 was just acting on the sergeant's orders
4 would cause such a violent reaction
5 treat them with a bit more respect
6 has been take ill with

M

1 miss
2 kicked
3 grin
4 Keep
5 handle
6 steam
7 medicine
8 arms
9 horse
10 dogs
11 milk
12 straight

N

1 activist
2 derivation
3 overreact
4 sensation
5 unfolding
6 prevention
7 negligently
8 fruitless
9 impatiently
10 fruition
11 disapproval
12 disillusionment
13 neglectful
14 regretful
15 regrettable
16 discontent(ment)
17 unresponsive

O

1 unresolved
2 ineffective
3 unavoidable
4 independently
5 resolutely
6 acknowledge
7 insensitive
8 knowledge
9 resulting/resultant
10 handle

Review 9

A

1 out
2 to
3 like
4 with
5 on
6 of

7 over
8 spilt
9 grin
10 putting

B

11 who /that went down badly with/
who /that was received badly by
12 caught in the act of driving
13 a far cry from
14 with effect from
15 take their own life
16 in for a treat
17 keeping a straight face
18 whose parents are up in arms

C

19 insensitive
20 handy
21 dependants
22 disapproval
23 activist
24 folder
25 negligible
26 fruition

D

27 cottoned
28 come
29 creased
30 passed
31 pull
32 blacked
33 ward
34 playing

E

35 B
36 B
37 C
38 A
39 C
40 A
41 C
42 C

Unit 19

A

1 had I sat down
2 √
3 √
4 does the government change
5 had they finished
6 had the new computer system been installed
7 had we started
8 the crowd began
9 was the new park finished/had the new park been finished
10 had Keith arrived

B

1 In no way
2 Not
3 Only after
4 On no account/Under no circumstances
5 Not only
6 At no point
7 Little
8 Rarely
9 Under no circumstances/On no account
10 Never

C

1 can construction continue
2 did the announcement affect
3 do you see
4 did Jerry forget/has Jerry forgotten
5 was I asked/had I been asked
6 I checked/had checked
7 did Caroline realise
8 should you sign
9 did it appear
10 will the space shuttle be allowed

D

1 is/goes
2 was
3 was/sat
4 came
5 was
6 stood
7 lay/was/sat
8 appeared/was/stood

E

1 do I
2 is it
3 we could
4 has my mum
5 was the media interest
6 last season was/was last season
7 is China
8 the French do/do the French
9 was the pressure
10 was he

F

1 was a cricket ball which/that broke the window
2 which I heard I'd got into my chosen university is one I will never forget
3 Glynn became a social worker was to help people less fortunate than himself
4 the athlete wanted was to get through the summer without getting injured
5 was (that) the driver didn't see the motorcyclist
6 who discovered America was Christopher Columbus
7 made me feel guilty was seeing Patricia cry like that
8 we had to do was (to) decide where to meet
9 where we go camping has lots of facilities
10 Einstein proved is/was that energy and mass are basically the same thing

G

1 so
2 enough
3 so
4 such
5 so
6 such
7 too
8 enough
9 so
10 such
11 so
12 too

H

1 I had cleared the spare room could I
2 had I put the phone down when
3 had the Watsons moved to London than
4 did I realise (that)
5 was Charlie who told
6 is it possible to buy
7 one (single) question did they ask me/a (single) question did they ask me
8 no circumstances will we allow

I

1 C
2 B

3 A
4 D
5 D
6 C
7 D
8 A
9 B
10 D

J

1 do
2 is
3 So
4 too
5 to
6 such
7 only
8 also
9 no
10 Not

Unit 20

A

1 consent
2 entitled
3 commands
4 eliminate
5 monarch
6 enforce
7 master
8 bully
9 authority
10 controversy

B

1 former
2 mainstream
3 superior
4 reluctant
5 subjective
6 benign
7 vulnerable
8 minister
9 inferior
10 society

C

1 subject/subjected
2 impose
3 restrict
4 summon
5 dominate
6 resist
7 liberate
8 labelled
9 victimise
10 undermine

D

1 reform
2 institutions
3 deterrent
4 convicts
5 community
6 corruption
7 prejudice
8 state
9 legislation
10 bureaucracy

E

1 abolish
2 charity
3 heritage
4 action
5 advocate
6 class
7 prosecute
8 √
9 alleviate
10 immigration

F

1 D
2 F
3 G
4 B
5 H
6 E
7 A
8 C

G

1 phasing
2 opt
3 cracking
4 blend
5 stand
6 singled
7 talk
8 pushing

H

2 √ 3 √ 5 √ 6 √ 7 √ 8 √

I

1 onto
2 as
3 against
4 in
5 gives
6 into
7 in
8 having
9 of
10 group

J

1 rule
2 charged
3 authority
4 example
5 denied
6 law

K

1 C
2 C
3 D
4 A
5 B
6 C
7 A
8 B
9 B
10 D

L

1 head
2 strings
3 law
4 thumb
5 hand
6 live
7 powers
8 tape
9 way
10 book

M

1 powerless
2 institutionalised
3 dutifully
4 officious
5 permissible
6 significantly
7 indicator/indication
8 criminal
9 persuasive
10 arguably

N

1 predominant
2 hardship
3 immoral
4 charitable
5 mighty

6 prejudiced
7 aggressive
8 exemplary
9 governing
10 provocation
11 argumentative
12 hard
13 unofficially
14 insignificant
15 ungovernable
16 dissuade

O

1 √
2 √
3 √
4 √
5 √
6 √
7 √
8 √
9 √
10 √
11 √
13 √
15 √
16 √
17 √
19 √
20 √
21 √
22 √

P

1 misheard/misunderstood
2 misfortune
3 misusing/mismanaging
4 miscalculated
5 misbehave
6 misspell
7 misjudged
8 misfired

Review 10

A

1 does/can/will
2 sand
3 not
4 in
5 up
6 no
7 are
8 down
9 not
10 be

B

11 harden
12 exemplifies/exemplified
13 demoralised
14 powerlessness
15 decriminalise
16 insignificant
17 provocation
18 ungovernable

C

19 as
20 in
21 to
22 served
23 under
24 above
25 down
26 make

D

27 under no circumstances are
28 lock horns with
29 after all bags have been checked can passengers
30 denied me access to
31 sooner had we arrived than
32 have it on good authority/got it on good authority
33 so much concern about the situation was
34 gives the right

E

35 A
36 C
37 C
38 D
39 D
40 C
41 D
42 B

Unit 21

A

1 sheep
2 sisters-in-law
3 fish/fishes
4 news
5 hair/hairs
6 information
7 furniture
8 permission
9 Physics
10 money
11 advice
12 jewellery
13 chocolate/chocolates
14 knowledge
15 politics

B

1 Was
2 have increased
3 Is/Was
4 are/were
5 is/was
6 Is/Are
7 need
8 Is/Was
9 is/was
10 are eating
11 is
12 are/were
13 is/was
14 has gone off/is going off
15 were

C

1 bar
2 pack
3 piece/slice/bit
4 drop/bit
5 breath/bit
6 herd
7 pair
8 loaf
9 bunch
10 gust
11 speck/bit
12 √
13 flock
14 blade/bit
15 √
16 block/lump/bit/piece
17 √
18 √
19 lump
20 sheet/bit/piece

D

1 work works
2 damage damages
3 cakes cake
4 help help
5 hairs hair
6 glass glasses
7 arm arms
8 wood(s) wood
9 knowledge knowledge
10 space spaces
11 paper papers

12 chickens chicken
13 times time
14 chocolate chocolates

E

1 a couple of
2 a number of
3 a little
4 a little
5 A few
6 a small amount of
7 much of
8 Very few/Too few

F

1 any/some
2 any
3 Only a few/Few/A few
4 a little/a small amount of
5 Neither of the
6 All/Most/Many
7 None/Half/Each
8 Each/Every
9 little/not much
10 plenty/a lot/lots

G

1 a the
2 the the an a
3 A an
4 the the
5 The the (or no article) no article
6 no article no article no article a
7 the no article the a no article
8 the the the the
9 a an
10 the a a a

H

1 C
2 A
3 B
4 D
5 D
6 B
7 D
8 A

I

1 an/the
2 every/each
3 the
4 great
5 the
6 a
7 Each/Every
8 any
9 few
10 number
11 the
12 the
13 many/some/several
14 entire/whole
15 amount

Unit 22

A

1 streamline
2 renovated
3 exacerbating/aggravating
4 evaluating
5 contaminated
6 bettered
7 enhance
8 declined
9 surpass
10 wrecked/worsened
11 cheapened
12 shambles
13 blemish

B

1 exquisite
2 redeeming
3 rusty
4 inadequate
5 shoddy
6 defective
7 rotten
8 prime
9 invaluable
10 satisfactory
11 stale
12 detrimental
13 ultimate
14 sound
15 ideal
16 first-rate
17 optimum

C

1 bestseller
2 paperback
3 lines
4 lyrics
5 recital
6 score
7 retrospective
8 curator
9 worthless
10 priceless
11 jobs
12 works

D

1 masterpieces
2 installations
3 auction
4 sketches
5 fine
6 items
7 abstract
8 period

E

1 brush
2 written
3 stands
4 pick
5 check
6 scraped
7 touch
8 make

F

1 √
2 messed
3 patched
4 papered
5 run
6 √
7 smartened
8 wasted

G

1 make
2 nice
3 head
4 fine
5 best
6 brand
7 enemy
8 blood
9 work
10 down

H

1 best
2 fresh
3 clean
4 style
5 old
6 better

I

1 worse
2 in
3 bottom/heart
4 to
5 made
6 worst
7 quality
8 form
9 at
10 its
11 fine

J

1 word
2 pride
3 sight
4 heel
5 world
6 par
7 show
8 line
9 top
10 fuel
11 whistle
12 edge

K

1 classics
2 inimitable
3 destruction
4 admiration
5 impressionable
6 perfectionist
7 idealist
8 inadequacy
9 worthwhile
10 valuation
11 declassified
12 awesome
13 worthy
14 artefacts/artifacts/artworks
15 terrifying
16 reusable
17 qualitative

L

1 classified
2 impressive
3 improvement
4 terrific
5 collector's/collectable
6 artificial
7 Collectors
8 unused
9 imperfections
10 strengths
11 valuable
12 worthless
13 matching
14 imitation(s)
15 indestructible
16 goods

M

1 ✗
2 √
3 ✗
4 ✗
5 ✗
6 ✗
7 ✗
8 √
9 √
10 ✗

Review 11

A

1 show
2 out
3 up
4 new
5 stand
6 at
7 down
8 in/with
9 out
10 pride

B

11 a fine line
12 from the bottom of my heart
13 the best of my knowledge
14 make myself clear/make it clear/make (clear) exactly what I mean (clear)
15 is getting on top of
16 have (got) a (completely) clear conscience
17 get to the bottom of
18 took a turn for the worse

C

19 pick
20 write
21 run(s)
22 touch
23 smartening
24 livened/brightened
25 scrape
26 brighten

D

27 artificial
28 classifieds
29 perfectionist
30 destruction
31 strengthened
32 imitation
33 valuables
34 goodwill

E

35 C
36 C
37 B
38 B
39 B
40 D
41 A
42 D

Unit 23

A

1 allowing
2 to get
3 having
4 sleeping
5 to know
6 feeling
7 to apply
8 to join
9 needing
10 to bump
11 to help
12 to contact

B

1 to being
2 to see
3 meeting
4 sitting
5 meeting
6 to tell
7 to say
8 to meeting
9 ordering
10 having

C

1 putting
2 to allow
3 to buy
4 of committing
5 to have been robbed
6 to wait

7 to recycle
8 (on) asking
9 to prove
10 to be promoted

D

1 clearing
2 to resist
3 making
4 being
5 exercising
6 to happen
7 to apply
8 working
9 to get
10 to know

E

1 glimpsed walking
2 hear say/saying
3 observed interacting
4 smell burning
5 found hiding
6 watched climb
7 noticing trying
8 felt following
9 caught wishing
10 saw/glimpsed coming/walking

F

1 to get
2 get
3 to stay
4 getting
5 to fall
6 to get
7 feeling
8 feel
9 to separate
10 to live
11 having
12 to resolve

G

1 telling
2 to tell
3 to get
4 getting
5 to announce
6 announcing
7 talking
8 to talk
9 to go
10 going
11 changing
12 to change
13 to have
14 having

H

1 succeeded in finishing
2 qualifies him to teach
3 nominated me to speak
4 to quite like sharing
5 not to get into/never to get into
6 you regret inviting
7 have arranged for you to stay/ have made arrangements for you to stay
8 inspired you to create

I

1 D
2 B
3 A
4 D
5 C
6 C
7 D
8 A
9 B
10 C

J

1 to
2 yourself
3 find/think/consider
4 me
5 myself
6 on
7 dare
8 it
9 started/began
10 stand/bear

Unit 24

A

1 distinguish
2 contradict
3 liken
4 identify
5 attach
6 exclude
7 correspond
8 confront
9 integrate
10 comprise
11 negotiate
12 disputing
13 merge
14 involves

B

1 C
2 A
3 D
4 D
5 B
6 A
7 C
8 D
9 B
10 D
11 A
12 D

C

1 conflict
2 bond
3 relative
4 divorce
5 diverse
6 compatible
7 intimate
8 cooperate
9 mutual
10 compromise

D

1 acquaintance
2 stepmother
3 guardian
4 introvert
5 spouse
6 companion
7 extrovert
8 citizen

E

1 sympathise
2 empathise
3 fostered
4 adopted
5 peers
6 partners
7 dependants
8 siblings
9 predecessor
10 an ancestor
11 successor
12 descendant

F

1 up
2 between
3 up
4 to
5 together
6 out
7 out
8 out

G

1 bumped into
2 open up
3 go together
4 pick on
5 answer back
6 sound out
7 crowded around
8 takes after

H

1 fight/hit
2 hit/fought
3 talking
4 fired/fought
5 call
6 write/get
7 pay
8 get

I

1 mother
2 of
3 native
4 wedding
5 national
6 distant
7 child's
8 by
9 loved
10 abuse
11 make
12 human

J

1 fall
2 into
3 for
4 in
5 as
6 gap
7 with
8 of

K

1 love
2 common
3 near
4 respect
5 features
6 supported

L

1 same
2 terms
3 human
4 house
5 flesh
6 silver
7 peas
8 see
9 puts
10 books

M

1 inseparable
2 perceptive
3 inheritance
4 racist
5 apparent
6 disloyal
7 impersonating
8 association
9 relatively
10 unconnected
11 attachment
12 individuality

N

1 parenthood/parenting
2 unfamiliar
3 youth
4 appreciable
5 observation(s)
6 intimately
7 characteristics
8 unsympathetic
9 selfless
10 humanly

O

1 √
2 √
3 √
4 √
5 √
6 √
7 √
8 √
9 √
10 √
11 √
12 √
13 √
14 √
16 √
17 √
19 √
20 √
21 √
22 √
24 √

P

1 reconsider/rethink
2 reheat
3 renew
4 redo/rewrite
5 retrain
6 refill
7 recount
8 rejoined
9 recreate
10 reproduce

Review 12

A

1 characteristic
2 separately
3 unfamiliar
4 racism
5 loyalty
6 appreciation
7 heritage
8 disappearance
9 perception
10 relative

B

11 to meet
12 moving
13 behaving
14 to give
15 seeing
16 to contact
17 missing
18 to ask

C

19 takes after his father
20 found myself standing
21 was child's play
22 have anything in common with/have much in common with/have any interests in common with
23 will free me (up) to spend
24 got on like a house on fire
25 feel like going
26 didn't really see eye to eye

D

27 into
28 in
29 to
30 in
31 in
32 to
33 in
34 to

E

35 B
36 C
37 A
38 C
39 C
40 D
41 A
42 C

Unit 25

A

1 I'm definitely not going to the match on Saturday
2 You've forgotten to do the washing-up
3 was lying when I said I had (had) nothing to do with the breakages
4 Dawn wasn't particularly hard-working when she was at university
5 I haven't finished yet
6 I'll meet you all at the café in half an hour
7 You don't have to eat your sprouts if you don't want to/You haven't got to eat your sprouts if you don't want to
8 and I are going to set up a website
9 When did you get married
10 can I borrow your bike for a couple of hours/could I borrow your bike for a couple of hours

B

1 had
2 doesn't/didn't
3 was
4 were/had been   all went/had all gone
5 had
6 goes/went
7 had
8 is/was
9 do/did
10 wasn't

C

1 √
2 didn't have to   √
3 √
4 √
5 she'd better
6 had to/was to/should
7 must
8 I wasn't to/mustn't/shouldn't
9 could
10 didn't have to   did have to
11 would/should
12 would

D

1 they
2 the/that
3 his
4 it/that
5 the/those
6 her
7 them
8 their

E

1 that
2 then
3 previous
4 before/previously/earlier
5 the following/next
6 before
7 there

F

1 she and Carol had been to a great museum when they were/had been in Italy the previous month/the month before/she and Carol had gone to a great museum when they had been/were in Italy the previous month /the month before/
2 him that she had only washed the trousers the day before /the previous day/
him that she had only washed those trousers the day before /the previous day
3 his secretary that he/she had to /was to/should get all the letters sent off by the next /following day/the day after.
4 they would meet us all back there in exactly half an hour from then /that time/moment
5 she didn't have to go into the office that /on (the) Saturday
6 it couldn't be very nice having all the /those cars going by all the time
7 she would put them in water right then /right away/ immediately
8 he had told Dan two days previously/before that the/ report would have to be rewritten

G

1 he would go with her
2 whether the train got in
3 (him) if he'd been talking
4 us whether we were all coming the following (/next)/us whether we were all going the following (/next)
5 Jerry lived near me/Jerry lives near me
6 Trevor if (/whether) he should send him
7 offered to (help Carlo) do
8 if (/whether) they really did have to

H

1 she had
2 Ranji wanted
3 she had
4 to
5 I didn't
6 they thought
7 to
8 the website was

I

1 to get
2 wanted/would like
3 not to do
4 to attack
5 not to pass
6 had taken
7 to work
8 to use
9 to turn
10 liked/wanted/didn't like/didn't want
11 to make/get
12 not to talk

J

1 B
2 A
3 D
4 C
5 C
6 A
7 C
8 A

K

1 what
2 if/whether
3 to
4 tell
5 be
6 it
7 that
8 of
9 spend/fill
10 with

Unit 26

A

1 C
2 A
3 D
4 C
5 A
6 D
7 B
8 A
9 C
10 B
11 D
12 B

B

1 appeal
2 delight
3 adores
4 fancy
5 praised
6 urge
7 welcomed
8 bear
9 strive
10 favour
11 differentiate
12 resolved

C

1 greedy
2 obsessed
3 anticipation
4 aspiration
5 optional
6 arbitrary
7 taste
8 liking
9 mundane
10 mediocre
11 desired
12 envy

D

1 casual
2 fatigue
3 leave
4 venue
5 outing
6 lifestyle
7 sedentary
8 absorbing
9 √
10 solitude

E

1 recreation
2 socialise
3 respite
4 unwind
5 indulge
6 idle
7 trivial
8 pursuing
9 exhilarating
10 pastimes

F

1 E
2 C
3 D
4 F
5 G
6 A
7 B
8 H

G

1 keep up
2 taking out
3 getting into
4 lazing around
5 grow on
6 warming up
7 gone off
8 put in

H

2 √
4 √
6 √
7 √
8 √

I

1 given
2 make
3 choose
4 consider
5 but/except
6 too
7 like
8 go
9 of
10 on

J

1 set
2 have
3 prefer
4 opt
5 choice
6 pursuits
7 option
8 leisure
9 play
10 want

K

1 delight
2 choice
3 need
4 taste
5 keen
6 playing
7 praise
8 rest

L

1 feet
2 hair
3 party
4 spice
5 heart
6 end
7 whim
8 time
9 potato
10 batteries

M

1 desirable
2 pursuits
3 rhythmic(al)
4 unenviable
5 choosy
6 zealous
7 selective
8 leisurely
9 restless/restive
10 obsession

N

1 overplay
2 tendency
3 motivation

4 dissatisfied
5 overdo
6 preferred
7 relaxing
8 stimulation
9 availability
10 sportsmanship

O

-ance
acceptance, allowance, annoyance, appearance, assistance, attendance, avoidance, clearance, disturbance, endurance, guidance, ignorance, inheritance, insurance, performance, reassurance, reliance, resemblance, resistance, tolerance, utterance

-ence
correspondence, dependence, difference, existence, insistence, interference, occurrence, persistence, reference

P

1 assistance/guidance
2 resemblance
3 reference
4 disturbance
5 endurance
6 persistence
7 existence
8 resistance

Review 13

A

1 couch
2 to
3 gone
4 between
5 meets/answers/fulfils
6 end
7 out
8 taken
9 too
10 want

B

11 (that) she has set her heart on going/her heart is set on going
12 have (got) no option but to get
13 whether/if Tony takes/had a close interest in/whether/if Tony has/had a keen interest
14 was going to let her hair down
15 came to rest
16 isn't like Josh to tell
17 playing it by ear
18 bought it on a whim

C

19 tendency
20 preferential
21 unenviable
22 downplay
23 choosy
24 overdone
25 sporty
26 demotivated

D

27 gone
28 centres/centred
29 get
30 grown
31 pick
32 takes/took
33 warm
34 messing

E

35 A
36 D
37 A
38 C
39 D
40 C
41 B
42 D

Progress Test 2: Units 13-26

A

1 independent
2 breadth
3 significant
4 goodwill
5 charitable
6 objections
7 invaluable
8 acknowledged/known
9 exemplary
10 selflessness

B

11 had (still) left his options open/had (still) kept his options open/was (still) leaving his options open/was (still) keeping his options open
12 has so much in common with/has so many interests in common with
13 be better off taking
14 down to a fine art
15 (him/his) being dead (set) against playing
16 was (put) in charge of
17 who are up in arms about my /me
18 wouldn't live to tell the tale
19 have had the last laugh/I had the last laugh
20 only coffee had no effect on/ only coffee didn't have an/any effect on

C

21 has
22 which
23 Not
24 so
25 being
26 ever
27 drowning/dying/perishing
28 entire/whole
29 amount
30 did

D

31 big
32 short
33 matter
34 act
35 dead
36 sick
37 example
38 right
39 better
40 fine

E

41 C
42 B
43 D
44 C
45 D
46 A
47 B
48 C
49 A
50 C

F

51 we got
52 Had I listened
53 you hadn't told
54 Having studied
55 he had been
56 I drove/I was driving/I were driving/I were to drive
57 you to do
58 I didn't invite
59 Were you
60 Being made

G

61 to
62 off
63 out
64 down
65 through
66 around
67 away
68 on
69 up
70 in/up

H

71 additives
72 enlarge
73 apportion
74 irreparable
75 spacious
76 unsubstantiated
77 transactions/activity/acts
78 illusory
79 hardship
80 indestructible

I

81 dozen
82 blot
83 belt
84 handle
85 face
86 strings
87 tape
88 word
89 pride
90 wavelength

J

91 Cracking
92 papers
93 boarded
94 put
95 hit
96 singled
97 checking
98 wore
99 club
100 summon

K

101 see
102 on/happening
103 top
104 size/extent
105 worst
106 near
107 matter
108 free
109 do
110 treat

L

111 consultant
112 bully
113 dependant
114 spouse
115 predecessor
116 curator
117 descendant
118 extrovert
119 sibling
120 monarch

M

121 highest
122 last
123 ground
124 table
125 quality
126 gut
127 grant
128 pressure
129 brand
130 nuclear

N

131 neither/nor
132 enough
133 only
134 Much
135 if
136 despite
137 nowhere
138 it
139 if/though
140 Little

Destination C1 & C2

Grammar and Vocabulary

Destination C1 & C2: Grammar and Vocabulary is the ideal grammar and vocabulary practice book for all advanced students preparing to take any C1 & C2 level exam: e.g. Cambridge CAE and Cambridge CPE.

Key features:

- 26 units, with alternating grammar and vocabulary units
- 13 reviews
- 2 progress tests
- presentation and systematic practice of all key grammar, vocabulary and lexico-grammatical areas required for C1 and C2 level exams
- clear, comprehensive presentation tables
- a wide range of exercise types, including those found in the main C1 and C2 level exams
- a strong emphasis on revision and consolidation
- a useful Reference Section including topic vocabulary, phrasal verbs, phrases, patterns and collocations, idioms and word formation

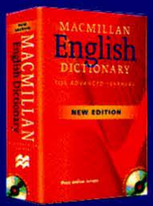
The ***With Key*** edition includes the complete answer key and seven extra photocopiable revision tests.

Components:

Destination C1 & C2:
Grammar and Vocabulary with key, ISBN: 978-0-230-03540-9

Destination C1 & C2:
Grammar and Vocabulary without key, ISBN: 978-0-230-03541-6

MACMILLAN
www.macmillanenglish.com



Use your Macmillan English Dictionary with this book.

ISBN 978-0-230-03540-9
9 780230 035409